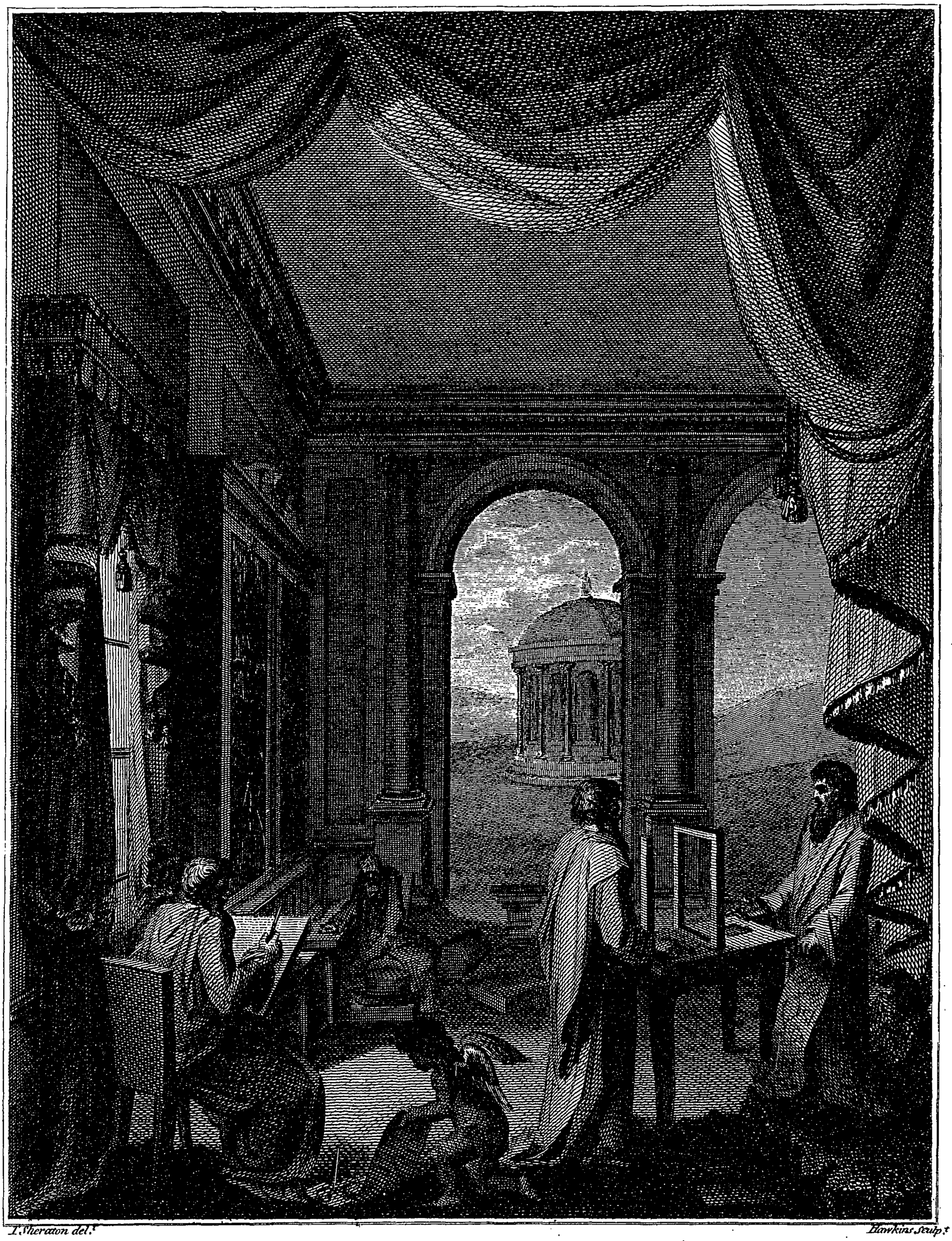
FRONTISPIECE.



I. Sheraton del.

Hawkins Sculp.

Time alters fashions and frequently obliterates the works of art and ingenuity; but that which is founded on Geometry & real Science, will remain unalterable.

Pub.d as the Act directs. Nov.r 20.th 1791. by T. Sheraton.

THE

CABINET-MAKER

AND

UPHOLSTERER'S

DRAWING-BOOK.

IN FOUR PARTS.

THE SECOND EDITION, WITH ADDITIONAL PLATES.

By THOMAS SHERATON,

CABINET-MAKER.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR THE AUTHOR, BY T. BENSLEY;

AND SOLD BY J. MATHEWS, N° 18, STRAND; G. TERRY, N° 54, PATERNOSTER-ROW:
AND J. S. JORDAN, N° 166, FLEET-STREET.

1794.

[Entered at Stationers Hall.]

NK2572
.S5A32
Rare BK. coll.

CONTENTS.

I. USEFUL GEOMETRICAL LINES, on Seven Copperplates. The FIVE ORDERS of ARCHITECTURE, on Six Plates; with ſome Account of their Antiquity, and the Names of the ſeveral Mouldings traced from their Origin.

II. The ELEMENTS of LINEAR PERSPECTIVE, with Practical Remarks on Shadows projected by the Sun, conſidered in different Situations to the Picture. The Whole illuſtrated in Thirteen Copperplates.

III. A great Variety of ORIGINAL DESIGNS, occupying about Eighty Copperplates, in Beds, Chairs, and every other Article of Houſehold Furniture in the truly Modern and moſt approved Stile: amongſt which is a moſt ſuperb Engliſh State-Bed, with Ornaments emblematical of the Britiſh Government explained in Letter-preſs. To which Deſigns are alſo added a Plan and Section of a Drawing-Room, with the proper Diſtribution of its Furniture in the preſent Taſte; together with a Section and View of the PRINCE of WALES's Chineſe Drawing-Room, with the Furniture complete. The whole accompanied with Deſcriptions and uſeful Hints on the Manufacturing Part, highly uſeful not only to the Trade, but alſo to thoſe Gentlemen who wiſh an acquaintance with the Nature of Cabinet Work.

IV. ORNAMENTS of various Kinds, particularly adapted to the Cabinet and Chair Branches: conſiſting of Chair, Pier, and Card-table Legs; Cornices, Freezes, and Pilaſters for Commodes; Bed Pillars, Borders and Centers for Pier and Pembroke-tables, Girandoles, Splads for Chair Backs, and Stumps and Elbows for ditto.

1041 B2
O22 #2

FRONTISPIECE EXPLAINED.

To ſhew in as pleaſing a way as I could the ſtability of this Performance, and the ſubject of the book in general, I have, by the Figure on the right hand, repreſented Geometry ſtanding on a rock, with a ſcroll of Diagrams in his hand, converſing with Perſpective, the next figure to him, who is attentive to the principles of Geometry as the ground of his art; which art is repreſented by the frame on which he reſts his hand. On the left, ſeated near the window, is an Artiſt buſy in deſigning; at whoſe right hand is the Genius of Drawing preſenting the Artiſt with various patterns. The back Figure is Architecture, meaſuring the ſhaft of a Tuſcan column; and on the back ground is the Temple of Fame, to which a knowledge of theſe Arts directly leads.

CONTENTS OF THE THREE PARTS.

PART I.

Containing ſuch Geometrical Lines and Inſtructions as are highly uſeful to Perſons of both Branches, illuſtrated in Seven Copper-plates. To which are added the Five Orders, exhibited in five different Plates, proportioned by Modules, Minutes, and Aliquot Parts, according to the moſt approved Authority; together with ſome Account of their Antiquity and Origin.

PART II.

On Practical Perſpective, applied to the Art of repreſenting all Kinds of Furniture in different Situations; interſperſed with ſomething of the Theory, for ſuch as would know the Principles on which this uſeful Art is founded. The Whole illuſtrated in Thirteen Copper-plates.

PART III.

A Diſplay of the preſent Taſte of Houſehold Furniture; containing alſo uſeful Remarks on the manufacturing Part of difficult Pieces. To which are added, ſome Cornices drawn at large; the Method ſhewn of Gaging, Working, Contracting, and Enlarging of any Kind; together with two Methods of repreſenting a Drawing-Room.

DIRECTIONS for finding and binding in the PLATES, with an Account of their CONTENTS.

The Frontiſpiece faces its Explanation before the Title Page.

PART I. *Of Geometrical Lines.*

PLATES. PAGES.

1. To divide a Line into equal Parts, to divide a Freeze, to raiſe Perpendiculars, and to illuſtrate the Uſe of the Sector - - Faces Page 26
2. Of Scale of Tenths, Chords, Sines on the Sector; to draw an Oval by the Sector; and of various geometrical Figures - - - 54
3. To draw Polygons, Ovals; and to find the Center of Ovals - - 78
4. To take the Plan of a Room for a Carpet - - - - 80
5. Of mitering a Comb-Tray, and Mouldings of different Projections; of Raking Mouldings, and the Tuſcan Pediment - - - - 90
6. Various Geometrical Solids, and of finding Curve Lines to anſwer the Sections of irregular figures - - - - - 108
7. To find Lines for Hip and Eliptic Domes - - - - 118
8. The Tuſcan Order - - - - - 148
9. The Doric Order - - - - - 152
10. The Ionic Order - - - - - 154
11. The Compoſite Order - - - - - 160
12. The Corinthian Order - - - - - 164
13. Of diminiſhing the Shaft of a Column, and of the Ionic Volute - ibid.

PART

PART II. *Of Perſpective.*

PLATES.		PAGES.
14.	The Elementary Planes, and Nature of the Eye - -	Faces Page 220
15.	The Repreſentation of Squares in different Poſitions - - -	234
16.	Squares in Inclined Planes - - - - -	240
17.	Ditto Ditto. - - - - -	244
18.	The Repreſentation of Cubes and Priſms - - - -	256
19.	The Repreſentation of Polygonal Figures - - - -	264
20.	The Repreſentation of a Row of Equidiſtant Columns, and of Long and Short Diſtances - - - - -	282
21.	Curvilinear Figures - - - - -	296
22.	The Repreſentation of Steps, and the Tuſcan Pedeſtal and Baſe - -	302
23.	The Repreſentation of the Tuſcan Entablature, and of Arches - -	308
24.	The Repreſentation of Houſes and Chairs - - -	314
25.	The Repreſentation of Tables and a Commode - - -	318
26.	The Repreſentation of a Cylinder Deſk and Book-caſe, of a Chair oblique, and Shadows in general; bound in by a Guard - - -	350

PART III. *Of Pieces of Furniture.*

25.	The Univerſal Table. - - - - -	362
26.	Sideboard Table; marked on the Plate 54 by miſtake. N. B. The Braſs Rods are made by Mr. Penton and Co. New-ſtreet Square, near St. Andrew's, Holborn. - - - - - -	366
27.	Book-caſe Doors - - - - -	370
28.	A Secretary and Book-caſe - - - -	ibid.
29.	Book-caſe Doors. - - - - -	ibid.
29.	A Sideboard Table. - - - - -	ibid.
30.	A Library Table, binds in withoūt a Guard. - - -	376

PLATES.		PAGES.
31.	A Sofa, and the Perſpective Lines of it; binds in without a Guard Faces Page	380
32.	Drawing-Room Chairs	388
33.	Parlour Ditto	ibid.
34.	Drawing and Parlour Ditto	ibid.
35.	A Sofa	ibid.
36.	Chair Backs	ibid.
37.	A Lady's Writing Table	390
38.	Tripod Fire-Screens	ibid.
39.	Knife-Caſes, and Lady's Travelling-Box	392
40.	Alcove Bed	382
41.	A Summer Bed	384
42.	Corner Baſon-Stands	394
43.	Waſhhand Stand, Pot Cupboard, Secretary and Screen Table	396
44.	A Reading and Writing Table	ibid.
45.	A French State-Bed	386
46.	A Lady's Dreſſing-Table	398
47.	A Cylinder Deſk and Book-caſe	402
48.	A Cabinet	406
49.	A Cabinet and Dreſſing-Table	ibid.
50.	A Lady's Cabinet and Writing-Table	408
51.	Window Curtains and Drapery	ibid
52.	A Gentleman's Secretary	410
53.	A Cylinder Waſhhand Stand	412
54.	Pembroke Table and French Work-Table	414
55.	Tripod Candle-Stands	416
56.	A Harlequin Pembroke Table	430

PLATES.		PAGES.
56.	Ornament for a Freeze or Tablet	Faces Page 430
57.	Pediments for Book-cases	432
58.	A Kidney Table	ibid.
59.	Cornices at large	436
60.	The Lady's Drawing Table, and the Dining-Parlour	440
61.	The Drawing Room	444

CONTENTS.

CONTENTS.

ADDRESS - - - - - - - Page 5

A Book publiſhed before Chippendale's - - - - - 7

Chippendale's next in order of Time - - - - - ibid.

Chippendale's Remark on the Uſefulneſs of Perſpective - - - 8

After his there appeared another Book of Deſigns in Chairs only - - ibid.

An Apology for a Remark made on Chippendale's Third Edition - - ibid.

Ince's and Mayhew's Book of Deſigns ſucceeds that one of Chairs only - - 9

Hepplewhite's Upholſterer's Guide, publiſhed in 1788—Remarks on it - - 10

The Cabinet-maker's Book of Prices, publiſhed in the ſame Year—Remarks on it 11

The Stability of the Plan on which the Cabinet Drawing-Book is publiſhed - 12

Miſtakes to be avoided when the Compaſſes are applied to the receding Parts of Furniture - - - - - - - 13

PART I. *Of Geometrical Lines.*

Introduction - - - - - - - - 15

The term Geometry defined - - - - - - ibid.

Regular Geometry not neceſſary to Workmen in attaining a competent Knowledge of Lines - - - - - - - 16

Geometry founded upon a few Principles of common Senſe - - Page 17
Technical Terms propoſed to be explained - - - ibid.

SECT. I. *On Geometrical Lines.*

Problem 1. To divide a Right Line into any Number of equal Parts by the firſt Opening of the Compaſſes - - - - 19
——— 2. To divide a Freeze - - - - - 21
——— 3. To raiſe a Perpendicular by different Methods - - - 22
——— 4. Ditto - - - - - - 23

SECT. II.

Of the Uſe of the common Caſe of Inſtruments - - - - 25
The Conſtruction and Uſe of a Scale of Feet and Inches—its Derivation - - 26
——— of a Scale of Tenths - - - 27
——— of a Scale of Chords - - - - 29
On the Protractor—its Derivation - - - - - 30
Of the Sector—its Derivation - - - - - 32
Of the Line of Polygons on the Sector—its Derivation - - - 34
——— of Chords on Ditto - - - - - 37
——— of Sines on Ditto - - - - - 38
Of the Tangent Line on Ditto—its Derivation - - - 41

SECT. III.

The Names of Geometrical Figures ought to be known - - - 43
Of Superficies—its Derivation - - - - - 44
Of various Triangles - - - - - - 45
Of Mixtilineal Figures - - - - - - 48
Of Polygonal Figures—the Derivation of the Term Pentagon - - 49

The

The Names of the various Sorts of Polygons - - - Page 50
What the Sections of a Cone produces - - - - 51
A Circle and an Oval the only regular Surfaces bounded by one Line—the Derivation of the Term Ellipsis - - - - - ibid.

SECT. IV.

Of drawing various useful Geometrical Figures - - - 52
Problem 5. To draw a Geometrical Square - - - - 53
——— 6. To draw a Rhomb - - - - - ibid.
——— 7. To draw Polygons - - - - - 55
——— 8. To describe a Hexagon - - - - 56
——— 9. To describe a Heptagon - - - - ibid.
——— 10. A Circle given to find the Sides of a Pentagon - - - 57
——— 11. The Inscription of a Hexagon - - - 58
——— 12. Different Methods of drawing Ovals - - - 59
——— 13. Ditto - - - - - - 60
——— 14. Ditto - - - - - - 61
——— 15. Ditto - - - - - - 62
——— 16. Ditto - - - - - - 63
——— 17. Ditto - - - - - - 65
——— 18. To find the Center and Diameter of an Oval - - 66
——— 19. To find the Center of any Segment - - - 67
——— 20. To find the Diameter of a Cylinder without measuring its End - 69

SECT. V. *Problems pertaining to the Working Part.*

——— 21. The extreme Lines are given to find any Number of mean Proportionals 71
Illustration of this - - - - - 72
How to cut all the Steps of a Ladder to their proper Length before any Part of it is put together - - - - 73

Problem 22. How to draw an Elliptic Cornice, and to fit a Valance to it - Page 74
——— 23. To deſcribe a Segment of a large Circle without a Center - - 77
——— 24. To take the Plan of a Room - - - - 78
——— 25. To miter any Thing of the Nature of a Comb-Tray - - 80
——— 26. Of mitering Mouldings of different Projections - - - 83
——— 27. Of mitering Raking Mouldings - - - - 85
——— 28. Of the Tuſcan Pediment - - - - 87

SECT. VI.

Of the Names and Properties of various Geometrical Solids - - 91
Derivation of Hexaedron and Priſm - - - - 93
Derivation of Tetrahedron - - - - - 95
The Learned differ about the Derivation of the Term Pyramid - - 97
Derivation of the Terms Hemiſphere and Section - - - 99
Of the Sections and Coverings of regular and irregular Figures - - ibid.
Problem 29. Of the Covering for a Vaſe - - - - 100
——— 30. Of the Covering of an irregular Vaſe - - - 103
Of the Covering of a Sphere - - - - 105
——— 31. The Section and Covering of a Knife-caſe - - - 106
——— 32. Of the Conſtruction of Hip Domes - - - 109
General Obſervations on the Management of Domes - - 113
——— 33. To conſtruct an Elliptic Dome - - - - 116
Of the Management of Elliptic Domes - - - 118

SECT. VII. *Of the Proportion of the Five Orders.*

Introduction - - - - - - - 120
Of the Origin and Antiquity of the Orders - - - - 123
The Derivation of the Term Architecture - - - - ibid.

What

What gave riſe to the Term Architecture - - - Page 123
Its Progreſs in building a City and Tower to reach the Heavens - - 124
No regular Proportions aſſigned to any Pillars before thoſe of Jachin and Boaz in Solomon's Temple - - - - - ibid.
Pillars were in uſe long before Solomon's Time; but no mention is made of their Proportion, except what Joſephus ſays of their Height - - 125
The Proportions of Jachin and Boaz anſwer to the moſt Ancient Doric Order - ibid.
Some Particulars wherein they reſemble each other - - - 126
What Vitruvius ſays of the Antiquity of the Doric Order does not conſiſt with other Facts - - - - - - 128
The Ionic next in order—a Temple built of it at Epheſus - - - 130
The Corinthian ſucceeds—Vitruvius's Account of its Origin - - 131
Who Vitruvius was - - - - - - ibid.
The Tuſcan Order the Fourth in point of Antiquity - - - 132
The Compoſite the Laſt - - - - - ibid.
The Compoſite Capital derived from the Corinthian, and not limited to one Kind 133
The Character and Proportions of the Tuſcan Order - - - 134
The Diminution of a Column - - - - - 137
Sir William Chambers's Remarks on Diminution - - - 138
The common Method of Diminution - - - - 139
The beſt Standard for the Quantity of Diminution - - - 140
Vignola's Method of Diminution - - - - - 141
Nicomedes's Inſtrument for diminiſhing Columns - - - 142
Of the principal Parts of a Column, and the Names of each Member - - 143
Of the Character and Proportions of the Doric Order - - - 150
Of the Character and Proportions of the Ionic Order - - - 153
How to deſcribe the Ionic Volute - - - - - 154
To graduate the Fillet of the Volute - - - - - 157
Of the Character and Proportions of the Compoſite Order - - 158
The Compoſite Order ſhould be placed before the Corinthian—Reaſons why, ſhewn 159

General

General Proportions of the Compoſite Order - - - Page 160
Of the Character and Proportions of the Corinthian Order - - 161
How to draw the Scatia, Cymarecta, and Cymainverſa - - - 164
Obſervations on the Agreement of the Five Orders - - - 165
Of the Proportions of Frontiſpieces - - - - 167
General Directions for drawing the Five Orders—Indian Ink - - 170

PART II. *Of Perſpective.*

Introduction - - - - - - - 177

SECT. I.

Of the Principles on which Perſpective is founded - - - 182
Of the Elementary Planes - - - - - 188
The Ground Plane - - - - - - 189
The Perſpective Plane - - - - - - ibid.
How the Appearance of Objects may be determined on Glaſs - - 190
The Horizontal Plane - - - - - - 191
The Directing Plane - - - - - - 196
The Vertical Plane - - - - - - ibid.
The Viſual Plane - - - - - - 198
Of Lines produced by the Interſections of the foregoing Planes - - 200
Of Points produced by the Interſections of theſe Lines - - - 202

SECT. II.

Of the Affinity of Optical Laws with the Principles of Perſpective - - 205
The Uſe of the three principal Elementary Planes in the Practice of Drawing - 211
Of various Poſitions of Lines to the Picture - - - - 215
How a Geometrical Square appears on the Plane of the Picture in various caſes 217

SECT.

SECT. III.

Problems ſolved according to the preceding Principles - - Page 225
The uſual Method of teaching Perſpective is to begin with Points and Lines - ibid.
Theſe unneceſſary, becauſe included in finding the Repreſentations of Superficies 226
Problem 1. To repreſent a Square lying on the Ground - - - 227
—— 2. ——perpendicular to the Ground and to the Picture 228
—— 3. ——perpendicular to the Ground and parallel to the Picture - - - - - 230
—— 4. ——inclined to the Ground, and perpendicular to the Picture - - - - - 231
—— 5. ——inclined to the Ground and to the Picture 234
—— 6. To find the Repreſentation of a Square lying on the Ground, having its Sides oblique to the Picture - - - 236
—— 7. To find the Repreſentation of a Square perpendicular to the Ground and oblique to the Picture - - - - 238
—— 8. To find the Repreſentation of a Square, having its Sides oblique to the Picture, and ſituated in a Plane inclined to the Ground - 239
—— 9. To find the Repreſentation of a Square ſituated in a Plane oblique both to the Ground and to the Picture - - - 241
—— 10. To repreſent a Floor of Squares - - - 244
—— 11. To repreſent a Row of Cubes parallel to the Picture - - 246
—— 12. To repreſent Cubes oblique to the Picture - - - 248
—— 13. To repreſent objects when the Diſtance and Vaniſhing Points exceed the Bounds of the Picture - - - 250
—— 14. To reduce the Point of Diſtance to the Limits of the Picture - 254

SECT. IV.

Of the Repreſentation of Polygonal and Curvilinear Figures - - 257
Remarks on Polygons - - - - - - ibid.
Problem 15. To repreſent a Hexagon having two of its Sides parallel to the Picture 259

Problem 16. To find the Repreſentation of an Hexangular Priſm - Page 260
——— 17. To find the Repreſentation of an Octagon, having two Sides parallel to the Picture - - - - - 262
——— 18. To find the Repreſentation of an Octangular Priſm, having its ſides oblique to the Picture - - - - 263
Remarks on the Difference between the Repreſentation of Objects on a Plane, and their Appearance to the Eye - - - - 265
Of the Repreſentation of a Range of Equidiſtant Columns - - 269
Of the proper Choice of the diſtance of the Picture, proportioned to the Height of the Horizon - - - - - - 275
How to chooſe a Diſtance when the whole Length of the Picture is filled with Objects on the Front - - - - - - 280
How to chooſe a Diſtance when the Objects are drawn by a large Scale, ſituated not far from the Center of the Picture - - - - 281
How to chooſe a Diſtance when a Piece of Furniture, not very long, is repreſented near the Middle of the Front of the Picture - - - 282
Of the Repreſentation of Curvilinear Figures - - - - 283
Problem 19. To repreſent a Circle lying on the Ground Plane - - 289
——— 20. To repreſent a Circle perpendicular to the Ground and to the Picture 291
——— 21. To repreſent a Cylinder erect on the Ground - - 292
——— 22. To repreſent a Cylinder lying on the Ground and oblique to the Picture 293
——— 23. To find the Repreſentation of a Semi-ellipſis whoſe tranſverſe Diameter is parallel to the Picture - - - - 294
——— 24. To find the Repreſentation of an Elliptic Segment inverſely - 295

SECT. V.

The Application of the preceding Problems to the Practice of drawing Pieces of Architecture and Furniture - - - - - 296
Example 1. How to repreſent a receding and returning Flight of Steps - - 297
——— 2. How to repreſent a Tuſcan Baſe and Pedeſtal - - - 299

Example

Example 3. How to repreſent a Tuſcan Entablature and Baſe - Page 302
——— 4. How to repreſent Arches - - - - - 307
——— 5. Ditto - - - - - - 308
——— 6. How to repreſent a Houſe having its Front parallel to the Picture - 309
——— 7. To find the Repreſentation of a Houſe when the Gable-end is parallel to the Picture - - - - - - 311
——— 8. How to repreſent a Chair when its Front is parallel to the Picture - 312
——— 9. How to repreſent a Chair when its Front is perpendicular to the Picture - - - - - - 314
——— 10. How to repreſent a round Pillar and Claw Table - - - 315
——— 11. How to repreſent an octagon Ditto - - - 316
——— 12. To put a Commode in Perſpective when its Front is parallel to the Picture - - - - - - 317
——— 13. To repreſent a Chair when its Front is oblique to the Picture - 319
——— 14. To put a Cylinder Deſk and Book-caſe in Perſpective when its Front is oblique to the Picture - - - - 321

SECT. VI.

A ſhort View of the Nature and Principles of Shadows - - - 326
Preparatory Obſervations - - - - - - ibid.
Caſe 1. To project the Shadows of Objects in various Poſitions when the Sun's Rays are parallel to the Picture - - - - 328
Example 1. Ditto - - - - - 329
——— 2. Ditto - - - - - 330
——— 3. Ditto - - - - - - ibid.
——— 4. Ditto - - - - - 331
Example 1. When one Object ſtands in the Way of the Shadow of another - - - - - 332
——— 2. Ditto - - - - - ibid.

Caſe 2. To project the Shadows of Objects when the Rays come in a Direction from behind the Picture - - - Page 334

Obſervations on the Theory of Caſe 2. - - - 335

—— 3. To find the Projection of Shadows when the Sun's Rays come on the Front of the Picture - - - - - 340

Example 1. When the Shadow falls on the Ground - - - ibid.

—— 2. When the Shadow falls on upright, oblique, and horizontal Planes 341

Of Shadows when the Sun does not ſhine - - - - 343

Of the Proportion of Tints in a Picture - - - - 345

Of reflected Images on Water - - - - - 347

PART III. *Furniture in general.*

Introduction - - - - - 351

Of the Univerſal Table - - - - - 356

Of the Sideboard Tables - - - - - 363

Of the Book-caſe Doors - - - - - 368

Of the Secretary and Book-caſe - - - - - 371

Of the Library Table - - - - - - 372

Of the Kidney Table - - - - - - 378

Of the Sofa Bed - - - - - - 379

Of the Alcove Bed - - - - - - 381

Of the Summer Bed in two Compartments - - - - 382

Of the French State-Bed - - - - - 384

Of the Drawing-Room Chairs - - - - - 387

Of the Sofa - - - - - - 388

Of the Lady's Writing Table - - - - ibid.

Of the Tripod Fire-Screens - - - - - 390

Of the Knife-Cafes and Lady's Travelling-Box - - Page 391
Of the Corner Bafon-Stands - - - - - 393
A Wafhhand Stand and Pot Cupboard - - - - - 394
Of the Lady's Secretary and Screen Table - - - - 395
Of a Reading and Writing Table - - - - - 396
Of a Lady's Dreffing-Table - - - - - 397
Of a Cylinder Defk and Book-cafe - - - - 399
Of a Cabinet - - - - - - 403
Of a Lady's Cabinet and Dreffing-Table - - - - 405
Of a Lady's Cabinet and Writing-Table - - - - 407
Of the Window Drapery - - - - - 408
Of the Gentleman's Secretary - - - - - 409
Of the Cylinder Wafhhand Stand - - - - 412
Of the Pembroke Table - - - - - 413
Of the French Work-Table - - - - - 414
Remarks on Shadowing the Pembroke and French Work-Table - - 415
Of the Tripod Candle-Stands - - - - - 416
Of the Harlequin Pembroke Table - - - - 417
Of Pediments - - - - - - 431
Of Cornices—the Method of working, contracting, and enlarging them - 432
Of the Lady's Drawing and Writing Table - - - - 437
Of the Dining-Parlour and Drawing Room - - - - 438

LIST OF SUBSCRIBERS.

In the following Liſt it is to be obſerved, that the Maſters in London are diſtinguiſhed by having the Names of the Streets, and ſometimes the Number of the Houſe, affixed; but with reſpect to Maſters out of London and its vicinity we could not make this diſcrimination, and therefore we hope, on this account, to be excuſed by thoſe who reſide in the country.

A.

ALLDAY John, Mahogany-merchant, Carliſle-ſtreet, Soho, London, 10 copies
Angus, Cabinet-maker, Shug-lane, London
Anderſon Henry, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Anderſon Alexander, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Archer William, Upholſterer, ditto
Allan John, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Atkinſon Thomas, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Arquart James, Profile-painter, ditto
Alliſon Robert, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Allen, Brewer, Burr-ſtreet, ditto
Appleby, Cabinet-maker, Stockton
Aſtle Thomas, Cheſter
Alderton, Cabinet-maker, Brighton
Angel Edward, Cabinet-maker
Andrews, Cabinet-maker, Ipſwich
Adams, Cabinet-maker, Strand, London
Appleton C. Cabinet-maker, Halliſax
Adams
Atkinſon William, Cabinet-maker, Rippon
Ambler, Bookſeller, Halliſax
Alderſon, Cabinet-maker, Newcaſtle
Adams, Plaſterer, Briſtol
Allen, Cabinet-maker, London
Ackermann, Painter, Ruſſel-ſtreet, London

B.

Bentham, Colonel
Barclay, Eſq. Edinburgh
Bouch William, Cabinet-maker, Wells-ſtreet, London
Beckwith, Cabinet-maker, Stockton
Bream Samuel, Cabinet-maker, Yarmouth
Burbury, Cabinet-maker, London

Blackſtock P. Cabinet-maker, Caſtle-ſtreet, Long-Acre, London
Benſley Thomas, Printer, Bolt-court, Fleet-ſtreet, ditto
Bagſter J. Cabinet-maker, Piccadilly, ditto
Bradley S. Cabinet-maker, ditto
Bails J. Bedſtead-maker, No. 434, Oxford-ſtreet, ditto
Brown Michael, Cabinet-maker, London
Bullock William, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Brunton James, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Brytam S. Cabinet-maker, ditto
Balls Thomas, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Binns Edward, Cabinet-maker, No. 1, Burden-ſtreet, Berkley-ſquare, ditto
Black John, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Bowman William, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Bales Simon, Cabinet-maker, Norwich
Blades Thomas, Upholſterer, No. 114, Jermyn-ſtreet, London
Bullock Richard, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Bowman John, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Beale John, Cabinet-maker, No. 7, Roſe-ſtreet, Soho
Beaumont Thomas, Carver, ditto
Black Algernon, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Batter, Upholſterer, Rocheſter
Bonington and Thorpe, Clock-caſe makers, No. 22, Red Lion-ſtreet, Clerkenwell, London
Black R. Cabinet-maker, ditto
Bigger William, Upholſterer, ditto
Bromridge, Cabinet-maker, George-yard, Hatton-garden, ditto
Borthwick, Briſtol
Borough, Cabinet-maker, London
Biſhop, Cabinet-maker, Houndſditch, do
Baker, Cabinet-maker, Iſlington
Barlow, Engraver, No. 5, George-ſtreet, London
Blackland, Old Broad-ſtreet, ditto
Burnie Charles, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Bower, Cabinet-maker, No. 12, Round-court, Strand, ditto
Blacklock, Cabinet-maker and Undertaker, No. 79, Park-ſtreet, ditto
Brown James, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Belfour Alexander, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Browning John, Mahogany-merchant, No. 21, Southampton-ſtreet, Bloomſbury, London
Banks Thomas, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Bennet Ebenezer, Edinburgh
Blackburn William, Upholſterer, London
Bunnell, Upholſterer, Colcheſter
Bore, Cabinet-maker, Norwich
Barkworth John, Barton
Bryant T. Sheffield
Botcherby R. Cabinet-maker, Darlington
Bings John, Cabinet-maker, Sheffield
Beale Thomas, Cabinet-maker, York
Braidwood and Bruce, Edinburgh
Burnet and Painter, Cabinet-makers, Briſtol
Brailsford W. Cabinet-maker, Sheffield
Brailsford T. Cabinet-maker, ditto
Braſh John, Cabinet-maker, Leeds
Burn James, Cabinet-maker, Hadington
Baſſick A. Cabinet-maker, Scarborough
Benwell C. Cabinet-maker, Reading
Baſh and Reid, Bookſellers, Glaſgow
Burns, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Binns, Chair-maker, New Compton-ſtreet, London
Barclay, at the George, Monmouth-court
Benſon, Cabinet-maker, London

Barton, Lincolnſhire
Brown, Upholſterer, Newcaſtle
Bell, Painter, ditto
Bulmer, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Brummell, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Bally, Cabinet-maker and Upholſterer, No. 10, Milſom-ſtreet, Bath
Bland, Cabinet-maker, Halifax
Baiſton and Hargill, Cabinet-makers, Leeds
Beal, Cabinet-maker, London
Badger, Cabinet-maker, Batterly-moor, Lancaſhire
Boſmand
Brown, Cabinet-maker, London
Binns, Shell-maker, Smithfield, London
Brown, Lelburnel, and Co. Glaſgow
Bruce, Upholſterer, No. 307, Holborn
Bland, Gowthrop, Edmond

C.

Campbell and Son, Cabinet-makers to the Prince of Wales, Mary-le-bone-ſtreet, London
Cromer James, Upholſterer, Edinburgh
Chriſtie R. Chair-maker, No. 2, Newman-ſtreet, London
Cliff, Upholſterer, London
Cook William, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Cryſtall William, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Challis John, Upholſterer, ditto
Coats J. Cabinet-maker, ditto
Campbell A. Cabinet-maker, ditto
Chiſholme T. Cabinet-maker, No. 7, Great Pultney-ſtreet, ditto
Caſement W. Cabinet-maker, ditto
Hudſon and Corney, Cabinet-makers, No. 1, Broad-ſtreet, Soho, ditto
Cragg Leonard, Cabinet-maker, London
Cragg James, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Calvert Matthew, Upholſterer, ditto
Cleland Alex. Cabinet-maker, St. Ann's-court, Peter-ſtreet
Child, Upholſterer, ditto
Crockett Charles, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Conyer George, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Cheatham J. Cabinet-maker, Eagle-court, Clerkenwell, London
Cook J. Engraver, Mill-hill, Middleſex
Cerr J. Upholſterer, Glaſgow
Clark J. Upholſterer, London
Cowin J. Cabinet-maker, ditto
Cooper, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Cartwright, Carver, ditto
Chowles, Cabinet-maker, No. 21, North Audley-ſtreet, ditto
Crow Charles, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Cook Edward, Cabinet-maker, Cow-croſs, near Smithfield, ditto
Colborn W. Cabinet-maker, ditto
Counſel, Upholſterer, ditto
Corlett Edward, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Cook Joſeph, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Cotter W. Cabinet-maker, No. 24, Burr-ſtreet, ditto
Clārk W. Cabinet-maker, Stockton
Cubitt, Cabinet-maker, London
Cooper, Cabinet-maker, Biſhopſgate-ſtreet, ditto
Croſs, Cabinet-maker, Blackfriars-road, ditto
Chriſtian Thomas, Upholſterer, ditto
Cooper Joſeph, Cabinet-maker, Derby
Cramp and Tollput, London
Carr Richard, Sheffield
Cook, Upholſterer Colcheſter

Chapman, Upholſterer, Ipſwich
Cartwright, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Chamberlain, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Caldwell, Sheffield
Cudbert John, Cabinet-maker, Whitby
Campbell John, Cabinet-maker, London
Cox Edward, Cabinet-maker, Northampton
Court, Cabinet-maker, Briſtol
Conſtantine Richard, Leeds
Crayne Thomas, Derby
Croft, Cabinet-maker, Leeds
Crafley, Workington
Craſtay, Cabinet-maker, London
Crowther, Cabinet-maker, Hallifax
Cowley, Cabinet-maker, Liverpool
Carry
Chriſtie, Cabinet-maker, London
Croſs Joſeph, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Croſs Aubery, Cabinet-maker, ditto

D.

Donald Robert, Cabinet-maker, Groſvenor-ſtreet, London
Daws Thomas, Upholſterer and Cabinet-maker, No. 27, Dean-ſtreet, Soho, ditto
Downer H. Ironmonger, Fleet-ſtreet, ditto
Dixon George, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Dales J. New-ſtreet, ditto
Dodman W. Cabinet-maker, ditto
Duncomb M. Cabinet-maker, ditto
Dent Henry, Cabinet-maker, No. 27, Little Caſtle-ſtreet, ditto
Dutton Thomas, Cabinet-maker, London
Dobſon Chriſtopher, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Digby James, Cabinet-maker, York
Daviſon W. Cabinet-maker, London
Durward, ditto
Dods James, Cabinet-maker, No. 34, Broad-ſtreet, Carnaby-market, London
Dixon, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Douglas, Chair-maker, ditto
Dick, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Duncomb Joſeph, Cabinet-maker, Great Garden-ſtreet, Whitechapel, ditto
Daniel Samuel, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Donner John, Harpſichord-maker, ditto
Doug'ld Gilchriſt, Harpſichord-maker, No. 37, Mary-le-bone-ſtreet, ditto
Dodſon, Cabinet-maker, Colcheſter
Delamain, Hull
Davies and Wilſon, Cabinet-makers, York
Donaldſon and Bruce, London
Dixwell, Cabinet-maker, ditto
Duncan James, Bookſeller, Glaſgow
Dickinſon, Whitehaven
Dobſon, Upholſterer, Newcaſtle
Dixon, Cabinet-maker, London
Dunn John, Cabinet-maker, Newcaſtle
Dillon, Cabinet-maker, Ruſſia

E.

Elcork Thomas, Eſq. Chertſey, Surry
Erſkine Francis, Eſq. Edinburgh
Elliott Charles, Upholſterer to his Majeſty, and Cabinet-maker to the Duke of York, New Bond-ſtreet
Elexander William, Cabinet-maker, Edinburgh
Engleheart P. Cabinet-maker, No. 40, Caſtle-ſtreet, Oxford-market, London
Edmonds, Upholſterer, No. 6, Compton-ſtreet, ditto
Elden Earl W. Cabinet-maker, ditto
Ellerbeck John, Cabinet-maker, ditto

TO

CABINET-MAKERS AND UPHOLSTERERS

IN GENERAL.

GENTLEMEN,

I PRESUME, that to publiſh a Drawing-book anſwerable to the preceding title page will not require many words to convince you either of the neceſſity or propriety of the attempt.

Nor will it be requiſite to uſe an oſtentatious preface to recommend it to your notice, or to perſuade you of the utility of ſuch an undertaking. Therefore, what I have further to ſay in this Addreſs ſhall be to give ſome account of my plan, and point out to you the difference between this and other books which have been publiſhed for the aſſiſtance and uſe of Cabinet-makers and Upholſterers.

Books of various deſigns in cabinet work, ornamented according to the taſte of the times in which they were publiſhed, have already appeared. But none of theſe, as far as I know, profeſs to give any inſtructions relative to the art of making perſpective drawings, or to treat of ſuch geometrical lines as ought to be known by perſons of both profeſſions, eſpecially ſuch of them as have

have a number of men under their directions. Nor have theſe books given accurate patterns at large for ornaments to enrich and embelliſh the various pieces of work which frequently occur in the cabinet branch. Such patterns are alſo highly neceſſary to copy from by thoſe who would ſufficiently qualify themſelves for giving a good ſketch, or regular drawing, of any thing they meet with, or are required to draw for others. Nor indeed would this performance anſwer ſo well to the title of a Drawing-book without them. I hope, therefore, that in ſome degree the above defect is ſupplied in the following work, and that it will be conſidered as an enhancement to the real value and uſefulneſs of the Cabinet-maker and Upholſterer's Drawing-Book to be furniſhed with a variety of ſuch ornaments as ſhall ſerve, both for the purpoſe of the learner, and alſo to aſſiſt the ideas of thoſe who have occaſion to adorn their work in this way.

As I have alluded to ſome books of deſigns, it may be proper here juſt to ſay ſomething of them. I have ſeen one which ſeems to have been publiſhed before Chippendale's. I infer this from the antique appearance of the furniture, for there is no date to it; but the title informs us that it was compoſed by a Society of Cabinet-makers in London. It gives no inſtructions for drawing in any form, but we may venture to ſay, that thoſe who drew the deſigns wanted a good ſhare of teaching themſelves.

Chippendale's book ſeems to be next in order to this, but the former is without compariſon to it, either as to ſize or real merit. Chippendale's book has, it is true, given us the proportions of the Five Orders, and lines for two or three caſes, which is all it pretends to relative to rules for drawing: and, as for the deſigns themſelves, they are now wholly antiquated and laid aſide, though poſſeſſed of great merit, according to the times in which they were executed. But it may here be remarked to his credit, that although he has not given rules for drawing in *perſpective himſelf, yet he was ſenſible of their

* This is ſtrictly true of the third edition of Chippendale's book; but the firſt edition of it, printed in 1754, has given two chairs, a dreſſing-table, and a book-caſe in perſpective, ſhewing the lines for drawing them. But why theſe examples were not continued in the ſucceeding editions I know not.

In

their importance and uſe in deſigning, and therefore he ſays in his preface: "Without ſome knowledge of the rules of perſpective, the cabinet-maker cannot make the deſigns of his work intelligible, nor ſhew, in a little compaſs, the whole conduct and effect of the piece. Theſe, therefore, referring to architecture alſo, ought to be carefully ſtudied by every one who would excel in this branch, ſince they are the very ſoul and baſis of his art."

After Chippendale's work there appeared, in the year ſixty-five, a book of deſigns for chairs only, though it is called "The Cabinet-maker's real Friend and Companion," as well as the Chair-maker's. This publication profeſſes to ſhew the method of ſtriking out all kinds of bevel work, by which, as the author ſays, the moſt ignorant perſon will be immediately acquainted with what many artiſts have ſerved ſeven years to know. But this aſſertion both exceeds the bounds of modeſty and truth, ſince there is nothing in his directions for bevel-work, which he parades ſo much about, but what an apprentice boy may be taught by ſeven hours proper inſtructions. With reſpect to the geometrical view of the Five Orders which he has given, theſe are uſeful, and the only thing in his book which at this day is worthy notice, as all his chairs are nearly as old as Chippendale's, and ſeem to be copied from them.

The ſucceeding publication to this ſeems to be Ince's and Mayhew's Book of Deſigns in Cabinet and Chair work, with three plates, containing ſome examples of foliage ornaments, intended for the young deſigner to copy from, but which can be of no ſervice to any learner now, as they are ſuch kind of ornaments as are wholly laid aſide in the cabinet branch, according to the preſent taſte. The deſigns in cabinets and chairs are, of courſe, of the ſame caſt, and therefore have ſuffered the ſame fate: yet, in juſtice to the work, it may be ſaid to have been a book of merit in its day, though much inferior to Chippendale's, which was a real original, as well as more extenſive and maſterly in its deſigns.

In the laſt edition of any work, we naturally expect to ſee it in its beſt ſtate, having received its laſt reviſal from the author, or ſome other hand equal to the taſk; and therefore it can never be thought unfair for a reader to form his judgment of a book from the laſt impreſſion. I hope, therefore, this will ſufficiently apologize for the above obſervation.

In looking over Ince's book I obſerved two card-tables with ſome perſpective lines, ſhewing the manner of deſigning them. Theſe, ſo far as they go, are a uſeful attempt; but certain it is to me, from ſome experience in teaching, that no perſon can have the ſmalleſt acquaintance with the principles of perſpective, merely from ſeeing two or three lines joined to a plate, without proper inſtructions by letter-preſs. It is true, a deſcription is given of theſe lines in the 7th page of his book, but not equal to what is abſolutely requiſite to ſuch as have no previous acquaintance with the art; and thoſe that have, will not require that which can give them no aſſiſtance. Properly ſpeaking then, what is done in this book, relative to perſpective lines, can only ſerve as a hint to the workman, that this art is eſſential in deſigning.

In the year 1788 was publiſhed, "The Cabinet-maker's and Upholſterer's Guide." In which are found no directions for drawing in any form, nor any pretenſions to it. The whole merit of the performance reſts on the deſigns, with a ſhort deſcription to each plate prefixed. Some of theſe deſigns are not without merit, though it is evident that the perſpective is, in ſome inſtances, erroneous. But, notwithſtanding the late date of Heppelwhite's book, if we compare ſome of the deſigns, particularly the chairs, with the neweſt taſte, we ſhall find that this work has already caught the decline, and perhaps, in a little time, will ſuddenly die in the diſorder. This inſtance may ſerve to convince us of that fate which all books of the ſame kind will ever be ſubject to. Yet it muſt be owned, that books of this ſort have their uſefulneſs for a time; and, when through change of faſhions they are become obſolete, they ſerve to ſhew the taſte of former ages.

I ſhall now conclude this account of books of deſigns with obſerving, that in the ſame year was given a quarto book of different pieces of furniture, with the Cabinet-maker's London Book of Prices; and, conſidering that it did not make its appearance under the title of a Book of Deſigns, but only to illuſtrate the prices, it certainly lays claim to merit, and does honour to the publiſhers.

Upon the whole then, if the intended publication, which now petitions your patronage and ſupport, be ſo compiled and compoſed as fully to anſwer, and

and alſo to merit, the title which has been given to it, I think it will be found greatly to ſupply the defects of thoſe books now mentioned, and will appear to be on as laſting a foundation as can well be expected in a work of this kind. For inſtance, the firſt part, which provides the workman with geometrical lines, applied to various purpoſes in the cabinet branch, cannot be ſubject to alteration any more than the principles of reaſon itſelf. The ſame may be ſaid of Perſpective; the ſubject of the ſecond part. This art, being founded on Geometry and Optics, may be improved in its practice, but its fundamental principles can never be altered, any more than the nature of viſion itſelf.

As to the deſigns in furniture contained in part third, theſe are indeed liable to change; nor is it in the power of any man to provide againſt it, by making ſuch drawings as will always be thought new. Yet the inſtructions given on the manufacturing part being founded on real experience and practice, will be much the ſame at all times. It alſo adds to the uſefulneſs of the deſigns, that I have in general given their geometrical dimenſions, either laid down on the ground, or other ſcale lines adapted for that purpoſe, or elſe deſcribed them in the letter preſs. So that no perſon, however ignorant of perſpective, can eaſily miſtake the perſpective for the geometrical meaſurements, or be at any loſs to know the general ſizes of ſuch pieces as ſhall be introduced.

In proceeding, however, with the firſt edition, I found that to give ſcales for the perſpective heights and widths could not be done, in many inſtances, without encumbering the deſigns in ſuch a way as greatly to hurt their appearance. To remove this inconvenience, and to aſſiſt thoſe who have a little knowledge of perſpective, in obtaining the true meaſurements of ſuch deſigns or engravings as may have no ſcales to them, I have ſhewn, in the perſpective part, that this may be eaſily done, by finding the vaniſhing points and diſtance, and tracing their viſuals forward to the ground line. In the firſt edition this is done at the end of the Appendix, becauſe its uſefulneſs did not ſtrike me till I came to that part of the work.

With reſpect to mouldings and various ornaments, the ſubject of the fourth part, it is granted that theſe are of a changeable kind. Yet it is pretty evident

 that

that materials for proper ornaments are now brought to ſuch perfection as will not, in future, admit of much, if any, degree of improvement, though they may, by the ſkill and touch of the ingenious hand, be varied, *ad infinitum*, to ſuit any taſte at any time.

Laſtly, I would entreat leave gratefully to acknowledge the general encouragement I have been favoured with in going through the firſt edition: and though my vaſt expence has deprived me of the emolument that might have been expected from ſo numerous a ſubſcription, yet it is ſome conſolation to be conſcious that I have ſpared no expence, nor withheld any thing in my power to do the work juſtice, and give ſatisfaction to the public.

And I have the additional happineſs to know, from ſeveral teſtimonies, the full approbation that the work has obtained in the judgment of the candid and ſkilful. And, notwithſtanding the ill nature of ſome, who hate to ſpeak well of any thing but their own productions, I only wiſh that a compariſon be made with any other book hitherto publiſhed for the uſe of Cabinet-makers and Upholſterers, and then it will ſufficiently ſpeak for itſelf.

And now, in going through this ſecond edition, it is ſtill my ſteady intention to contribute as much as I can towards improving the work, and rendering it as complete as is in the power of,

GENTLEMEN,

Your humble Servant,

THOMAS SHERATON.

TO

TO THE READER.

NEAR the concluſion of the firſt edition I had put into my hands a work, written by Mr. Malton, entitled the New Royal Road to Geometry; at the end of which there is an Addenda and Poſtſcript to the reader, containing ſome ſtrictures on a ſmall piece written on perſpective by Mr. Bradberry, whom he poſitively accuſes of having copied, verbatim, Mr. Martin's ſmall performance on that ſubject. I have read Mr. Martin's, but not Mr. Bradberry's, and therefore whether this charge be juſt, I am not a competent judge; but if, as Mr. Malton affirms, the latter is nearly a literal copy of the former, then, in a ſenſe, I may be ſaid to have alſo read Mr. Bradberry's. But if in Mr. Bradberry's performance there are any errors, the blame muſt originate with Mr. Martin, of which it ſeems Mr. Bradberry's is a faithful copy; for Mr. Malton ſays, "The whole of the letter, and the diagrams alſo, being exactly copied, without the leaſt variation or tranſpoſition; no varying the expreſſions to give an appearance of being his own; the very references are by the ſame letters, and every, even the moſt palpable error, truly and faithfully copied." See Poſtſcript, p. 26.

So it appears that the ingenious Mr. Martin was capable of groſs errors in perſpective with all his mathematical ſkill. Yet Mr. Malton, in his critique on the various authors that have written on this ſubject, did not think it worth his while ſcarcely to notice it; for he ſays, "He thought it ſo inſignificant a work as to deſerve not four lines to be ſaid on it." Groſs errors, then, according to this gentleman, deſerve no attention when they appear in ſmall pieces, not even when their authors are of great repute. An Emerſon, a Muller, an Ozanam, a Prieſtley, a Ferguſon, or a Martin, are as nothing, and leſs than nothing, in his eſtimation. What a wonder it is then, that poor Bradberry is in the leaſt noticed by this greateſt of champions in perſpective, ſince he is convinced that this wonderful man, as he calls Bradberry, knew nothing at all of perſpective. On conſidering, therefore, how little theſe

names of repute appear in the eyes of Mr. Malton, I cannot but congratulate myſelf in coming off ſo moderately under the laſh of him whoſe vigilant hand of chaſtiſement none have eſcaped, leſs or more.

Our author begins his remarks in the following manner: "A quarto work has been publiſhed ſince the commencement of the year 1793, by a Mr. Sheraton, Cabinet-maker*, called, The Cabinet-maker and Upholſterer's Drawing-Book, which ſeems to intimate its being of no uſe to any other." It intimates that it is chiefly intended for their uſe, though not to the excluſion of any other who are concerned to know perſpective. And, whatever Mr. Malton may think, we have reaſon to believe, and have had ſome proof from trial, that any mechanic, whether cabinet-maker, carpenter, or any other that requires a general knowledge of perſpective, will ſooner obtain it in the Cabinet-maker's Drawing-Book than in Mr. Malton's moſt elaborate performance; we mean not to ſay that the former is ſo worthy the attention of mathematicians as the latter, far from it. And though, as our remarker obſerves, "A large part of the book is on perſpective applied to furniture, and that without any pretenſions to improve, or render the ſubject more clear; yet we believe, from teſtimonies written to the author, and other perſonal remarks, that ſome little portion has been contributed, in the Cabinet-maker and Upholſterer's Drawing-Book, towards rendering the ſubject more intelligible to workmen than has hitherto been done in any other work. And the author thought it more modeſt to avoid any pretenſions to improvement until he found what was the opinion of others, after having finiſhed the whole. It is too common to hear of propoſed improvements, and new lights on ſubjects, which after all turn out in the end to be none at all."

In the next breath our author ſhews his wonted contemptuous ſpirit on all who write on his favourite ſubject. "I ſhould have taken no notice of this production, had not the author given ſome glaring proofs of his incompetency in perſpective."

* Mr. Malton, who is certainly one of the firſt writers on perſpective, was himſelf a Cabinet-maker; and to this, as a brother craftſman, perhaps it is owing that I am ſo moderately dealt with.

And here the candid reader will pleaſe to obſerve, that this great outcry of incompetency with which we are charged, amounts to no more than a matter of mere ſpeculation, which by no means affects the practice of perſpective, and which Mr. Malton himſelf, in the next page, calls a ſmall miſtake; for though he here refers to the oblique ſection of a cone, which he ſays produces an ellipſis of equal curvature at each end, it is cloſely connected with the other point on which the charge of incompetency is founded; namely, that the perſpective repreſentation of a circle ſeen obliquely, is an irregular ellipſis, which Mr. Malton affirms to be regular. Now, whichever way it be, rules to the ſame effect for putting a circle in perſpective are propoſed by both; for if his rules produce a regular ellipſis, ſo do mine; as the reader may ſee by comparing each together. To convert then a ſmall miſtake into a glaring proof of incompetency, is, in my opinion, taking the advantage, and is a glaring proof of a want of candour.

It is, however, but juſtice to remark the candour which appears in the following paſſage: "Probably," ſays Mr. Malton, "the ſeveral writers on the conic ſections have not well conſidered this matter; future writers would do well to conſider it, and benefit themſelves of this author's obſervations thereon. Or that Mr. Sheraton reconſiders (ſhould it not be reconſider) it with attention, before he publiſhes a ſecond edition; and if he ſhould find himſelf under a ſmall miſtake, that he will not be aſhamed to acknowledge it candidly; it would redound more to his credit than to perſiſt (is their any occaſion for, and perſevere) in error, though it may not appear quite clear to him; but, as acquieſcing in the general concurrence of ſo many ſcientific men of greater repute in the world of ſcience." To this it is anſwered, that we cannot but comply with ſo juſt a requiſition as to re-examine the ſubject, and even to ſubmit to the general concurrence of ſcientific men, if after all it remain a doubt to us; and ſhould the reſult of future inquiries on this ſubject prove deciſive in favour of Mr. Malton, the error will be frankly acknowledged.

Mr. Malton next obſerves, "that there are ſome few inaccuracies in this work," which muſt mean the whole work; and therefore it is no ſmall ſatisfaction to me, to find, after the reviſal of ſo able a hand as Mr. Malton, that the inaccuracies are but few, and that theſe particularly lie in the raking

mouldings for pediments, which, in fact, take up little more than half a quarto plate. But though theſe, according to our author, are particularly the things where the inaccuracies are found, yet he does not point out to the reader what theſe are in any inſtance.

His next remark is, " that in Plate XVII. Fig. 11. there are ſome unneceſſary lines, in order to determine the vaniſhing line of a plane inclined obliquely to both the horizon and the picture." But Mr. Malton ought to have conſidered, that in Fig. 11. are two methods of determining the vaniſhing line of a plane inclined both to the horizon and picture. And, beſides, he certainly knows that I have there ſhewn the vaniſhing line in two different degrees of obliquity to the horizon, one at an angle of 28 degrees, the other at 45 degrees, which accounts for ſo great a concurrence of lines. And, moreover, before he had paſſed this cenſure, he ought in juſtice to have examined page 241, in which a reaſonable apology is made for the intricate appearance of theſe lines. But if the reader is merely to judge of unneceſſary lines by their great number interſecting each other, let him look into Mr. Malton's own performance, and then let him ſay whether, in condemning others for this fault, Mr. Malton has not involved himſelf in the ſame cenſure.

The next object of his criticiſm is an inclined poſt in Plate XXVI. or the laſt in perſpective, whoſe reflected image he apprehends ſhould be meaſured from the ſurface of the water, becauſe of the ground's variableneſs. In this Mr. Malton differs from ſome other writers of repute, who meaſure from the baſe of the object, not from the ſurface of the water. Mr. Kirby, for inſtance, meaſures from the ground, Plate XVI. Fig. 4. as alſo Dr. Prieſtley. This nice point, however, we ſhall reconſider in its proper place.

In reſpect to the Problem in page 71, I acknowledge it is not ſo geometrically ſtated as it ought to be; but the uſe and application of it is ſtill the ſame to workmen, being intended to ſhew how the ſteps of a ladder, whoſe ſides are inclined to each other, may be cut to their proper length without firſt putting any part of it together.

INTRODUCTION

TO

PART THE FIRST.

GEOMETRY literally means, to meaſure the earth *, but in practice is applied to many arts and trades, as well as ſcience in general. With reſpect to that part of it which becomes uſeful to us, it is pleaſant and eaſy, readily underſtood, and of a mechanical nature; ſo that no workman need to be ſhocked or frightened at the idea of learning ſuch geometrical lines and figures as ſhall be conſidered in the ſubſequent pages. Nor is it requiſite to the workman to

* Geometry; from γη *gè*, the earth; and μετρον *metron*, to meaſure. It appears from general hiſtory, that the Egyptians were the firſt who applied this art to meaſuring the earth. The river Nile, which overflowed its banks, ſwept away thoſe boundaries, or land-marks, which ſerved to diſtinguiſh their different eſtates. This made it neceſſary for them to take plans and draughts of their fields, to aſcertain their quantity, and know their proper ſituation. To obtain accuracy in theſe, prompted the ſtudy and improvement of Geometry in that nation; but various other reaſons ſince have induced men to cultivate this ſcience. Some have contended that the Hebrews were the firſt inventors of it. Joſephus is of this opinion; and ſo far as the invention of ſtringed inſtruments of muſic, the working of braſs and iron, and the building of the city of Enoch, required the aid of geometry, it muſt be acknowledged that the Hebrews, Jubal and Tubal-cain, were the inventors of it, and that at a period long before Egypt exiſted as a nation. Theſe perſons, living the length of five or ſix of the lives of men in after ages, might probably bring this ſcience to a greater perfection than we are apt to imagine; and as Egypt appears to be the ſecond nation in point of antiquity, originally ſtyled in Scripture the land of Ham, I think it rational to ſuppoſe that the Egyptians had firſt derived their ideas of geometry from the Hebrews, but that the Egyptians were the firſt that applied it to the art of ploting and drawing.

begin

begin with the uſual definitions in geometry, as theſe would be foreign to my plan, and unneceſſary for him to know. For inſtance, he need not be told that a point is without parts or magnitude, that a line is length without breadth, or that the terms of a line are points, &c. &c. Theſe, and a number of others of this kind, are known by the common underſtanding of every one. I ſhall therefore confine myſelf to ſuch particulars as every candid workman will at once pronounce uſeful, and which may be applied to the practice of ſome parts of the ingenious art of Cabinet-making. Yet, from what I have here advanced with reſpect to geometrical definitions, I would not be underſtood as ſpeaking diſreſpectfully of them, much leſs to deny their uſefulneſs to ſuch as learn geometry regularly. It is impoſſible to proceed without theſe, when this ancient ſcience is taught as the ground-work of mathematical learning. We might as well attempt to teach logic without a method of arranging or diſtinguiſhing ideas, or arithmetic without the powers and properties of numbers, as geometry diveſted of its chain of definitions and axioms, &c. by which at length we arrive to the certain knowledge of truth, and are able to demonſtrate it to others. But, on the other hand, as it is poſſible for a man of ſound ſenſe to reaſon well without knowing the rules of logic as they are taught in fine and regular ſyſtems, ſo I apprehend it is alſo poſſible for a workman of no learning, but what is common, to attain to a uſeful knowledge of geometrical lines, without the trouble of going through a regular courſe of Euclid's definitions and demonſtrations, &c. And we may juſtly ſay of his definitions and demonſtrations, the ſound of which ſo often alarming the ears of the ignorant, that they are, as a certain writer obſerves, "built upon a few principles of common ſenſe," without which the moſt domeſtic and ſimple negotiations of life cannot be tranſacted, and that, what they ſhun as ſubjects too ſublime and intricate for their comprehenſion, are only the moſt familiar truths made artificial by regularity and diſguiſed by a technical language."

Upon this view of Geometry, I ſhall now proceed to the conſideration of ſuch Problems as every workman of tolerable capacity will eaſily underſtand, and find advantageous to him.

And,

And, for the ſake of making every part of this book as intelligible and uſeful as I am able, I ſhall, in the courſe of proceeding, explain ſuch * technical terms as may be neceſſarily uſed in the ſubſequent pages, and which, for propriety's and brevity's ſake, cannot well be avoided on ſubjects of this nature. And, in attempting this, I hope not to incur the diſagreeable title of a pedant; as I pretend not to give theſe explanations as the produce of my own ſkill in etymology, but ſhall recommend them to the reader as they are found in the writings of men of unqueſtionable abilities in this way †. Beſides, when it is conſidered that the following work is not written for the learned, but ſuch as may want ſome aſſiſtance in the derivation of particular words uſed in Geometry, Architecture, and Perſpective, in order to fix their real meaning more laſtingly on their memory, it is preſumed that this conſideration alone will, in the view of the candid, ſufficiently apologize for me. As for thoſe of an oppoſite caſt of mind, it is not eaſy to ſay what would pleaſe, or what diſpleaſe, them.

* From τεχνη, *techne*, art; which belong to the terms and rules of arts and ſciences.

† As Chambers, Johnſon, Bailey, Parkhurſt, Lemon, &c.

THE

CABINET-MAKER AND UPHOLSTERER'S DRAWING-BOOK.

PART I.

CONTAINING NECESSARY INSTRUCTIONS FOR OBTAINING THE KNOWLEDGE OF SUCH LINES AS ARE USED IN BOTH BRANCHES.

SECT. I.

On dividing a Line into any Number of equal Parts—raiſing a Perpendicular on a given Point—and the Method of dividing a Frieze or Pilaſter into Flutes and Fillets.

* PROBLEM I. PLATE I. FIG. 1.

A RIGHT line being given, to divide it into any number of equal parts. The line to be divided is 7.1, which is to be divided into 7 parts.

Operation.—Firſt, from 7, on the given line, draw a right line at pleaſure, as 7, 8, making any angle with the line 7.1 to be divided. Then with the

* Problem, προβλημα, *problema*, "from βαλλω, *ballo*, to throw; and προ, *before*; i. e. to propoſe, or ſet before: a propoſition relating to practice, or which propoſes ſomething to be done; as to biſect a line given, to draw a circle through any three points;" or, as in the preſent caſe, to divide a line into any number of equal parts.

foot of your compaſſes fixed on 7, turn the arch* 1.8, and, without any alteration of the inſtrument, place its foot in 1, and turn the arch 7.9 at pleaſure.

Second, Take the ſpace 1.8, and place it on the arch 7.9 which was drawn indefinitely †. Then from 1 to 9 draw a right line, which will be parallel to the line 7.8.

Thus far it ſhould be obſerved, that the problem teaches to draw two lines parallel, both with diſpatch and accuracy.

Laſtly, with your compaſſes opened at random, lay on the diviſions 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, on both lines, firſt from 1 to 9, then from 7 to 8; and by drawing lines from each correſpondent point, the given line 1.7 will then be divided as required. Obſerve, that whatever number the given line is to be divided into, the lines 1.9 and 7.8 are to be divided into one leſs.

A little reflection will point out the reaſon of this, if we conſider that the lines 7.8, 1.9, are perfectly parallel to each other.

For if the diviſions laid on each line be greater or leſs than thoſe ſought for, yet lines drawn acroſs to each reſpective diviſion will cut the line to be divided in the ſame points; becauſe what is loſt or gained on one line by theſe uncertain diviſions, will be regained or loſt when the ſame uncertain diviſions are placed the contrary way on the other parallel line. This is clearly exemplified in the figure by the ſmall dotted lines drawn from ſmaller diviſions, as at *o*, which interſect the given line 1.7 as before.

This may be performed by fewer lines, thus:—Let *a b*, No. 2, be the line to be divided, ſuppoſe into four; draw *a c*, making any angle with *a b* at diſcretion, and of any length. Open the compaſſes at random, and from *a* to-

* Arch, from *arcus*, a bow, *Lat.* and when uſed in Geometry implies "any part of a circumference of a circle"

† That is, without bounds or limits.

wards

wards *c* lay on four diviſions; draw a line from *c* to *b*, and to the line *c*, *b*, *e*, draw the line 2, 3, 4, each of them parallel, then will the given line *a b* be divided as required.

Problem II. Fig. 2.

To divide a frieze or pilaſter, &c. &c. into any given number of flutes and fillets:

1. Let AB be the ſuppoſed width of the pilaſter required to be fluted.

Operation.—Draw the right line CD indefinitely. Take then two pair of compaſſes, one for the flutes, and the other for the fillets; and with the firſt opening of your compaſſes for the flutes, lay it on CD, and divide this uncertain opening *a b* into three. Again, take one of theſe three parts for each fillet, as *c a*, and repeat it on the line CD, firſt a fillet, then a flute, till you have the propoſed number, which in this caſe is 5, (and always in pilaſters ſhould be an odd number *).

Second, Extend your compaſſes from *c* to *d*, the whole ſpace which the uncertain diviſions include; and with one foot on *c* or *d*, turn the arches E*c* and E*d*, and from the point where theſe two arches interſect, as at E, draw right lines to *c* and *d*, which will then form an equilateral triangle.

Laſtly, Draw lines from all the diviſions on CD to E. After which, take AB, the given width of the pilaſter, in the compaſſes, and turn the arch *e d*, and through the two ſections *e d* draw a right line, then will *e d* be equal AB, and the pilaſter or frieze will be divided in the moſt accurate manner as required.

* Obſerve, any opening of one pair of compaſſes will do the whole buſineſs, if a previous calculation be made of the equal parts contained in all the flutes and fillets. Thus, in the preſent caſe, we ſay there are five flutes, allowing the ſpace of three fillets to a flute, which make together fifteen; and the addition of ſix, the number of fillets in the pilaſter, make twenty-one. Therefore lay on the compaſſes at random twenty-one times, and proceed as above.

Problem III. Fig. 3.

To raiſe a perpendicular from any given point on a line as its baſe.

Operation.—Let G be the given point on the baſe line G V. Take then the * radius G O, or any other at pleaſure, and turn the arch O S. Fix again your compaſs foot in O, and, without any alteration, interſect the arch at P. On P, with the ſame opening of the compaſſes, make another ſection at S, and from thoſe points S P turn an arch each way, and their interſection at R will form a point perpendicular with the given point G, as required.

This may alſo be effected another way with more diſpatch, but perhaps not always with equal accuracy.

Operation.—Let A P, Fig. 15, Plate 2, be the baſe, and P the point whence you would erect a perpendicular. With any opening of the compaſſes, and with one of its legs fixed any where out of the line, as at R, deſcribe the arch O, P, R, till it cut the baſe line, as at O. Then from O draw O R through the center S, cutting the arch at R, and their ſection will form a point perpendicular to P, as required.

Theſe problems may be very uſeful to an Upholſterer when he is laying down the plan of a room for a carpet, as it is not convenient always to take a ſquare with him. Beſides, by a good line, bradaul, and chalk, a perpendicular may be raiſed with more exactneſs than can be drawn on a floor by a ſquare. But, as I intend giving ſome directions to the Upholſterer how to lay down a room in an accurate manner, ſo that a carpet may be properly cut by his plan, I ſhall at preſent ſay nothing more on this ſubject.

* Radius, a right line drawn from the center of a circle to its circumference. This right line, I conceive, anſwers to the rays of light (in optical ſenſe), which, falling upon the eye every where in right-lined directions, form a horizon to our ſight.

Problem IV. Fig. 4.

To draw a perpendicular line by a ſcale of equal parts, as by a common rule, or by a rod divided.

Operation.—Let the line GV be the line required to raiſe a perpendicular from. Let V be the propoſed point, and from any ſcale of equal parts lay down ten of thoſe parts from the point V towards G. Take then ſix of thoſe parts (or ſix inches of the common rule) and turn the arch 1.2 at pleaſure. Again, take ten parts, or ten inches of your rule, and place the end of the rule or rod on the eighth of thoſe ten parts or inches, as at Q, and with the other hand, by a pencil, interſect the arch 1.2, by which a point will be gained exactly perpendicular to V, as required.

This problem will be of uſe to the Cabinet-maker and Upholſterer when neither ſquare or compaſſes are at hand. For inſtance, if a Cabinet-maker would cut a board acroſs perfectly ſquare, without compaſſes, chalk line, or ſquare, if he have but a rod, let him proceed thus:

Divide the rod into ten equal parts, and by this ſtraight rod ſtrike a line on the ſide of the board; then lay down ten parts on this line, and proceed as above.

SECTION.

SECTION II.

On the Uſe of a common Caſe of Inſtruments, together with ſome Geometrical Problems conſidered.

As the various inſtruments found in common caſes are not commonly underſtood by Cabinet-makers and Upholſterers, and as the principles by which they are deviſed and conſtructed are purely geometrical, I think it neceſſary and uſeful to give an explanation of them, ſo far as they can any way aſſiſt the above perſons, or others, in the practice of drawing.

The firſt thing that needs be noticed is a ſcale of feet and inches.

The intention and uſe of a ſcale is to reduce the real meaſurements of any object to a convenient proportion, ſo that it may be repreſented on a ſheet of paper, &c. with as much exactneſs as if it were drawn at full ſize *.

A ſcale of feet and inches ſhould be uſed when we repreſent any piece of furniture either geometrically or perſpectively, becauſe ſuch a ſcale anſwers to our common rules; but mathematicians uſe a ſcale of tenths.

On the Conſtruction and Uſe of a Scale of feet and Inches:

To conſtruct a ſcale of feet and inches, draw ſeven lines parallel to each other, and at equal diſtances, as in Plate I. Fig. 9. Then, as on the line 1, 2, 3, lay down as many diviſions for feet as will comprehend the largeſt

* The term Scale ſeems to have been derived from the ſteel-yard, and its notches or diviſions marked on the beam, to adjuſt the different degrees of weight by.

dimenſion

dimenſion of the piece you would draw. Secondly, divide one of theſe parts, which you ſuppoſe to be a foot, into twelve equal parts, the number of inches in a foot; to effect which, divide that part or foot into two equal parts, as at 6: draw then the two lines 6.1, 6.12, and the foot will be divided as required, and in the moſt accurate manner, as is clearly demonſtrated by the ſmall diviſions on the line 12, each of which are perpendicular to their reſpective numbers on the oblique lines.

To uſe the Scale.

If you want one foot one inch, place your compaſs foot on the ſecond line from the bottom, over 1, and extend the other foot to No. 1 on the ſame line. Again; if you want one foot two inches, then place the foot of your compaſſes on the third line from the bottom, and extend the other foot to No. 2 on this line. Laſtly; if you want three feet ſeven inches, place one foot of your compaſſes on the ſixth line, over 3, and extend the other foot to No. 7, and ſo on for any other number of feet and inches that may be required.

On the Conſtruction and Uſe of a Scale of Tenths.

Draw eleven lines parallel to each other, and at equal diſtances, as in Fig. 10, Plate II. Afterwards lay down eleven diviſions, as you ſee on the ſcales found in caſes of inſtruments (I have divided mine only into ſix, for want of room). Take one of thoſe diviſions or parts, and by Prob. I. Fig. 1, divide it again into ten equal parts, placing the diviſions on the bottom and top line. Then from the point *o* draw a line to the point 1 on the top line, and ſo on, as the Figure ſhews. When all theſe lines are drawn, there will then be preciſely one hundred equal parts, diſtinguiſhable by the dots on the ſeveral angles of the rhombs, becauſe, being divided into ten each way, they multiply into one hundred, by which we ſhall be able to take any tenth or any hundredth part of the large diviſions or integers 1, 2, 3, 4, &c.

To uſe this Scale.

If you want one of the large diviſions and one 10th, this is aſcertained by placing one foot of your compaſſes on No. 1, and extending the other to the firſt diviſion beyond *o*, and ſo on, as may be required. Again, if you want one large diviſion (which may be called a foot) and eight hundredth parts of a foot, place one foot of your compaſſes on the line 9, and extend the other to the firſt tenth on that line, and you will then have one foot and eight hundredth parts, as required. Laſtly, if you want five feet, five tenths of a foot, and five hundredth parts, place your compaſs foot on No. 6, on the right hand end of the ſcale, which is the ſixth line from the bottom, and extend the other foot to the ſixth dot on the ſame line, as at *o*, and the required dimenſion will be obtained. It will be evident therefore, by a little reflection on the nature of this ſcale, that any tenth, or hundredth part of a foot, may be accurately taken; for it is evident that, by this method, the whole ſpace, comprehending what we may ſuppoſe a foot in length, will be accurately divided into one hundred equal parts.

The ſcale of chords comes next under conſideration. This ſcale is commonly found on the contrary ſide to that whereon the ſcale of tenths is marked, which we have now deſcribed. The uſe of it is to lay down angles of different degrees, and to divide a circle into various proportions and parts.

The Conſtruction and Uſe of a Scale of Chords.

1. Open the compaſſes to ſixty degrees on the ſcale marked C H O, Fig. 11, Plate II. and by this opening deſcribe a ſemicircle, as B D A, Fig. 12. Then if the arch B D be divided into ten equal parts, thoſe parts 10, 20, 30, &c. will anſwer to 10, 20, 30, &c. on the ſcale of chords, Fig. 11. Hence, if you want to divide a circle into twelve parts, take thirty from the ſcale of chords, and apply the compaſſes to the arch B D at 30, then B D will contain

Problematical Figures for dividing lines.

Plate I.

Fig. 1.

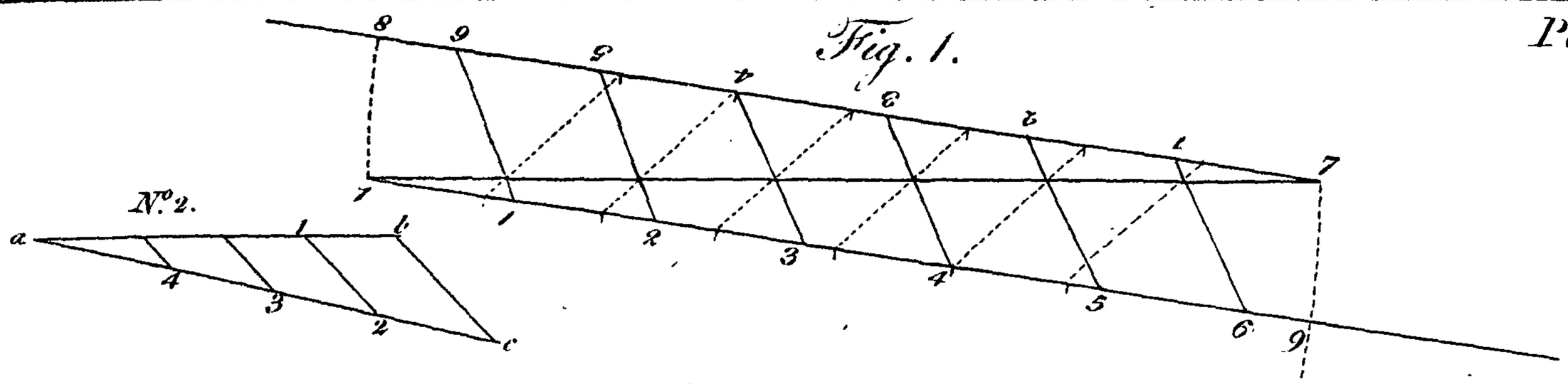


Fig. 2.

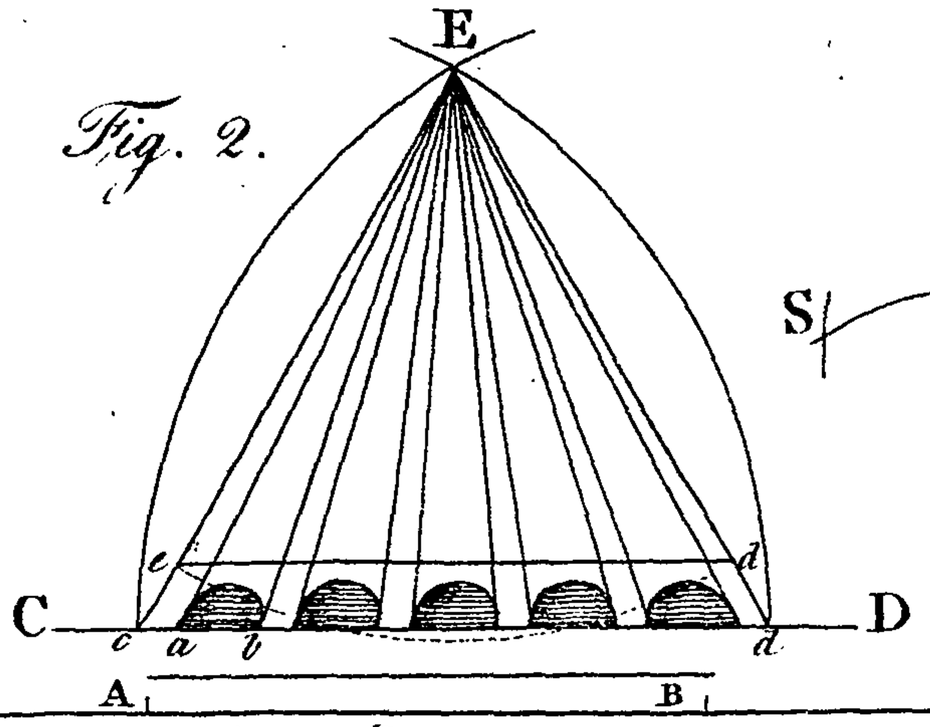


Fig. 3

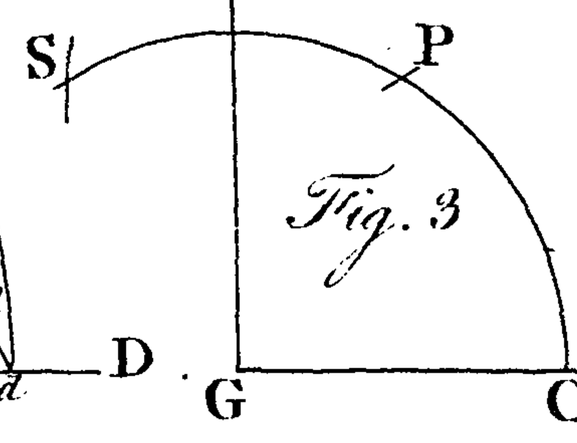


Fig. 4.

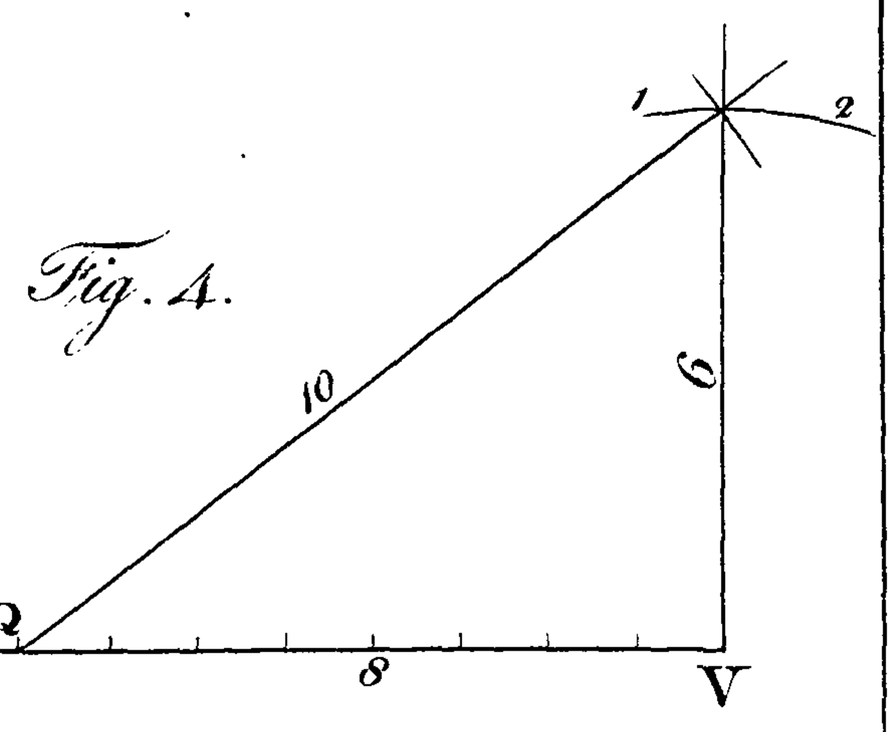


Fig. 5.

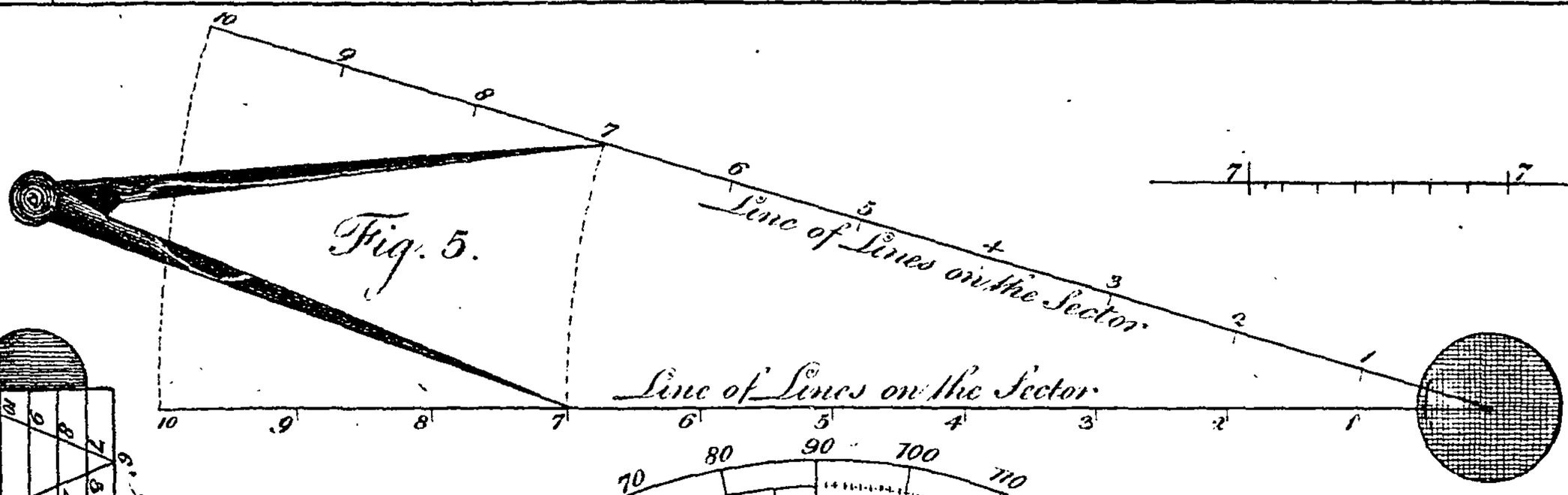
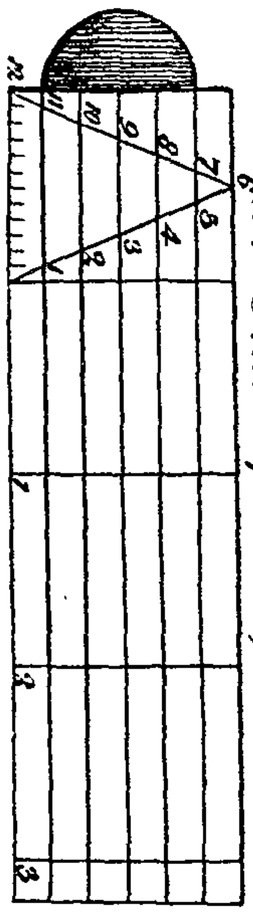


Fig. 9.



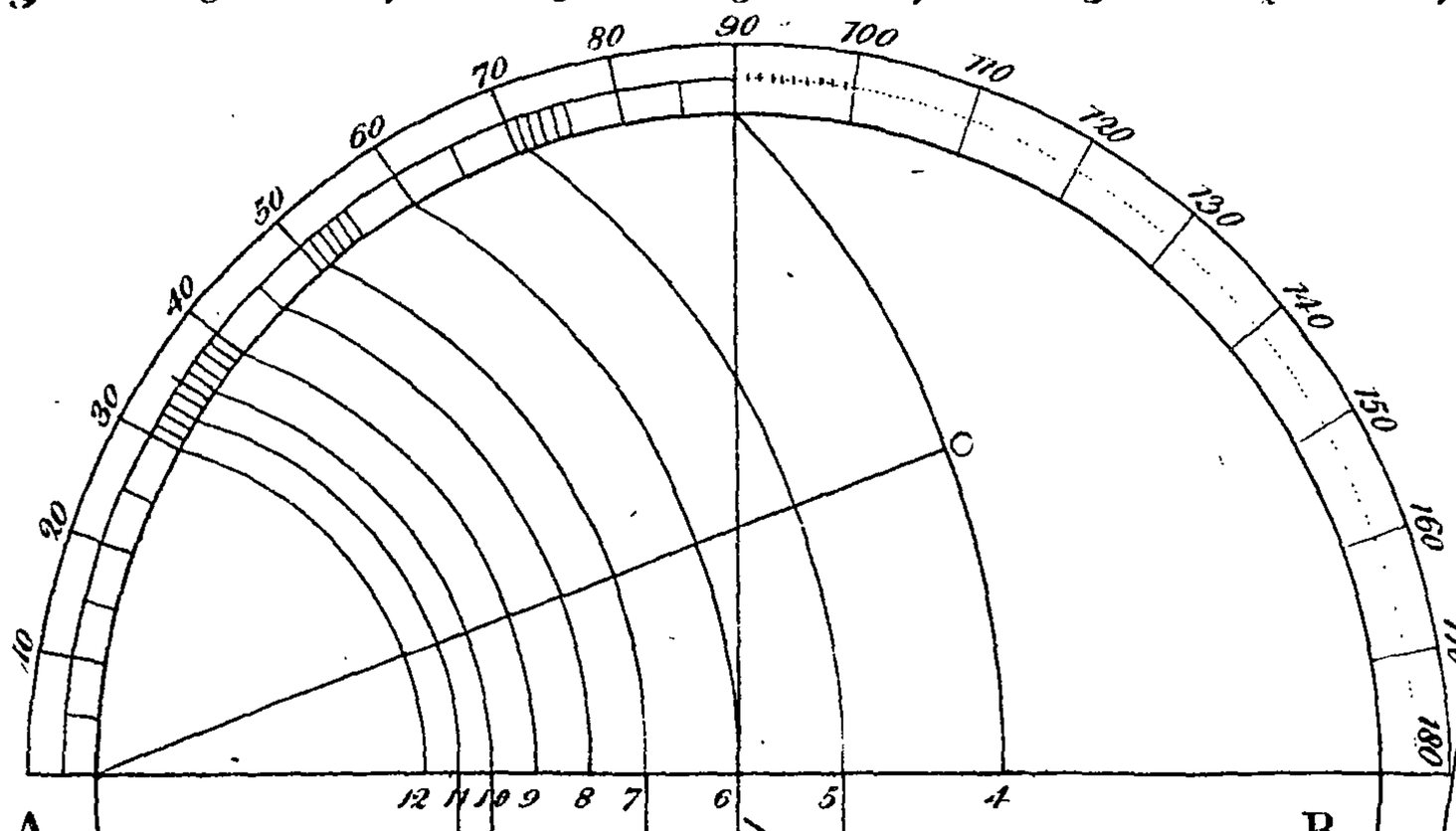


Fig. 8.

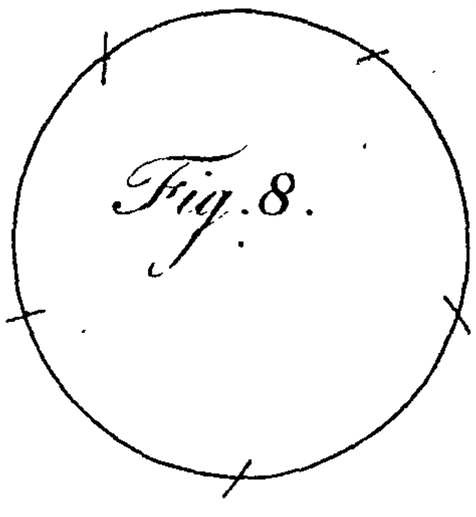
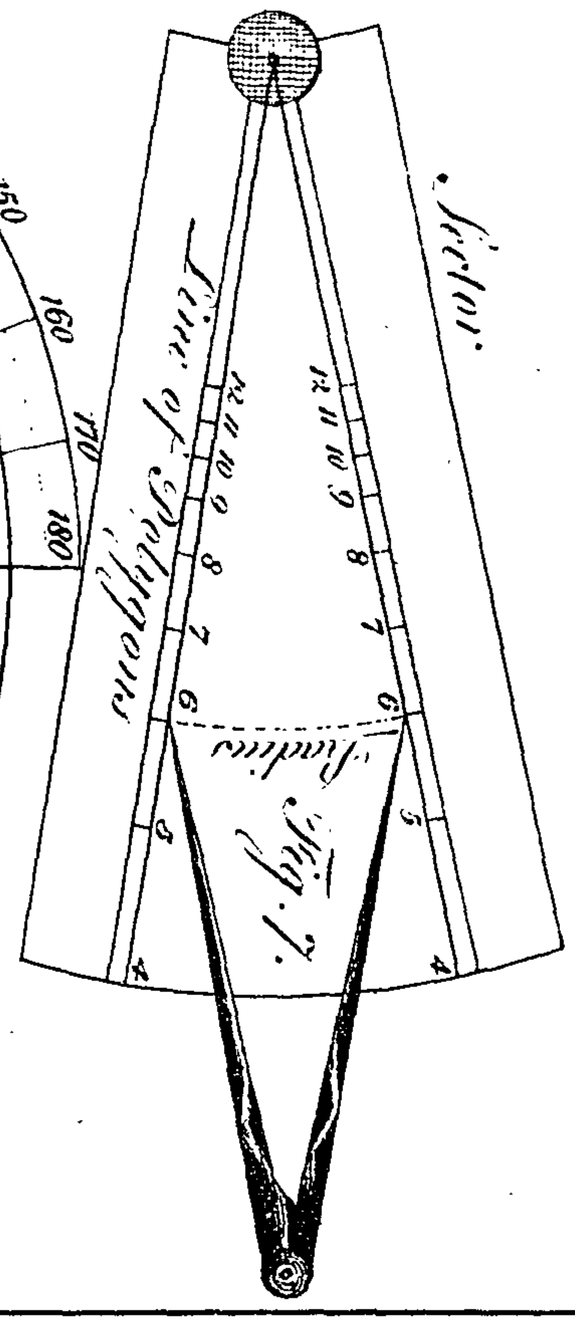


Fig. 7.



Published as the Act directs Augt. 27. 1791.

it three times, and conſequently the whole circle will contain it twelve times. If again you want this circle divided into eight equal parts, then from the ſcale take the chord of 45, and apply it to the arch B D at 45, and this will divide the quadrant into two equal parts, and therefore the whole circumference may, by the ſame opening, be divided into eighths. In this manner any other diviſion of a circle may be certainly known at once, which a little thought will eaſily make clear, and therefore it is unneceſſary to give any other example on dividing the circumference of a circle into equal parts.

This ſcale may likewiſe be uſed in laying down any angle* not more than ninety degrees. Draw the line G *o*, Fig. 16, at pleaſure; then take the chord 60° and deſcribe the arch *o o* at pleaſure. With your compaſſes take the chord $37°\frac{1}{2}$ and place it on the arch *o o*; draw the right line G *o*, and you have an angle of thirty-ſeven degrees and an half, and ſo of any other, to ninety degrees.

On the PROTRACTOR†.

THE Protractor is a ſemicircle of braſs, divided into one hundred and eighty degrees, by the help of which we may deſcribe an angle of any aſſigned quantity whatever, and likewiſe meaſure any angle already laid down.

Let the arch, divided into one hundred and eighty equal parts, on the line A B, Fig. 6, Plate I. be conſidered as the braſs protractor, which is found in common caſes of inſtruments.

* Angle. "This ſeems to be from Αγκυλος, *ankulos*, the bending of the elbow;" and in Geometry, implies the point in which two lines meet: but the quantity of an angle is the ſpace comprehended between the two lines meeting in a point, as *o o*, Plate II. Fig. 16, and its proportion is expreſſed by degrees; which term, Degree, means ſimply the three hundred and ſixtieth part of a circle, whether great or ſmall.

† Protractor, from *protractum*, "to draw out in length;" accordingly, by the help of this inſtrument we may draw out the legs of a triangle to any length we pleaſe.

Firſt, Obſerve the center of the protractor, diſtinguiſhed by a ſmall notch on the diameter, anſwerable to 6, on A B, Fig. 6.

2d. Let it be required to lay down an angle of ninety degrees, and let A B be conſidered as the baſe. Then place the ſmall notch on the diameter of the braſs protractor, upon 6, on the line A B, and make a mark exactly over 90; conſequently a line from 6, the center, to 90, the vertical * point, will form an angle of ninety degrees, or what we commonly call a ſquare.

Again, if an angle of forty-five be wanted, proceed as before, and make a dot over 45; to which draw a line from the center, and it will be an angle, as required; and ſo of any other to any quantity. This is ſo plain, that to ſay more would be needleſs. It may however be proper to obſerve, that the quantity of any angle already laid down may alſo be found by the protractor, as follows:

Let G *o o*, Fig. 16, Plate II. be the angle to be meaſured. Take the radius, or half diameter of the protractor, and deſcribe the arch *o o*; then open the compaſſes to *o o*, and apply them to the degrees marked on the inſtrument, and it will immediately be ſeen how many of thoſe diviſions are contained in the angle, which number of diviſions are called the quantity of the angle. Or thus: place the center of the protractor to the angle G, and let its edge coincide with either of the lines G *o*, and in what degree on the protractor the other ſide touches will be the quantity of the angle.

On the SECTOR †.

THE Sector is a moſt univerſal inſtrument, and uſed for various purpoſes in the different branches of mathematical learning. Nor is it without its uſeful-

* *Vertical*, "placed in a direction perpendicular to the horizon."

† Sector; it is ſo called becauſe, when it is opened, it comprehends a portion of a circle between two ſemidiameters, making an angle at the center; as O A 4, Plate I. Fig. 6.

neſs

neſs in the art of drawing, and therefore thoſe who are concerned with deſigning ought, in ſome meaſure, to be acquainted with it.

To this end let us firſt conſider the moſt ſimple part of it, which is, to divide any given right line into any number of equal parts.

The line to be divided by the ſector is 7.7, Plate I. Fig. 5, which is to be divided into ſeven.

Firſt, Look for the line of lines on the ſector, which may be found by obſerving two braſs centers marked with L on each limb of the inſtrument.

Second, Take the length of the line 7.7 in your compaſſes, and place one foot on the point 7 on the line of lines, and opening the Sector, extend it till the other leg of the compaſſes coincides with the point 7 on the other limb of the inſtrument, as Fig. 5 clearly expreſſes. In this poſition keep the ſector, and moving the compaſſes to 1.1, which is the neareſt figure to the center of the inſtrument, contract their legs till you take the opening 1.1, which, if correctly done, will be one ſeventh part of the line 7.7, as propoſed. Perhaps it may be required to divide a line into fourteen; if ſo, then as there are only ten on the line of lines, you take half the length of the given line in your compaſſes, and place their legs on the points 7.7 as before; and, as this opening is but half the length of the line to be divided, the compaſſes muſt be contracted to 1.1 as before, and then the line will be divided into fourteen, becauſe twice ſeven is fourteen. Take this in a numerical ſenſe, and conſider the line 7.7 as 70, to be divided by 10, and the quotient may be found on the ſector thus: extend the compaſſes from the center of the joint of the ſector to 1 on the line marked L. And with this opening of the compaſſes place one leg in the braſs center L, and extend the other limb of the ſector till the other leg touch L. With this opening of the ſector, take the compaſſes and contract them till they coincide on 7.7 on the ſame lines. Laſtly, apply the compaſſes at this opening from the center of the joint as before, and it will extend to number 7, that is, ſeven of the ſmall diviſions or tenths, which will be the quotient ſought for; for if we ſay, How often ten in ſeventy? the anſwer

ſwer is, 7 times. The whole of this is more mathematically expreſſed as follows: to work a queſtion in diviſion by the line of lines, extend the compaſſes laterally from the beginning of the line to 1; and open the ſector till that extent coincide with the parallel of the diviſor, as in this caſe 10.10; after which, by this opening, take the parallel of the dividend 70.70, which meaſured laterally* will give 7 the quotient. This I only conſider as a hint of what may be done on the ſector.

Of the Line of Polygons† on the Sector.

This line is intended to divide the circumference of a circle into equal parts, by which various kinds of Polygons, from a pentagon to a duodecagon, may be formed. Hence it is diſtinguiſhed by the letters P O L on this inſtrument.

Let it be required to divide the circle, Fig. 8, into five, which forms a pentagon. Take the radius or half diameter of Fig. 8, and opening the ſector, as deſcribed by Fig. 7, place the compaſs on the point 6.6, marked radius. In this poſition keep the ſector, and, without any variation of the inſtrument, you may divide the circle 8 from 4 to 12. In the caſe before us it is into five; therefore take the compaſſes from the points 6, and extend them till they touch 5.5, and this opening will go five times on the circle 8, as will be evident if you take 5.5 in your compaſſes from Fig. 7, and apply it to Fig. 8.

Laſtly, if you want the circle 8 divided into twelve, by which to form a duodecagon (ſee Plate II. Fig. 26), the ſector ſtill remaining unaltered, place

* The term lateral, applied to the ſector, implies that the meaſurement be taken perpendicularly to the horizon, or periphery, which is deſcribed by the motion of each limb of the ſector; but parallel meaſurement on the ſector, implies an extenſion of its limbs, and an application of the legs of the compaſſes to ſuch numbers as are of equal diſtance from the center or beginning of the line of lines.

† "Polygon, from πολυς, *polus*, many; and γωνια, *gonia*, a corner; having many corners or angles."

your

your compaſs legs on the points 12.12, and apply them to the circle 8, and it will be divided as required.

Obſerve alſo, that a geometrical ſquare may, by the ſame means, be inſcribed in any circle; for by keeping the ſector extended as before, and opening the compaſſes till their legs touch on 4.4, this opening will turn four times on the circle 8, and therefore will form a ſquare.

How this line of polygons is divided ſo as to proportion any circle in this manner, will eaſily be underſtood by conſidering Fig. 6.

Deſcribe a circle of any radius, and draw the diameter A B. Divide one half of the circumference into one hundred and eighty equal parts, called degrees, and from 90° draw the arch 4 from the center A, then will the lines A O and A 4 repreſent the limbs of the ſector, Fig. 7, and the ſpace 4.0 on Fig. 6 will anſwer to 4.4 on Fig. 7.

Next draw the arch 5 from 72°, and from the center to 5 will be the chord of 72°, the degrees contained in the ſide of a pentagon, anſwerable to 5.5 on Fig. 7.

Proceed to the arch 6, and obſerve, that this is the radius of the circle, and is always equal to the chord line 60°, and therefore contains a length equivalent to the ſide of a hexagon, or a ſix-ſided figure, and agrees with 6.6 on Fig. 7.

After theſe remarks, I think it unneceſſary to go through each chord line; only the reader ſhould obſerve, that I have marked ſuch chords as have fractional parts on the ſine lines, or thoſe drawn perpendicularly from A B. For inſtance, the chord for a heptagon is fifty-one degrees and three-ſeventh parts of a degree; and the meaning of three-ſeventh parts is nothing more than to divide a degree into ſeven, and to take three of thoſe parts and add to fifty-one, which is exactly the ſide of a circle divided into ſeven, called a heptagon. Theſe parts are eaſily found and proved by dividing three hundred and ſixty,

the

the number of degrees contained in a whole circle, by the quantity of ſides contained in any polygon, for then the quotient will be the number of degrees which are in the arch of every ſuch chord line.

Thus for a heptagon; divide three hundred and ſixty by ſeven, then will the quotient be fifty-one degrees and three-ſevenths, equal to the ſide of a heptagon.

Of the Line of Chords on the Sector.

THE chords on the fixed ſcale have already been conſidered (ſee page 26). Theſe chords are limited to one circle, which, to ſuit that ſcale, muſt always be drawn by the compaſſes extended to ſixty degrees on that ſame ſcale: but the ſcale of chords on the ſector is unlimited, becauſe the chords of circles of various radii may be found according as the limbs of the inſtrument are more or leſs extended.

The line of chords is on the ſame ſide of the ſector with the polygons, marked with C nigh to a braſs center on each limb: and if it be required to find the chord of thirty of any circle, take the radius of the given circle, and open the ſector till the compaſs legs coincide with thoſe braſs centers at 60.60, then contracting the compaſſes till their legs touch 30.30, the required chord line will be found. In this manner proceed in any other caſe; always obſerving that the ſemi-diameter of the circle muſt limit the opening of the ſector at the braſs centers.

By this line of chords on the ſector it is evident that a circle may be divided into ſeven hundred and twenty equal parts with conſiderable diſpatch and great accuracy.

Of the Line of Sines on the Sector.

A Sine is a right line drawn from one end of an arch perpendicularly upon the diameter drawn from the other end of that arch, as the perpendicular line 90, drawn from the diameter BA, Fig. 12, Plate II. is the fine of the arch BD; and ſo likewiſe all the other perpendicular lines, as 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, &c. on the line BA, are ſines of ſo many different portions of the arch BDA.

The line of Sines on the ſector, which Fig. 13 is intended to repreſent, is marked *s s* nigh 90.90, with two braſs centers, one on each limb of the inſtrument. The ſeveral diviſions on this line, marked 10, 20, 30, &c. anſwer to theſe perpendicular lines 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, &c. on the line BA, Fig. 12, and the different ſituations of thoſe perpendicular lines are found by dividing the arch DA into nine equal parts. Perpendiculars being then drawn from each reſpective diviſion on the circumference of the circle to the diameter AB, they are of courſe denominated ſines of 10, 20, 30 degrees, and ſo on.

To draw an Oval by the Sector.

Firſt, Draw a circle that will comprehend the longeſt diameter of the oval you wiſh to deſcribe, as the circle BDA, Fig. 12. Divide the quadrant DA into nine equal parts.

Second, Take then the ſhorteſt diameter in the compaſſes, and place one foot on the fine 90°, and open the ſector till the other coincides or touches 90° on the other limb of the inſtrument. In this poſition keep the inſtrument fixed, and contract the compaſſes till their feet touch the ſine 80°. 80°; transfer this opening of the compaſſes to the perpendicular line 8 at 80, which mark with the point of a pencil.

Proceed to the ſine 70, keeping the ſector ſtill in the ſame poſition, and, after contracting the compaſſes till their legs touch 70.70 on the ſector, tranſ-

fer

fer this opening to the perpendicular line 7 at 70°, and ſo on of all the reſt to the ſine 10, by which will be obtained nine points, contracted in due proportion * from the arch D A; and a line, paſſing through each of theſe points, and drawn by a ſteady hand, will form an ellipſis perfectly true and agreeable, as is evident by the figure.

From what has been ſaid, I preſume it will eaſily be underſtood by every one how to proceed with the other quarters to complete the whole ellipſis.

A circle may alſo be deſcribed by the ſector upon the ſame principle that an ellipſis is drawn by it. This, in itſelf, is not very neceſſary to be known, becauſe when we have no compaſſes, no uſe can be made of the ſector, and when we have them by us, they are the beſt inſtrument for drawing a circle. However, ſince what belongs to the drawing of a circle by the ſector, partly belongs to the deſcribing of an ellipſis by this inſtrument, I ſhall venture upon this Problem.

Operation.—Draw a right line at pleaſure, of length enough to contain the diameter of the circle to be drawn. Biſect † this line, and draw a line at right angles with it of the ſame length. Take then the ſemi-diameter of the circle, and place it on the lines each way.

Open the ſector, and on the line of ſines proceed as before to take the ſine 80. Transfer this to any ſemi-diameter, as 9 A, Fig. 12, which will extend to 1 on that line. Then proceed to take the ſine 70, and transfer this alſo, which will extend to 2 on that line. Proceed to the ſine 60, and this opening will

* This is evident by obſerving, that as a right line drawn from 45 on the tangent line to the center 9, cuts the arch D A in the degree 45; ſo likewiſe will a right line drawn from 10 on the tangent line to the center, cut the elliptic arch 90 A in the ſame degree.

† A line is ſaid to be biſected when it is divided into two equal parts, from "*bis* and *ſectum*, to cut in two;" an operation which is eaſily performed by deſcribing two arches from the extremities of the line to be thus divided; as from *b* and *d*, in Fig. 14, where two arches interſect, which if a line be drawn from theſe interſections, it will both biſect the given line, and will at the ſame time be drawing one at right angles to it.

extend

extend to 3 on the ſame line, and ſo on, till you take the ſine 10, which will extend from 9 to 8. The ſame muſt be done on the other radius, as you take the ſines from the ſector. Having thus divided one diameter, draw perpendicular lines from each diviſion each way at random. Laſtly, take the ſame ſines again from the line 9 A, and place them upon their reſpective ſigns; that is, take from 9 to 1, which is the ſine 80, and place this upon the perpendicular line 8 at 80, and ſo of all the reſt, and they will form thirty-ſix points for the whole circle; through which points, if a line be correctly drawn, the circumference of a complete circle will be produced with as much accuracy as when we draw the circumference of an oval in the ſame manner.

Of the Tangent Line on the Sector.*

A tangent is a right line drawn perpendicular on the extremity of ſome radius, touching the circumference of the circle, but not cutting it, as A 45, Fig. 12.

This line is of uſe to divide the circumference of a circle into any number of equal parts, and may be found on the ſector by a braſs center on each line, marked T. To this line there is added another of the ſame kind, marked T on each limb, but without a braſs center to it.

To divide a circle by this line, proceed thus:

Take the radius of the circle to be divided, and with this opening, place the compaſs legs on each line T, marked 45.45, then will the ſector be prepared for finding every degree of a circle up to 45. This is clear; for if the radius be laid down on the tangent line, Fig. 12, as at 45, a line drawn from 45 to 9, the center, will cut the arch D A at 45 degrees, as is obvious by inſpection. Thus the circle may be divided into eight, ſince forty-five is the half of ninety, conſequently the eighth part of three hundred and ſixty. The

* Tangent, from *tangens*, Latin, touching.

ſector being ſtill in the ſame poſition, if you want to cut the arch D A at 10 degrees, contract the legs of the compaſſes till they coincide with 10.10 on the tangent line, and transfer this on the tangent line A 45, and a right line being drawn to the center as before, it will cut the arch D A at 10. Hence if the arch D A is required to be divided into nine, the extent of the compaſſes at thoſe ten degrees will turn nine times on the arch D A.

It has already been obſerved, that there are two tangent lines on the ſector. The tangent line which has not the braſs center, is to increaſe that which has one up to 75, as it is marked on that line. When therefore any degree above forty-five is wanted, take the radius of the circle to be divided, and open the ſector till the compaſs legs touch 45 on the ſecond tangent line on each limb; then will the inſtrument be prepared for taking the tangent of any degree up to ſeventy-five, by proceeding in the ſame manner as on the firſt tangent line.

SECTION III.

On the Names and Properties of various uſeful Geometrical Figures of the Superficies.

To have ſome knowledge of the names of uſeful geometrical figures is certainly of advantage to every one, and eſpecially to ſuch perſons as are concerned with drawing or making pieces of work of the like forms.

It is certain from experience and matter of fact, that many, not acquainted with names of this kind, are obliged to uſe a dozen words and ſigns when one would be ſufficient.

Beſides, a knowledge of theſe names, together with an acquaintance with the

the general properties and manner of drawing ſuch figures, muſt certainly be conſidered as an introductory ſtep to a more advanced knowledge of Geometry, by thoſe young men who intend to riſe higher in this ſublime ſcience, than can be expected to be taught in a drawing-book.

I ſhall therefore begin with the names and properties, and afterwards deſcribe the conſtruction, or manner of drawing, the moſt generally uſeful figures.

Of the Superficies *. (See Plate II.)

No. 1, is a Geometrical Square, ſo called becauſe it has four ſides of equal length, and four right angles.

No. 2, is a Parallelogram. This figure receives its name from its oppoſite ſides and ends being all parallel to each other.

No. 3, a Rhomb, which is properly a geometrical ſquare moved out of its poſition, ſince all its ſides are equal, but not its angles, two of them being acute, and the other obtuſe.

No. 4, is a Rhomboides, a figure which bears the ſame affinity to a parallelogram that a rhomb does to a geometrical ſquare. A rhomboides has its ſides and ends parallel to each other, but its angles differ the ſame as thoſe of the rhomb; and therefore a rhomboides is a parallelogram moved out of its proper form†.

No. 5, is a Trapezoid, which has four ſides, two of which are parallel, and two not, the ſame as the ſeats of ſome chairs.

* Superficies, *ſuperficies*, Lat. the ſurface or outermoſt part of any thing, and in Geometry are ſuch figures as are bounded by one or more lines, or an extenſion which has length and breadth, but no thickneſs.

† Theſe four figures are all parallelograms, though of different names.

No. 6,

No. 6, a Trapezium containing four ſides, which are all unequal, and none of them parallel.

Theſe ſix figures, being all of them bounded by four right lines, are, by geometricians, called quadrangular or quadrilateral plain figures.

Of various Triangles.

No. 7, is an Equilateral Triangle, ſo called becauſe all its ſides are equal to one another; and, as every triangle contained under three equal ſides, whether circular or mixed, are called equilateral, ſo the figures 11, 12, 15, are alſo of that denomination.

No. 8, is a Right-angled Triangle, becauſe two of its ſides are perpendicular to each other, and conſequently make an angle of ninety degrees, as the line 9.90°, Fig. 12, is perpendicular to B A, therefore A 9.90° forms a right-angled triangle, comprehending a part of a circle equal to ninety degrees.

In all right-angled triangles, the ſides containing the right angle are called the Legs, as the ſides 9 A, A 45 are the legs of the triangle 9 A, 45, in Fig. 12; and the oppoſite ſide to the right angle is called the Hypothenuſe, as the line 9.45, in the triangle 9 A, 45, is the hypothenuſe ſide of that triangle.

" The perpendicular height of any triangle is a line drawn from the vertex to the baſe perpendicularly :" thus if the triangle P R O, Fig. 15, be propoſed, P O muſt be conſidered as its baſe, and conſequently R its vertex; and if from R you draw the line R P perpendicularly to P O, then the line R P is the height of the triangle R P O, ſtanding on P O, its baſe.

No. 9, is a triangle called Scalenous, becauſe none of its ſides are equal, nor its angles alike in quantity. A Scalene Triangle is compoſed of two kinds

of

of angles, one obtuſe and the other acute; ſo alſo a right-angled triangle is compoſed of two, a right one, and an acute.

All other triangles are of the acute kind.

An obtuſe * angle is one that is greater than ninety degrees, or more than what we call a ſquare, as a line from 9 to the point D, Fig. 12.

An acute angle is leſs than ninety degrees, as a line from 9 to 10, conſidering the ſide 9 A as their baſe.

No. 10. This triangle is called Iſoſceles, becauſe two of its ſides are equal in length, as G *o*, G *o*, Fig. 16; or if the ſector be opened, a triangle of this kind is fitly repreſented by it.

Theſe four triangles, being bounded by three right lines, are called rectilineal plain triangles; and, in general, theſe are placed before the quadrilateral, or four-ſided figures, becauſe by geometricians they are conſidered as more ſimple, having only three ſides: but as triangles generally appear more out of the way to workmen, I have aſſumed this liberty to place them after four-ſided figures.

Of mixed Triangles.

Of this kind are numbers 11, 12, 13, 14, and they are called mixed triangles, becauſe ſome of their ſides are right lines, and ſome curved ones. Three of theſe are equilateral, or equal-ſided, if meaſured by a right line; and No. 14 is a ſcalene triangle by the ſame rule, as none of its ſides are equal. The ſides of theſe mixed triangles that are round, are called convex †, but thoſe that are hollow, as No. 13, 14, are called concave.

* Obtuſe, ſignifies flat or blunt, and acute ſharp or cutting.

† Convex is properly applicable only to any ſolid that has a curved or ſwelled ſurface, and concave is the contrary.

Of

Of Spherical Triangles.*

A ſpherical triangle is one that is curved on every ſide, as No. 15 and 16. Theſe are both of the equilateral kind, becauſe their ſides may be bounded by right lines of equal length.

Of Mixtilineal Figures.

No. 17 is of this kind; and every other figure that is bounded both by right and curved lines is called mixtilineal.

Of theſe figures ſome are regular, and ſome irregular.

When a figure of this kind is compoſed of equal curved and equal right lines, then it is called a regular compound mixtilineal figure; but when its ſides and ends are formed of unequal curved and unequal right lines, then they are called irregular compound mixtilineal figures.

Of this ſort is No. 18.

Of Polygonal Figures.

All Figures bounded by more than four right lines are termed Polygons.

The figures included between No. 19 and 26 are all of this denomination. But each of theſe figures has its particular name from the number of the ſides of which it is compoſed.

* Spherical, ſomething like a ſphere or globe.

No. 19, is therefore called a regular Pentagon *, becauſe it is bound by five right lines of equal length, and of equal angles; but if any of thoſe lines were unequal in length, then it would be termed an irregular Pentagon. The ſame might be ſaid provided the ſides were of equal length, if the figure were ſo diſtorted or puſhed out of its regular poſition as to cauſe inequality in the angles. The ſame diſtinction is applicable to any other Polygon in the like caſe.

No. 20 is termed a Hexagon,	becauſe it has	6 ſides or angles.
21 a Heptagon,		7
22 an Octagon.		8
23 a Nonagon,		9
24 a Decagon,		10
25 an Undecagon,		11
26 a Duodecagon,		12

No. 27, is a figure ſo well known that it is unneceſſary to ſay any thing about it.

The ſame may be ſaid of the Semi and Quadrant, Nos. 28 and 29, the one being an half, and the other one-fourth of a complete circle.

No. 30, is called the Greater Segment † of a circle, becauſe it is the greateſt part of a circle cut in two by a right line; and of courſe No. 31 is the Leſſer ‡ Segment, becauſe it is not equal to a ſemi. But if we ſpeak of a ſegment without regard to compariſon, it is a figure contained between a chord and an arch of a circle.

Pentagon, from πεντε, *pente*, five, and γονια, *gonia*, a five-cornered figure. The other Polygons have all their particular names formed in the ſame way, from the Greek numeral adjectives.

† Segment, from *ſegmentum*, a piece cut off.

‡ Leſſer. This way of forming the comparative adjective is by Dr. Johnſon and Lowth conſidered as barbarous; but as cuſtom has ſo long prevailed in the uſe of it, and as the ear ſeems to prefer leſſer rather than leſs, I thought it would ſuit the readers beſt to retain it.

No. 32, is an Ellipſis *, commonly called an oval. This figure may be conſidered, in one view, as produced by the ſection of a cone, or cylinder, by a plane cutting both ſides of the cone or cylinder obliquely to their baſe. In another it may be conceived as a circle compreſſed at oppoſite points in its circumference, by which one diameter is diminiſhed, and the other proportionally lengthened.

It may alſo be obſerved both of a circle and an oval, that they are the only regular ſuperficies that are bounded by one line; and thoſe which are bounded by two, are their reſpective ſegments: as Figures 28, 30, 31, 33, 34.

No. 33, is the Semi-ellipſis, or Half-oval; and it is ſaid to be on the tranſverſe axis, when the right ſide is equal to the longeſt diameter; but when it is only equal to the ſhorteſt axis, then it is ſaid to be on the conjugate, as No. 34.

No. 35, is termed an Hyperbolic Figure. When a cone, Fig. 12, Plate IV. has a ſection parallel to its axis, the curved boundary produced by the ſection is an Hyperbolic Figure; and when its ſection is parallel to the ſides of the cone, then the curved boundary produced is called a Parabolic Figure.

SECT. IV.

Of the Manner of drawing various uſeful Geometrical Figures.

In the preceding ſection, the names and ſome of the properties of the moſt generally uſeful ſuperficies have been conſidered; and I ſhall now deſcribe

* Ellipſis, from ελλειψις, *ellipſis*, a defect or omiſſion. If a ſuperfice be apparently round, but on meaſuring it, if one of its diameters be found ſhorter than the other, there is then a defect, and we ſay that the figure is elliptic.

the method of drawing them. However, in doing this it will not be neceſſary to deſcribe every particular figure, ſince the ſame operation for one will ſometimes apply to various others.

Prob. V. Fig. 14.

To draw a Geometrical Square.

By the ſecond method of Prob. III. raiſe a perpendicular, as E *d*, Fig. 14, Plate II. then extend the compaſſes equal to the ſide of the propoſed ſquare.

Fix one foot in E, and deſcribe the arch *b*, *d*, which will cut the line E *b*, E *d*, equal to the ſides of its ſquare. Laſtly, from *d* and *b*, with the ſame opening of the compaſſes, turn the other arches, and their ſection will form a perpendicular to the points *b* and *d*, by which the ſquare may be completed.

From what has been ſaid, it will eaſily be underſtood how to draw a Parallelogram.

Prob. VI. Fig. 2 and 16.

To draw a Rhomb.

If the ſides of this figure be intended to incline at an angle of ſixty degrees, all that is neceſſary is to draw two equilateral triangles from their oppoſite baſes; and to draw an equilateral triangle is nothing more than to take in the compaſſes the given ſide of the triangle, and from a right line turn an arch each way, as Fig. 2, Plate I. and their ſection, as at E, by lines drawn to it, completes the figure.

Then if a right line be drawn parallel to C D at E, and *c d* be laid on this line, ſuppoſed to be drawn, it will complete the Rhomb.

The Rhomboides, being of the ſame ſpecies of figure, is eaſily drawn by the ſame rule. Nor is it requiſite to deſcribe the method of drawing any other of the figures till we come to the Pentagon, becauſe ſome of them are variable, and thoſe that are not ſo, are drawn by the ſame rules that are applicable to the Square, Rhomb, and Equilateral Triangle.

Prob. VII. Fig. 19.

How to draw the Polygons.

To draw a Pentagon whoſe ſides ſhall be equal to a given length, as the line 12.1, Fig. 19, Plate III.

Operation.—Draw a right line 12.1, and take the ſide 12.1 of the propoſed Pentagon. Place one foot of the compaſſes on 12, and with the other deſcribe the arch 1.1. Again, place the compaſs foot on 1, and deſcribe the arch 12.1, and through the point where theſe arches meet raiſe a perpendicular line, and continue it at pleaſure. Divide the arch 12.1 into ſix equal parts. Take then the firſt of theſe parts, and deſcribe it to the perpendicular line downwards, as the figure clearly ſhews; and from this point on the perpendicular line extend the compaſſes to 12, which will be the radius of a circle that will contain 12.1 five times: therefore with the compaſſes thus fixed, deſcribe the circle, Fig. 20, and it will admit of 12.1 five times, forming a regular Pentagon.

And here it ſhould be obſerved, that what has been done in this Problem for drawing a Pentagon, prepares the way for drawing any Polygon up to 12, whoſe ſides are equal to 12.1: therefore in deſcribing the other Polygons, I ſhall proceed as being thus far advanced.

Prob. VIII. Fig. 19.

To deſcribe a Hexagon, whoſe ſides ſhall be equal to any given length.

Operation.—Take 12.1, the ſuppoſed dimenſion of the ſide of the Hexagon, and with this radius draw a circle, whoſe center is at the interſection of the two arches 12.1, 1.1, then will the radius turn ſix times on the circumference of that circle, as the ſmall daſhes which are on it ſpecify. It may be made a general rule without exception, that whatever the diameter of a circle be, its radius will always divide the circumference into ſix.

Prob. IX. Fig. 19.

To deſcribe a Heptagon, whoſe ſides ſhall be equal to any given length.

Operation.—Take one of the parts on the arch 12. 1, and turn it to 7 on the perpendicular line. Extend the compaſſes from this point 7 to 12, which will be the radius of a circle that will contain the given ſide 12.1 ſeven times, which forms a Heptagon.

If an Octagon be wanted whoſe ſides are equal to 12.1, take from the center two parts ; and deſcribe the arch 2.8. Laſtly extend the compaſſes from 8 to 12, which, as before, will be the ſemi-diameter of a circle that will contain the given ſide 12.1 eight times, by which an octagon may be formed.

In the ſame manner proceed with the other to a circle that will contain the given ſide twelve times, as the largeſt circle in the figure evidently does, as marked by the figures 1, 2, 3, &c.

In the preceding directions for drawing the Polygons, their ſides are previouſly determined as to their length, but the circle that will contain the ſides

ſo

ſo many times, is required to be found. We ſhall now change the order, and propoſe a given circle, in which ſhall be inſcribed any Polygon of the above kinds.

Prob. X. Fig. 21.

Therefore a circle being given, let it be required to find the ſide of a Pentagon that may be inſcribed within the given circle.

Operation.—Let the line *q* 5 be the diameter of the given circle.

Biſect the diameter, and draw a line at right angles with it; then with the radius *s* 5 deſcribe the circle.

Second, Divide any of the quadrants of this circle into five equal parts, and a chord line extended to four of theſe parts will be the ſide of a Pentagon that may be inſcribed in the given circle, as the figure plainly ſhews.

Prob. XI. Fig. 21.

To find the ſide of a Heptagon that will inſcribe within a given circle.

Operation.—Let Fig. 21 be the given circle, as before. Divide any of the quadrants into ſeven, as the under right hand one in the figure.

Take then four of theſe diviſions in your compaſſes, and the whole circle 21 will contain it ſeven times, which forms a Heptagon.

In this way proceed with the other Polygons, always obſerving, that whatever number of ſides the Polygon is required to have, the quadrant of the given circle muſt be divided into the ſame number of equal parts; and four of theſe equal parts muſt always be taken for the ſide of the Polygon without exception.

ception. This is exemplified on each quadrant of the circle, which has already been referred to, and, by a little inſpection and reflection, cannot fail to be underſtood.

The ſimplicity of this method of inſcribing Polygons in any circle, makes it highly uſeful to all who are any way concerned with deſcribing ſuch figures on an extenſive ſcale. For inſtance, how eaſy is it to lay down the plan of any room, or mark out the foundation wall for any building of theſe figures, by firſt drawing a circle equal to their reſpective areas, and dividing the quadrant of that circle into the ſame number of equal parts as the room or building has ſides; and then taking four of thoſe parts for each ſide of the building or room.

From theſe hints the Cabinet-maker alſo will eaſily apply this method to any table-top, or other piece of work that is required to be made of theſe figures.

Of the various Methods of deſcribing Ovals.

PROB. XII. FIG. 22.

To draw an Ellipſis by the interſection of two circles.

Operation.—Let the line B A be the tranſverſe, or long axis, which divide into three equal parts. Take one of theſe parts for the radii of the two circles, and on the centers *d* and *s* deſcribe the circles interſecting each other at *n n*. Draw from *n* a right line through *d* to *b*. From *n* draw *n s* to *e*, and ſo of the other ſide. Place the compaſs foot on *n*, and extending the other to *b*, turn the arch *b e*. Laſtly, fix the foot of the compaſſes on the other *n*, and deſcribing the oppoſite arch, the oval will be completed.

PROB.

Prob. XIII. Fig. 23.

To draw an Oval whoſe tranſverſe axis ſhall be equal to the diameters of two given circles.

Operation.—Draw C D equal to two diameters of a given circle. Deſcribe the circumferences of the two circles. Then from the center of each circle, with the compaſſes in the ſame poſition as when the circles were drawn, turn two arches, *s d p* and *p o s*, interſecting in the points *s* and *p*.

To complete the Ellipſis, fix your compaſs foot on *s*, and extend the other to *n*; turn the arch *n r*. Laſtly, fix the compaſs foot on *p*, and deſcribe the oppoſite arch, and the work is done.

The method of drawing theſe two kinds of Ovals ſuppoſes that we are only confined to the length of the long axis, without regard to the ſhort one; but the following Problem is to draw an Oval of any length and breadth as may be required.

Prob. XIV. Fig. 24.

To deſcribe an Ellipſis whoſe tranſverſe and conjugate axes are predetermined.

Operation.—Let E F be the tranſverſe, and *a o* half the conjugate. Take *a o* half of the ſhort axis, and place it from E to *d*. Divide then the remaining part of half the long axis into three equal parts, as the figure ſhews, and take one of theſe three parts and lay it on the other way, as from *d* to *n*. Take the diſtance from *n* to *o*, and lay it from *o* to *g*. Extend then the foot of the compaſſes from *g* to *n*, by which turn two arches each way, interſecting

ſecting each other at *p q*. From *q* to *n* draw a right line out at pleaſure. Do the ſame from *q* to *g*, and alſo from *p* to *n* and *g* on the oppoſite ſide; then will every center be found for each reſpective arch. From the center *n* extend the compaſs foot to E, and deſcribe the arch E *b c*. Do the ſame from the center *g*, and turn the arch *m* F *k*. Laſtly, from *q* extend the compaſſes to *b*, and turn the arch *b m*; and ſo of the other ſide, which will complete the Elipſis as required.

Method Second. FIG. H in Plate A ſucceeding this.

Divide half the tranſverſe and conjugate axes into the ſame number of equal parts, ſuppoſe four. From the extreme of the conjugate axis draw right lines through 4, 5, 6, at pleaſure. To the oppoſite extreme point 2 draw lines from *a b c*, and their interſections will be the points required for drawing one quarter of the ellipſis. How to draw the other quarter will follow of courſe*.

By the ſame method the ellipſis may be inſcribed within a rhomb or rhomboid, as ſhewn at Fig. E.

PROB. XV. FIG. 26.

To draw an oval of any length and breadth by means of two pins and a line.

The above methods for drawing ovals ſuit well for ſmall ovals deſcribed on paper, or any kind of metallic ſurface, or when very ſmall ovals are wanted to be drawn on wood. But when ovals of a large ſize are required, they become inconvenient on account of their centers. Therefore Cabinet-makers generally make uſe of a tramel, by which any oval from two to about four feet may be drawn, both with more diſpatch and accuracy than can be done by any other

* See Nicholſon's Principles of Architecture.

method. The method, however, which is here propoſed, is not without its advantages, ſince by it an oval may be drawn as large as we pleaſe, both with little trouble and conſiderable exactneſs, provided that materials ſufficiently ſtrong and large enough were adopted for pins and a line.

Operation.—Let B D be the length of the oval, and A *s* half the ſhort diameter. Take then half of the longeſt diameter, and place it from A to *a* till it touch the line *a s* exactly at *a*. Again, take the length *a s* and place it on the right hand at the pin; then will the two centers be found in which the pins are to be fixed. Laſtly, take a line and put it about the two pins, and bring the ends of the line exactly to A, at which point fix your pencil or piece of thin chalk, and begin to deſcribe in the manner that the hand exhibits, and the pencil, &c. will paſs through the points D B A as required.

I have found the preceding method vaſtly convenient in marking out the circular ends of a ſet of dining-tables; in which caſe there is always an opportunity of ſticking in the pins at one ſide of the board, after a line has been ſtruck to make the edge of the board ſtraight. Then, after drawing a perpendicular line by a ſquare and pencil from half the length of your dining-table top, proceed as above, and you may draw the ſemi-ellipſis juſt to ſuit the breadth of the board, if it is ſo required.

Prob. XVI. Fig. 27.

To deſcribe an Oval by Ordinate Lines.

Where an oval is wanted to be deſcribed on a ſmooth ſurface that will not admit of any inciſion or rough mark, the following method may be recommended.

Operation.—Draw the inſcribed circle in Fig. 27 on a ſeparate board or paper, that the compaſs foot may not mark the ſmooth ſurface. Divide one

ſemi-

ſemi-diameter of this circle into any convenient number of equal parts. From theſe diviſions (ſuppoſe four) raiſe perpendicular lines to the periphery * or circumference, which are called the Ordinates of that circle. Obſerve, the diameter of this circle is always equal to the conjugate axis of the oval.—Proceed now to draw a line on the ſuppoſed ſmooth ſurface, on which to determine the length of the long diameter; which divide into the ſame number of equal parts from the center each way as the ſemi-diameter of the circle is divided into. From theſe diviſions draw lines acroſs, as the figure ſhews. Number the ordinates of the circle, as 1, 2, 3, 4, and do the ſame to thoſe of the intended oval. Take then the compaſſes, and fixing one foot in 1 on the circle, extend the other to the point where that line touches the circumference. Transfer this opening of the compaſſes to the lines 1.1 for the oval, and make a pencil mark at the point each way from the diameter. Take the ordinate 2 from the circle, and place it each way from the diameter on the ordinates 2.2 for the oval, and mark the points with a pencil as before. In this way proceed till all the ordinate lines are taken from the circle and transferred to their correſponding ordinates for the oval; after which nothing will remain but to draw by the hand a ſmooth curved line through each point, and the oval will be complete.

Prob. XVII. Fig. 28.

To draw an oval by means of a notched piece of wood and a ſquare.

I propoſe this method as a good make-ſhift, where a proper tramel is not to be had, and when, perhaps, the method of drawing ovals by the foregoing rules may have eſcaped the memory, and no book near at hand to aſſiſt it.

Operation.—Let *f i* be the long diameter, and take any ſquare, by means of which draw the line *e t* at right angles, or ſquare with it. Then notch

* Periphery, from περι, *peri*, about; and φερω, *phero*, I bear or carry; which derivation, if I am not miſtaken, alludes to the hand bearing the radius about its center, in order to deſcribe the circumference of the circle.

out a piece of thin deal, as *a g*, to ſuit the thickneſs of the ſquare, ſo that the bottom of *g* may reſt on the ſurface of the oval, and not prevent *a* from paſſing in the circumference *f e*. From the pencil point near *a* to the end near *g* muſt be equal to half the long diameter *g f*, and from the notched part *a* to the pencil point *a* muſt be equal to half the ſhort diameter *e g*. Laſtly, place your ſquare, and with one hand keeping it unmoved on the two diameters, by the other turn the elliptic arch *e f* for one quarter. How to proceed to the other quarters muſt be evident to every one, and therefore it is unneceſſary to ſay more.

The truth of this method will appear to every one by obſerving, that if *b*, which is the end of the notched wood or tramel ſtick, is moved gradually to *g*, the internal angle of the ſquare, then will the pencil point be at *f*, becauſe from *b* to the pencil point is equal to *f g*, half the long diameter: and again, if *a*, at the notch, be gradually turned to *g*, the inner angle of the ſquare, then will the pencil point be at *e*, becauſe from *a* to *a* is equal *g e*, half the ſhort diameter.

I have already ſhewn the method of drawing an oval by the ſector in Sect. II. page 38, and therefore I need not ſay any thing on it here.

Prob. XVIII. Fig. 30.

To find the center and two diameters of any oval whoſe circumference is already given, and whoſe center and diameters are eraſed or rubbed out.

Operation.—Let *m i q g* be the circumference of the oval.

Draw the right line *o q* at random, and draw *m n* any where parallel to *o q*, by means of two arches, as the figure ſhews.

Second, Biſect the line *m n* from its interſection with the circumference of the oval, as at *s*. Alſo biſect *o q* in the ſame manner as at *s*. Draw the

the line *i g* through *s s*, and from where *i g* cuts the oval, biſect *i g*, as at the center *s*.

Third, On the center *s* deſcribe any circle large enough to interſect the circumference of the oval, as at the points *c b*. Draw the line *c b*, and biſect it, as at *u*; then draw the long diameter *a b* through *u s*, the center; and, laſtly, draw *e d* parallel to *c b*; then will *e d* be the ſhort diameter, *a b* the long one, and *s* the center, as required.

This Problem will be found uſeful in many caſes. For inſtance, when the face of a fire ſcreen is a true oval, and it is required to put the braſs ſprings on it after being covered with paper or ſilk, &c. in this caſe it will be very uncertain whether the oval will hang true, if the ſprings are only put on by gueſs.

To avoid uncertainty, take a ſheet of paper and lay on the face of the ſcreen, drawing a pencil round its circumference, from which proceed to find the diameter as above.

Prob. XIX. Fig. 17.

To find the center of any ſegment or complete circle whoſe circumference is already given.

Operation.—Let B D A be the ſegment whoſe center is required. Draw the chord lines A D, B D, any how at random. Biſect the chord A D by deſcribing two arches from the points A and D, as the figure ſhews. Do the ſame to D B. Laſtly, draw the right lines *e d* and *a b* through the interſections of thoſe arches, and where theſe two lines meet in a point, as at *c*, will be the center as required.

It is evident, if *c* be the true center of the ſegment B D A, that it will alſo be the true center of any complete circle of the ſame radius.

It is likewiſe farther evident, that if the chord lines A D and D B were conſidered as two ſides of any regular polygon, the ſame method would have the ſame effect in finding its center.

The above Problem will be of uſe to the workman, when it is required of him to fit up a board into the inſide of an arch, in order to aſcertain its true curve and depth.

To this end, let the line B A repreſent a lath laid acroſs the foot of the arch A D B, to find the length of its opening. Then find the middle of this lath, and from the middle of it put up another perpendicular to it, as D, to find the depth of the arch. After having proceeded thus far, take the board to be fitted up, and make one edge of it ſtraight, and draw a line ſquare acroſs it, on which lay on the depth of the arch, as at the point D. From D draw the chord lines DA and DB, biſecting them as has already been taught, and the true center will be found for the curve of the arch; to which, if it be exactly ſawn, will fit the arch ADB, as required.

Prob. XX. Fig. 18.

To find the diameter of a cylinder, when its ends cannot be meaſured, or of a circular building, when no dimenſions can be obtained from its inſide.

Operation.—Let the circle, Fig. 18, be conſidered as the circumference of the cylinder, and let *h k* repreſent a ſtraight rod, touching the outſide of the cylinder. From any of the diviſions on the rod *h k* put another rod acroſs, till it touch the outſide of the cylinder in a perpendicular direction from the rod *h k*; which is eaſily done, by keeping the croſs rod exactly by the ſide of the lines drawn ſquare, which mark out the diviſions. Thus the lines *g h* and *i k*, repreſenting the croſs rod, are in a perpendicular direction from the long rod, and are produced till they touch the cylinder.

After

Plate 2.

Scale of Tenths

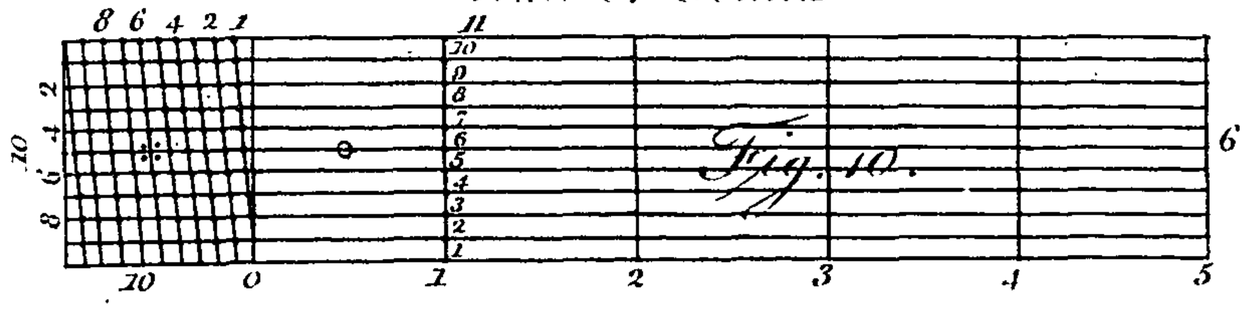
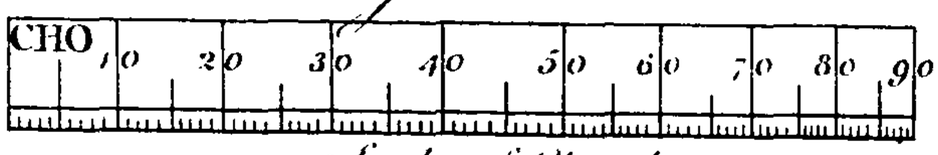


Fig. 10.

Fig. 11.



Scale of Chords

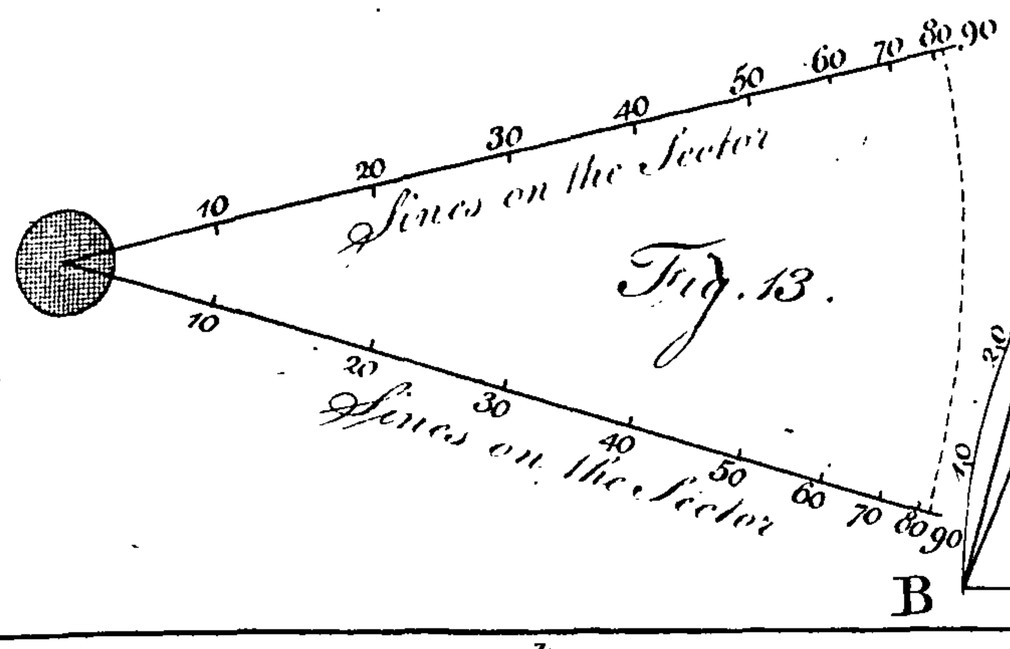


Fig. 13.

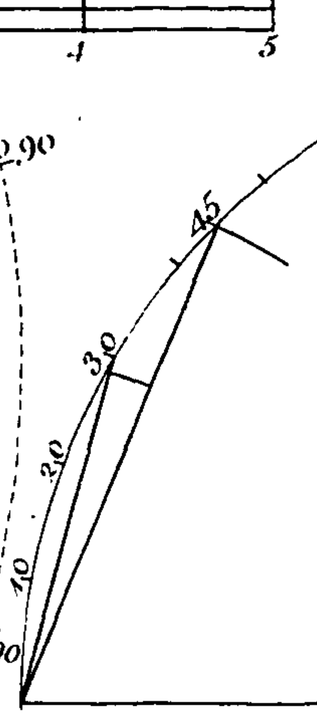
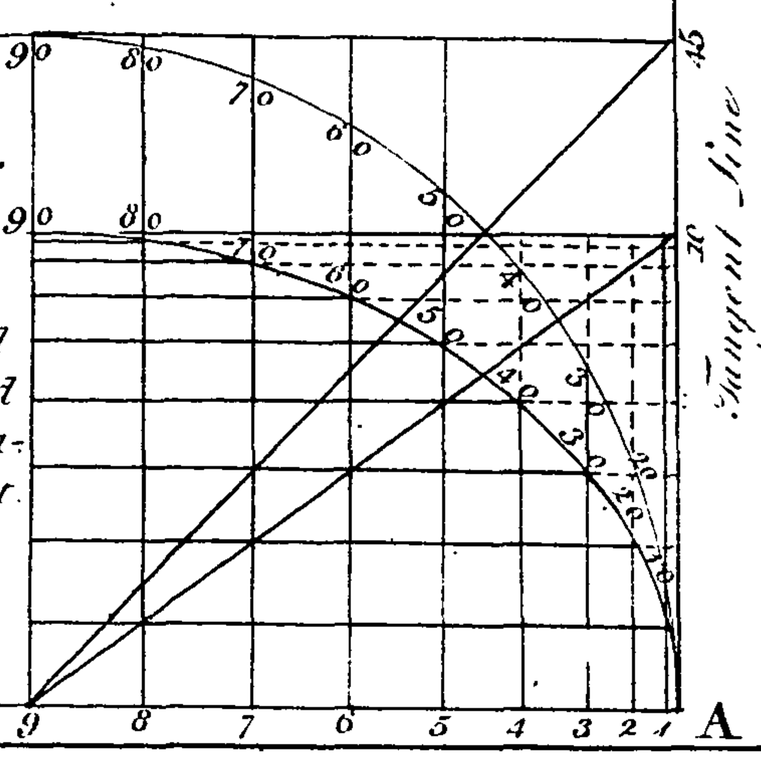


Fig. 12.

To draw an Oval by the Sector-and How to mitre a Cavetto, of different projections.



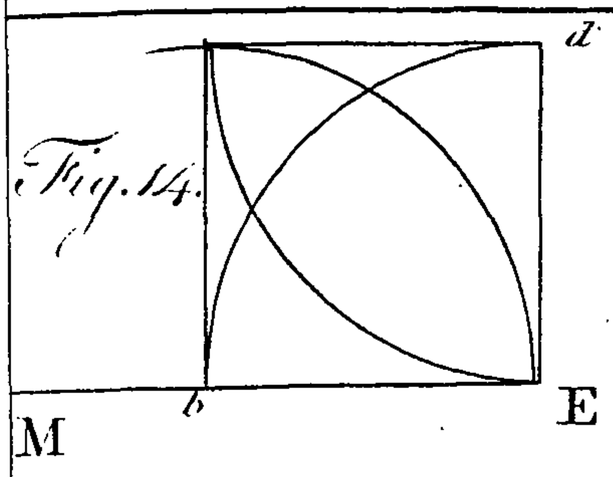


Fig. 14.

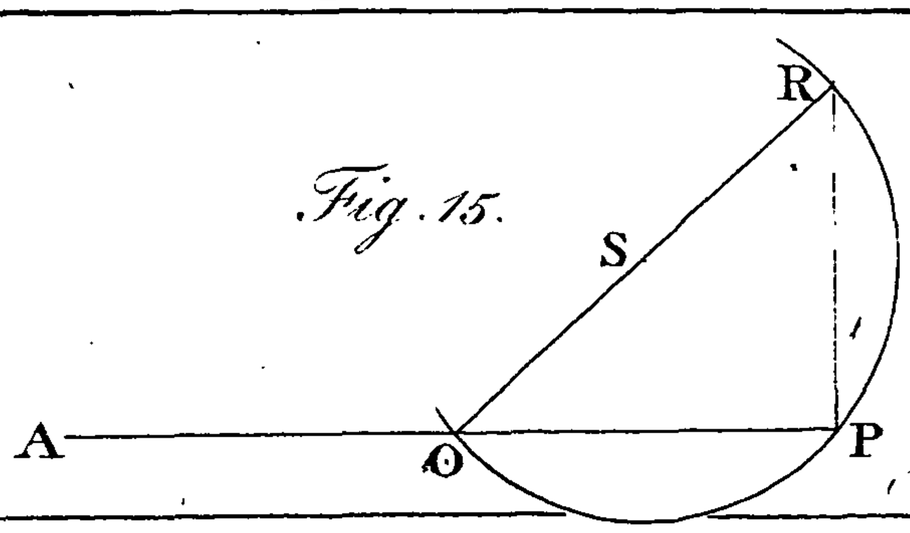


Fig. 15.

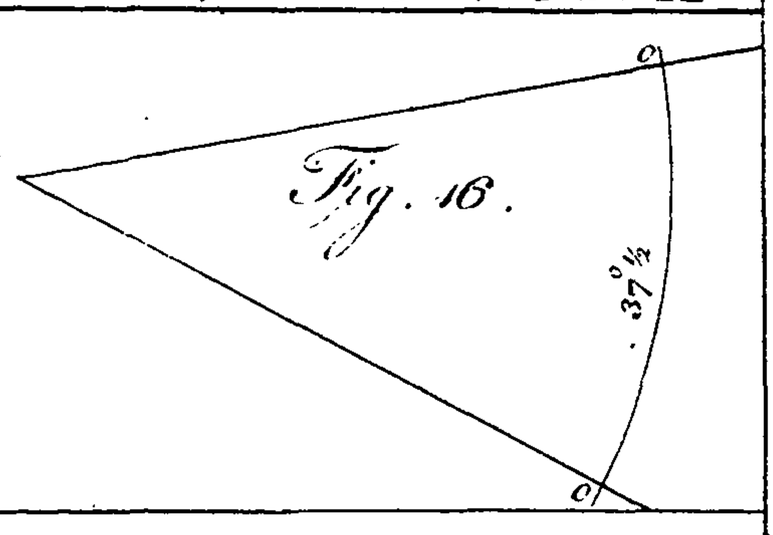
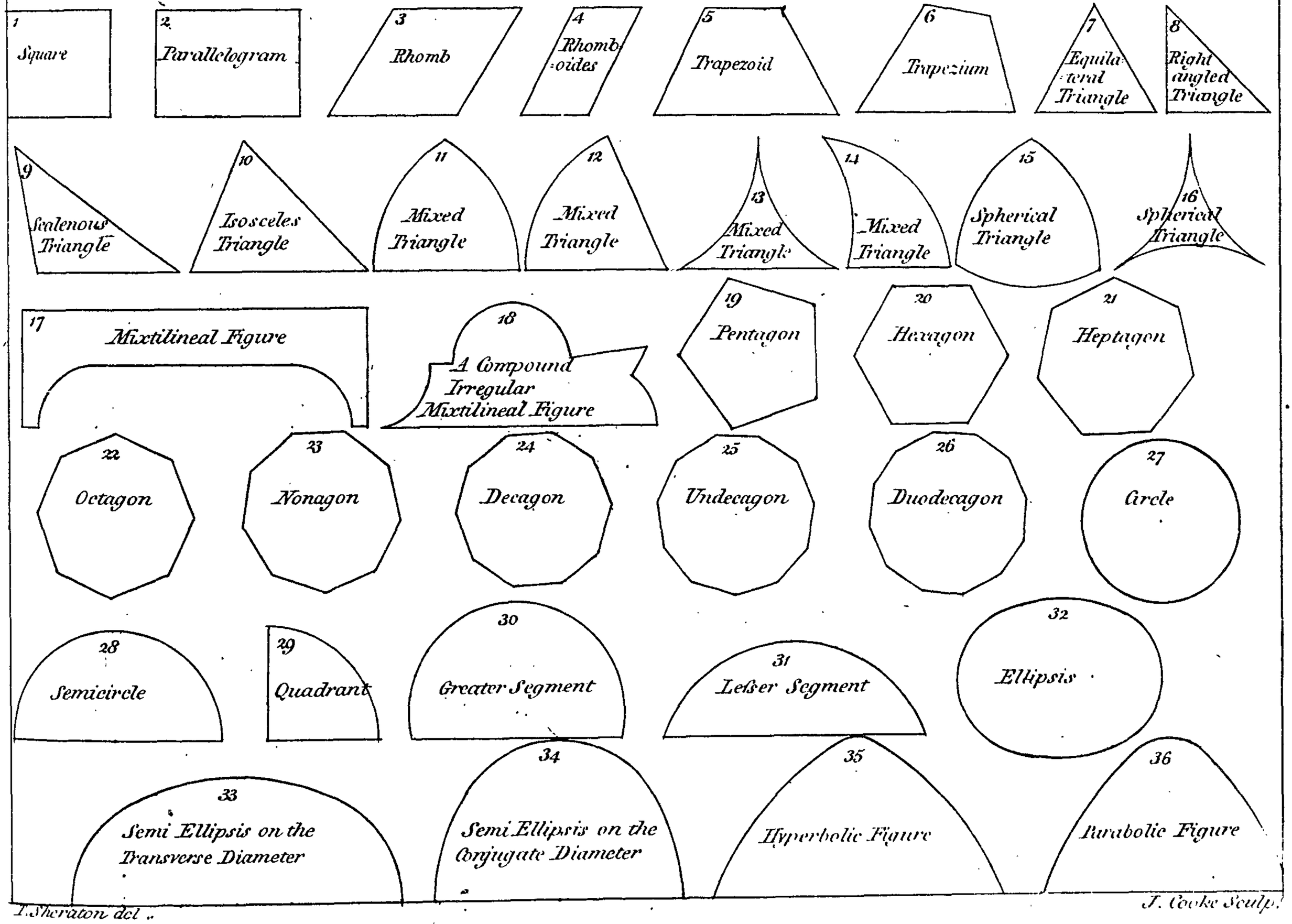


Fig. 16.

Various Geometrical Figures, & their Names.



T. Sheraton del.

J. Cooke Sculp.

Published as the Act directs Aug.t 28. 1791.

After proceeding thus far, take paper, or a drawing-board, as may be required, and draw a right line equal in length to *h k*, as *h m k*, No. 2. From *h k* draw *g h* and *i k* perpendicular to *h k*, and of the ſame length as *g h* and *i k* in Fig. 18. Draw then the chord line *g m* at random, and from the point *m* draw *m i*, the other chord. Biſect thoſe chords, as the figure ſhews, and where the right lines meet in a point will be the center of the cylinder; and any right line being drawn through the center *s* will determine the length of the diameter as required.

Thus it is evident that the diameter, and conſequently the circumference of any round building, may be aſcertained by this method.

The lath *h k*, in ſuch a caſe, may be conſidered ten feet long, and five inches broad, becauſe a lath óf ſuch length would require this breadth to keep it from ſpringing in the middle; and each of the diviſions on it one foot: and proceeding in the manner taught above, the moſt accurate dimenſions of the diameter of any ſuch building will be found.

SECT. V.

Of the Names and Properties of various Geometrical Solids—Of the Sections of Cones and Cylinders, and of finding curved Lines to anſwer the Sections of various irregular Figures.

In Section III. page 36, I have there obſerved, that to have ſome knowledge of the names and properties of uſeful geometrical ſuperficies is certainly of advantage to every one, eſpecially to thoſe who are concerned with drawing or making pieces of work of the like figures.

With equal propriety the ſame may be affirmed of the uſeful geometrical ſolids, the knowledge of whoſe names and properties frequently enable us to communicate our ideas of the figures of various objects that occur to us, with greater preciſion and freedom than we otherwiſe ſhould be able to do, were we, for want of this knowledge, obliged to uſe a number of explanatory words and ſigns before we could be underſtood.

However, I have not introduced more of theſe than what I think quite neceſſary to be known, and which I ſhall now endeavour to explain in as ſhort and clear a manner as I am able.

Of the Names and Properties of the General Solids.

In Plate VI. No. 1 is termed a Cube, which is a regular ſolid, bounded by ſix equal geometrical ſquares or ſurfaces, from Κυβος, *kubos*, a dye. It is alſo called by ſome a Hexaedron *, becauſe it has ſix ſeats or baſes on which it is capable of being reſted.

No. 2, is a Parallelopipedon, or Parallelopiped, a regular ſolid, contained under ſix parallelograms, whoſe oppoſite ſides are parallel and equal; or it is by ſome called a Priſm, whoſe baſe is a parallelogram.

If a piece of wood be ſeven or eight inches long, three broad, and two and a half in thickneſs, ſo plained that its ſides are parallel, and cut ſo that its ends are ſquare to its ſides, then will the piece of wood be of the figure of a parallelopiped.

No. 3 is a Pentangular Priſm †, ſo called becauſe its ends are bounded by pentagons, or five-ſided ſurfaces, and its ſides by five parallelograms.

* Hexaedron, from εξ, *hex*, ſix; and εδρα, *hedra*, a ſeat.

† Priſm, from πρισμα, "ſomething ſawn or cut off."

There

There are various kinds of Priſms; as No. 4, is an Hexangular; No. 5, a Trapezoidical; and No. 6, a Triangular Priſm.

An Hexangular Priſm is terminated at its ends by two ſix-ſided ſurfaces, and its ſides by ſingle parallelograms.

If a piece of wood, ſeven or eight inches long, be turned to two or three inches diameter, and if this piece of round wood be planed ſo as to have ſix ſides parallel to each other, then it will be of the figure of an Hexangular Priſm.

Again, a Trapezoidical Priſm is one which is bounded at its ends by two Trapezoids (ſee No. 5, Plate II.), and whoſe ſides are four parallelograms, two of which are equal to each other, but not parallel; and two unequal in width, yet parallel.

If a piece of wood be ſeven or eight inches long, as before, and if one of its ſides be about three inches broad, and two of them two inches and an half, inclining or beveling off alike from the ſide which is three inches, reducing the fourth ſide to two inches broad, then will the piece of wood be of the figure of a Trapezoidical Priſm.

Laſtly, the Triangular Priſm is ſo called, becauſe its ends are bounded by triangles, or three-ſided ſuperficies, and its ſides by three parallelograms.

If, as before, a piece of wood be planed ſo as to have three ſides, ſuppoſe each two inches broad, and their angles parallel, it will then be of the figure of a Triangular Priſm.

No. 8, is a Tetrahedron *, called ſo becauſe it comprehends, and is bounded by four equilateral † triangles. It may alſo be conceived as a triangular pyramid of four equal faces.

* Tetrahedron, from τέτρα, *tetra*, four; and ἕδρα, as before.

† See Plate II.

Hence,

Hence, if a piece of wood be firſt cut into the form of an equilateral triangular priſm, and then be terminated from its baſe till the three ſides meet in a point perpendicular to the center of the baſe, and if the terminated or inclined ſides be equal in length to their baſe, then will the wood exhibit the figure of the geometrical ſolid, termed a Tetrahedron.

No. 7, is an Octahedron. It receives its name from the eight equal and equilateral triangles by which it is bounded. It may alſo be conceived as two quadrangular pyramids, joined together at their baſes.

If, therefore, a piece of wood be formed into an equal quadrangular priſm, and if this priſm be terminated from its center each way, till all the ſides come to a point perpendicular to the centers of the reſpective baſes of the pyramids ſuppoſed to be joined together, then will the piece of wood, thus cut, give the true figure of an Octahedron.

No. 15, is a Dodecahedron, a regular ſolid, bounded by twelve pentagons.

To form or conſtruct this regular ſolid, a piece of wood may firſt be turned round, and then planed into ten equal ſides. Draw then a regular pentagon (Plate II. Fig. 19.) on each end of the piece of wood, one of whoſe ſides ſhall be equal to one of the ſides which the wood was firſt planed to. Laſtly, make five faces on each end of the wood, which ſhall comprehend two of the firſt-mentioned ten ſides, and one of the ſides of the regular pentagon drawn on each end; then will the piece of wood form the figure of a Dodecahedron, as required.

No. 16, is an Icoſahedron, which is a regular ſolid, compoſed of twenty equilateral triangles. See Plate II. Fig. 7.

This figure may be conſidered as conſiſting of twenty triangular pyramids, as No. 8, whoſe vertexes meet in the center of a ſphere, imagined to circumſcribe it, and therefore muſt all have their heights and baſes equal.

To

To conſtruct this ſolid, a piece of wood ſhould firſt be made round, and then planed into ſix equal ſides. Upon each ſide draw an equilateral triangle, and the ſpaces between each triangle muſt be cut away to the ſide of the triangle thus drawn; and when this is done, there will then be four more planes or faces for four more equilateral triangles, which will make ten. Find the center of one end of the piece of wood, and terminate each ſide of the hexagon to this center, and there will be produced ſix more equilateral triangles, which, added to the other, make ſixteen. Find the center of the other end, and terminate the before-mentioned four ſides to this center, and other four equilateral triangles will be produced, which will complete the twenty as required.

From what has been ſaid, it is evident that five of theſe ſolids are regular, ſince they may each of them be inſcribed within a ſphere, ſo that each angle ſhall touch the circumſcribing ſphere in ſome point. Hence, to form theſe regular ſolids, namely, the Cube, Octahedron, Tetrahedron, Dodecahedron, and the Icoſahedron, it is preſuppoſed in the above conſtructions, that the pieces of wood mentioned are all cubes, whoſe ſides are equal to the dimenſion of each figure.

No. 13, is a Pyramid, a ſolid whoſe ſides riſe from a geometrical ſquare as its baſe, and terminate in a vertical point.

As the height of this ſolid is at pleaſure, its ſides are ſometimes bounded by equilateral triangles, and ſometimes by iſoſceles, as the figure referred to.

Nor are we to confine our ideas of pyramids to ſuch only as have ſquare baſes, for theſe may be either triangular or polygonal, while yet their reſpective ſides ſhall terminate in a point perpendicular to the center of their baſes.

The learned are divided in their opinions about the derivation of the term Pyramid: ſome think the name is from πυρ, *pur*, fire, becauſe Pyramids aſcend to a point like fire; but others more confidently affirm, that it is from

 πυρος,

πυρος, wheat, or corn. "Not," ſays the author of this laſt opinion, "that we are to ſuppoſe that the Pyramids were ever intended for granaries; but that the Greeks, when, after many generations, they viſited Egypt, and ſaw thoſe amazing ſtructures, looked on them as ſtore-houſes for grain; and knowing Egypt to be a country fruitful in corn, they called them Pyramids—corn ſtore buildings; being, as they thought, the repoſitories for all the produce of Egypt *."

No. 9, is a Cylinder. This is a ſolid, bounded by two equal circles at its ends, and a parallelogram revolving round their circumference. This figure is fitly repreſented by a garden roller, whence its name κυλενδρος, *kulendros*, a roller; and as for its conſtruction, it is ſo ſimple that it is unneceſſary to ſay any thing about it.

No. 12, is a Cone; a ſolid, bounded by two ſuperficies, one of which is convex, and the other ſtraight.

The baſe of a Cone is ſometimes an ellipſis, and ſometimes a circle, and its ſides are terminated in right lines to a point perpendicular to the center of its baſe. From this center to its vertical point, a line is ſuppoſed to paſs, called its axis, on which this body might be made to revolve. And the ſame may be obſerved of the Cylinder, Conoid, and Sphere, each of which has its imaginary axis, or right line, paſſing through its center, about which they may be made to turn.

No. 14, is a Conoid; a ſolid, which terminates from its baſe to its vertical point in a curved or elliptic direction. Sometimes the curve of its ſide is hyperbolic, and ſometimes parabolic. See Plate II. Fig. 35, 36.

Its baſe, like the Cone, is either an ellipſis or circle.

* The baſe of theſe pyramids was equilateral, and meaſured 693 Engliſh feet. Their height near five hundred feet. They were built in fine marble, and required the labour of three hundred thouſand workmen for twenty years. Theſe are inconteſtable proofs of the vaſt numbers, riches, and power, of the Egyptians; as alſo of their ſkill in architecture and the mechanic arts.

No. 10, is a Hemiſphere *, which is one half of a globe cut by a plane paſſing through its center, and therefore is contained under two ſuperficies.

No. 11, is a Sphere, or whole globe, which is a body or ſolid, bounded by one convex ſurface, whoſe parts are all at the ſame diſtance from the central point, as the perifery of a circle is to its center.

Of the Sections and Coverings of regular and irregular Figures; and how to find curved Lines to anſwer their various Sections.

The Section † of any ſolid is, when it is ſuppoſed to be cut by any plane paſſing in ſome direction through it, which, of courſe, produces a ſurface or ſuperficies conſonant to the nature of the ſection, and agreeable to the ſhape of the ſolid which is cut.

The ſections of a cylinder are three.—If a plane paſs through a cylinder parallel to its baſe, it will produce a circle, as is evident. Second, if a plane paſs through the center of both ends of it, there will then be produced a parallelogram. Thirdly, if it be cut oblique to its baſe, this ſection will produce a ſurface perfectly elliptic.

In Plate A, ſucceeding Plate III, this is clearly demonſtrated, as follows:

Let A B, Fig. M, be the diameter of a cylinder, the figure of whoſe oblique ſection is required. And let D C be conſidered as the ſection propoſed, and A D, B C, the ſides of the cylinder. Divide the diameter A B into any number of equal or unequal parts, it makes no difference, as at 1, 2, 3, 4, 5. From theſe draw lines to the ſection D C, perpendicular to A B. Then, through

* Hemiſphere, from σφαιρα, *ſphaira*, a globe or ſphere; and ημισυς, *hemiſus*, half, i. e. half a globe.

†. Section, a cutting or dividing; "from *ſeco*, to cut."

the

the points 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, on D C, draw lines indefinitely, but perpendicular to the ſection D C. Take the ordinate 1.1 from the baſe, and transfer it to 1.1 each way on the line D C, and ſo of all the other ordinates reſpectively, as the figure ſhews; then will a curve line, paſſing through theſe points of the ordinates, produce a true ellipſis, as is evident; for D C is the tranſverſe axis, equal to the oblique ſection; and 3 G the conjugate, equal to A B, the diameter of the cylinder. Therefore ſuppoſe the lines A B D C the boundaries of a plane paſſing through the center of the cylinder, and that plane to be divided by parallel lines, as the lines 1.1, &c. of that plane; then it is evident that in whatever ratio A B is divided, into the ſame muſt the line D C, the oblique ſection, be divided; and conſequently if lines be drawn through each diviſion perpendicular to D C, and if theſe lines be made, reſpectively, equal to the ordinates of the baſe, then would the point 1, on the curve D G, if raiſed perpendicular to the paper, be perpendicular to the point 1 on the curve A O of the baſe; and ſo of all the reſt.

N. B. If the reader cut the curve A O B and D G C through with a knife point, and turn them up perpendicular, he will ſee that the points on the elliptic curve will perfectly coincide with thoſe on the ſemicircle.

The ſections of a cone are five.—The Triangle, the Circle, the Ellipſis, the Parabola, and the Hyperbola. But as that which produces the ellipſis is of moſt conſequence, we ſhall endeavour to make it clear, that a cone being cut by a plane oblique to both its ſides, will produce a regular ellipſis, perfectly the ſame as that produced by the like ſection of a cylinder.

It is natural to ſuppoſe that a cone (ſee Fig. 12. Plate VI.) which terminates to a point from a round baſe, would, if cut as above, produce an ellipſis broader at one end than the other. But that it is a regular ellipſis, may be proved as follows:

Fig. K, Plate A, is a right cone, whoſe vertex is at V, and the center of its baſe at B. The line B V is its axis, and the line *q r* the propoſed ſection of the cone. Divide the ſection *q r* into any number of equal parts; and through

through theſe draw lines perpendicular to the axis B V, as at 1, 2, 3, 4, 5. From theſe ſeveral lines deſcribe ſemicircles, each of which may be conſidered as a parallel ſection to the baſe of the cone. From the diviſions 1, 2, 3, &c. of the ſection *q r*, draw lines parallel to the axis, or perpendicular to the baſe, till they cut each ſemicircle reſpectively at 1, 2, 3, 4, 5.

Now it is clear that theſe perpendiculars muſt each of them be an ordinate to their reſpective circles produced by the ſeveral parallel ſections; therefore, from the ſections *q r* draw correſpondent ordinates perpendicular to it, and take the ſeveral ordinates 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and transfer them to the lines drawn perpendicular to the ſection *q r*; and a curve line paſſing through theſe points will form a regular ellipſis, when the ordinates are laid on each ſide.

But it is however neceſſary to obſerve, that there is one caſe to be excepted, and only one; and that is, when the cone is cut by a plane ſubcontrary to its baſe, as Fig. N, which then produces a circle.

A cone cut ſubcontrary to its baſe, is when the triangles N A P and S R O are ſimilar under their common angle V, the vertex; for it is evident, that if the baſe of the cone W X P be conſidered a circle, then muſt the ſection line Q T produce the ſame; for the ſection Q T is to the ſide of the cone W S as the baſe W P is to the ſide of the cone P A. This may be ſhewn by lines in the ſame manner as in the other caſe. Let the line *b e* Q T be a ſection of a cone in a ſubcontrary poſition. Divide the line *e b* into equal parts, and through each draw lines perpendicular to the ſaid ſection, and continue theſe lines to Fig. O. On each of theſe deſcribe ſemicircles to touch each ſide of the cone, as at 5, 4, 3, 2, 1.

Obſerve that the ſection line *e b* gives the ordinates to each ſemi. Therefore take from 5 to *d* of that line, and place it from 5 to *d*, at O the circle; next take from 4 to *c*, and place it from 4 to *c* at O; then from 3 to *b*, placing it from 3 to *b* at O; from 2 to *a*, placing it from 2 to *a* at O; laſtly, from

1 to

1 to O, placing it from 1 to *o*; and a curve line through all theſe points will deſcribe a ſemicircle: for if the compaſs foot be fixed on the center 3, and the other extended to *b*, it will paſs through each point.

"If a ſphere be cut in any manner, the plane of the ſection will be a circle, whoſe center is in the diameter of the ſphere."

But if two planes, or ſtraight ſurfaces, cut each other, their common ſection is a right line.

I mention theſe particulars, that the reader may more readily and clearly underſtand the following Problems.

Prob. XXI. Fig. 32. Plate VI.

Of finding curved Lines to anſwer the Sections of irregular Solids.

Let Fig. 32, Plate VI. be conſidered a ſolid of the ſhape of a vaſe, whoſe covering and ſection are to be found; or, in other words, if a vaſe is required to be veneered, how to cut the veneer ſo as each joint ſhall appear ſtraight when the veneer is laid.

Operation.—Draw the ſhape of the vaſe, which, in this caſe, is a ſemi-ellipſis on the conjugate axis. Draw a perpendicular line through the center of the vaſe, which will be the long axis. Divide this diameter into a number of equal parts, and on theſe diviſions draw lines parallel to the conjugate axis, as the figure ſhews at 1, 2, 3, 4, &c. Draw then on each of theſe right lines a ſemicircle, and, for the ſake of greater accuracy, let the eighth ſpace be ſubdivided, by which another circle will be obtained near the center, as at 9. Draw next a perpendicular line at pleaſure, as at No. 1.

Proceed

Proceed then to take the dimenſions of the curvature of the vaſe thus:—place one foot of the compaſſes on 10, and extend the other to 9, and with the ſame opening of the compaſs fix one foot on 10, in No. 1, and deſcribe the arch 9 at pleaſure. Again, fix the compaſs foot on 9, and extend the other to 8 on the vaſe, which transfer from 9 to 8 at No. 1, and opening the compaſſes, fix one foot on 10, and with the other turn the arch 8 at pleaſure. In this manner proceed with all the other diviſions on the vaſe, until its whole curvature is laid down on the perpendicular line at No. 1.

After proceeding thus far, it muſt then be conſidered how many pieces of veneer will cover the circumference of the vaſe, and how broad the veneers may be laid; which in this example I have ſuppoſed to be fourteen. Divide therefore each ſemicircle into ſeven, as ſpecified by the ſmall dots on each arch. Upon the ſemicircle 9 of the vaſe, place one foot of the compaſſes on the point 9, and extend the other to the perpendicular line, which will be half the breadth of the veneer, according to the number of pieces propoſed. Take this opening of the compaſſes and place it each way from the perpendicular line at No. 1 on the arch 9. Again, on the ſemicircle 8, take the ſpace from the perpendicular line to 8, and transfer this to the arch 8 at No. 1, placing it each way from the perpendicular as before. In this manner proceed with the reſt, by which the proper breadth of the veneer on each ſemicircle will be determined; and if a regular curve line be drawn through each point on the ſeveral arches at No. 1, the curved boundaries of theſe arches will be the exact ſhape of the veneers, which, when properly laid down, will then have the appearance of ſo many ſtraight joints. And hence, by whatever rule or method we find the coverings of ſolids, regular or irregular, by the ſame rule we alſo find curved lines to anſwer their ſections; for it is evident, if the vaſe, after being veneered, was cut through its center perpendicularly, and the veneer raiſed up again, that its edge would be a faint curve, like that at No. 1.

PROB. XXII. FIG. 33. Plate VI.

To find the covering and perpendicular Section of a Solid partly convex and partly concave.

Operation.—Draw the profile of the ſolid propoſed, as Fig. 33. Let fall a perpendicular from the center of the top. Draw a line through 11 parallel with the top, and divide the aforeſaid perpendicular line into any number of equal parts, which in this example is ten. Draw parallel lines through each of thoſe diviſions, and on theſe lines draw ſo many ſemicircles, whoſe diameters ſhall be equal to the length of each line. Draw a perpendicular at pleaſure at No. 1. Fix one foot of the compaſſes at 1 on the profile, and extend the other to 2. With this opening fix one foot at 1, No. 1, and deſcribe the arch 2. From 2 on the profile, extend the compaſſes to 3, and transfer this from 2 to 3 at No. 1. Then opening the compaſſes, fix one foot at 1, and turn the arch 3 at No. 1, and ſo on of all the other; by which the dimenſions of the curvature of the profile will be obtained.

Laſtly, take half the whole ſpace from 11 on the ſemicircle to the perpendicular line ſpecified by the dot, and place this opening of the compaſſes each way from the perpendicular line on the arch 11 at No. 1, and mark the places with a pencil. Proceed to 10 on the ſemicircle 10, and take half of its whole ſpace, and place it each way from the perpendicular on the arch 10 at No. 1, as was done on the arch 11 before; and in this manner go through the whole, and a ſufficient number of points will be found in order to draw an irregular curve anſwerable to a perpendicular ſection of the propoſed ſolid, and which will alſo anſwer for its covering or veneering.

But

But here I muſt obſerve to the workman, that in caſe it ſhould be propoſed to him to veneer any thing of the like forms of Fig. 32 and 33, it would not do to cut out the veneers ſo broad that fourteen pieces ſhould be equal to the circumference. It would require twenty-eight pieces at leaſt, before they could be laid down with ſafety and eaſe, eſpecially if it were required that the joints of the veneers ſhould be ſo cloſe as to preclude the neceſſity of putting in ſtringing to hide them. I ſpeak this not merely from theory, but practice, having myſelf veneered knife-caſes of the ſame ſhape with the figures in the Plate, and where no ſtringing was admiſſible to hide the joints. But every thinking workman will eaſily perceive that it makes no difference in the methods of finding the curve lines for the covering, whether the number of pieces be fourteen or twenty-eight.

By theſe methods a ſphere or globe may be covered, and a curve, anſwerable to any ſection, through its center may be found. I have not given any example of this on the Plate, as it is preſumed that a few hints will ſerve, after what has already been ſaid on the ſubject.

Operation.—Draw a circle whoſe diameter ſhall be equal to the axis of the ſphere to be covered. Divide the ſemidiameter into nine equal parts, and on theſe parts draw lines acroſs at right angles with the diameter, till they touch the circumference of the circle on each ſide. From theſe ſeveral lines draw ſemicircles, as was done before in Fig. 32 and 33. Divide the ſeveral ſemicircles into eighteen degrees each, and take one degree from the largeſt ſemicircle, and place this opening of the compaſſes on a right line eighteen times. Then from the extreme points on this line draw arches each way, till they meet in the center of the line. Laſtly, transfer half a degree from each ſemicircle to their correſpondent arch, laid on each way from the right line, as was done on No. 1, Fig. 32; and the whole thus transferred, a curve line paſſing through each half degree laid on the ſeveral arches both right and left from the center line, will form the proper covering for the ſphere or globe as required.

Obſerve, the covering pieces will be of the figure of two ſegments of a cir-

cle joined together, and the length of the covering will be equal to half the circumference of the propoſed ſphere.

I muſt here entreat leave to remark, that notwithſtanding the above directions are addreſſed to men in the wooden way, yet it is certain that the Upholſterer may avail himſelf from what has been ſaid on the ſubject: for the coverings of the like ſolids made of any kind of ſtuff, ought to be cut by the ſame methods, and ſewed together in ſeams anſwerable to the joints in wood: but the elaſticity or pliableneſs of ſtuffs, &c. makes it unneceſſary to cut them into ſuch ſmall pieces as is abſolutely required in wood.

Prob. XXIII. Fig. 34. Plate VI.

To find the Section and Covering of a Knife-caſe whoſe front is a double oge.

Draw half the plan of the front, as Fig. 34, and divide the curve of the front into ten equal parts, as the figure ſhews. Next determine how much rake the knife-caſe is to have from back to front, by which it will be eaſily ſeen how much the ſwell of the front falls at that rate, as the diagonal line 10.1 ſhews in the caſe before us. Draw from 10 a perpendicular line 10 A at pleaſure. From the ſeveral diviſions on the curve of the front draw parallel lines, till they cut at the numbers on the aforeſaid perpendicular. Obſerve, that the numbers on the perpendicular line are placed to anſwer the parallel lines as they proceed from each number on the curve of the front. Every thing being now prepared for finding the covering and ſection of the knife-caſe, proceed to No. 1, and draw a right line at pleaſure, as 1.11. Take from 11 to 10, or any other of the diviſions, on the front of the knife-caſe, and with the compaſſes repeat it nine times on the right line 1.11 at No. 1. Then obſerve, that from 2 to 1 on the front of the knife-caſe is rather a wider ſpace than the other diviſions, which are all equal. The intention of this is,

to bring the parallel line, which proceeds from 2 on the front, a little farther on from the front line 1.1 ; therefore take from 2 to 1 on the front, and place it from 2 to 1 on the right line at No. 1, then will the whole length from 1 to 11 at No. 1 be equal to the whole curvature of the front of the knife-caſe, ſuppoſed to be ſtretched out in a right line. On the ſeveral diviſions on the right line 1.11, at No. 1, draw perpendicular lines at pleaſure. Take in the compaſs the ſpace 1.1 from Fig. 34, and tranſfer this opening to the perpendicular line 1 *c* at No. 1, marking it with a pencil. Then again take the ſpace from 2 to the diagonal line at Fig. 34, and tranſfer this to the perpendicular line 2 at No. 1, and mark it with a pencil as before. Do the ſame from the lines 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, at Fig. 34, and obſerve that 11 follows 7, becauſe it proceeds from the point 11 on the front of the caſe ; therefore take the ſpace from 11 on the perpendicular line to where the parallel cuts the diagonal, and place it on the perpendicular at No. 1. Likewiſe take 8 and 10 in the ſame manner. As for 9, it is loſt, becauſe that diviſion on the front of the knife-caſe falls on the right line, and, of courſe, has no projection. Laſtly, through all the points on each perpendicular at No. 1, draw a curve line, which will anſwer to the ſection of the knife-caſe, if it be cut anſwerable to the bevel line 10.1 on the plan of the caſe.

The dark ſhade *e a b*, at No. 1, ſhews half the veneer or covering of the knife-caſe ; and if a piece of ſtrong paper be cut double, according to the boundaries of the dark ſhade, it will ſerve as a pattern to cut the knife-caſe open by, and likewiſe to cut the veneer by, before it is glued down. The inſide veneer for the front of the top may alſo be cut near enough by it, though it will vary a little ; but this defect is not equal to the advantage of having the inſide veneer pretty nearly cut to the curve, becauſe it will then glue down much eaſier, and be leſs liable to ſplit.

From what has been ſaid on this Problem, the ingenious workman may apply the rules and obſervations to other purpoſes that may be of more importance than the cutting and veneering of a knife-caſe.

SECT.

SECT. VI.

On various uſeful Problems pertaining to the working Part of both the Cabinet and Upholſtery Branches: as the Methods of mitring Mouldings of different Projections—of drawing large Circles, without the Trouble of extending a Lath to their Centers, to deſcribe their Circumferences by—of drawing circular Cornices, and fitting up their Valances to them—of mitring the raking Mouldings of Pediments—the Manner of planning a Room to cut a Carpet by—and of the Nature and Conſtruction of Hip and Elliptic Domes for State Beds.

PROB. XXIV. PLATE A.

LET it be required to cut a number of ſteps to their proper lengths, anſwerable to any given inclination of two ſides, as of a ſtep-ladder, or the like, without making any drawing, or previous to any part of it being put together.

Take a piece of deal about three feet long and nine wide, and plane it over, making one edge of it ſtraight. Then conſider how much the firſt and laſt ſteps are to differ in length; which difference, place on a line drawn perpendicular to the edge of a board, as 3.1 Fig. B, which conſider as the edge, and 1.2 the perpendicular line; the ſpace 1.2 being ſuppoſed equal to the difference between the firſt and laſt ſtep. Take then a pair of compaſſes, and open them at diſcretion, and repeat this opening as many times from 1 to 3 as there are ſteps, ſave one; in this caſe eight. From 2 to 3 draw a line, and from each diviſion on 3.1 draw perpendiculars to the line 3.2; then will each of theſe 1, *a*, *b*, *c*, &c. be equal to the reſpective difference of each ſtep to each other. This is clearly proved by Fig. A, which is ſuppoſed to be a drawing of the ladder at full ſize, only for the ſake of demonſtrating the truth of the method; for we ſay that the line 1.2, Fig. B, is equal to the difference be-

tween the firſt and laſt ſtep, which is twice 1,2 at Fig. A; ſo alſo the perpendicular line *a* at Fig. B is equal twice *a* at Fig. A; and conſequently the remaining ones are equal to the difference of each reſpective ſtep, as the figure will prove by applying the compaſſes. Or it may be done by taking half the difference, and drawing a line from 4 to 3, which will biſect each perpendicular, and conſequently theſe will be equal to *a*, *b*, *c*, &c. at Fig. A.

To find the true bevel for the ends of each ſtep, take 1.4 from Fig. B, half the difference of the length of the firſt from the laſt ſtep, as at 1.8 Fig. C; and divide 1.8 into eight equal parts, which is the number of ſpaces between each ſtep. Draw 1.3 perpendicular to 1.8, and make 1.3 equal to the ſpace between the center line of each ſtep, as from 1 to *a* Fig. A. Laſtly, draw from 2, the firſt diviſion on 1.8 Fig. C, and produce it through 3, and it will be the true bevel for the ends of each ſtep. This is evident, by obſerving that the aforeſaid line 2.3 produced is parallel to the ſides of the ladder, and therefore muſt be the true bevel required. In cutting the ſteps a gauge ſhould be run on the center of each ſtep edge, and the reſpective differences of each ſtep laid on this line.

The advantage of this is, that any thing of the nature of a ſtep-ladder, ſuppoſing it 20, 30, or any number of feet in length, may be ſet out accurately on a ſmall piece of board two or three feet long, provided the width of the board be equal to the difference between the length of the firſt and laſt ſtep: the length of the board is not limited; for the triangle 1, 3, 4, at Fig. B, though vaſtly ſhorter than 1 N 3, at Fig. A, yet both triangles being divided in the ſame ratio to each other, produce the ſame length in the perpendiculars drawn from each diviſion, as will be clear by meaſuring the perpendiculars of each triangle.

Prob. XXV. Fig. 29. Plate III.

To draw an Elliptic Cornice of any given length or depth, and to fit the valance to it.

Operation.

Operation.—Let *o p* be the depth of the cornice with its facia, and make *o* 10 half the length of the cornice; draw the quadrant *p* 2, and divide its chord into nine equal parts, from whence draw lines perpendicular to the baſe of the quadrant till they cut the circumference. Divide then half the length of the cornice into ten, and draw perpendiculars from each reſpective diviſion, marked 1, 2, 3, 4, &c. From the diviſions or points on the circumference of the quadrant draw lines parallel with the baſe line 10 *o*, till they cut the perpendicular lines to which they belong; that is, from 8 on the circle draw a parallel line till it touch the perpendicular 8, and from the reſt do the ſame, which will form ſo many points on the reſpective perpendiculars as will be a ſufficient guide for an elliptic arch, to paſs through. Obſerve, the ninth diviſion is ſubdivided, by which another point is gained in the quick part of the ellipſis, for the convenience of drawing the ſweep more perfectly. The proportion of the hances may be eaſily aſcertained, as the figure ſhews; but in this particular fancy will generally be the rule.

Method Second.

It has already been obſerved, that the chord line of the arch 2 *p* is divided into nine equal parts, from which lines are drawn till they touch the circumference; after which draw the line *p* 9, as a correſpondent chord for the elliptic curve, and divide it into the ſame number of equal parts as the chord of the quadrant is divided into. Then take, for inſtance, the length of the perpendicular line 8.8 in the quadrant, and transfer this to the perpendicular line 8 on the other chord, and mark it with a pencil. Again, take 7.7 from the chord of the quadrant and transfer it to 7 on the other chord, and mark it as before. In this way proceed till all the perpendicular lines on the chord of the circle are placed on the correſpondent perpendiculars on the elliptic chord, and nine points will be obtained through which the curve is to paſs as before.

To fit up a Valance to a Cornice of the above Kind.

The ſtuff for the valance ſhould be tacked ſtraight on a board, and with a piece of ſoft chalk draw a line anſwerable to the line 10 *o*, or bottom of the facia. Divide the facia of the cornice in the manner ſhewn in the figure, and draw ſquare lines up to the cornice: do the ſame on the ſtuff for the valance, and take from the cornice the length of each perpendicular line *o*, 1, 2, 3, &c. and tranſfer thoſe different lengths to their reſpective perpendiculars on the ſtuff, and mark them with chalk. Laſtly, by a ſteady hand draw, with ſoft chalk, a curve to paſs through theſe points, which, if accurately done, and cut by the line, muſt evidently fit at the firſt trial.

Prob. XXVI. Fig. 31. Plate III.

To deſcribe the Arch of a Segment of a large Circle, without the aſſiſtance of a lath from its center, nearly true.

Operation.—Let Fig. 31 be conſidered a ſegment, whoſe chord is twenty feet long, and its ſwell two feet, as the perpendicular C 10. Draw then a ſemicircle, whoſe radius ſhall be equal to C 10. Divide one quadrant into ten equal parts, and into the ſame number divide half the chord A C. From each diviſion on A C raiſe perpendiculars, as 1, 2, 3, and ſo on. From 9 on the quadrant draw a line parallel to A C, till it touch the perpendicular 9, and mark it with a point. Again, from 8 on the quadrant draw a parallel till it touch the perpendicular 8, and mark it as before; and ſo on, from 7 to 7, 6 to 6, till the whole are done. Through the points on the ſeveral perpendiculars draw, with a ſteady hand, a curve line paſſing through theſe points, and it will form a regular arch. It ſhould, however, be obſerved, that this method, if purſued, in drawing a quick curve, will gradually degenerate to a hyperbolic curve, which will be diſcernible if the depth of the arch be more than about one tenth of its chord.

Method Second. (On the right hand of FIG. 31.)

This method will be found perfect in all cases without exception.

Let *a c* be the depth of the arch, and *a* 5 half the chord of the whole arch. Draw *c* 5, and to this line draw 5.5 at right angles to it. Divide the lines *c* 5, *a* 5, and 5 *b*, into the same number of equal parts, and draw the lines 1.1, 2.2, &c. Lastly, from 1, 2, 3, 4, on the line 5 *b*, draw lines to *c*, the center of the arch, till they touch each correspondent line drawn through 1.1, 2.2, &c. and these will form points, through which a curve line passing will be a true segment of a circle. For this method I am indebted to Mr. Nicholson's Principles of Architecture, by whose permission it is here inserted.

PROB. XXVII. Plate IV.

To take the Plan of a Room in an accurate manner, so that a Carpet may be properly cut by it.

Operation.—The room being cleared of every obstruction, and the floor swept clean, proceed as follows:

First, Take a chalk line, and by it strike a line parallel to that side of the room which seems freest from irregularities, as *d c*, in Plate IV. Then by Problem III. page 23, raise a perpendicular from *c* continued to *b*. Proceed next to the other end of the room, as at *d*, and by the second method of Problem III. if most convenient, raise another perpendicular continued to *a*. Draw then a line from *a* to *b*, exactly parallel to *d c*, the opposite side of the room. Then will the angles *a b c d* form a true parallelogram, proportioned to the size of the room, by which the principal distortions or irregularities of any of the

sides

ſides of the room will at once appear. For inſtance, the angle *v* is ſomewhat out, as the line parallel to *a d* plainly ſhews: and in this manner any other angle of the room, whether obtuſe or acute, may be aſcertained.

Second, Let the hexagon end of the room be next conſidered; and let it be obſerved, that the plan-taker is ſuppoſed to have no ſquare, or ſtraight rule, but only a caſe of inſtruments and line. Therefore, in order to know how much the ſide *i l* bevels off from a ſquare, take the line and ſtrike it by the ſide *i l* of the hexagon, and continue the line at pleaſure beyond *h*. Take then the braſs protractor, and place the center of its baſe to *i*, as the figure ſhews. Make a pencil mark over 90, on the arch of the inſtrument, and from *i* draw a ſtraight line acroſs the pencil mark to *g* at pleaſure. Take the ſide *i l* of the hexagon, and place it from *i* to *h*. Draw *g h* parallel to the baſe of the protractor, or to *b c*; then will *g h* ſhew how much *i l* is out of ſquare, as required. Examine then the other ſide of the hexagon by the ſame rule, and if there be any variation from the oppoſite ſide, it will eaſily be diſcovered.

Proceed to the windows, and find the rake of the jambs in the ſame manner as before, which need not be repeated: only obſerve, that the protractor cannot be placed to the architraves becauſe of their irregularity; and therefore it muſt be placed on the line *a b* at *m*, after the line *f* is drawn from the jamb cutting at *m*. From *m* draw a perpendicular to *c*, and make it equal 1.2, the depth of the jamb, and it will, by drawing a line parallel to *a b*, ſhew the bevel, or the protractor will ſhew what angle it is under.

Laſtly, Proceed to the circular end of the room, with its windows; and in order to find the center of the arch *r o p*, draw *p v* at its foot, and parallel with *a d*. On the middle of *p v* raiſe a perpendicular, and continue it to *t* at pleaſure. Draw then the chord *o p*, and biſect it as at *n*, whence raiſe a perpendicular, cutting *o t* in *t*, which will be the center. From the opening of each window draw the ſeveral radii, as ſhewn in the figure, by which it will be eaſily ſeen how much the jambs vary from theſe central lines.

The room being thus lined out, take a ſheet of paper, and lay down a ſcale of feet and inches that will comprehend the longeſt part of the room. Meaſure then, with your common rule, the ſides and ends of the parallelogram which was chalked out on the floor, and whatever theſe meaſure by the rule, take the ſame number of feet, inches, and parts, from the ſcale, and draw the parallelogram on the paper in the ſame manner as was done on the floor: and in this way go on, taking off every dimenſion from the floor by the rule, and transferring them to the paper by the ſcale; ſo that at length the paper will have all the lines and ſhapes which the room has, by which means it is evident that the moſt exact meaſurement will be obtained.

The next thing to be done, is to provide a place large enough to lay down the full ſize of the room again. The order will now be reverſed; for thoſe meaſurements which were before taken from the room by a rule, and transferred by the ſcale on the paper, muſt again be taken from the paper by the ſame ſcale, and replaced on ſome convenient place, by the ſame rule that was uſed in taking the plan. If this method be purſued with accuracy, I am certain it cannot fail to anſwer the purpoſe, if a proper allowance be made for ſtraining the carpet.

Prob. XXVIII. Fig. 32. Plate V.

To mitre any thing of the nature of a Comb Tray, the breadth of whoſe ſides ſhall be given, and their inclination from a perpendicular predetermined.

Let *b a* be conſidered equal to the given projection of the ſide of the tray, and let the perpendicular *e a* be the height of the ſpring of its ſides. Draw the bevel line *e b*, and fixing one foot of the compaſſes at *b*, deſcribe the arch *e d*; then will *d* on the baſe line be the mitre point of the ſide of the tray *l f*, and *d b* will be the required breadth of its ſides neceſſary to raiſe it to *e*, perpendicular over *a*, the point of projection. Again, if the tray ſide ſhould be required

quired to be raiſed from its baſe up to *m*, then draw *m b*, which will be the breadth of the ſide, and with *b m* in your compaſſes deſcribe the arch *m n*; then will *n* be the miter point of the ſide of the tray, as required. How much ſhorter the point *n* is than a full miter, is ſeen from *n* to *o* of the dotted lines meeting together.

Whence it is evident, that as the tray ſides are raiſed higher and ſtill higher from their baſe, the mitres will become proportionably ſhorter, till at length the ſides will be in an upright poſition, and conſequently will have no miter in their breadth, it will be all in their thickneſs. On the other hand, if the ſides of the tray be depreſſed nearer to their baſe, and ſtill nearer, their miters will proportionably increaſe, until they arrive at full length, and conſequently they will be in a perfect horizontal poſition, or parallel to their baſe, and will have no miter in their thickneſs.

How to find the Miter in the Thickneſs of the Stuff. See Plate A. Fig. D.

Take the ſide of the tray O *b*, and with it deſcribe a ſemicircle. Make *a e* equal to the perpendicular height of the ſide of the tray. Draw a line from *e* to the center; and parallel to this, ſet off a line for the thickneſs of the tray ſides, and the bevel of the under edge will be at 4. Draw a ſquare at the center, the length of whoſe ſides ſhall be equal to the thickneſs of the tray ſides, as 3, 1, 2. Next draw the line B A E parallel to the diameter; and take *a e*, the ſine of the angle of the tray ſides, and transfer it to E A. From A draw a line to the center, cutting the ſmall ſquare at 1, and the ſpace 1.2 will be the mitre ſought for; that is, when the ſides are mitered in their breadth, according to Fig. 32, Plate V, ſet a gage to 1.2, and run the gage on the inſide along the miter, and plane it off to the gage from the outſide, and the miters will all come exactly together. If the tray ſides were raiſed to *b*, *b i* would then be the ſine of their angle; and which being transferred from E to B, a line from B to the center cuts the ſquare at 3; then is the ſpace 3.2 the length of the miter ſought. And thus it is evident, that as *b* advances to E the perpendicular, ſo will the miter point B approach to D the full miter. It is alſo evident, that by this figure the miter of any thing not exceeding in its thickneſs the

diameter

diameter E of the ſemicircle may be found. For inſtance, if the ſides of any tray be half an inch thick, and it is required to be mitered and keyed together, draw a ſquare of that dimenſion, as the ſecond ſhewn in the center; and if the ſides bevel in an angle equal to the line *e* O, then 1.2 of the ſecond ſquare will be the length of the miter. I proved the truth of this theory by practice, and therefore the workman may depend on its infallibility; but he may eaſily make the ſame experiment himſelf.

Prob. XXIX. Plate A. Fig. F.

To miter the ſides of any thing of the nature of a Comb Tray, when the ſides are not at right angles to each other, or when they ſpring from any kind of polygon.

Let the lines B O, O P, denote the ſide of the polygon, or the angle which the tray ſides make with each other. From O raiſe a perpendicular at pleaſure.

Conſider next how much the ſides are to ſpring out, as from O to 4. Through 4 draw the line 4.3 parallel to O P; and next determine how much the ſides are to riſe from the plan, as 4.5. From 5 draw 5 O, which line gives the breadth of the ſides. Turn an arch from 5 to 6, and through 6 and 8 draw lines parallel to B O, O P; which will then be the tray ſides, meeting at Q the full miter point, provided the ſides were flat on the plan. But the ſides are to be raiſed till the point Q comes perpendicular over 2; therefore raiſe a perpendicular from 2, which will cut at the point 7; then a line from 7 to O will be the true miter for each ſide. Laſtly, conſider the thickneſs of the tray ſides, as at *q s*, which is parallel to O 5. From *q* draw a line parallel to O P, cutting the full miter line at *p*,. which gives the miter at the ends of the tray ſides. Thus, when the tray ſides are bevelled off from O to *q*, as they are repreſented to be at No. 2, lay a ſquare flat on the bevel edge of the ſides, and

Plate 3.d

Fig. 17.

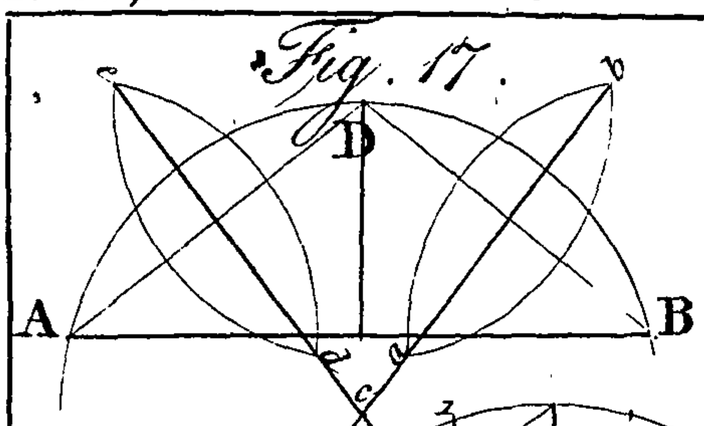
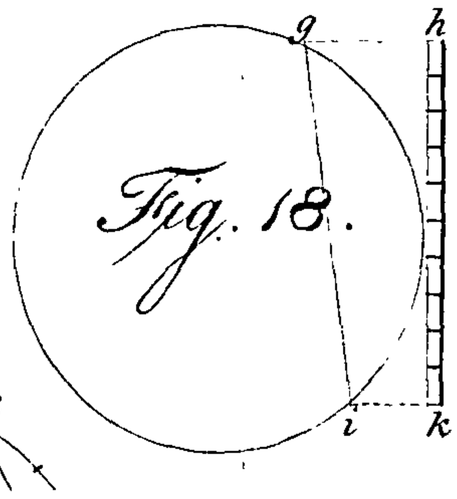


Fig. 18.



N.°2.

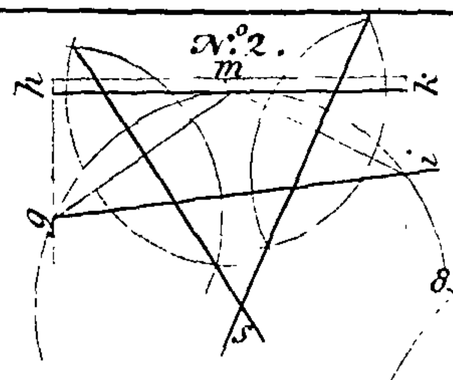


Fig. 19.

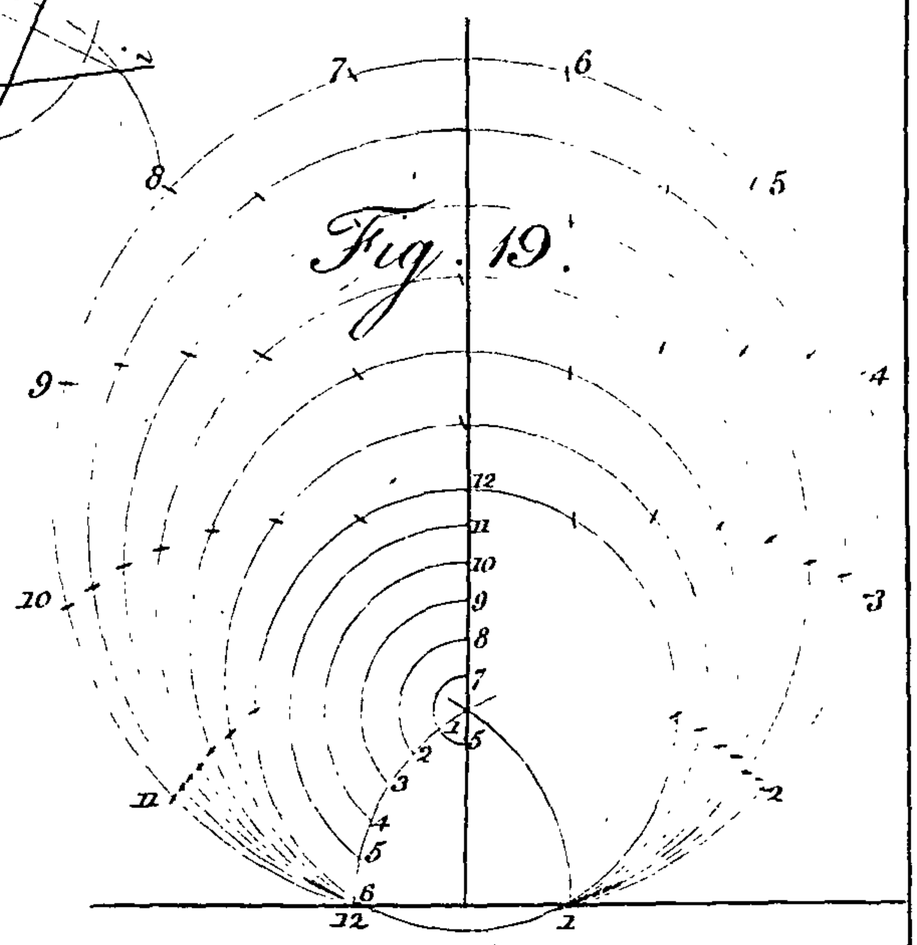


Fig. 20.

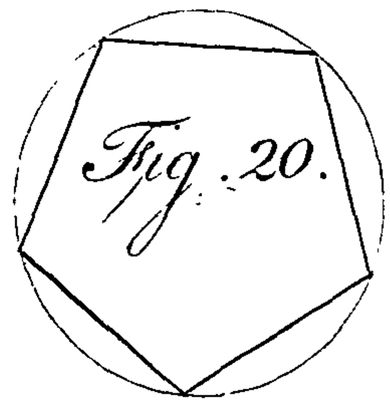


Fig. 21.

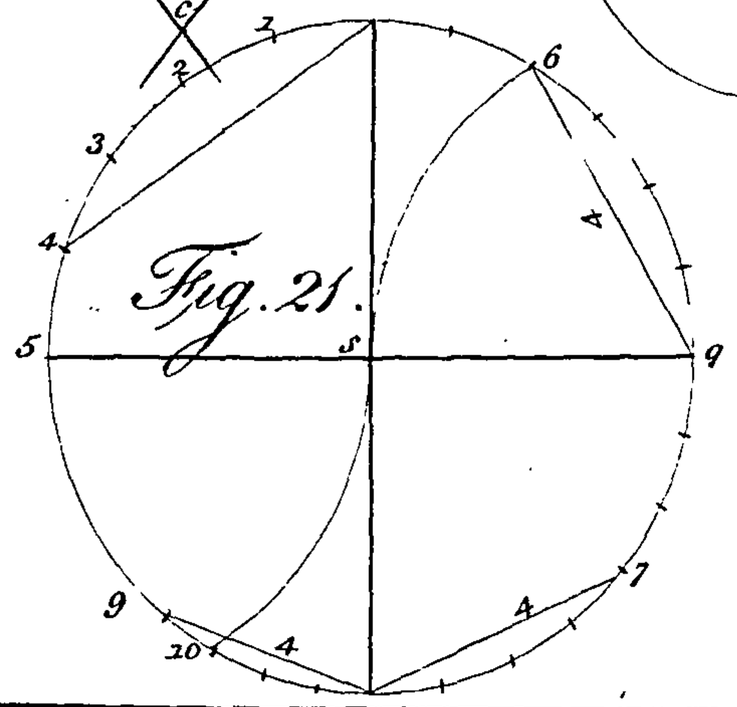


Fig. 22.

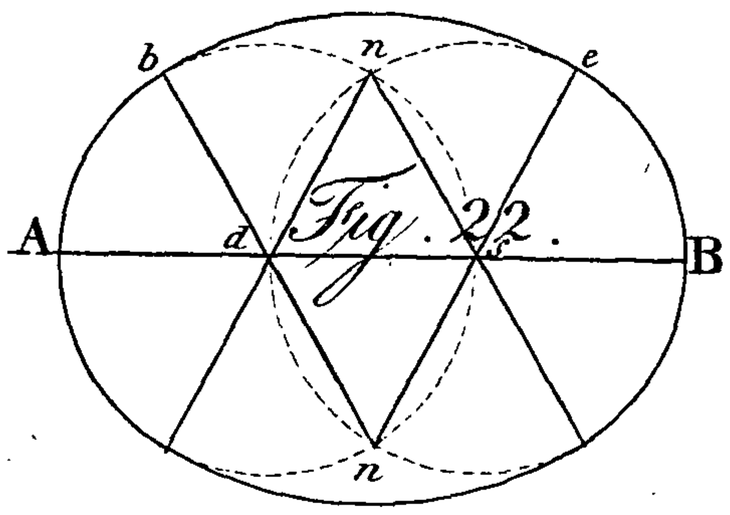


Fig. 23.

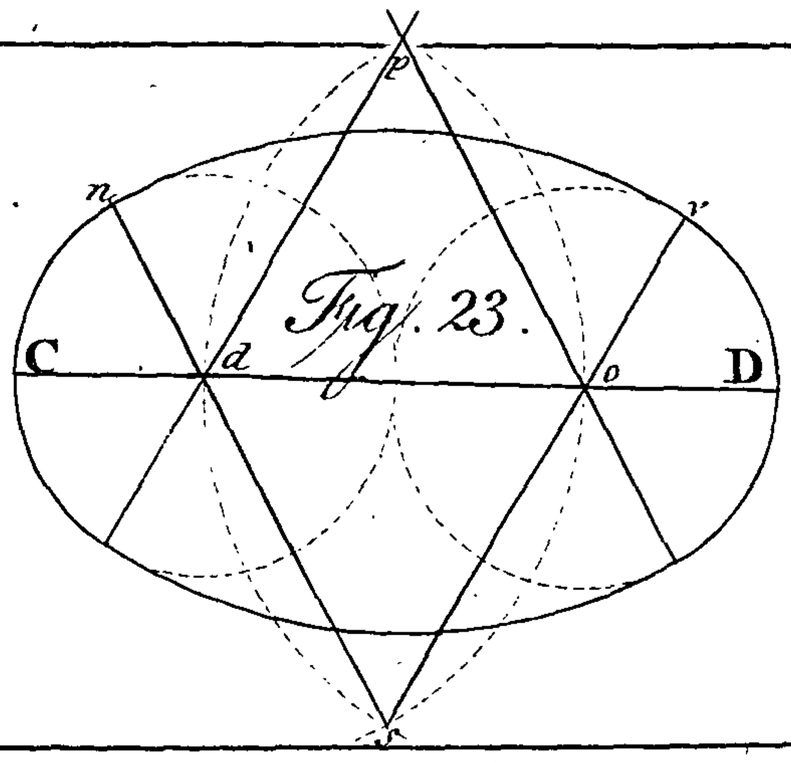


Fig. 24.

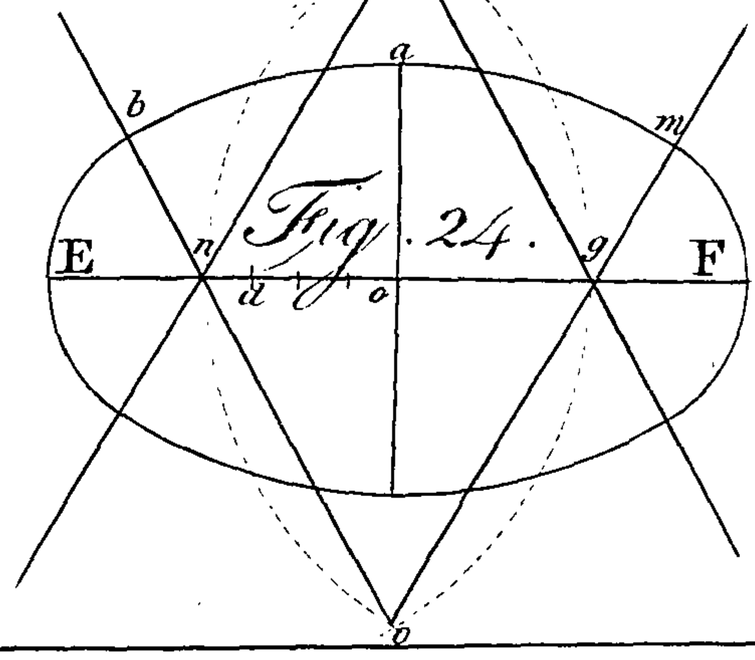


Fig. 26.

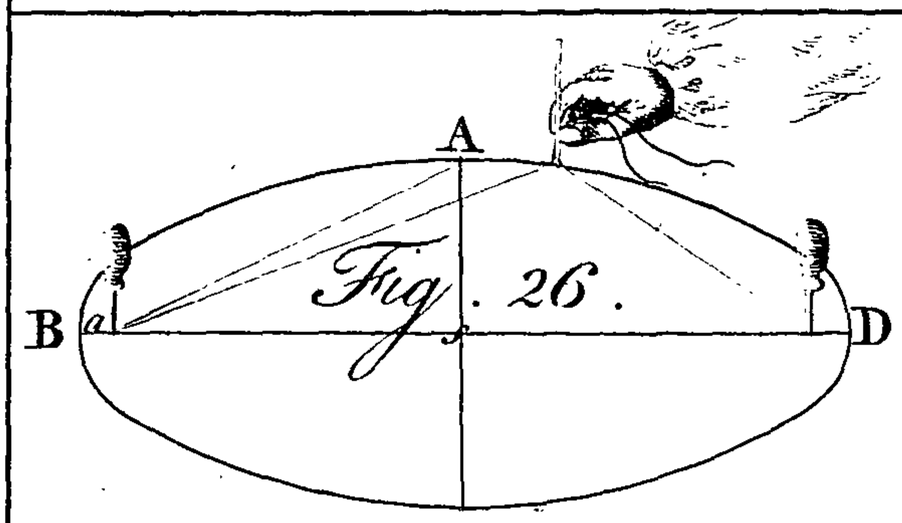


Fig. 27.

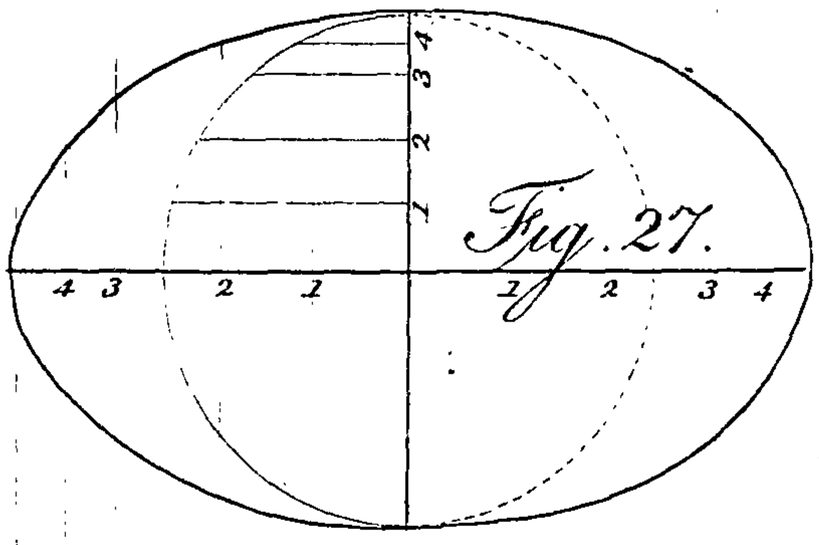


Fig. 28.

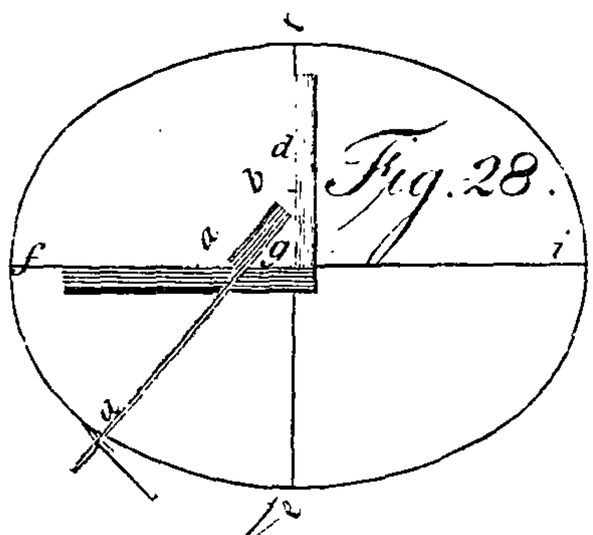


Fig. 29.

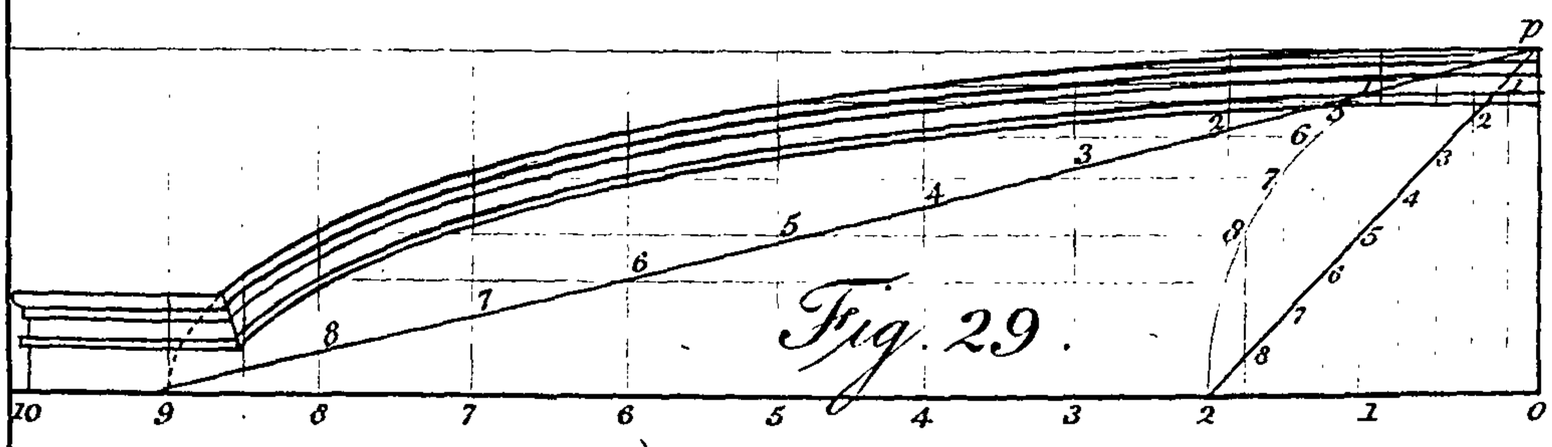


Fig. 30.

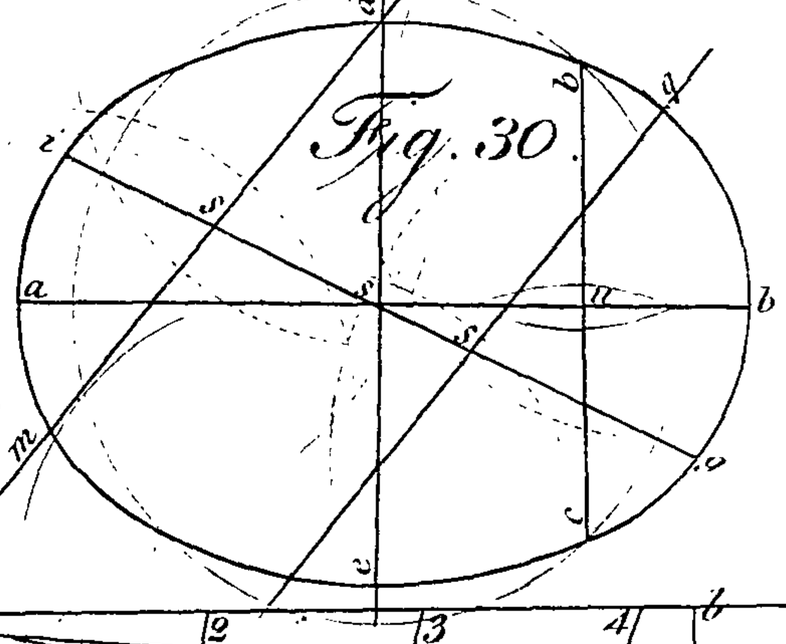
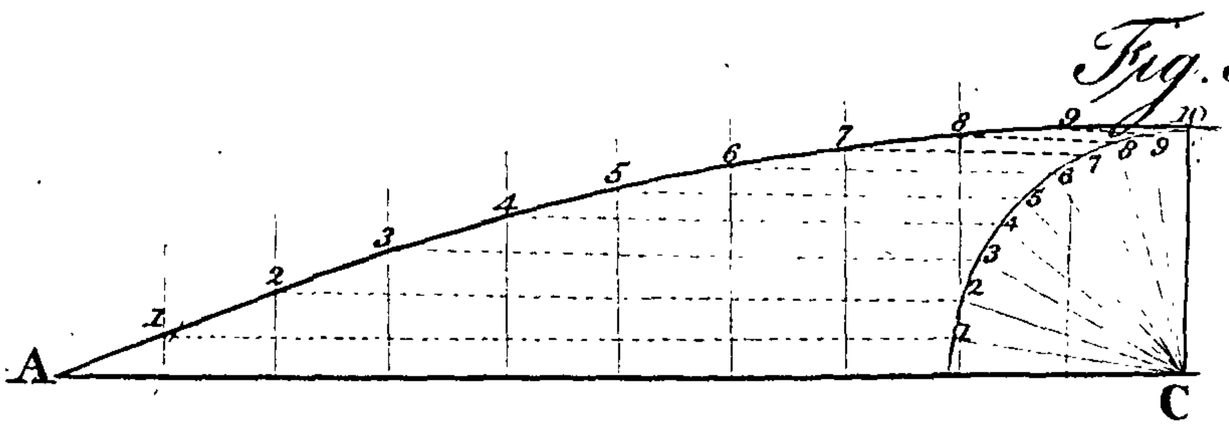
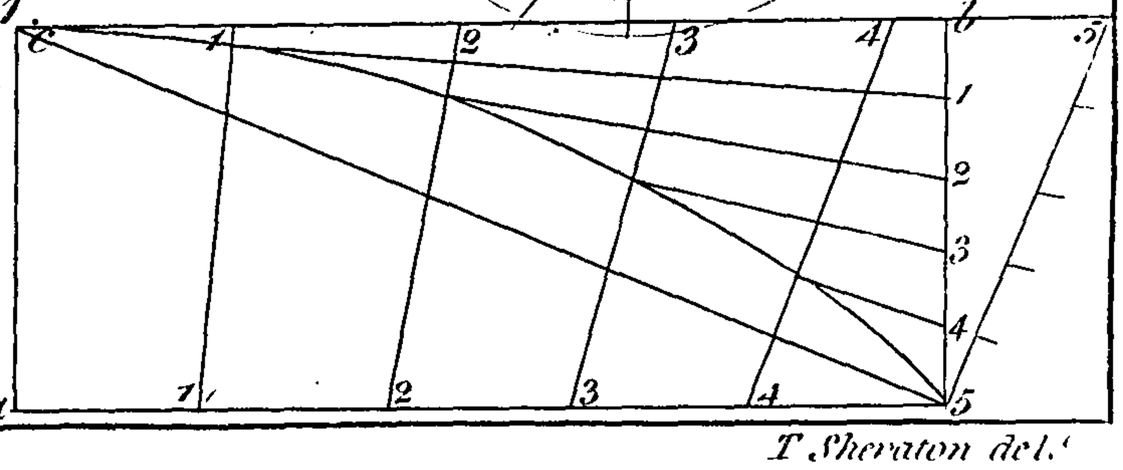


Fig. 31.





J. Cooke Sculp.t

T. Sheraton del.t

Pub.d as the Act directs. Sept.r 30. 1792. by G. Terry.

draw a line acroſs, as at 1.2, No. 2; then take the length *p q*, and place it from 2 to 3, No. 2; which will give the true bevel of the ends.

This practice the workman may depend on as perfect in all caſes, as I have proved it by real experiment. And we would by all means adviſe the workman to make the trial, both in this and the preceding problem, as moſt uſeful and neceſſary in many caſes, and which has never yet been publiſhed in any work.

Prob. XXX. Fig. 33. Plate V.

To find the Lines for working the Mouldings of a Clock Bracket, &c. when the front moulding projects more than the ends.

Operation.—Let *a o b d* be the plan of the clock bracket. From the center of *a o* draw the mitre lines to *b* and *d*, and from the center let fall a perpendicular, as at *f*. From this perpendicular draw a profile of the cavetto and aſtragal, according to the projection intended for the ends of the bracket. From the ſpring of the cavetto on the top of the necking raiſe a perpendicular up to the line *a o*; then from the upper part of the cavetto, as from 1, raiſe another perpendicular up to 1 on *a o*. Divide the intermediate ſpace into any number of equal parts, as at 1, 2, 3, 4, &c. From theſe draw perpendiculars to the mitre line, and continue them downwards till they touch the cavetto at 2, 3, 4, &c. Laſtly, draw from the utmoſt projection of the aſtragal, or necking, a perpendicular, cutting the mitre line at 5; then from 5, 4, 3, 2, 1, on the cavetto draw parallels out at pleaſure to No. 1. Take in your compaſſes *d o* from the plan of the bracket, and place it from *d* to *p*, No. 1. From *p* let fall a perpendicular; then from the plan, as before, take 1.1 and place it from 1 on the perpendicular line *p* to 1 on the parallel line. Again, take the line 2.2 from the plan, and place it on the parallel line 2 to 2 at No. 1, and ſo of all the reſt, forming ſo many points, by which a profile of the front cavetto may be formed, and which will mitre in with the

end

end cavetto, if the mouldings are exactly worked to these profiles, and the mitres be accurately cut. How the mitres are to be cut is easily seen by the mitre lines on the plan.

In Plate II. Fig. 12, an example of the same kind is shewn, as it may be performed by the Sector.

Let the quadrant A D be considered as one of the cavettoes to be mitred together. Then let it be proposed that another cavetto is to mitre to the former, whose projection shall be equal to 1.10. Proceed then to draw this cavetto by the same directions as are given in page 33 for drawing an Oval; after which the cavettoes are to be worked according to these curves. The length of the mitre for the least projecting cavetto is from 90 to 10, and that of the largest projecting cavetto is from 10 to A, and the mitre line is 9.10.

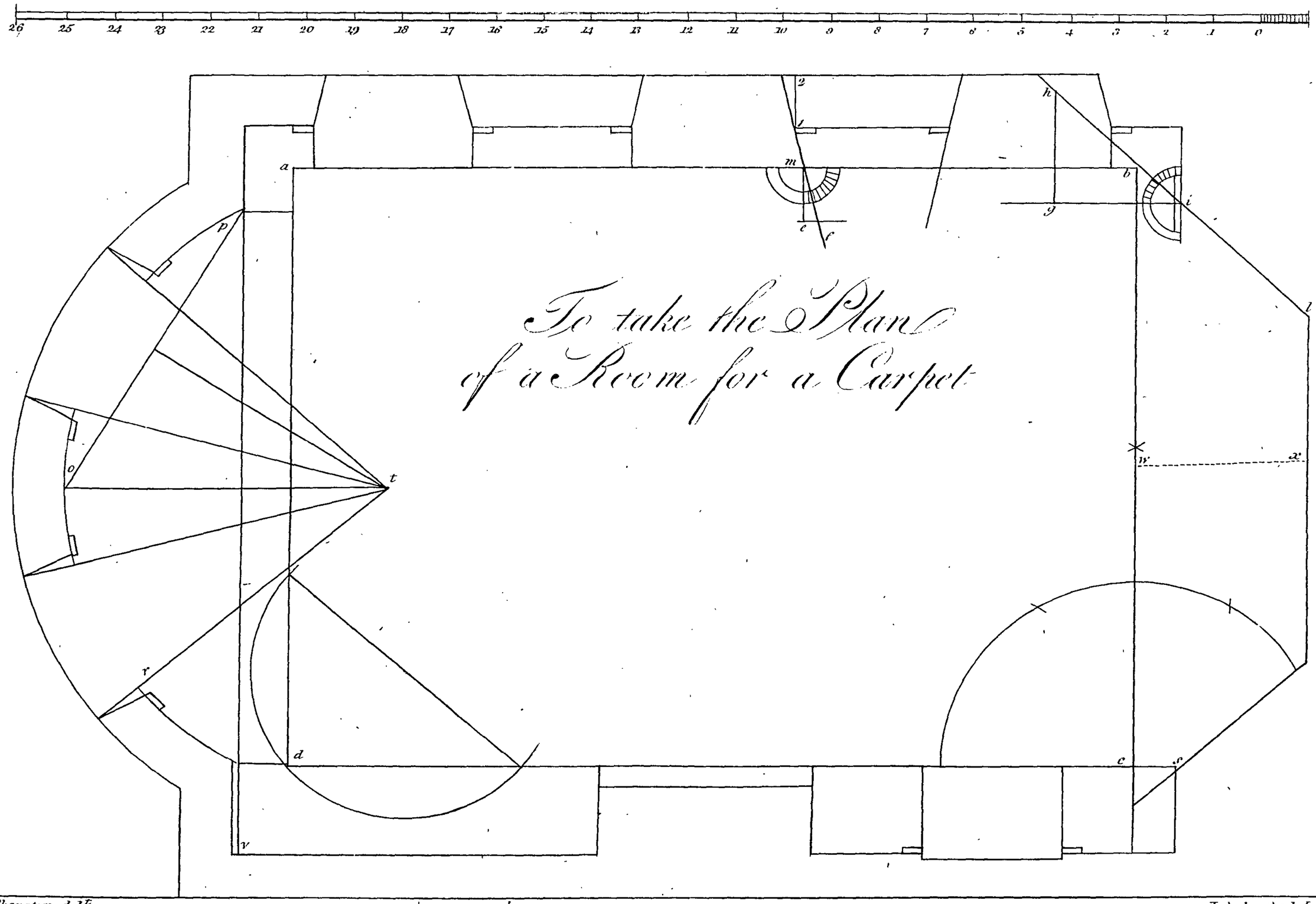
By these methods it is evident, that any moulding of different projections, and consisting of various members, may be worked, and cut so as to mitre exactly together.

Prob. XXXI. Fig. 34. Plate V.

Of working and mitring raking Mouldings.

Let No. 1, Fig. 34, be a level ovolo in a broken pediment. Make its projection equal to its height. Divide the height of the ovolo into any number of equal parts, and from these divisions draw parallel lines, as is shewn in the figure. Next, from 1.2, the extreme points of the ovolo, draw two parallel lines, according to the rake of the pediment described below, which will of course increase the height of the ovolo as 3.4. Draw then a perpendicular or a line square from either of the raking lines, as at No. 2. Divide this line into the same number of equal parts, and from these divisions draw lines parallel to the raking

Plate. 4.



To take the Plan of a Room for a Carpet

I. Sheraton del.t

J. Cooke Sculp.t

Pub.d as the Act directs Nov.r 1.st 1791 by G. Terry.

raking part, and continue them out at pleaſure. Take then 5.5 from No. 1, and transfer this opening of the compaſſes to 5.5 on No. 2, and alſo at No. 3, marking where it extends to. Again, take in your compaſſes 4.4, from No. 1, and transfer this alſo to 4.4 on No. 2 and 3, marking it as before; proceeding in the ſame manner with the reſt; by which points will be found to enable us to draw the raking ovolo ſo that it will mitre with the level one at No. 1, and alſo the returning ovolo at No. 3, thus found, will mitre in with the raking moulding No. 2.

In the ſame manner may be found the raking and returning cyma-recta mouldings, deſcribed in Fig. 35, which it is unneceſſary to ſay any thing about, after what has been ſaid on the ovolo.

Prob. XXXII. Fig. 36. Plate V.

As I have in this Section deſcribed the methods of drawing and mitring mouldings of different projections, and alſo of drawing and mitring raking with level mouldings, it may be proper here to deſcribe the proportion of the Tuſcan raking Pediment, and the manner of drawing it.

It is true, according to an orderly arrangement, the Pediment ſhould come after the column; but this is of ſmall conſequence, if it can as well be underſtood in this place.

The intention of a cloſe pediment, whether raking or circular, is not only to ornament the front door or entrance of any building, but likewiſe to ſhelter ſuch as ſeek admittance from inclement weather. For this purpoſe the raking cloſe pediment of any order is beſt calculated; for whilſt we are ſheltered from rain or ſnow by the bold projections of the ſeveral members of each order, eſpecially the Doric, the deſcending ſhowers eaſily and quickly glide off on each ſide, on account of the rake of ſuch pediments.

It is therefore improper to have open pediments of any order at the exterior entrances of buildings: and it is conſidered by architects as improper to have cloſe ones over interior entrances or door-ways, where they are only employed as ornamental.

The pitch of the Tuſcan pediment is the ſame with the other orders, for in this reſpect they are all uniformly the ſame; but their intercolumniations, or ſpaces between the pillars or pilaſters, together with other particulars, vary according to the reſpective order to which they belong; which I ſhall mention afterwards, in treating on the Orders.

To proportion and draw the Tuſcan order, proceed thus:

Obſerve, that Fig. 36 is exactly half the pediment only; and therefore, in drawing a whole pediment, the diviſions ſpecified in the figure muſt be laid on each way from the central line. And obſerve likewiſe, that the frieze and architrave are not drawn to the cornice, becauſe they are not wanted in deſcribing the pediment.

Operation.—Lay down three diameters from the center of the pediment to the center of the ſhaft, as at 1, 2, 3, in the figure. Divide a diameter into eight equal parts, and take three of theſe and place them each way from the center line of the ſhaft, which gives the upper diameter of the column, as the figure ſhews. Again, divide a diameter into four, as that diſtinguiſhed by the writing in the figure, and take three of thoſe parts for the perpendicular height of the cornice: at this height draw a parallel line at pleaſure ſufficient for the whole length of the pediment, as the upper line with the numbers. Then take the perpendicular height of the cornice, and place it from the outſide line of the ſhaft on the line continued out from the under edge of the cornice, which will determine its projection, as is eaſily ſeen by the level ſcale line *b*. Raiſe a perpendicular line from the whole projection, as *g*, till it cut the upper parallel line; then will this line ſerve as a ſcale for the heights of each member in the cornice, the proportions of which are eaſily ſeen by the

aliquot parts on the ſcales; but if not rightly underſtood, the reader may ſuſpend his judgment till the Tuſcan order is deſcribed.

Divide the upper parallel line, which is equal to one half of the whole length, into nine equal parts, and give four of theſe for the pitch of the pediment, as the figures 1, 2, 3, 4, ſhew. Draw then a right line from 4 to the utmoſt projection of the level cornice, and proceed to draw each member of the level cornice, as the ſcale lines direct.

Note, The two upper lines, containing the nine diviſions, repreſent the upper fillet of the level cyma-recta.

The next thing to be done, is to proportion the members of the raking cornice by thoſe of the level one. To do this, draw a line ſquare from the pitch of the pediment, and continue it till it paſs through the level cornice. Take then the ſkew meaſurement of the lower fillet of the level cyma-recta, as *a b*, and transfer this to the raking cyma-recta downwards, from *a* to *b*. Again, take *b c* from the level corona, and transfer it from *b* to *c* for the raking corona. Laſtly, take *c d*, *e f*, in the ſame manner, and transfer them one after another for the raking mouldings, as before; after which, draw lines through the ſeveral points parallel to the pitch or raking line, and the pediment will be completed for ſhading, if required.

Of the Nature and Conſtruction of Hip and Elliptic Domes for Beds.

Domes of various kinds have, for many ages paſt, been introduced into elegant and magnificent buildings, on account of their graceful effect and majeſtic appearance.

I am of opinion that the notion of employing domes for the roofs of grand buildings, was firſt ſuggeſted by the appearance of the hemiſphere ſurrounding

our earth or horizon, forming a canopy or roof to the globe; which if it were ſo, domes had their origin from a truly ſublime and magnificent idea.

The uſe of domes for the tops of beds is of much later date than for buildings; but it is certain, whoever he was that firſt employed domes for the tops of beds, muſt be conſidered as a perſon of enlarged ideas, as no other top or roof for a genteel bed can equal them: therefore we ſee them generally uſed for ſtate beds, where both grandeur and bold effect are eſſentially requiſite.

The term Dome generally implies a vaulted, arched, or ſpherical roof. Some derive it from *domus*, a houſe; and others from the barbarous Latin *doma*, a roof or open porch.

When an arched roof is raiſed from a ſquare or oblong plan, it is called an Hip Dome, becauſe they require mitre ribs at each angle, uniting in a center at top. But thoſe domes which take their riſe from an oval plan, are called Elliptic; and, laſtly, thoſe which have an octagon or hexagon for their plan may be ſtyled Polygonal Domes.

Prob. XXXIII. Fig. 35. Plate VII.

To conſtruct an Hip Dome.

Operation.—Let A B C D be the under teſter, upon which another teſter is to be fixed to receive the ribs of the dome. Draw the diagonals D B and AC, and their interſection will be the center for the dome. Draw a right line through the center parallel to A B; draw another line through the center at right angles with it, then will the diagonal lines be the plans of the hip ribs, and thoſe at right angles to each other will be the plans for the center ribs. Draw a circle from the center of the dome of about eight inches radius, as the figure ſhews, which is intended as a ground for ornament in the center of the dome at the inſide, and alſo to combine together the hip and center ribs.

Proceed next to conſider the height of the dome as may be required. Let 7.6 at No. 1 be the perpendicular height of it, and let *m n* be the width of the dome. Then draw a ſemi-ellipſis to paſs through the points *m* 6 *n*. Divide half of this ſemi-ellipſis into as many equal parts as it may be thought neceſſary to have ribs in that ſpace, which in this example is ſix. Draw on theſe diviſions perpendicular lines, as the figure ſhews, and ſubdivide the laſt ſpace, from which raiſe a perpendicular as before.

Proceed to No. 2, and divide half the length of the dome, as *f o*, into the ſame number of equal parts as half the width was divided into. From the diviſions raiſe perpendiculars at pleaſure. Take the length of the ſeveral perpendiculars from No. 1, and place them on the correſponding perpendiculars at No. 2, and draw a curve line through each point; then will the ellipſis thus produced be the outſide ſhape of all the long ribs, the ſame as No. 1 is of the ſhort ribs. Laſtly, proceed to No. 3, which is for the four hip ribs. Draw the dotted lines from 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, at No. 1, till they cut the diagonal line *g h* at the correſponding numbers. From theſe interſections raiſe perpendiculars at pleaſure, as before. Transfer the length of each perpendicular line from either No. 1 or 2 to No. 3 on each perpendicular as numbered, and drawing a curve line through each point as before, it will produce an ellipſis for the outſide ſhape of each hip rib.

The next thing to be conſidered, is the length required for each rib, according to their diſtance from each angle of the dome. A little thought will make this eaſily underſtood; for if No. 3 was placed in an upright poſition, being conſidered as a frame, and if the portion of the curve from *n* to 1 at No. 1 was placed upright to it, the two points, 1 in No. 1 and 1 in No. 3, would coincide, and the point 2 of No. 1 would coincide with 2 at No. 3, and ſo of all the reſt. Hence, from *n* to 1 of No. 1 is the length of the firſt ſhort rib, whoſe plan is at *a*; from *n* to 2 is the ſecond ſhort rib, whoſe plan is at *b*; from *n* to 3 is the third ſhort rib, its plan at *c*; from *n* to 4 is the fourth ſhort rib, its plan at *d*; and from *n* to 5 is the fifth ſhort rib, its plan at *e*. The long ribs are taken from No. 2, in the ſame manner; each of which has its plan laid down at No. 3, as *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*, *f*, ſo that I need not ſay any thing more on this part of the ſubject. For the length of the hip ribs, take from *p*

to

to 5 at No. 3, and allow three quarters of an inch for dovetailing into the center block.

Prob. XXXIV. Fig. 36. Plate VII.

To conſtruct an Elliptical Dome.

Operation.—Let A B, D E, be the plan of the teſter, whoſe inſide forms a true ellipſis by the help of angle pieces framed in, which muſt be evident to every workman.

The oval being thus formed according to the inſide length and breadth of the teſter, and the two diameters being already drawn, proceed with one quarter of the dome thus: draw the plan of the upper teſter, into which the ribs are to be fixed, as the ſecond elliptic line ſhews. Divide then the portion of the ellipſis between *o* and *l* into as many equal parts as it is required to have ribs in one quarter of the dome, as at *o*, *a*, *b*, *i*, *j*, *k*, *l*, tending to the center *b*.

From theſe center lines draw parallel lines on each ſide, which ſhall determine the thickneſs of the ribs, and at the ſame time ſhew how broad each rib will be required, in order to give it its proper twiſt ſo as to ſuit the ellipſis; for here it muſt be obſerved, that every rib, excepting the one that is upon each ſemidiameter, muſt have a winding form, both inſide and outſide, in proportion to the length of the oval with its breadth.

Determine, next, how much the dome is to riſe from the teſter, which, in this example, I conſider to be equal to half the ſhort diameter; and therefore the arch of the rib B is a quadrant of a circle drawn from the center *b*. This arch will ſerve for two ribs, that is, B and its oppoſite. Likewiſe from the arch B we determine the outline of every other rib thus: divide the ſemidiameter *a b* into five and an half equal parts, and raiſe perpendiculars till they touch the arch B. Divide the plan of the rib *a b* at No. 2 into the ſame number of equal parts, and raiſe perpendiculars at pleaſure; to which perpendiculars

lars transfer the ſeveral lengths of thoſe at No. 1 to the correſponding ones at No. 2, as *a c d e f g*; by which the rib A will be formed. The ribs for *h i j* and *k* are formed in the ſame manner, and therefore it is unneceſſary to deſcribe theſe.

Obſerve; C, on the plan of the elliptic teſter, is for the long center rib and its oppoſite, as will eaſily be underſtood by inſpecting the figures, and a little reflection on the ſubject.

Of the Management of Elliptical Domes.

Theſe domes may be made in four parts, the ſame as hip domes, if required.

The ribs of theſe domes are all dovetailed into a center block, which may be circular or elliptical to ſuit the dome, and which ſerves for the ground of a carved and gilt patera for the inſide of the dome, as has already been mentioned on hip domes.

When the ribs are all completely fixed, the ſpaces between them may be filled up by gluing white deal in; and when the pieces of deal are worked down to the ribs, the whole will form an agreeable dome, which ſhould be covered with canvaſs, and painted to ſuit the furniture, or otherwiſe covered with the ſame kind of ſtuff. And if ſo, it will be unneceſſary to cover it with canvaſs; but as the ſtuff muſt be put on the dome in ſo many breadths, cut ſo as to anſwer its ſhape, a gimp may be ſtitched on to hide the tacks and give the dome a more rich appearance. But if the dome be large, it may have ſmall gilt moulding in place of the gimp, which are fixed to the dome by gilt-headed ſcrews.

For the inſide of the dome, it will be requiſite to have a gilt moulding, to hide the joining of the under and upper teſter, and to ſerve as an architrave to the dome.

The

The triangular compartments at each corner of the teſter, occaſioned by the manner of framing it to ſuit the dome, ſhould have ſmall mouldings put on to ſuit that ſhape, which will take off the flat and heavy appearance it would otherwiſe have, and add to the effect of the whole. As for any other particular with reſpect to ornaments, what has already been obſerved on hip domes may alſo be applied here.

With reſpect to the dome deſcribed by Fig. 37, I do not think it neceſſary to go through an explanation of it after what has been ſaid on Fig. 35, which, if the reader has fully underſtood, he cannot fail to be acquainted with the lines laid down in Fig. 37, merely from inſpection, eſpecially as I have marked each correſponding line with ſimilar letters and numbers.

SECT. VII.

Of the Proportion of the five Orders, adjuſted by Modules, Minutes, and aliquot Parts; together with ſome Account of their Antiquity and Origin. Alſo of the general Proportions of Frontiſpieces adapted to each Order.

INTRODUCTION.

I HAVE no doubt but it may be thought unneceſſary by ſome to introduce the orders of architecture into this work, after ſo many publications of this ſort by men of the firſt claſs in the profeſſion of the art.

To remove this objection and unfavourable impreſſion from the mind, I ſhall juſt mention two or three particulars which induced me to make the five orders a part of this Drawing-Book.

Firſt.—In my opinion, and it is preſumed that I am not ſingular in this, nothing can appear more worthy of a place in a complete drawing-book than the five orders accurately laid down and neatly engraved; by which we ſee the proportions and effect of each moulding arranged and connected together, according to the compoſitions of thoſe ancient architects of Greece and Rome, who are ſo juſtly famous in the world.

Beſides; from a plate of the above kind, we are not only made acquainted with the proportions and ſhape of each moulding, but have likewiſe the advantage of ſeeing the effect of light and ſhadow produced by the ſun's rays falling in a certain direction on the ſeveral parts of a column.

The knowledge of theſe particulars muſt ever be conſidered as eſſential parts of good drawing, in which architecture is often introduced, and ſometimes makes the principal figure.

Second.—As many cabinet-makers, and even ſome ingenious upholſterers, are found deſirous of having a knowledge of the five orders, and the proportions of the ſeveral frontiſpieces, I thought an attempt of this ſort would be favourably received, as it undoubtedly tends to make the work more generally uſeful, and will prevent the trouble and expence of having recourſe to other books on the ſubject. And this has not been merely my own opinion, but the ſentiment of ſome well-wiſhers, who deſired me to let the orders have a place in my book.

Laſtly.—Beſides the reaſons juſt mentioned for publiſhing the five orders, I muſt frankly own myſelf a lover and admirer of thoſe ancient productions of ingenuity and art, which, in my opinion, cannot be much, if in the leaſt, improved by the force of modern genius.

If, therefore, the author conſiders himſelf as a kind of devotee or bigot to theſe remaining monuments of ancient ingenuity, ſurely he may be granted the liberty of paying the following ſmall tribute to the memory of thoſe great architects who had the honour of bringing the five orders to that perfection which we now ſee them in at this day.

And further, as I believe that the orders are now brought to ſuch perfection in their proportions, as will bear the ſtricteſt mathematical examination, I conſider them as incapable of improvement, except perhaps in ſome part of their ornament, and therefore they are claſſed with thoſe things in this book that will remain unalterable.

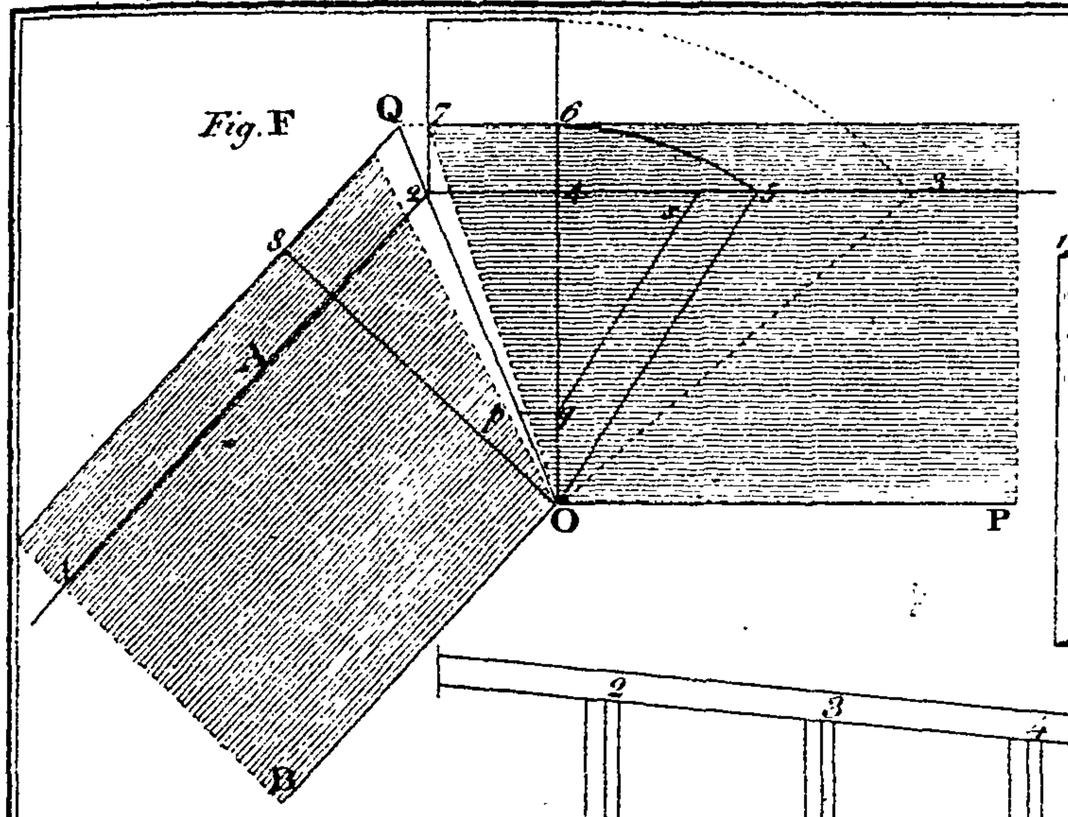
Of

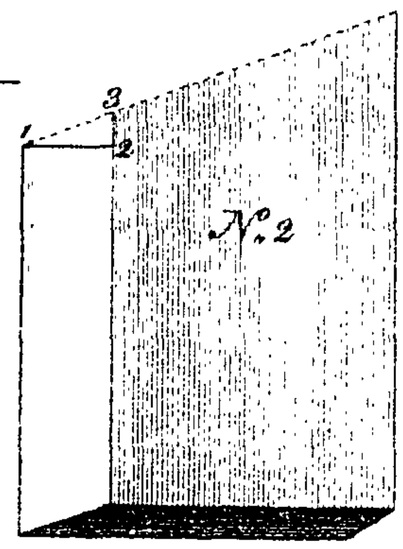
N°5. pl.2.

Plate A

Conic Sections.

Fig. F





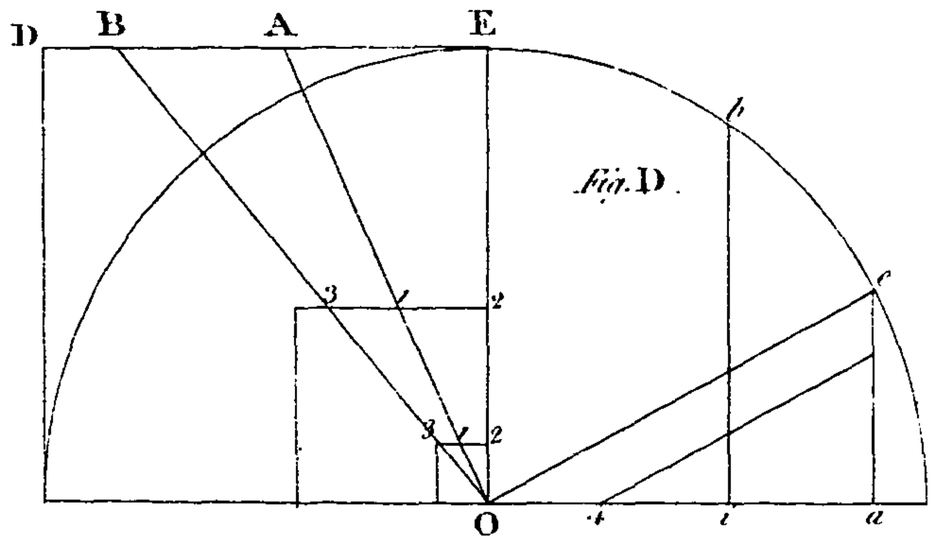


Fig. D.

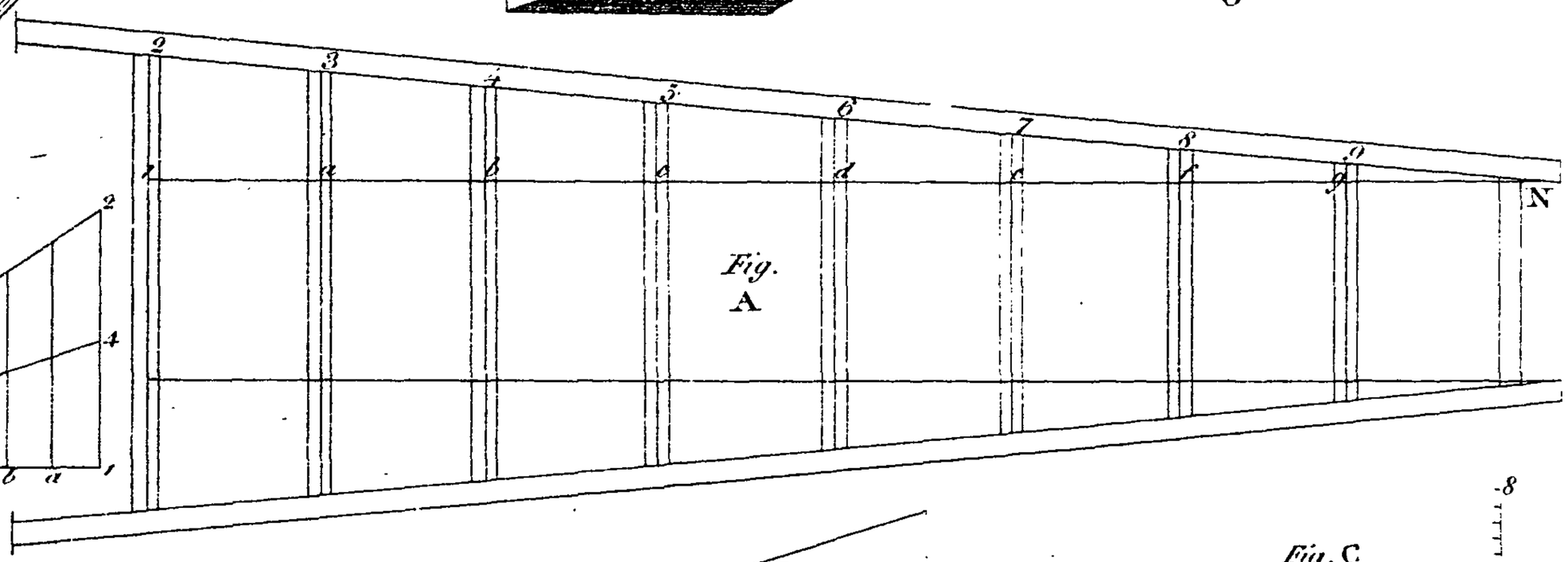


Fig. A

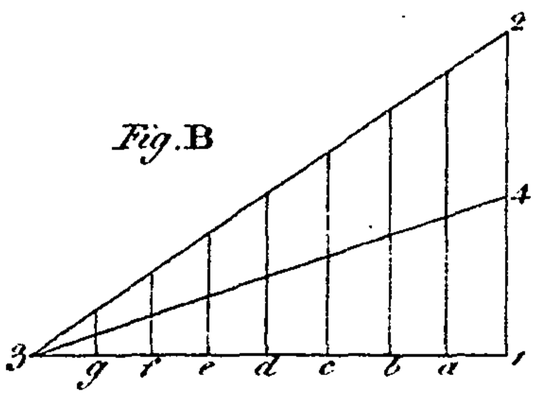


Fig. B

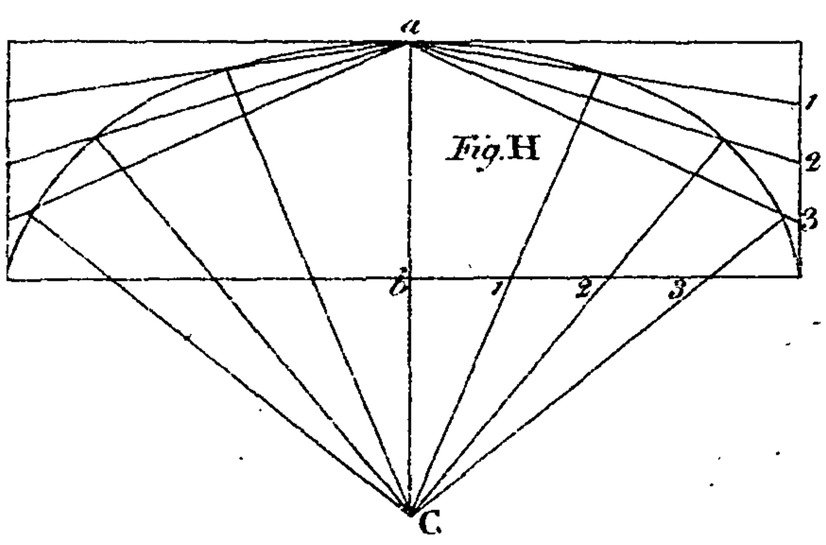


Fig. H

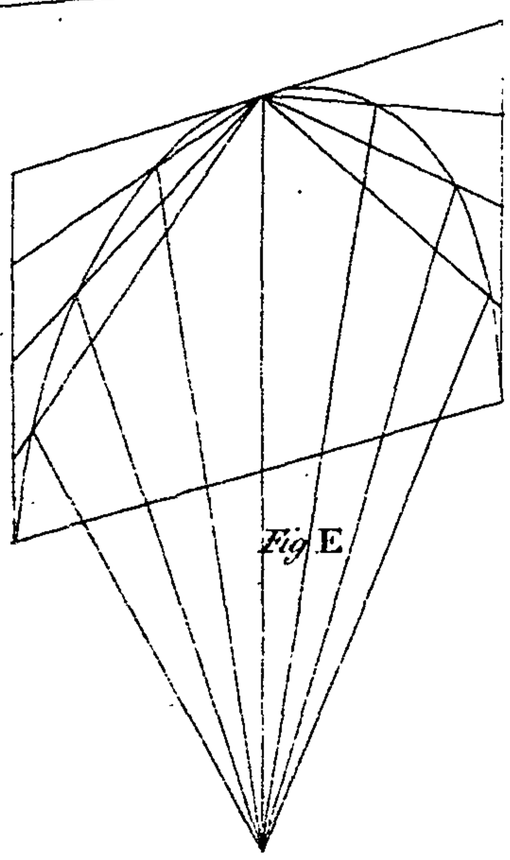


Fig. E

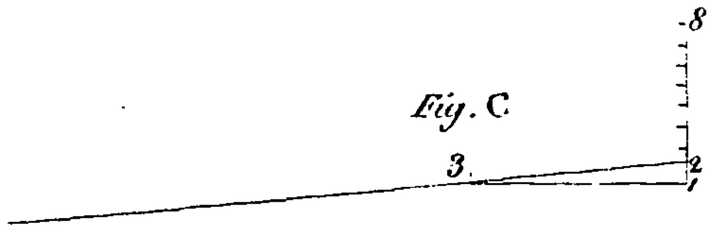
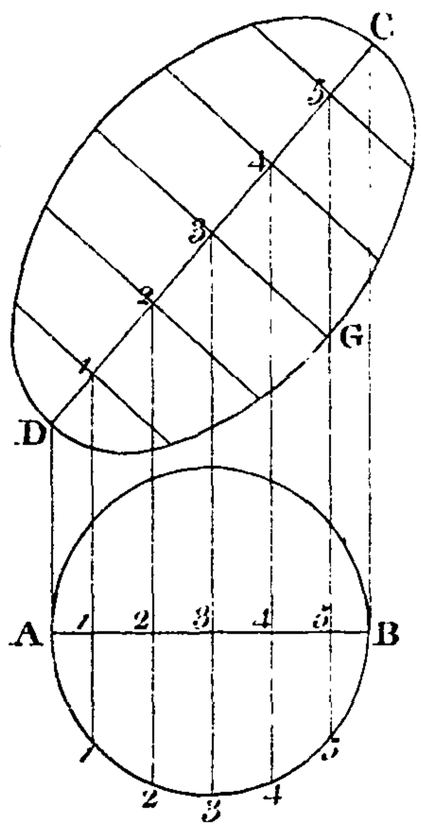


Fig. C



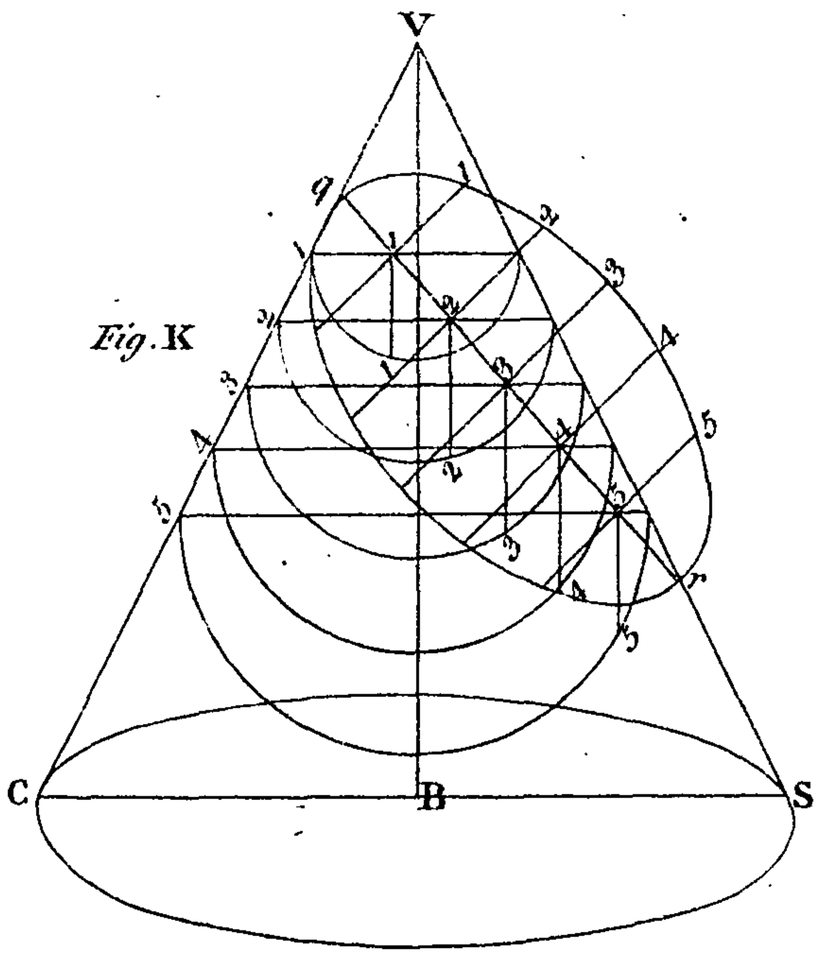


Fig. K

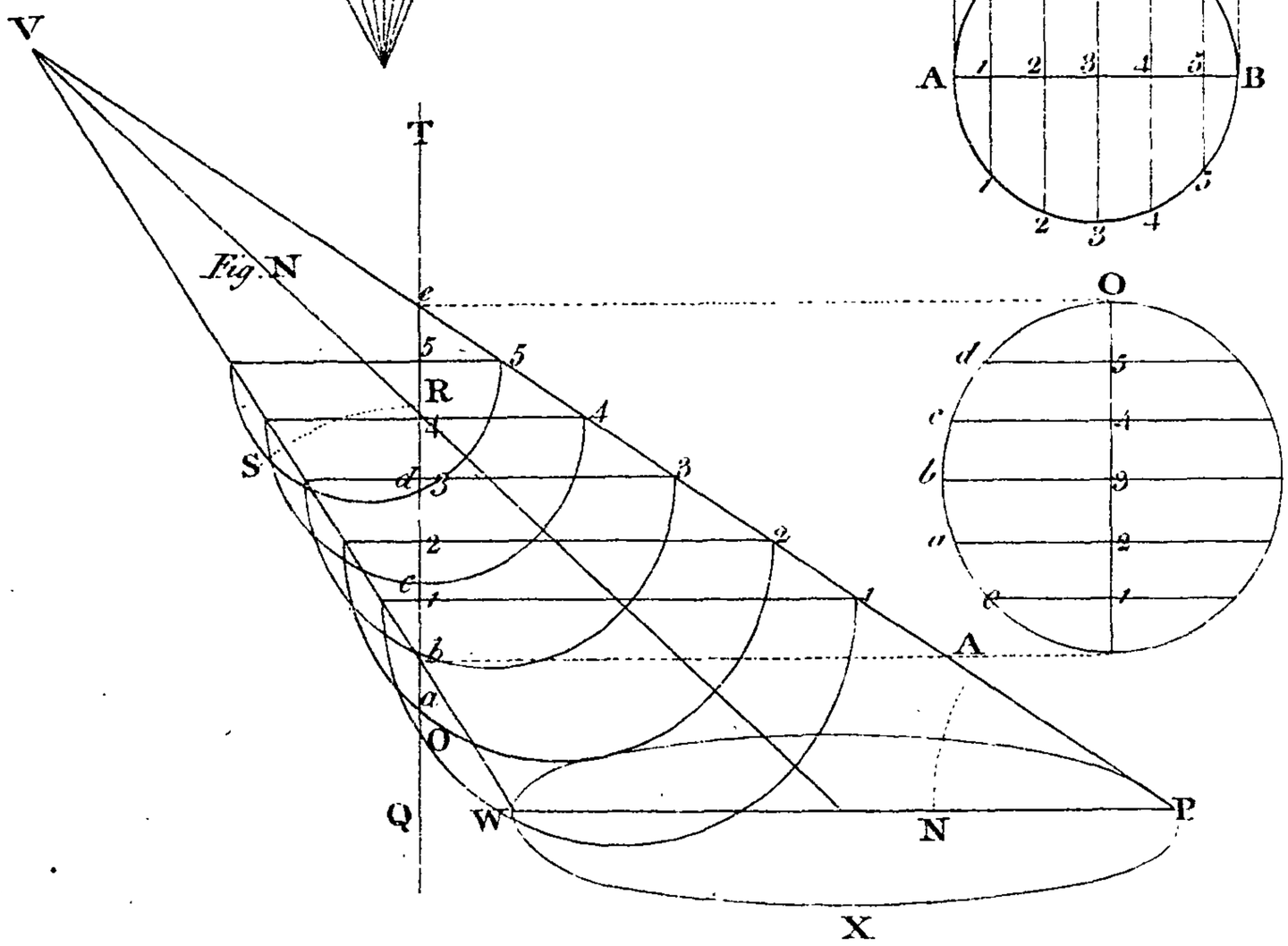


Fig. N

T. Sherratton del. G. Terry Sculp.

Published as the Act directs by G. Terry. June 1 1794.

Plate 5

Of mitring a Comb Tray, or any thing of the same nature.

Fig. 32.

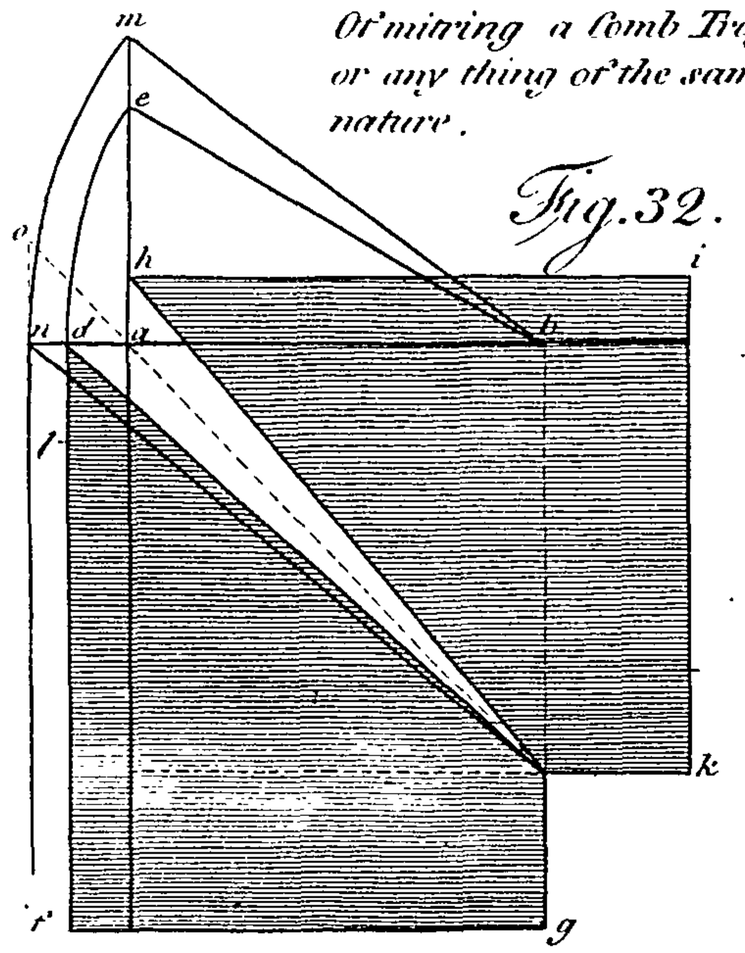
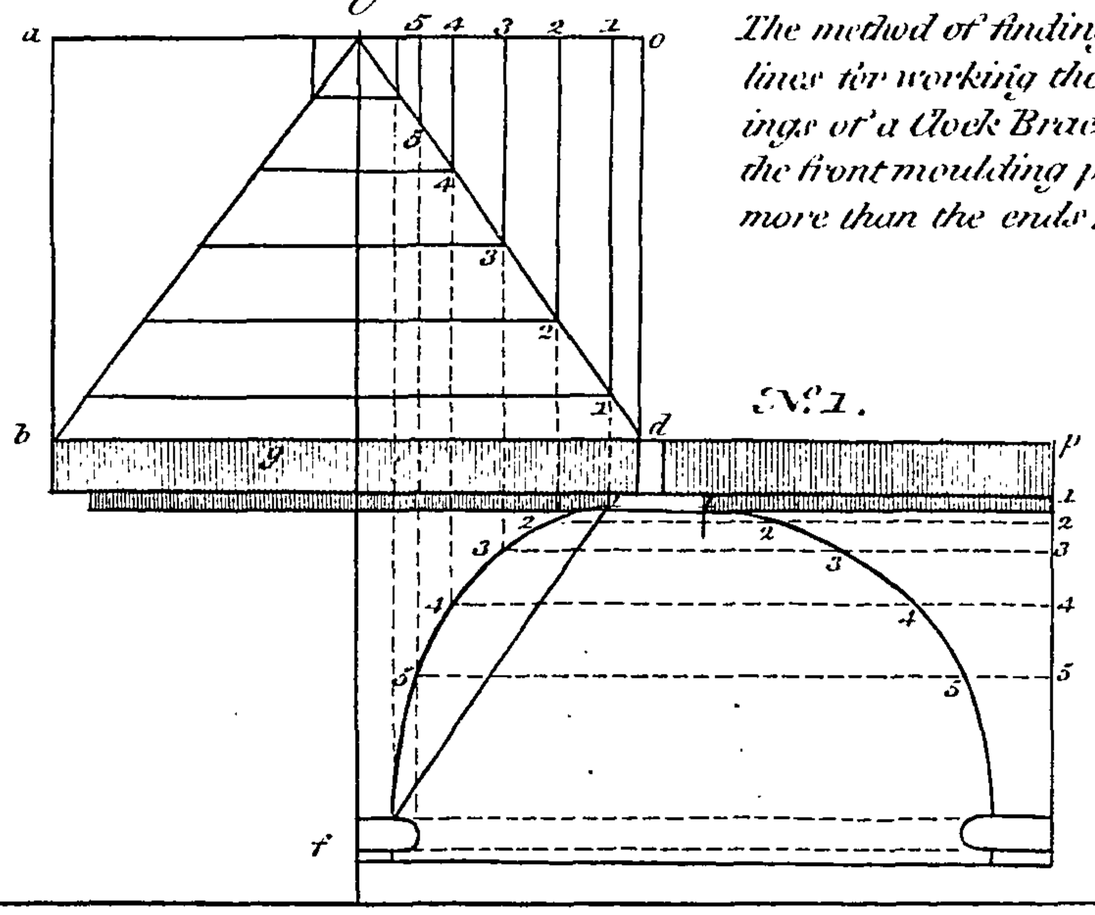


Fig. 33.

The method of finding the lines for working the mouldings of a Clock Bracket, when the front moulding projects more than the ends.



The method of working and mitring raking mouldings.

Fig. 34.

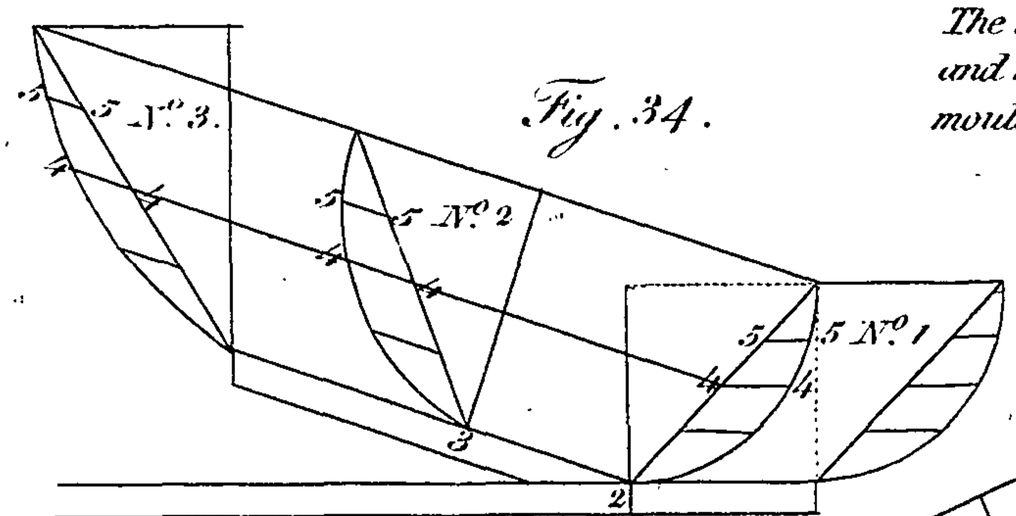


Fig. 35.

Half of the Tuscan Pediment

Fig. 36.

I Sheraton del.t

I Cooke sculp.t

Pub.d as the Act directs. Nov.r 12 1791 by G Terry.

Of the Origin and Antiquity of the Orders of Architecture.

SOME diſtinction is to be regarded between the origin and antiquity of the orders, and that of architecture * in general.

The firſt ideas of architecture in general, may perhaps be traced from thoſe rude and irregular methods of building tents and huts which were the firſt habitations of man.

But in theſe ſtructures, nature and neceſſity were their only guides, unleſs they obtained ſome inſtructions or hints from the manner in which birds build their neſts, as Vitruvius conjectures.

We are informed by Moſes, that Jabal was the father of ſuch as dwelt in tents: and I ſuppoſe it is meant, that he was the firſt maker of them likewiſe. And I further imagine, that the city which Enoch built about that time was an aſſemblage of thoſe tents, perhaps ſurrounded by a mud wall, and ſo obtained the name of a city in thoſe days; for it can ſcarcely be thought that they had at that time either diſcovered ſtone, or knew how to make brick, and much leſs how to put them together in houſes, ſo as to form a city according to thoſe mentioned in after times.

But, however, very early after the flood of Noah, we read of an attempt made to build a city and tower whoſe top was to reach the heavens; meaning to be a very high one. Their materials were then brick, and ſlime for mortar. And when we conſider how great their deſign was, and how ſucceſsfully they proceeded until the Divine Hand ſtopt them, we muſt neceſſarily infer,

* Architecture implies the ſcience of building in general, which gives rules for deſigning and raiſing all kinds of ſtructures or edifices. It is from the word architect, compounded of ἀρχος, *archos*, the principle; and τεκτων, *tecton*, the chief artificer, or one who gives rules for, and directs the management of, buildings.

that

that men in theſe days began to know the rules of building, and of courſe this may be conſidered the origin of regular architecture *.

But the origin of that part of architecture called the *five Orders*, is of much later date than this. They appear to me, and it has been the opinion of ſome great architects, that they owe their beginning to Solomon's Temple.

I do not mean that pillars or columns were never in uſe before this famous building was erected, but only that we do not read of certain proportions aſſigned to their height and diameter till thoſe given to Jachin and Boaz, the names of two pillars ſet up at the entrance of the porch of this building.

We read of pillars above four hundred years before the days of Solomon: and we read alſo, that theſe pillars had chapiters and fillets of gold and ſilver; but no mention is made of their height † or diameter; yet ſomething may be known as to the intercolumniation of theſe pillars, for there were twenty pillars ſtanding in an hundred cubits, the length of each ſide of the tabernacle. See Exod. xxxvi. 38. and xxxviii. 11. However, as there are no proportions aſſigned to theſe pillars, I preſume we cannot date the origin of the orders here; yet I think there would be more plauſibility in it than what ſome have advanced on this ſubject.

* This tower was 660 feet high at the time of the confuſion of tongues; and from the proportion of its baſe, which was not quite ſo large as the Egyptian pyramids before mentioned, ſee p. 60, it may be preſumed that they did not intend literally to make the tower reach to heaven, even according to their own conception of that place, otherwiſe they muſt have aſſumed a more extenſive baſe or area for that purpoſe. It is probable, therefore, that this prodigious building was brought to a finiſh at this height. Profane hiſtory informs us, that it benched in from the bottom to the top in a ſpiral form, and the platforms occaſioned by the benching ſerved as a ſtaircaſe, which was ſufficiently broad for horſes and carts to turn upon it. The ſpaces between each benching was 75 feet high, and contained many ſtately rooms, with arched roofs; which is a further proof of their ſkill in architecture. And when it is conſidered that their bricks were 18 feet long, 14 wide, and $7\frac{1}{2}$ thick, they muſt have poſſeſſed ſome knowledge of the mechanic powers, in order to move ſuch ponderous ſtones and raiſe them ſo high. About this tower was afterwards built the great city Babylon, the glory of the Chaldeans.

† Joſephus indeed ſays, "Every pillar was five cubits in height;" and he ſpeaks alſo of five pillars at the entrance of the tabernacle, that were gilded, and ſtood on baſes of braſs.

The pillars which Solomon erected at the entrance of the temple were of the following proportion, according to the language of the ſcriptures:—Their height was eighteen cubits, or twenty-ſeven feet without their chapiters or capitals; and their chapiters were five cubits; which in all makes thirty-four and an half feet in height. A line of twelve cubits did compaſs either of them about, conſequently their diameter was ſix feet; and had theſe pillars been one cubit higher, their proportion would have anſwered exactly to the original Doric * Order, whoſe height was equal to ſix of its diameters.

Beſides the likeneſs or affinity between the Doric column and thoſe ſet up by Solomon, will ſtill appear more ſtriking, if we conſider that the ancient Doric had no plinth or baſe; for there does not appear to have been any at the foot of Jachin and Boaz, otherwiſe I think they would have been mentioned as well as the chapiters. But theſe columns are ſaid to have fillets, whoſe thickneſs was four fingers, and they were made hollow. See Jer. lii. 21.

Theſe fillets ſeem to anſwer well enough to the Doric necking at the top of the ſhaft. They were hollow, and of four fingers thickneſs or projection, which is nearly the ſame projection as would be required in the necking of a Doric column of the dimenſion of Jachin and Boaz.

There is another particular that may be mentioned which alſo bears ſome likeneſs to the Doric, and that is the ſize of the porch or entrance, on each ſide of which theſe maſſy pillars were placed.

This opening was twenty cubits in width, and forty in height, anſwering to the proportion of the Doric frontiſpiece or door.

And laſtly.—The lily-work on the chapiters, and the rows of pomegranates round about the chapiters, were, in my opinion, as likely to have given

* For ſome time after the firſt invention of this order, the proportion of its diameter to the height was as the length of a man's foot is to the height of his whole body, which at that time was reckoned to be one ſixth part; but afterwards they added another diameter, and at length brought it to eight.

riſe

riſe to the ancient Doric order, and more ſo than the manner of building ancient huts, by placing trunks of trees on each ſide, by which the roof was ſupported.

Yet I will not ſay but trunks of trees thus employed, might firſt give exiſtence to the notion of ſome kind of a pillar to be uſed in the firſt buildings of brick or ſtone, while, at the ſame time, I am inclined to think that columns were never reduced to any order till the building of Solomon's temple by God's appointment.

However it is not to be underſtood as if the regular Doric order could be exactly copied from Solomon's pillars, but only ſuch hints and proportions taken from them as ſerved in after times to compoſe the firſt order of architecture.

Nor can it be thought that the firſt compoſition of the Doric column had theſe triglyphs and mutules which we now ſee it has, till after it was reduced to its proper form and character. It is therefore thought to have been more ſimple and maſſy in its primitive ſtate; ſomething like the Tuſcan order. Some imagine, and not without ground, that the Tuſcan, nearly as we have it now, was the firſt ſtate of the Doric.

Vitruvius ſpeaks of a ſtate in which the Doric column was in before it was reduced to order; for, treating of the antiquity of the Doric, that it was uſed in the temple of Juno, at Argos, he ſays, that, "the ſame order was alſo uſed in the other cities of Achaia, before the laws of its ſymmetry were eſtabliſhed."

This indicates that it was in a more rude ſtate before it was employed in that famous temple.

But if that temple, dedicated to Juno, was erected in the days of Dorus, the king of Argos, as Vitruvius intimates, it would be rather incredible to think that the Doric order ſhould be in exiſtence in times ſo long before

Solomon *: and, upon ſuch a ſuppoſition, thoſe who maintain that the firſt idea of the orders was derived from Solomon's temple, would be groſsly miſtaken.

A certain author, after quoting Vitruvius on the ſubject, ſays, " Such is the account given by Vitruvius of the origin of improvements in the proportion of columns. Had improvements, however, exiſted in ſuch early times, Homer †, who was greatly poſterior to them, would certainly have made mention of ſomething of the kind; but in all his writings he gives us no account of any thing like columns of ſtone, but uſes a word which would rather incline us to think that his columns were nothing more than bare poſts."

This account looks as if there had been neither ſtone columns nor temples till after Homer's days. For if the architecture among the Greeks in thoſe days conſiſted in bare poſts, we cannot ſuppoſe that thoſe temples which they dedicated to their gods were compoſed of columns of marble, or other ſtone, otherwiſe he would not have left them unnoticed. It would rather ſeem as if the Greeks had borrowed their firſt notions of temples to worſhip their gods in, and alſo their architecture to adorn them with, from that at Jeruſalem.

Agreeable to this view, the above quoted author ſays: " It is remarkable that improvements in architecture did not take place in any nation till after, or about, the time that Jeruſalem was taken by Nebuchadnezzar. The grandeſt buildings amongſt the Aſſyrians ſeem to have owed their exiſtence to this monarch; and it can ſcarcely be imagined that he would not endeavour to imitate the architecture of Solomon's temple, to which, by his conqueſt of Jeruſalem, he had full acceſs ‡."

* Dorus muſt have been, at leaſt, four hundred years before Solomon, if he reigned at Argos before the expedition of the Argonauts.

† Homer was born above nine hundred years before the Chriſtian æra.

‡ According to Prideaux, Nebuchadnezzar took Jeruſalem ſix hundred and five years before Chriſt.

Upon

Upon the whole then, I think it will agree better to the above facts, if we affirm that the Doric order had its name and improvements from the Dorians, who occupied the country of Doris, a Grecian diſtrict, of which Dorus had formerly been king.

The Ionic order ſucceeded the Doric, according to antiquity, and was an improvement from it. It had its name from Ion, the Grecian country or diſtrict where it was invented, and firſt employed in the temple of Diana at Epheſus. By the accounts we have of this temple, architecture muſt have arrived to a conſiderable degree of perfection in theſe times. This temple at Epheſus, the metropolis of Ion, was about four hundred and forty feet long, and two hundred and thirty feet wide; was ſupported by one hundred and twenty-ſeven pillars of the above order, and about ſixty-two feet high. It was built in marble, and decorated with the fineſt ornaments; and, as the hiſtory ſays, exhibited the moſt perfect model of this order.

The Corinthian comes next in order, which has its name from Corinth, a city or chief town in Achaia, a Grecian diſtrict or territory. In this city the Corinthian order had its origin. The account which Vitruvius * gives of it is ſomewhat curious and entertaining; I ſhall therefore tranſcribe it.

"The third," ſays he, "which is called Corinthian, is in imitation of the delicacy of virgins; for the limbs are formed more ſlender, and are more graceful in attire. The capital is reported to have been thus invented:—a Corinthian maid, being ſeized with a diſorder, died; after her interment, her nurſe collected, and diſpoſed in a baſket, the toys which pleaſed her when alive, carried it to the tomb, placed it on the top, and, that it might endure the longer in the open air, covered it with a tile. The baſket chanced to be placed over the root of an acanthus, which being thus depreſſed in the middle,

* Vitruvius was an ancient Roman architect, who wrote a ſyſtem of architecture, it is thought, in the time of Titus, the eleventh Roman emperor, who reigned in the year 79, to whom he dedicates the work.

the

the leaves and ſtalks in the ſpring ſeaſon iſſued outward, and grew round the ſides of the baſket; and being preſſed by the weight at the angles of the tile, were made to convolve at the extremities, like volutes. At that time Callimachus, who, for his ingenuity and excellence in the arts, was by the Athenians named Catatechnos *, happening to paſs by this tomb, took notice of the baſket, and being pleaſed with the delicacy of the foliage growing around it, as well as the novelty of the form, made ſome columns near Corinth according to this model, and from thence eſtabliſhed the ſymmetry, and determined the proportions, of the Corinthian order."

The Tuſcan order is the fourth in point of antiquity, but in the arrangement of the five orders it is put firſt, on account of its ſimplicity and plainneſs. It had its origin in Tuſcany, a place remarkable in Italy, which was firſt inhabited by the ancient Lydians out of Aſia. Theſe people firſt built temples of this order, and dedicated them to their gods in their new plantations. Vitruvius calls it the ruſtic order, which is conſiſtent enough with what I formerly conjectured, namely, that this order was the firſt ſtate of the Doric column in its moſt antique form. And the circumſtance of its being brought from Aſia by the ancient Lydians, helps to confirm it.

The Compoſite is the laſt. Its name denotes that it was compoſed from the other regular orders.

It is alſo called the Roman order, becauſe it was reduced to its proportional ſtandard in that country.

It does not appear to be ſo ancient as the days of Vitruvius, as he makes no mention of it. He ſpeaks of various capitals that might be introduced on the Corinthian column, but does not name them. "There are," ſays he, "alſo other kinds of capitals, called by various names, which are diſpoſed on the ſame columns, and which have no proper ſymmetry or relation to any order of columns that can be named differently; but they are all derived and transferred from the Corinthian †."

* The firſt of artiſts.

† See Newton's Tranſlation of Vitruvius.

Theſe

Theſe words, and the liberty they convey in favour of the compoſition of varieties of capitals to the Corinthian column, it may be preſumed, gave riſe to the compoſition of this order, which, in any other reſpect but the capital, is nearly the ſame with the Corinthian. Some architects, however, do not incline to ſpeak well of it, becauſe it appears to have been picked and culled from all the other orders, and is ſometimes badly arranged, on account of the liberty both taken and granted in this ſpecies of architecture. However, in my opinion, it forms a very beautiful appearance when rightly managed.

The original inventor of the compoſite order is thought to have been one Serlio.

Having now ſaid as much on the antiquity and origin of the five orders, as is neceſſary to give a workman a proper view of the ſubject, I ſhall now proceed to deſcribe the proportions and character of each diſtinct order, and likewiſe explain the names of each moulding.

Of the Tuſcan Order. See Plate VIII.

THE Tuſcan order is the moſt ſimple of any of the orders. It is alſo diſtinguiſhable from the other, on account of its ſtrong and maſſive appearance. On which account, in the figurative ſtyle, it has obtained the name of the ruſtic order; and in conformity to this character it is generally employed in farm-houſes, ſtables, and other buildings in the like ſituations. It is, however, ſometimes uſed in grander buildings, where ornaments are not required, but where ſtrength is the principal object.

The proportion of the Tuſcan column, with its pedeſtal and entablature, is as follows:

Divide

Divide the whole height, for the complete column, into five, as the figure ſhews. Take one of theſe parts for the pedeſtal as at 1, whence the line is directed that determines the height of the pedeſtal. From this line divide the whole height again into five equal parts, as the ſecond upright ſcale ſhews. Take one of theſe parts for the whole entablature, and the remaining four is the height of the column, including its baſe and capital. Divide the height aſſigned for the column into ſeven equal parts, as is ſhewn on the third upright ſcale. Take one of thoſe ſeven parts for the inferior or lower diameter of the column, not including the projections of the baſe, but ſimply confined to what is commonly called the ſhaft, or cylindrical part of the column. Take half of the inferior diameter, and give it for the height of the baſe, and alſo for the height of the capital, not including the aſtragal at the neck. Proceed next to draw a module, by which to determine the ſmaller parts of the column, with the heights and projections of its members, as ſpecified by the upright and horizontal numbers oppoſite to each member on the large ſcale.

Draw a right line at pleaſure. Lay on this line a ſpace equal to one diameter. Divide it into ſix equal parts, and draw perpendiculars from each diviſion indefinitely. Lay on five equal diviſions on any of the perpendicular lines, and draw parallels through each.

Draw then two oblique lines, meeting in a point at half of the firſt diviſion 10, which ſpace will then be divided into ten, at the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, &c. ſo that any number of minutes up to ſixty may be accurately taken from this ſcale.

I have alſo ſhewn a module at the bottom of the larger pedeſtal, which is equal to two of the ſmall modules, from which all the minutes are taken and placed as before mentioned, as the Plate of itſelf will make ſufficiently clear by inſpection.

A module is conſidered by ſome as only half a diameter, but others extend it to a whole diameter; which laſt I have adopted, as being the moſt ſimple and entire, and therefore more eaſily remembered by workmen.

Vitruvius uſes the large module, reckoning the proportions of the column by the thickneſs of the lower diameter of its ſhaft. And I do not ſee but it anſwers as nearly to the different parts of a column as the ſemidiameter does, or as that of twenty minutes, which has been contrived by ſome.

The projection of each member is alſo denoted by aliquot, or equal parts; and each part is equal to a minute taken from the ſcale; ſo that if the reader ſhould find any little inaccuracies in the aliquot parts, which it is almoſt impoſſible to avoid in ſuch ſmall ſcales, he may correct theſe by the whole number. And obſerve, that the cornice of the pedeſtal projects 11½ minutes, which is the whole ſum of the projection of each member, denoted by 2, 4, 3, 2½, and which amount to 11½. The baſe of the pedeſtal projects the ſame. Its fillet is two parts; the ogee, or cyma-recta, ſeven and an half; and the ſquare two; which is in all eleven and an half. The baſe of the column projects ten; the conge, or apophyge, four; and the torus ſix. The upper conge of the neck of the capital three, and its aſtragal one and an half. The capital, in all, projects twelve minutes; the firſt fillet two, the ovalo ſeven, the abacuo one before it, and the upper fillet two. The whole projection of the architrave is five, the upper facia one and an half, and its fillet projects three and an half. The whole cornice projects forty-five minutes, and its height is equal to its projection.

Of the Diminution of Columns.

Some diminiſh columns by a right line drawn from the inferior to the ſuperior diameter; but this is very jejune and inſipid, becauſe when columns are finiſhed ſtrictly in this mode, they appear too ſlender in the middle, and loſe that graceful effect which an eaſy curve line produces.

It appears that ſome of the ancients diminiſhed the ſhafts of their columns by a curve line one third from the baſe, as in Plate VIII. whilſt others of them carried this point to an extreme, by drawing a regular curve line from the

the inferior to the ſuperior diameter, producing a diameter in the middle of the ſhaft larger than that at the bottom. This notion has been charged upon Vitruvius, becauſe he ſpeaks of " an augmentation that ſhould be made in the middle of columns;" but Mr. Newton, in a note in his book of Vitruvius, has cleared him of this charge. See page 53. And Sir William Chambers takes notice of an author who ſuppoſes the " addition mentioned by Vitruvius to ſignify nothing but the increaſe towards the middle of the column, occaſioned by changing the ſtraight line which at firſt * was in uſe, for a curve."

" This ſuppoſition," ſays Sir William, " is extremely juſt, and founded on what is obſerved in the works of antiquity; where there is no inſtance of columns thicker in the middle than at the bottom, though all have the ſwelling hinted at by Vitruvius, all of them being terminated by curves."

The method that this gentleman recommends as moſt proper for diminiſhing columns, is by an inſtrument which Nicomedes invented to deſcribe the firſt conchoid; for this, being applied at the bottom of the ſhaft, performs at once both the ſwelling and the diminution; giving ſuch a graceful form to the column, that it is univerſally allowed to be the moſt perfect practice hitherto diſcovered.

This method has been adopted in the diminution of the Ionic, Compoſite, and Corinthian columns in Plate X, XI, and XII; becauſe theſe are the moſt delicate orders.

But, in the Tuſcan and Doric ſhafts, I have followed the common method; becauſe theſe robuſt columns will admit of more apparent, or more ſudden, diminution than the other three.

The moſt common method is as follows. See Plate VIII.

* This means, before the orders of architecture had received much improvement.

Divide

Divide the ſhaft into three equal parts, and draw a diameter at the firſt part. On this diameter deſcribe a ſemicircle, and divide the ſemidiameter into five equal parts. From the fourth diviſion raiſe a perpendicular line which determines the upper diameter and cuts off a portion of the ſemicircle, which is to be divided into four on the curve. Laſtly, divide the upper two thirds of the ſhaft into four equal parts, anſwerable to the four equal parts on the curve; and from each of theſe diviſions, or parts, on the curve, draw right lines to the correſponding diviſions on the ſhaft, by which four points will be found through which the diminiſhing curve line is to paſs, and, if accurately drawn, will appear ſmooth. Obſerve, this diminution brings the column, at its ſuperior diameter, to forty-eight minutes; but in all the other orders there are uniformly fifty minutes allowed.

Some architects, however, contend for various degrees of diminution, according to the character of each column. They aſſign to the Tuſcan one fourth, to the Doric one fifth, to the Ionic one ſixth, to the Compoſite and Corinthian one ſeventh, of the inferior or largeſt diameter.

This makes no difference, however, in the method of diminution above taught; for if the Tuſcan be diminiſhed one fourth, then divide a ſemidiameter into four parts, and take one of thoſe for the diminution on each ſide, and proceed as before; ſo alſo of the other.

I ſhall now quote a few words from Sir William Chambers on this ſubject, by which the reader, if he pleaſe, may form his judgment. He ſays, "In the remains of antiquity, the quantity of diminution is various; but ſeldom leſs than one eighth of the inferior diameter of the column, nor more than one ſixth of it. The laſt of theſe is by Vitruvius eſteemed the moſt perfect. Vignola has employed it in four of his orders, as I have done in all of them, there being no reaſon for diminiſhing the Tuſcan column more in proportion to its diameter than any of the reſt."

How

How to diminiſh any Column, from the inferior to the ſuperior Diameter, by means of an Elliptic Curve not exceeding in its Swell the inferior Diameter.

Fig. 1. Plate XIII. is Vignola's method of diminiſhing a column, the principles of which I have taken from Sir William Chambers' Treatiſe on Architecture, but have here deſcribed it in my own way, as follows.

Determine the height of the ſhaft as at *c d*, and draw a line for its axis. Next, draw *b a* at pleaſure, and at right angles with the axis. Let *b c* be half the inferior, and *n d* half the ſuperior diameter. Take *b c*, half the under diameter, and with the compaſſes place it from *n*, the extreme point of the upper diameter, to any point where it falls on the axis of the column, as at *o*. From *n* draw a line through *o*, and proceed till it cut the baſe line *b a* at *a*. Draw a line at pleaſure from *b*, the extreme point of the inferior diameter, parallel with *c d*; and divide this line into a number of equal parts, as 2, 4, 6, 8, &c. From *a*, the center, draw a ray or right line to each of theſe diviſions, which will paſs obliquely through the axis, in proportion to their diſtance from the inferior diameter *b c*. Take then *b c*, half the diameter, and place it from 1 to 2, from 3 to 4, and ſo on of all the reſt. Laſtly, through each of theſe points draw a curve line, and the diminution of one ſide of the column will be thus completed, as is ſhewn by the dotted line on the right hand. To determine the other ſide of the ſhaft, nothing is wanted but to draw a ſquare line acroſs the ſhaft from each point, and place the diſtance 2 *x* to *x y*, and *t* 4 to *t* 9, and ſo on of the reſt.

Fig. 2. is Nicomedes' inſtrument, which, as it is here deſcribed, is intended to perform the ſame diminution as has been above explained by lines.

This inſtrument is made in the manner of a ſquare, with a ſtay to keep it firm, as at R; *b p* is a dovetail groove cut in the center of the upright piece, as T; *b a* is its baſe, in which alſo there is a dovetail groove as at *u*; *i w* is a

ruler, or trammel, which moves by the dovetail-piece Y in the groove *b p*, by which the diminution is performed; *g b* is a plain groove cut through the trammel, and *g* is a center pin which guides the trammel as *i* paſſes from *p* to *b*; when *i* is at *b*, it is evident that *b* will be at *g* the center pin, becauſe *b i* is equal *g b*; alſo *g i* is equal *o a* in Fig. 1. and found in the ſame manner. The interval, or ſpace, between the center *i* and *k* at the end of the trammel, is equal to the inferior diameter *b m*, or *b c*, Fig. 1. As, therefore, the center *i* paſſes to *b*, the center *k*, in which a pencil is fixed, cuts all the oblique lines *j j* tending to *g*, in the ſame points as at 2, 4, 6, 8, &c. of Fig. 1. and at the ſame time draws a perfect curve; at leaſt it is ſo when the center is not nearer to *b*, the baſe of the column, than *g* is; and it cannot be nearer, according to the quantity of the diminution always aſſigned by architects; but if *g* be moved towards the baſe *b*, in proportion thereto the curve at the top will become too ſtraight. This, however, is no reaſonable objection to the uſe of this inſtrument when applied to columns; for certainly it muſt ever be conſidered an advantage to be able to draw a curve by an inſtrument, which otherwiſe muſt be drawn by the hand through certain points, which it is not eaſy to do in the whole length of a column; and, though it be not abſolutely perfect when uſed for any thing that requires much more diminution than a column, yet we affirm it to be without defect in that caſe, and to exceed any other method yet publiſhed.

Laſtly, in order to make this inſtrument anſwer for ſhafts of various ſizes, the plain groove *g b* muſt be lengthened each way to *v* and *w* at pleaſure. The upright *p b*, and the baſe piece N *a*, muſt alſo be proportionably lengthened; and if the center pin *g* be fixed in a moveable piece to ſlide each way in the groove *u*, and fixed at any certain place by a ſcrew, as may be required, then it is evident that the inſtrument may be ſo conſtructed as to anſwer columns of any dimenſion.

Of the principal Parts of a Column, and the Names of each Member.

THE principal parts of an entire order are three; the pedeſtal, ſhaft, and entablature.

The

The pedeſtal is the lowermoſt part of an order, comprehended between *y* and F, ſee Plate VIII. The column is the middle part of it, including the whole ſpace between the pedeſtal and top of the capital. The entablature is the uppermoſt part of the whole, and contains every member between *m*, the top of the capital, and *a*.

Theſe principal parts are again ſubdivided as follows. The pedeſtal contains the plinth F, dado B, and cornice A *z y*. The column includes a baſe, ſhaft, and capital; and the entablature, an architrave, freeze, and cornice.

Thus, in every entire order there are three principal parts, and each of theſe parts are again ſubdivided into three ſmaller parts, which in all make nine; the origin of whoſe names is as follows:

F, the plinth, is from πλινθος, *plinthos*, a brick, or flat ſquare ſtone, on which columns, in their moſt antique ſtate, are ſuppoſed to have ſtood.

B, the dado, or dye, ſo called becauſe it is of a cubic form.

A, *z*, *y*, the cornice, from the Latin *coronis*, a crowning; becauſe the cornice is the finiſhing, or crowning, of the pedeſtal.

x, *w*, *v*, the baſe of the column, from βασις, *baſis*, a foundation or footing for the column.

The ſhaft is that long and ſtraight part of a column comprehended between the baſe and capital.

Some derive it from σκαπτω, *ſkapto*, to dig, in the manner of a well, round and deep, whoſe inſide reſembles the ſhape of a pillar; and ſome from the long part of an arrow or ſhaft *.

* The ſhaft of a mine is the round perpendicular paſſage they make to come at the ore.

q, *p*, *o*, *n*, *m*, the capital, from κεφαλη, *kep[illegible]* or *caput*, t[illegible] the capital is to the column.

l, *k*, *i*, the architrave, ſo called becauſe it is the chief ſupport to the whole entablature, from αρχος, *archos*, chief or principal; and the Latin *trabs*, a beam.

h, the freeze, "from φιβρον, *phibron*, a border or fringe; or which the ancients uſed to call ζωφορος, becauſe it was uſually enriched with the figures of animals."

From *g* to *a* is called the cornice, which is the ſame to the entire order as the pedeſtal cornice is to it. See A, *z*, *y*.

Theſe ſubdiviſions of the entire order have each their particular members, except the dado or freeze; and on the proper arrangement of theſe members depends much of the beauty of the whole.

The names of theſe members are as follows:

a, the fillet, from the French word *fil*, thread.

b, the cymatium, or cyma-recta, from κυματιον, *kumation*, a wave; becauſe this member reſembles the ſwelling and concavity of a wave.

c, The fillet.

d, the corona, or crown; becauſe it is a principal member of the cornice, and ſerves as a ſhelter to the ſmaller members of the entablature.

The hollow part appearing at the under ſide of the corona, is termed the *drip*.

e, the ovolo, or Latin *ovum*, which means an egg; becauſe this member,

in the Ionic, Compoſite, and Corinthian orders, is generally carved in the ſhape of eggs and darts.

g, the cavetto, from the Latin *cavus*, hollow.

i, the fillet, liſtel, or ſquare of the architrave.

k, the upper faſcia; and *l*, the lower ditto.

m, the upper fillet of the capital.

n, the abacus, from αβαξ, *abax*, a ſhelf or table; or, as ſome ſuppoſe, a tile on which the ancient Greek mathematicians ſtrewed duſt to draw their geometrical ſchemes on.

This word ſeems to have been introduced into architecture on the invention of the Corinthian capital, which had its riſe from an acanthus growing round a baſket with a tile laid over it, as has already been deſcribed from Vitruvius. Conſequently——

o, the ovolo, which is the ſucceeding member, muſt be conſidered as the baſket over which this tile was placed.

p, the lower fillet of the capital; and *q*, the freeze of ditto.

r, the aſtragal, from ασραγαλος, *aſtragalos*, a bone of the heel; or the curvature of the heel, which this member reſembles.

s, the upper cincture, which it is thought was anciently an iron hoop, or ferule, to ſecure the ends of the columns, when they were uſed without capitals or baſes.

t, the upper ..onge or apophyge, from *αποφυγη*, *apophuge*, eſcape; becauſe that part of the column appears to fly off.

u, the lower ditto; and *v*, the lower cincture.

w, the torus, from *τορος*, *toros*, a cable, which this member reſembles.

x, the plinth of the baſe.

y, the fillet; and *z*, the corona, as before.

A, the cyma-reverſa, or the cymatium inverted.

D E, the baſe of the plinth, whoſe members are named the ſame as thoſe of the like ſhape already deſcribed.

In every other column ſimilar members have the ſame name, and therefore I ſhall not repeat them over under the other columns. But as there are ſome members in the ſucceeding orders which differ in character and ſhape from thoſe that have been mentioned already, I ſhall here point them out, to prevent future trouble, and to keep this part of the ſubject of architecture together.

The Doric, Plate IX. for inſtance, has a ſcotia marked A, from *σκοτια*, *ſkotia*, darkneſs; becauſe of the ſtrong ſhadow which is produced by its own concavity and the projecting aſtragal above it.

m, the conic drops, ſo called from their figure.

k, the triglyphs, from *τριγλυφος*, *triglyphos*, three engravings. It is a compound of *τρι*, *tri*, three; and *γλυφω*, *glypho*, to carve or engrave; in conformity to which derivation, the triglyph has two entire channels, and two half ones, with three ſpaces between. It is ſaid that the triglyphs peculiar to this

Various Geometrical Solids and their Names

Cube
1

Parallelopipedon
2

Pentangular Prism
3

Hexangular Prism
4

Trapezium Prism
5

Triangular Prism
6

Octahedron
7

Tetrahedron
8

Cylinder
9

Hemisphere
10

Sphere
11

Cone
12

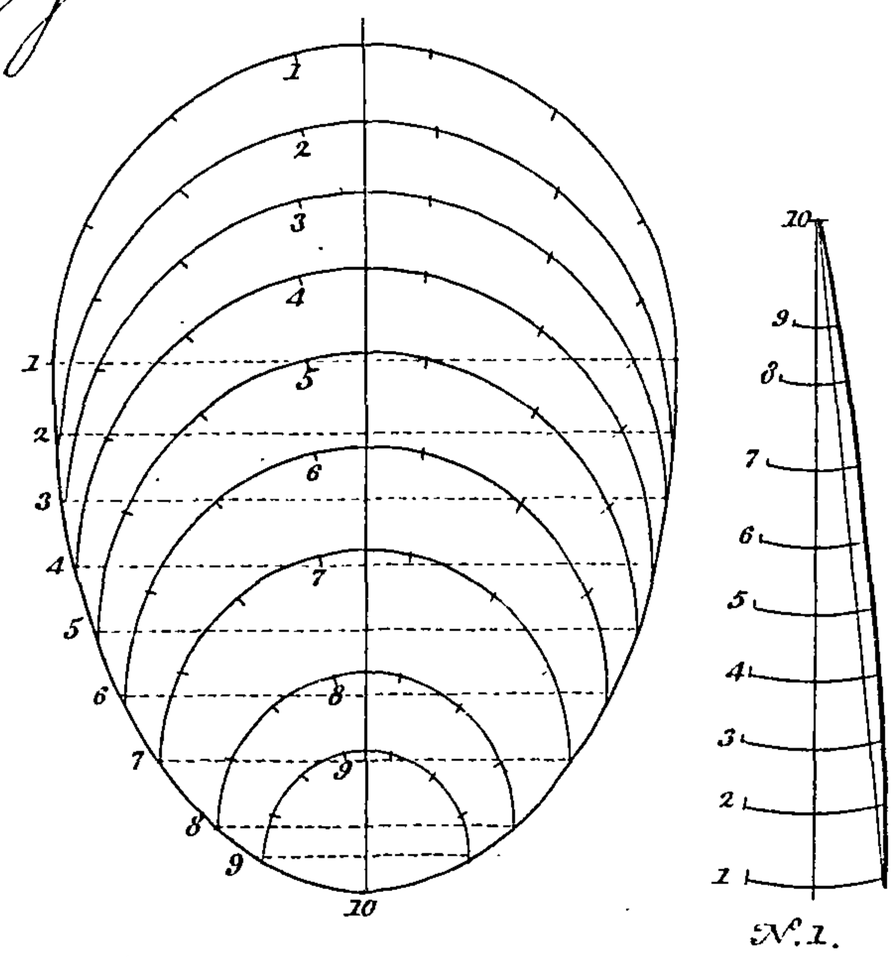
Pyramid
13

Conoid
14

Dodecahedron
15

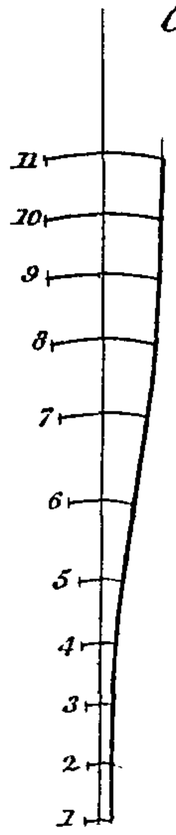
Icosahedron
16

Fig. 32.

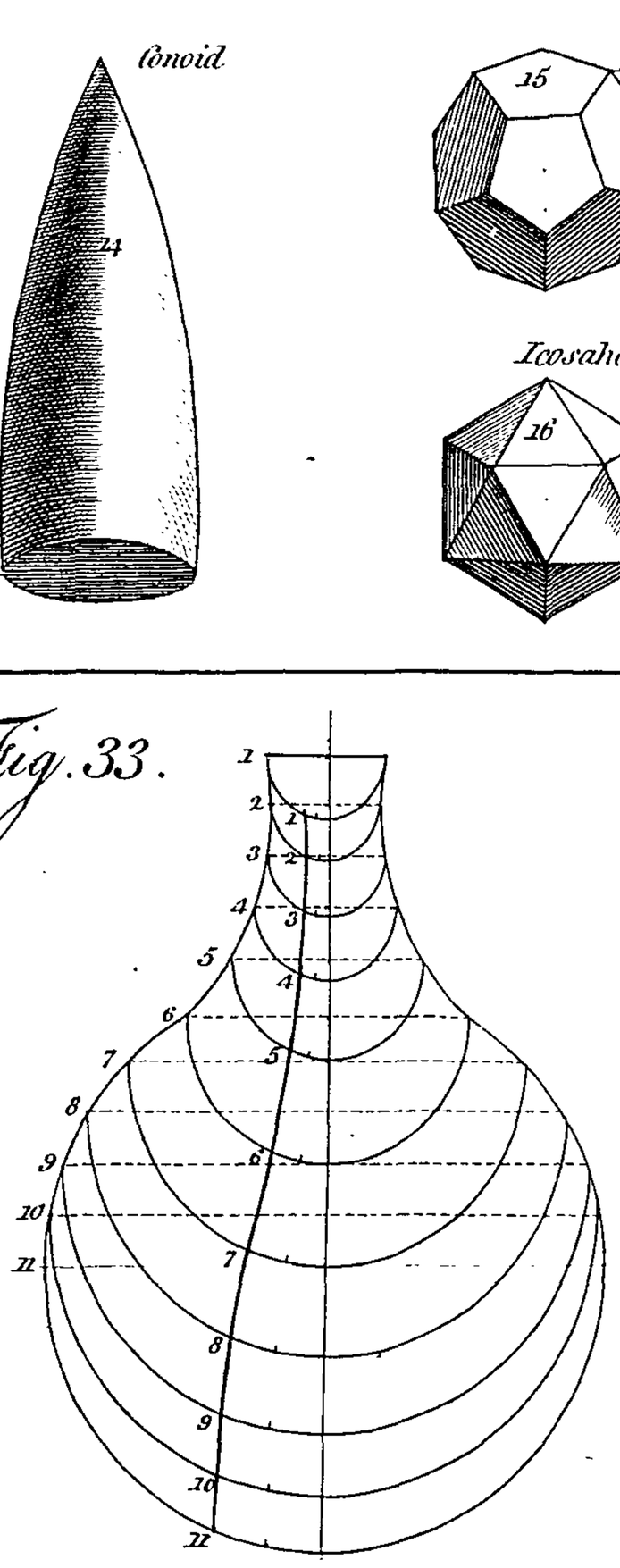


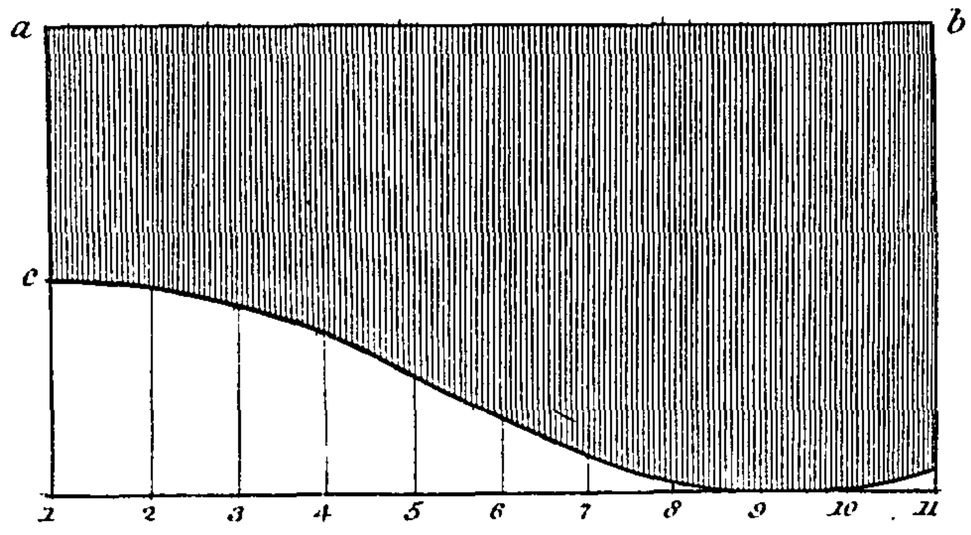
N.o 1.

Fig. 33.



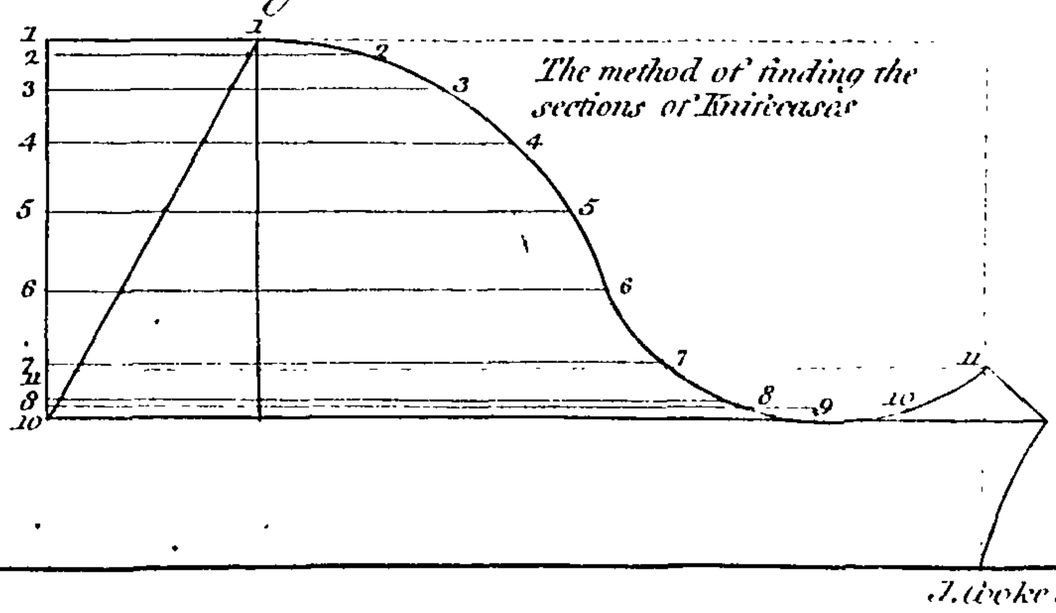
N.o 1.





N.o 1.

Fig. 34.



T. Sherato[illegible] del.t

J. Cooke Sculp.t

Pub.d as the Act directs Sept.r 30. 1791 by T. Sheraton.

this order were firſt uſed in a temple at Delphos dedicated to Apollo, becauſe his lyre was of this ſhape.

e, *f*, *g*, the mutule, from the Latin *mutuli*, modillion; ſo that, properly ſpeaking, the mutules are to the Doric the ſame as the modillions are to the Compoſite and Corinthian orders.

In the Ionic order, Plate X. there are two members which differ from thoſe already mentioned, as *o* the volute, and D the dentils. The volute is ſo called from the Latin *volvendo*, to roll round, as on a ſtaff*. Some call the volutes the horns of the capital, becauſe they pretty much reſemble the twiſting of rams horns.

The dentils are from *dentelli*, teeth, which they reſemble; and the flat member on which theſe dentils are placed is termed *denticulus*.

The Compoſite capital is adorned with acanthus leaves, and the Corinthian with thoſe of the olive.

Of the Character and general Proportions of the Doric Order.

See Plate IX.

THE character of this order is conſidered by architects as grave and robuſt. Hence, in the figurative ſtyle, it is termed the *Herculean Order*; of which order ſome temples were formerly built, and dedicated to Hercules as well as to Apollo.

It is generally uſed in large and ſtrong buildings, as in the gates of cities,

* The term *volume* has the ſame origin, becauſe anciently they formed books by ſheets of written parchment or bark rolled round a ſtick.

and

and at the outſide of churches. And, as its entablature is of a very large projection, it is generally employed in ſituations where ſhelter is required.

The whole height of the entire order is divided into five equal parts; one of which is the height of the pedeſtal. The column and entablature is divided into five alſo; four of theſe parts are aſſigned for the height of the column, including the baſe and capital; theſe four parts are again divided into eight equal parts, one of which is given for the inferior diameter of the ſhaft. The entablature is two diameters in height, its cornice is forty-five minutes, and its projection is one module. The ſhaft ſometimes is left plain, and ſometimes it is fluted. The number of flutes is twenty or twenty-four, and the depth and curvature of them are determined by drawing an arch from the ſummit of an equilateral triangle, whoſe ſides are equal to the breadth of the flutes, as at *o*.

To diminiſh the flutes in proportion to the column, divide the upper two thirds of the ſhaft into four, and find the ſemicircles 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, in the ſame manner as was taught in the Tuſcan order. Then divide each of theſe ſemicircles into ten or twelve, and draw lines from each point or flute perpendicular to the diameter, as 1, 2, 3, 4. Take theſe ſpaces on each diameter and transfer them to their correſpondent diameters on the column, which will give the diminution required at each for the flutes. Laſtly, as the Doric flutes have no fillets, all that remains is to draw a line from each point on the ſeveral diameters from one to the other, and the lines for the flutes will be thus determined. And obſerve, in all the orders a flute muſt be in the center of a column or pilaſter, not a fillet.

The triglyphs are thirty minutes in breadth, ſee Plate XII. and ſixty-two in height, including the conic drops, and the upper and lower fillets, with the ſmall ſquare above the drops. The channels of the triglyphs form a ſquare or right angle, and their breadth is determined by dividing the whole triglyph into twelve equal parts, and aſſigning two of theſe parts for the channels, two for the ſpaces between them, and one for the half channel on each ſide. The conic drops at bottom are alſo equal to two of thoſe parts; and if two parts be

divided into three, one of theſe parts will be the breadth of the upper end of thoſe drops.

The metope, or ſpace between each triglyph, is forty-five minutes, or equal to the height of the triglyph without the fillets. Theſe metopes are ſometimes adorned with ox ſculls or pateras, whoſe projections ought not to be more than the triglyph itſelf.

The breadth of the mutules, without their caps, is equal to the triglyphs without their fillets.

The projection of the mutule is the ſame; and the ſoffits, or underſides of the mutules, are ſometimes ornamented with drops of the ſame kind as thoſe of the triglyphs.

The ſoffits of the corona are alſo enriched with roſes in ſquare, and in lozenge* compartments, cut out of the ſolid, including in their depth the whole relief of the ornaments.

With reſpect to the heights and projections of each member, theſe muſt be learned from the upright and horizontal ſcales, and therefore it will be unneceſſary to ſay more.

Of the Character and general Proportions of the Ionic Order.

See Plate X.

THE Ionic is more ſlender and graceful than the Doric. Its ornaments, in my opinion, are truly elegant, being in a ſtyle of compoſition between the richneſs of the Corinthian and the plainneſs of the Tuſcan order: for which

* In the figure of a rhomb. See Plate II. fig. 3.

reaſon,

reaſon, in the figurative ſtyle, it has been compared to a ſedate matron, in decent rather than rich attire.

This order, being of a grave caſt, is often employed in courts of juſtice, and in the inſide of churches, and other places of that kind: in libraries and colleges alſo, and in all places that belong to arts and letters.

The general proportions are as follow:

The height of the entire order is divided into five equal parts. One part is given for the pedeſtal, and the remaining four are divided into ſix; one of which is aſſigned for the height of the entablature, and the remaining five will be the height of the column, including the baſe and capital. The height aſſigned for the column is then divided into nine, one of which is for the inferior diameter or module.

The cornice is forty-four minutes high, and its projection is equal to its height. The drip in the under ſide of the corona is channeled out one minute deep within two of the front, and one minute before the cyma-reverſa.

The ſhaft of the column is ſometimes fluted and ſometimes plain. Twenty or twenty-four is the number of flutes allowed, and their fillets are one third of the width. The depth of the flutes is determined by a ſemicircle whoſe diameter is equal to the width of them.

How to deſcribe the Ionic Volute.

See Plate XIII. Fig. 4.

Operation.—Draw the perpendicular A *s*, and make A *s* equal to fifteen minutes. On the center *s* deſcribe a circle whoſe diameter ſhall be equal to three and an half minutes. Draw next a geometrical ſquare, having its ſides equal

equal to the radius of the circle, as 1, 2, 3, 4. From the angles 2, 3, draw a right line to the center of the circle, as at 5. Divide the ſide of the ſquare 1.4 into ſix equal parts, as at 5, 9, 12, 8. From 5 draw the line 5.6 parallel to 1.2; draw 6.7 parallel to 2.3, and 7.8 parallel to 3.4. In the ſame manner draw 9, 10, 11, 12, and twelve centers will be found, as at 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12; by which every arch of the volute will be accurately drawn, and each of them coincide with the other—thus: on the center 1 fix one foot of the compaſſes, and extend the other to A: with this opening deſcribe the arch A B. On the center 2, with the compaſſes extended to B, deſcribe the arch B C. On the center 3, with the compaſſes extended to C, deſcribe the arch C D. On the center 4, with the compaſſes extended to D, deſcribe D E, and the volute will be turned once round. For the ſecond time round, begin at center 5, and extend the inſtrument to E, and deſcribe E G. On the center 6, with the compaſſes at G, deſcribe G H. On the center 7, with the compaſſes at H, deſcribe H I. On the center 8, with the compaſſes at I, deſcribe I K, and the volute will be turned twice round.

The third time round begins with center 9, from which extend the compaſſes to K, and deſcribe K M. On the center 10, with the compaſs foot at M, deſcribe M N. On the center 11, with the compaſs foot at N, deſcribe N O. And laſtly, on the center 12, with the compaſs foot at O, deſcribe O P, which will complete the volute three times round.

Obſerve, that the whole volute is compoſed of twelve quadrants of a circle, drawn from twelve centers, and gradually contracted in by means of the diagonal lines in the eye, ſee Fig. 3. Therefore, as there are three complete turnings in the whole convolution, each of theſe turnings is made up of four quadrants.

How to graduate the Liſt or Fillet of the Volute.

MAKE the breadth of the fillet at A equal to two minutes; or, according to ſome, one and ſeven eighths, or one and two thirds. Conſtruct a triangle,

as at Fig. 5, whoſe ſides A P, V P, ſhall be equal to the length of the cathetus, or upright line A P, Fig. 4. Make A V, Fig. 5, equal to half the ſide of the ſquare in the eye of the volute, Fig. 4. Draw then the line L S, Fig. 5, at a diſtance from A V, equal to the breadth of the fillet at A, Fig. 4. Take the length L S from Fig. 5, and place it each way from S in the eye of the volute, or as from V to S in the large eye, Fig. 3. V S is divided into three equal parts, which are ſhewn by the dotted lines; and where theſe dotted lines interſect with the diagonal lines in the ſquare, they will find twelve new centers, which will deſcribe the diminution of the liſt or fillet by the ſame proceſs that was uſed in drawing the exterior contour or outline of the volute above explained.

For the other enrichments of the Ionic capital, ſee the plan in Plate XII. and obſerve, that over every flute in the ſhaft is placed an ove, or egg, in the ovolo.

Of the Character and general Proportions of the Compoſite Order.

See Plate XII.

THIS order is generally placed laſt of the five, becauſe it was a compoſition from them, and of the lateſt invention. But, according to this reaſoning, the Doric ſhould be firſt in order, becauſe it was the moſt ancient; however there are two reaſons which have induced me to place the Compoſite as the fourth. Firſt, becauſe it is the fourth when orders are placed upon orders in large and magnificent buildings, where it is obſervable that the more maſſive and plain columns are neareſt the foundation, as firſt the Tuſcan, ſecond the Doric, third the Ionic, fourth the Compoſite, and laſt the Corinthian. Second, becauſe it is the fourth in point of richneſs and delicacy, for as they decreaſe in ſtrength they increaſe in richneſs of ornaments; their elevation above the ground is therefore regulated both by degrees of ſtrength and richneſs of compoſition. But to give a proper ſanction to this little novelty in the arrange-

ment of the orders, it may be proper to quote ſome great man of this opinion. Sir William Chambers * ſays, " Moſt authors give the laſt place to the Compoſite order, as being the laſt invented, and a compound; which of courſe ought to be preceded by all the ſimples. I have followed Scamozzi's method; his arrangement appearing to me the moſt natural; for his orders ſucceed each other according to their degrees of ſtrength, and in the progreſſion that muſt abſolutely be obſerved whenever they are employed together."

The proportions of the Compoſite, and its enrichments and delicacy, being nearly the ſame with that of the Corinthian order, in the figurative ſtyle it may be properly enough termed one of the virginal orders, and was therefore uſed in ſome temples of the female deities.

It is, however, generally employed in triumphal arches, for as the Romans compoſed this from the Græcian orders, ſo they made uſe of it in thoſe ſituations to expreſs ſymbolically their conqueſts over thoſe nations. I have, therefore, in conformity to this, repreſented a trophy of war in the freeze, which I think would have a good effect placed over the center of each column, with other ornaments between them ſuited to the character of this order.

The Compoſite may alſo be employed in monuments of ſignal events, and in ſuch buildings as are intended to perpetuate the memory of the great actions of particular perſons.

The general proportions of this order are as follows:

The height of the entire order is divided into five, as uſual; one of which is appropriated for the height of the pedeſtal. The remaining four is for the height of the column and entablature. Theſe four parts being again divided into ſix, the upper one is aſſigned for the height of the whole entablature, and the remaining five of theſe parts are for the height of the column, including

* From whoſe excellent Treatiſe on Architecture I have borrowed ſome of the proportions which are found in my orders, as alſo from Mr. Richardſon's.

the baſe and capital. The height of the column is divided into ten equal parts, one of which is for the inferior diameter. The baſe is thirty minutes, without the upper aſtragal; and the capital is ſeventy minutes high, adorned with the acanthus leaves, and volutes drawn by the ſame method as that of the Ionic. The plan of the capital being drawn in the ſame manner as that of the Corinthian, I ſhall explain the particulars of it under that order.

The ſoffit of the corona is divided into ſquare compartments, cut out of the ſolid, decorated with roſes, &c. whoſe relief muſt not project more than the borders which incloſe them. In rich compoſitions the ſoffits of the modillions are alſo ornamented, but their relief is not to exceed the horizontal ſurface, otherwiſe it would greatly injure the effect of the modillion, and render the appearance of the profile of the entablature leſs pleaſing.

Of the Character and general Proportions of the Corinthian Order.

See Plate XII.

THE Corinthian, or laſt order, is certainly the moſt rich and graceful in its appearance of any other. To ſpeak in the figurative ſtyle, it has all the delicacy of a female youth, and has therefore been termed the virginal column or order; on which account it is employed in the apartments of young ladies: but, for its richneſs and grandeur, it obtains a place in the palaces of kings, and the moſt ſuperb buildings. It is alſo uſed in public ſquares, and all places of gaiety.

The general proportions of this order are as follows:

The whole height of the entire order is, as in all the others, divided into five, and one is given for the pedeſtal. The remaining four are then divided into ſix, and one part is aſſigned to the whole height of the entablature. The four parts which are left include the height of the column, with its baſe

and

and capital, and are divided into ten equal parts, one of which is given for the inferior diameter of the ſhaft. The baſe is thirty minutes high without the upper aſtragal, and the capital is ſeventy minutes clear of the necking. The cornice is forty-eight minutes in height, and its projection the ſame.

The ſoffit of the corona is worked in ſquare compartments, as in the Compoſite; but the under ſides of the modillions are ornamented with an olive leaf, the ſame as in the capital. The abacus of the capital is ſometimes fluted, and ſometimes plain. The volutes ſometimes riſe higher than the under ſide of the abacus, but the capital looks beſt when they are bounded by the under ſurface of the abacus.

The plan of the capital, and the poſition of the leaves as they appear on the round ſurface of the capital, are thus determined.—Let *d* H, in Fig. E, be equal to the inferior diameter of the column: deſcribe the arch H, *g*, *w*, *m*, at pleaſure; then biſect the arch at *n*, and draw *d o*, the angular line of the capital.

From the angular line place five minutes each way, as at *m n* and *n w*. Take *m a* and place it from *a* to B; then take the whole ſpace *m* B in the compaſſes, and deſcribe an arch each way interſecting at P. From the center P deſcribe the front of the abacus *m t*, and ſo of all the other ſides of the capital.

Take half the ſuperior diameter of the ſhaft, and with it deſcribe the quadrant *c r e*; then extend the compaſſes ſeven minutes further, and deſcribe the arch 7, which determines the projection of the firſt row of leaves. Laſtly, extend the compaſſes to ſix minutes further, and deſcribe the arch 6, which will determine the ſecond row of leaves. Divide the quadrant *c r e* into four equal parts, and draw the radii *d c*, *d r*, *d e*, which lines will determine the ſtem of each leaf. From the centers *c e*, draw ſemicircles, as they appear in the plan.

From *c r e* let fall perpendiculars, and the points 1, 2, 3, 4, will determine the ſituation of the leaves in the capital. Therefore take the diſtances 1, 2,

3, 4

3, 4, from the plan E, and place them on the capital, as 1, 2, 3, 4, each way from the center; and from theſe raiſe perpendiculars, which will be the apparent place of the ſtem of each leaf. How the leaves are formed muſt be evident by inſpection, and therefore I ſhall not enlarge further on the ſubject.

How to draw the Scotia Moulding.

Fig. C is the ſcotia, whoſe height, without its fillets, muſt be divided into ſeven. On the fourth diviſion draw a line *r d* parallel with the fillets. Take the upper three parts in the compaſſes and draw a circle. Make *d e* equal *d n*, or four parts. From *a*, draw *a r p* indefinitely, cutting the aforeſaid circle at *p*. Laſtly, fix the compaſs foot at *a*, and extending the other to *p*, deſcribe the arch *p n*, and the ſcotia will be completed.

The cyma-recta A is drawn from the ſummits of equilateral triangles thus: draw *v w*, and biſect it at *x*. Extend the compaſſes *x* to *v*, and turn two arches at 3, and their interſection is the center for the convex part. In the ſame manner *y* is the center for the concave part, which completes the moulding.

How the cyma-inverſa B is drawn, muſt be evident by inſpection; and with reſpect to any other kind of moulding, they are either conſidered as quadrants, or as ſemicircles, or nearly ſo; as the aſtragals, torus, ovolo, conge, and cavetto.

Obſervations on the Agreement of the Five Orders to each other.

The height of every entire order is divided into five equal parts; of which one is given for the height of the pedeſtal, and the remaining four are for the column and entablature.

In

The construction of Slip and Elliptic Domes

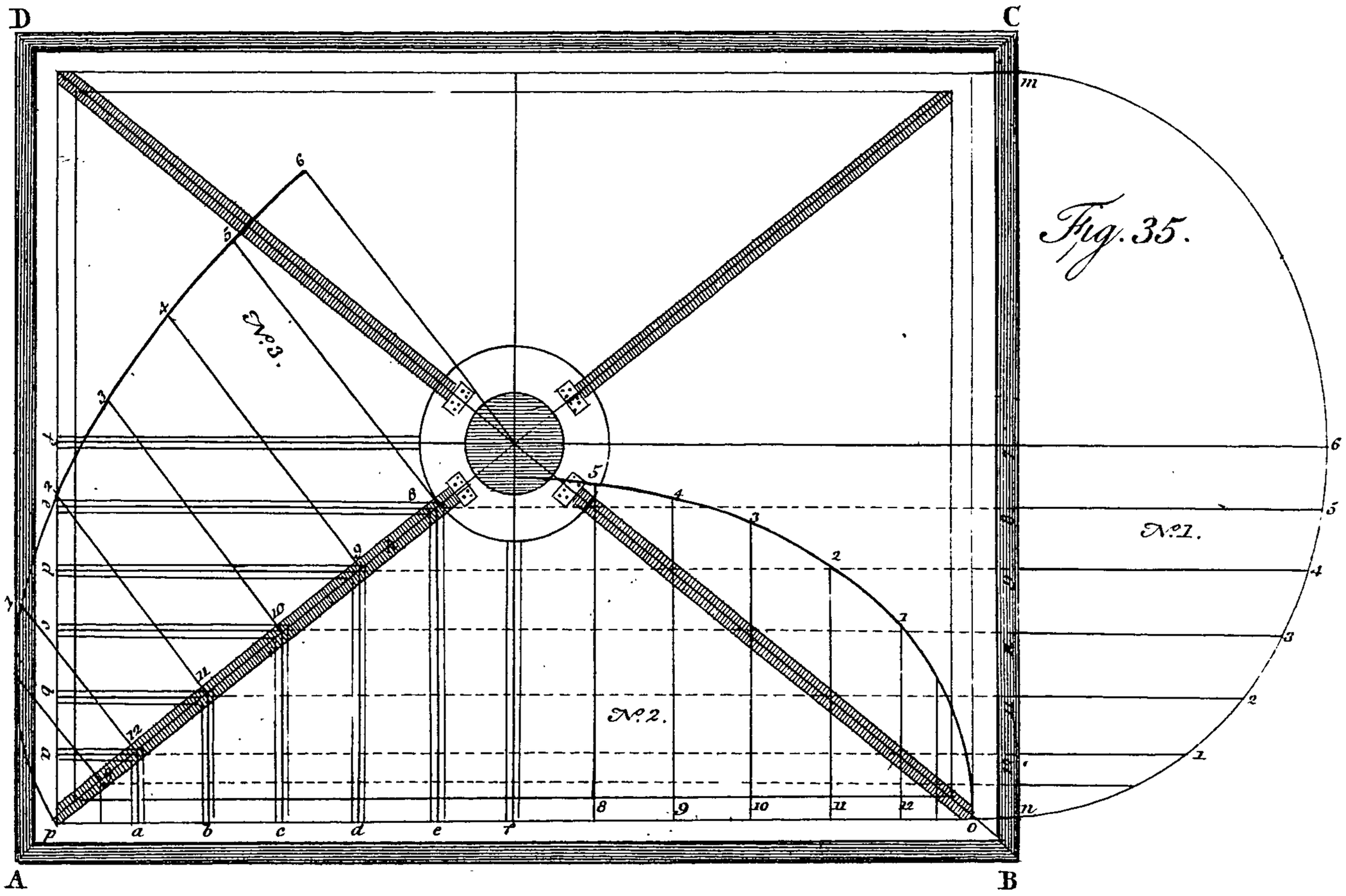


Fig. 35.

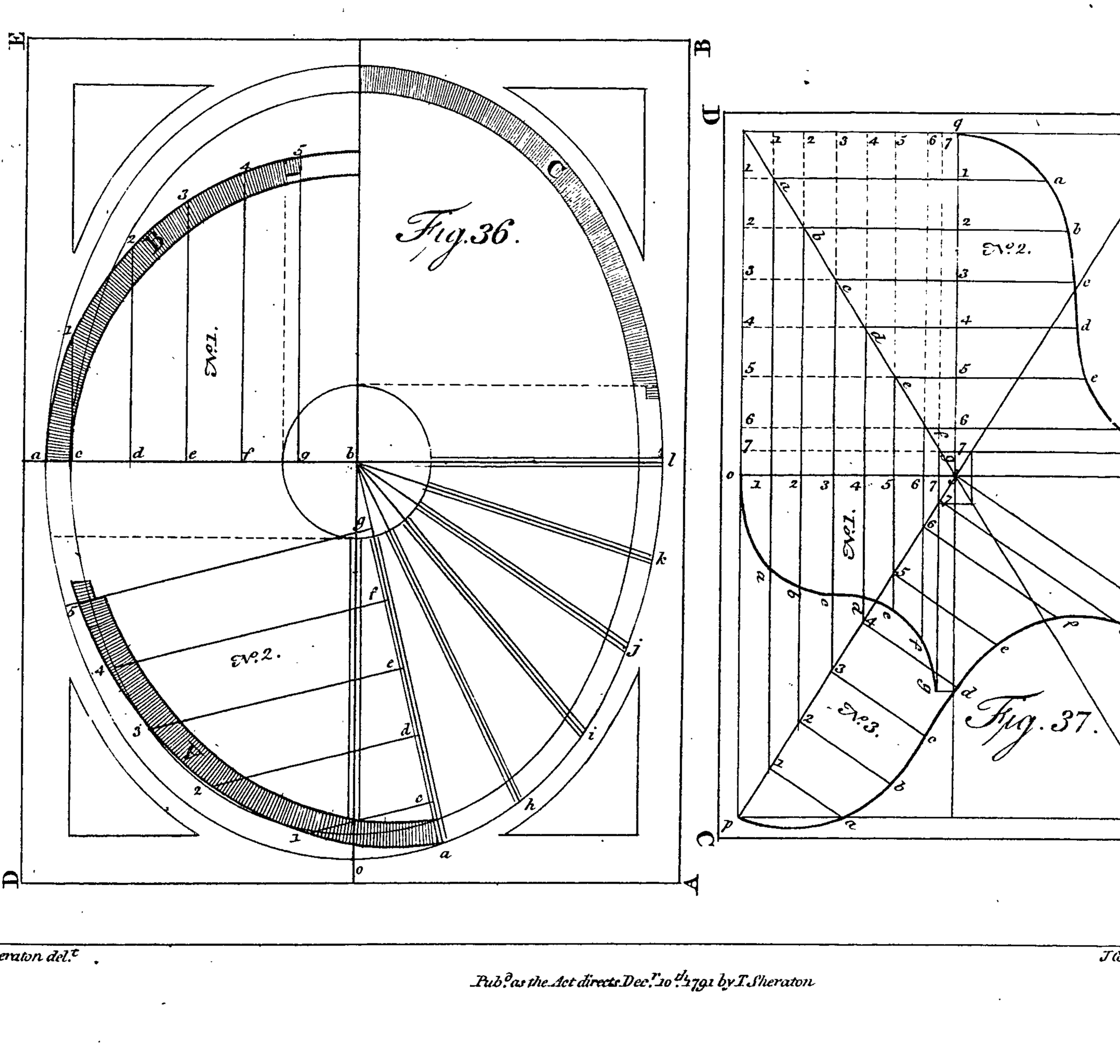


Fig. 36.

Fig. 37.

T. Sheraton del.t

T. Cooke scup.t

Pub.d as the Act directs Dec.r 10.th 1791 by T. Sheraton

In the Tuſcan and Doric orders theſe four parts are divided into five, the uppermoſt part of which is for the height of the entablature: and the remaining four in the Tuſcan are divided into ſeven, and one is given for the diameter; and in the Doric into eight, and one is aſſigned for the inferior diameter.

In the Ionic, Compoſite, and the Corinthian orders, the four remaining parts from the height of the pedeſtal are divided into ſix, the uppermoſt of which is for the height of the entablature of each order; and the remaining five, in the Ionic, are divided into nine, and one is for the inferior diameter; but in the Compoſite and Corinthian theſe five parts are divided into ten, and one is aſſigned for the lower diameter of each column.

In every order the plinth of the pedeſtal and its cornice are equal in projection; that is, one perpendicular line ſerves to determine the projection of both.

In every order, without exception, the baſe of each column is thirty minutes, or half a diameter, high; and, in the Tuſcan, Doric, and Ionic, the height of the capitals is the ſame; but in the Compoſite and Corinthian their capitals are each of them ſeventy minutes.

In every order the projection of the baſe at the bottom of the ſhaft is ten minutes; or, which is the ſame thing, the diameter of each ſhaft being divided into ſix, one of them is ſet forward for the projection of the baſe.

In every order its quantity of diminution may be the ſame, which is ten minutes; but in my examples the Tuſcan and Doric are rather more.

Laſtly, all the orders, except the Doric, have their cornices to project as much as they riſe; but in the Doric the cornice projects one quarter part more than it riſes.

Theſe remarks, if retained in the memory, may help to facilitate the trouble which neceſſarily attends in drawing the five orders. Beſides, it is ſometimes required of a workman to give ſome anſwer to his employer reſpecting the general proportions of the orders; and, if he is not acquainted with as much of them as I have briefly laid down in the above obſervations, he muſt of courſe look very fooliſh in the eye of his queriſt, for he cannot then have recourſe to his book. But further, a workman who has profeſſedly gone through the five orders, by drawing them under the direction of ſome maſter, cuts but a poor figure in a converſation on the ſubject of architecture and proportion, when perhaps, after all, he is unable to recollect one ſingle particular reſpecting them.

Of the general Proportions of Frontiſpieces adapted to the Five Orders.

The Tuſcan frontiſpiece allows ſix diameters from center to center of each column or pilaſter, as deſcribed in Plate V. and page 82.

The Doric allows ſix and a quarter, or one third. The Ionic ſix and a half; ſome make it ſeven and a quarter. The Compoſite ſeven; ſome allow ſeven and a quarter. And the Corinthian ſeven diameters and thirty-five minutes; or, as ſome have it, eight diameters.

Theſe different intercolumniations are nearly proportioned to the ſtrength or delicacy of each order, ſo that the aperture, or opening for the door of each frontiſpiece, is much the ſame in all the orders. For though the Tuſcan order only allows ſix diameters, yet ſix of theſe are equal to ſix and an half diameters of the Doric column. And the Corinthian, though it allows at leaſt ſeven diameters for its intercolumniation, the opening for the door-way will not, at that rate, be quite equal to ſix diameters of the Tuſcan column.

The

This ſufficiently accounts for the different number of diameters aſſigned by architects for the door-ways or intercolumns of the frontiſpieces adapted to each order.

The proportion of doors is generally in height twice their breadth; but, in ſome caſes, a little more height is requiſite.

The width of the door is divided into four equal parts; one of which is for the diameter of the column, or breadth of the pilaſter. Half a diameter is added to each ſide of the column, for the impoſt or ground which receives the projections of the plinth and capital.

Half a diameter is alſo allowed above the door to the underſide of the architrave, and one for the ſub-plinth, or the ſquare part on which the baſe reſts. According to this proportion, from the top of the ſub-plinth to the top of the column there will be ſeven diameters and an half; which will be within half a diameter of the full ſize of the Doric column, according to the order; but if there be a ſtep up to the entrance of the door, this will increaſe the column to its full height, which is eight diameters.

To the height of the column muſt be added two diameters for the whole entablature above the capital: and for every other particular reſpecting the mouldings, the reader muſt have recourſe to the orders themſelves.

General Directions for drawing the Five Orders in Indian Ink.

It is beſt to procure wove paper, becauſe its ſubſtance will bear a better ſhade, and its quality gives a more handſome appearance to a drawing, than the more common ſort. The paper ſhould be regularly damped, and paſted round the edges, ſo that when it dries it will become tight and even in its ſurface.

Proceed then to draw a perpendicular line for the axis of the column, and on this line place the ſeveral heights required. Through each of theſe heights draw, by the pencil, lines at pleaſure parallel to the baſe.

Next find the inferior diameter of the column, and afterwards the ſuperior one. From the extremities of the ſuperior diameter draw perpendicular lines upwards, and from the extreme points of the inferior diameter draw perpendicular lines downwards to the top of the pedeſtal. From theſe lines place the projection of the baſe, and from the projection of the baſe each way, draw two other perpendicular lines down to the baſe of the plinth.

Thus far the drawing is prepared for laying on the projections of the ſeveral members which take their ſpring from the above perpendicular lines, and when the mouldings are all drawn by the pencil, the ſtrokes of the pencil ſhould be tendered or made fainter by the Indian rubber, ſo that the ſtrokes of ink may be more clearly ſeen as they are drawn, and prevented from being too ſtrong, which if they are, the drawing is totally ſpoiled.

If the drawing be on a large ſcale, as thoſe on the right in the plates, the compaſſes may be ſucceſsfully applied in drawing the curved members; but if they are ſmall, like the finiſhed and entire orders in thoſe plates, they muſt be drawn by a fine pointed camel's hair pencil, guided by a ſteady hand.

The application of any kind of writing ink to the outlines of the drawing muſt always be avoided, becauſe it neither agrees with the nature or colour of Indian ink. The writing ink not only makes an outline too harſh in appearance, but likewiſe deſtroys the effect of the Indian ink; becauſe the water that is mixed with the Indian extracts the quality of the writing ink, and of courſe they blend together in one maſs, and the ſhadow becomes partly blue and partly black, which deſtroys the harmony of the whole. Therefore mix good Indian ink by rubbing it on a marble ſtone, and let the ink ſtand a few hours, till the groſſer particles ſettle to the bottom. Add a little water to a part of it, to make a light ſhade with; and with this light kind mark the outlines of the column, applying the hair pencil to the curved parts, and the braſs pen to thoſe which are ſtraight.

After this proceſs rub the drawing quite clean; and obſerve this as a general maxim, that the fainter the outline the better, provided it can juſt be diſcerned.

The next things to be conſidered are light and ſhadow, which are oppoſite in themſelves; but if diſconnected, no good effect can be produced in a drawing. Wherefore, where a ſtrong light is ſuppoſed, there muſt alſo be a ſtrong ſhadow agreeing with it; and where the light is weak, the ſhadow is leſs dark in proportion to it.

Rays of light do not project ſhadows contrary ways at the ſame time. Therefore the point of light muſt be fixed in the mind at leaſt, if not on the paper, from whence the rays are directed in parallel lines to the object, which produce a ſhadow on the contrary ſide to that which the light comes from. Proceed then to lay on a weak tint on that ſide of the ſhaft which is oppoſite the light; and the breadth of this tint muſt be proportioned according as the light is ſuppoſed to come, either directly on the front of the picture, or obliquely to it. If the light comes on the front, the tint is narrow; but if obliquely on the picture, the tint is broader, or comes farther on to the center of the ſhaft, in proportion to the degree of obliquity. After having laid on the firſt tint according to theſe principles, a ſecond tint muſt be applied in darker Indian ink; but the dark tint muſt not be carried full to the outline of the dark ſide, becauſe that would deſtroy roundneſs; for, in nature, all round or cylindrical bodies have a reflected light; but this reflected light is not equal in ſtrength to the direct light, wherefore the firſt or weak tint of Indian ink is ſuppoſed to be equal in degree to the reflected light, conſequently a ſmall portion of the firſt tint is left on the edge of the ſhaft, which is graduated or ſoftened into the ſecond tint, which is ſtrong, producing a maſs of ſhade, blending itſelf in regular gradation with the firſt tint towards the center of the ſhaft. After the ſecond tint is perfectly dry, a third ſtill ſtronger ſhould be applied, in order to complete a high-finiſhed drawing; but care muſt be taken to lay it on about the center of the ſecond tint, and not broad, but ſolid, ſoftened a little off at the edges, which will produce a ſufficient roundneſs, if rightly managed.

If the ſhaft is repreſented as fluted, its ſhading will yet require more management; but the ſame principles muſt be obſerved. In managing the flutes, it will be proper to mark their boundaries firſt with a nice braſs drawing-pen, filled with thin Indian ink, that it may diſtribute and paſs eaſily through the pen, leaving a very faint line on the light ſide, ſcarcely to be ſeen; but in ruling the dark ſide the ink muſt be laid on ſtronger, that the outline of the flutes may not be totally loſt when the ſhade is laid on. After the firſt tint of ſhade is applied, it will be requiſite then to touch in the dark ſides of the flutes. Thoſe on the dark ſide of the ſhaft may be done by the hair pencil; but if the drawing is on a ſmall ſcale, the braſs pen will do much better on the light ſide; becauſe, by drawing parallel lines with that inſtrument in imitation of graving ſtrokes, it will produce a ſhade in the flute more conſonant, and in better tone with the light ſide of the ſhaft, than can be performed by the hair pencil.

The flutes on the dark ſide of the ſhaft muſt not be all black, for their concavity will reflect a dim light oppoſite to their dark ſide, upon the ſame principles by which light is reflected on convex ſurfaces. Laſtly, when the flutings are thus handled, a ſecond tint of Indian ink muſt be laid on at the dark ſide, by which the flutes and fillets muſt be made to harmonize, and appear in one maſs of ſhade, without deſtroying their diſtinction. In general, the ſecond tint is ſtrong enough for fluted ſhafts, becauſe the outlines for the flutes contribute towards a ſhade themſelves.

The mouldings muſt next be conſidered; and as theſe are in a different poſition from the ſhaft, conſequently the light muſt ſtrike them differently.

In the examples given, I have ſuppoſed the aperture, or point of light, above the top of the column; which is a ſituation highly advantageous to the drawing, becauſe, upon this principle, there will be a regular ſtrong ſhadow under each covering member productive of a good effect.

Hence, in the Ionic, for inſtance, the hollow, or upper part of the cyma-recta, has a ſtrong ſhade; and the ſwelling part is light in the center, bearing a ſhade downwards as it recedes back. The corona is alſo light, becauſe the rays come full upon it; but the cyma-reverſa, dentils, and ovolo, are all in

ſhadow, on account of the large projection of the corona, which ſcreens them from the light. The left hand volute projects a ſhadow on the ſhaft, and the curved top of each flute does the ſame. The lower ends of the flutes are light, for the rays come full upon them; but the upper part of the ſcotia in the baſe bears a ſtrong ſhade, becauſe it is totally covered by the projection of the upper aſtragal.

The cornice of the pedeſtal is nearly all in ſhadow; but the baſe is nearly all light, for there is nothing to prevent the rays falling upon almoſt every part of it.

Theſe obſervations, with the exerciſe of a little taſte and good ſenſe, will, I preſume, enable the learner to accompliſh his attempt to ſhade the five orders in ſuch a manner as will do him credit.

END OF THE FIRST PART.

PART

THE

CABINET-MAKER AND UPHOLSTERER'S

DRAWING-BOOK.

PART II.

ON PRACTICAL PERSPECTIVE APPLIED TO THE ART OF REPRESENTING ALL KINDS OF FURNITURE IN DIFFERENT SITUATIONS: COMPREHENDING A REGULAR AND FAMILIAR TREATISE ON THIS USEFUL SCIENCE, DIGESTED AGREEABLY TO THE AUTHOR'S OWN EXPERIENCE IN THE ART FROM SOME YEARS PRACTICE, AND FROM OBSERVATIONS ON THE PRINCIPAL WRITERS ON THE SUBJECT; VIZ. DR. BROOK TAYLOR, DR. PRIESTLEY, MALTON, KIRBY, NOBLE, AND SOME OTHERS.

INTRODUCTION.

THAT the knowledge of perſpective is highly uſeful to Cabinet-makers, Upholſterers, Chair-makers, Joiners, and other perſons concerned with deſigning, cannot be diſputed on good grounds. And, though this is an indubitable poſition, yet many in the above profeſſions are not ſufficiently, if at all, acquainted with it. This defect in their education, or neglect in their own application, neceſſarily ſubjects ſuch to conſiderable

 diſadvantages,

diſadvantages, both with reſpect to giving and receiving orders. A maſter cannot poſſibly convey to the workmen ſo juſt an idea of a piece of furniture by a verbal deſcription, as may be done by a good ſketch, proportioned according to the laws of perſpective, and ſituated ſo as to give the moſt general and clear view of the whole piece. Nor, on the other hand, can a workman ſo well underſtand the meaning of a drawing, and what it is intended to repreſent, without ſome knowledge of the art I am pleading for; and conſequently his progreſs in executing the work will be proportionably retarded, and, perhaps, not ſo exactly finiſhed at laſt. On theſe accounts it is a maſter's intereſt to know perſpective himſelf, and to have men about him that underſtand it. When this is the caſe, time is often gained, ſtuff ſpared, and diſgrace avoided; ſince it is matter of fact, that many alterations in pieces of work of every kind take place; ſometimes owing to bad ſketches or drawings, and ſometimes from want of underſtanding a good deſign when it is given to work by. There are ſome maſters, indeed, who will ſcarcely allow their foremen time to make any kind of ſketch; but, if I may offer my opinion on this head, I muſt ſay that ſuch a method of carrying on buſineſs neither reflects honour on the foreman, nor in the end turns out to any advantage to the maſter; but, on the other hand, frequently a conſiderable loſs.

Beſides,

Beſides, as it is the preſent mode to introduce much painting in furniture, it is of great uſe to know perſpective, in order to underſtand when ſuch painting has its proper effect, and to enable the director of work, whether maſter or foreman, to point out ſuch improprieties as may eſcape the notice of the painter; and which, if entirely overlooked, might prove injurious to the work, and offenſive to a cuſtomer of taſte.

To theſe we may mention another advantage that often ariſes to a maſter from knowing this art; ſince, by it, he may often fix the judgment and mind of a gentleman or lady reſpecting the piece of furniture they wiſh for, by producing either a drawing that has been previouſly made, or by being able, off hand, to furniſh their ideas with a good pencil ſketch. In ſhort, a good perſpective drawing may be ſent to a gentleman or lady in the country, with almoſt as much confidence of ſucceſs as if a model of the piece of work were ſent.

Laſtly, if the reader conſider himſelf a gentleman, or as poſſeſſed of a liberal education, and at the ſame time entirely unacquainted with this fine art, it will carry in it an air of contradiction; becauſe perſpective is founded on geometrical and optical reaſoning, and has therefore always been conſidered as a branch of the mathematics and of a liberal education. Yet it is my intention not to treat the ſubject mathematically,

becauſe many have done it already in ſuch a manner as far exceeds any thing I can pretend to; and becauſe it would not ſuit workmen, for whom the following treatiſe is intended. If, however, any other above this ſphere can reap any information from it on account of its ſimplicity, I ſhall be happy to have ſerved them; but if he be above receiving inſtruction through that channel or medium which is only intended to convey the knowledge of this art to workmen, the reader may conſult ſome of thoſe authors referred to in the title, where he will ſee problems, theorems, demonſtrations, and corollaries enough to fill his leiſure hours with, and to carry the ſcience to any length he pleaſes. However, to look into ſome of theſe books would greatly diſcourage many workmen, and even ſome others of a higher claſs, who diſlike the drudgery of peruſing and comparing an infinite number of references to a variety of ſchemes, which are rather more calculated to ſhew how far the ſubject may be carried by mathematical ſkill, than to inform the reader of ſuch principles as may be wanted in the practice of the art, or to give him a tolerable view of the theory on which the ſcience is founded.

And it may be aſſigned as one reaſon why the ſubject of perſpective is ſo little known amongſt workmen, that it has been treated too mathematically. For, though geometry muſt aſſiſt in ſtating theories, and in making new and additional diſcoveries

coveries of the principles of the art, yet we muſt not infer from hence that a workman cannot learn the practice of the art without being acquainted with that ſcience.

Malton ſays the ſame thing in the preface to his Treatiſe on Perſpective. " Perhaps," he obſerves, " the demonſtrations of the laſt (meaning the laſt theorem of his fourth ſection) may deter thoſe who are not geometricians from examining it with that attention it requires; let ſuch remember, that, in order to practiſe perſpective, it is not abſolutely neceſſary to be a geometrician, becauſe I practiſed it long before I underſtood geometry."

In fine, I ſhall only ſay, that it has been my aim to put into the hand of the ingenious workman ſuch a view of the ſubject of perſpective, applied to as general a variety of caſes, as may enable him to get through with deſigning any thing he meets with in the courſe of his buſineſs: and if any thing more than this be found in this treatiſe, the reader will ſee more than what is promiſed; which may probably incline him to acquieſce with the author's ſentiment, that it is better to do more than we ſay, than fall ſhort of what we have promiſed.

SECTION

SECTION I.

Of the Principles on which Perſpective is founded, and the Definitions of thoſe Terms neceſſarily uſed on the Subject.

THE principles on which the art is built are founded on the nature of our ſight, which invariably comprehends all objects under ſome angle of a leſs or greater degree, in proportion as the object is at a greater or leſs diſtance from the eye of the ſpectator.

Hence let A, Fig. 1. Plate XIV. be conſidered the human eye, which is nearly globular; and P the pupil *, or that extremely ſmall point of the eye into which the rays of light iſſuing from every part of illumined objects in right-lined directions all converge.

* The term *pupil*, in general, means a youth or minor under the tuition and management of a maſter or guardian; but why it has been introduced into optics, and applied to the aperture or ſmall opening of the eye which receives the light, is owing to the little image—or *pupilla*, a puppet—which is reflected in the eye, and ſeen by every one who looks ſteadily on it, which is no other than the ſpectator himſelf, whoſe image in miniature is reflected on the cryſtalline humour.

Thus

Thus the rays BP and DP, iſſuing from the ſerpentine figure BD, are ſaid to converge, becauſe they unite in a point at P, the pupil; and, after paſſing through the pupil and continuing in their direct courſe, they diverge or ſpread open as at *n m r q v t*, on that part of the eye called the retina*, by which an object is formed ſimilar to the originals BD, EC, FG, and in magnitude according to their different diſtances from the eye†. Therefore, as the firſt object BD is neareſt to the pupil P, the points *n t* on the retina are moſt extended, becauſe the angle DPB, under which the object BD is ſeen, is conſiderably larger than thoſe under which the objects EC and FG are ſeen.

And again, as the ſame object is removed back to EC, the rays are leſs extended on the retina as at *m v*; but if the object be removed ſtill further from the ſight P to FG, the rays will ſtill diverge leſs, and conſequently the object painted on the retina will be proportionably ſmaller as at *r q*. And thus, by removing the object FC ſtill further and further from the ſight, it would be ſeen under a proportionably ſmaller angle, until

* Retina, from *rete*, a net; becauſe this part of the eye is a fine expanded membrane, ſomewhat open like a net, and ſpread over the bottom of the eye, on which are painted the pictures of all the objects we perceive.

† The refraction of the rays of light occaſioned by their paſſing through the different mediums or humours of the eye, has nothing to do with perſpective; it belongs to optics only, on which Ferguſon's Lectures may be conſulted, and others on the ſubject.

it would at length vaniſh into a point, and loſe its appearance.

That the rays of light, by which we are made ſenſible of objects, make their way to the organs of ſight in right-lined directions, is evident from a moſt ſimple experiment: for, if the bore of a tube or pipe be as much curved as is equal to the diameter of the bore, nothing can be ſeen through it; or if one object ſtanding before another of equal magnitude on the ſame line, be viewed by a perſon ſtanding on that line, the laſt will be hid, provided they both ſtand upright. I ſimply mean, if the ſhafts of two columns of equal diameters were placed upright, and a ſpectator were ſtanding upright on a line paſſing through the centers of each ſhaft, the laſt one could not be ſeen; but if viſion, or the faculty of ſeeing, were performed by rays of light in curved directions, perhaps this would alter the caſe, but not for the better, as I am certain that the conſtruction of our eye, and the way in which we, at preſent, diſcover objects, are the perfect productions of Infinite Wiſdom.

From what has been ſaid and referred to in the figure, I preſume that the reader is not altogether ignorant of theſe two things: firſt, that all objects appear to the ſpectator proportionably leſs the further they are removed from the eye; and, ſecond, that the rays of light coming from every part of il-

lumined objects operate on the eye in right-lined directions. These two propositions being admitted as certain truths, two very considerable points in perspective will hereby be gained. First, that in the representations of objects originally of the same dimensions, those which are furthest from the front of the picture must be least, in proportion to the supposed or real distance of the spectator's eye from the object: and second, that a right line from the top and bottom of the front objects, terminating in a point on the horizon, will determine the heights of all those back objects which are originally of an equal height with those on the front.

Hence, if a range of columns be represented on a picture, a right-line from the top and bottom of the first column to some point in the picture, will determine the heights of all those behind. Experience will convince us of the truth of this: for if we place ourselves at a distance from a straight row of columns, standing a little to one side, and looking attentively from the first to the last column, we shall then see that the pillars will appear to diminish backward in the form of a triangle; or, in other words, the tops and bottoms of each column will seem to tend to one point.

The same may be observed by standing close to a long brick wall, and ranging the eye along the joints of the bricks; we

ſhall ſee each joint ſeemingly terminating into one point. Thoſe joints below the eye will appear to riſe up, and thoſe above it will ſeem to lower; and if the length of the wall were continued as far as we could ſee, the joints would apparently unite in one point.

Theſe ſimple experiments cannot be accounted for upon any other principle than that which I have already advanced on the nature of viſion; namely, that all objects, as they recede from the eye, are ſeen under a ſmaller angle in proportion to the diſtance of the object from the eye. This propoſition holds good, not only as it relates to the heights of objects, but alſo to their breadth and thickneſs, for theſe are diminiſhed or contracted by the ſame rules, founded on the nature of our ſight. Nor are theſe remarks to be reſtricted to ſuch objects as ſtand upright on the ground, for thoſe which are horizontal in their poſition, or which are lying in various ſituations on the ground, are all ſubject to the ſame laws of diminution. But it muſt here be obſerved, that the various poſitions of objects give birth to moſt of thoſe imaginary planes which are introduced into the ſubject of perſpective; for in theſe planes all the variety of objects that we can conceive of, are ſuppoſed to be ſituated, ſome in the ground-plane, and others parallel to it, both above and below the horizon; ſome in upright, and ſome in oblique or inclining planes. And this variety of planes ſhould be underſtood

ſtood and carefully diſtinguiſhed by the learner, before he can make any good progreſs in the art, or know what he is about, when he begins to repreſent.

Theſe planes are again bounded by ſo many right lines, of which they are compoſed; and theſe lines have their names, anſwering to their intended uſe in the practice of perſpective.

Since, therefore, planes, lines, and points, comprehend the whole art of perſpective, it will be requiſite to define theſe in as clear a manner as poſſible. The reader will, perhaps, imagine here, that I am drawing him into the ſtudy of geometry, as an eſſential requiſite to the practice of perſpective, and thereby contradicting what I have already advanced in the preface. If, indeed, to exerciſe our reaſoning faculties, and to make uſe of a little common ſenſe, be termed the ſtudy or knowledge of geometry, I will aver that no man will ever learn perſpective without theſe. But, this every one knows; that many can exerciſe both good ſenſe and reaſon who never ſaw nor heard of Euclid.

Beſides, if the reader has attended to the firſt part of this work, in which lines, ſuperficies, and ſolids, have been touched on in a general way, he cannot be conſidered as totally ignorant

of ſome part of geometry which is uſeful to the knowledge of perſpective; however, as I have ſaid nothing of planes and their interſections, I ſhall here explain them, ſo far as they relate to the ſubject of perſpective.

Of the Nature of Planes relative to the Subject of Perſpective.

A plane, ſtrictly ſpeaking, is an even ſurface, neither concave nor convex, but which will agree with a ſtraight ruler or line every where.

A plane, in theory, may be conſidered indefinitely, or definitely. When it is ſuppoſed to be indefinite, it admits of no bounding lines, but is imagined to be continued without limits.

When it is defined, its boundaries are limited by lines, as A B, B O, O D, and D A. Fig. 2.

In perſpective there are five planes principally in uſe, according to Dr. Brook Taylor's ſyſtem; but the various circumſtances of objects in the picture frequently produce a variety of others, which, however, are not termed the elementary planes, as the above five may, but only accidental, depending on the circumſtances of objects.

Of

Of the Ground Plane.

In the order of theſe planes I ſhall conſider the ground plane firſt, being commonly a horizontal ſurface on which original objects have, in general, their ſeats or foundations; as 1, 2, 3, 8, is the ſeat of the caſe of drawers on the ground plane A B, D O, Fig. 2.

The Doctor terms the ground plane the original plane, "By which," he ſays, "we mean the plane wherein is ſituated any original point, line, or plain figure." I ſhall, in general, however, uſe the term ground plane, as being more ſimple, except in caſes where no regard is paid to its being horizontal; then, indeed, the term original plane muſt be uſed, being more comprehenſive, as it includes any poſition.

Of the Perſpective Plane.

Second, the perſpective plane, otherwiſe called the plane of the picture; which, in general, is a plane perpendicular to that of the ground, as G R, H L.

This plane is to perſpective what the retina is to optics; for the images of all original objects are delineated on both.

The

The perſpective plane may be conſidered as ſome tranſparent medium placed upright between the object we view and our eye; and as the rays of light coming from every point of illumined objects converge, in right-lined directions, to a point on the pupil P, Fig. 2, a ſection of thoſe rays, produced by this tranſparent medium or perſpective plane, is the perſpective repreſentation of the original object, be it what it may.

Hence, let the learner place himſelf before a glaſs window, which is, properly ſpeaking, the perſpective plane to every object he looks at through it; and as thoſe objects appear to him on the window, ſuch is their perſpective repreſentations on the paper, board, or canvaſs, we draw on. The appearance of objects on a window may be found by gumming the glaſs, which does not deſtroy its tranſparency, but makes it capable of receiving a mark; and if the eye be kept perfectly ſteady to one point in the window, and, with a pencil, the points or angles of a houſe, for inſtance, be marked as they appear on the glaſs; and when this is done, if right lines be drawn to each point, theſe lines will form the perſpective of the houſe.

Thus the plane GR, HL, may be conſidered a piece of gummed glaſs fixed upright on a table or ground AB, DO; and at P is the ſpectator's eye, viewing through the glaſs the original object 1, 3, 5, 7. The right lines iſſuing from every part of the object and converging at P, repreſent the rays of

light paſſing through the tranſparent medium to the eye P. Now, as the original object is deſcribed on the glaſs by the direction of theſe rays, if the ſpectator, with his hand, mark the points 1, 3—5, 7, 4—6, and afterwards join the points by right lines, this will be the exact perſpective repreſentation of the original object.

Simple experiments of this ſort ſhould be practiſed, as I am perſuaded they are more calculated to teach the principles of the art than long and tedious theories *.

Of the Horizontal Plane.

THE horizontal plane, or plane of the horizon, is, in perſpective, an imaginary plane paſſing through the eye of the

* An artiſt lately informed me, that a piece of ground glaſs, unpoliſhed, and oiled over with ſweet oil, is the beſt for this purpoſe; for the oil gives a degree of tranſparency to the glaſs that admits of objects being ſeen through it, and its artificial roughneſs makes it eaſy to draw on. If a ſquare of glaſs of this ſort be put in a ſlight frame of wood, fixed upright on a plain board, and there be a ſight-hole made in a piece of wood fixed perpendicular to the ſquare of glaſs; and if the ſight-hole be fixed from the glaſs equal to the diſtance P *s*, and to the height of the eye P N, then every thing which relates to Fig. 2, may be proved by ocular demonſtration, provided the learner uſe this little inſtrument according to the references made to this figure in the different heads of this ſection.

ſpectator,

ſpectator, and being perfectly parallel with the ground plane, it cuts the upright picture or perſpective plane at right angles.

Thus, in Fig. 2, Plate XIV. F H, L M, is the horizontal plane, whoſe perpendicular height from the ground plane A B O D is the height of the eye at P; hence P N is the perpendicular height of the eye, becauſe the line P N is perpendicular to both theſe planes.

The horizontal plane F H, L M, being produced, it neceſſarily cuts the perſpective plane G H, L R, at right angles, and the interſection of theſe two even ſurfaces or planes with each other being a right line as H L; hence we have what is commonly called the horizontal line H L; or, more properly, the vaniſhing line of a plane parallel with its original. And as the interſection of the horizontal with the perſpective plane produces the vaniſhing line H L, ſo the interſection of the picture with the ground plane produces the baſe or ground line G R.

All original objects, as they appear to come into the plane of the horizon, gradually vaniſh into a point, and diſappear. Hence the application and uſe of the term horizon in perſpective, which literally means the limits or boundaries of our ſight, from "ορίζω, *horizo*, I limit or bound." The further objects are repreſented from the front of the picture, or from the

ground

ground line G R, the nearer is their approach to this plane, and conſequently their apparent magnitude will be proportionably leſs, as has been already demonſtrated in page 183. For if the caſe of drawers, in Fig. 2. were removed conſiderably further from the perſpective plane G R H L, it is evident that the rays 1 P, 3 P, 5 P, 7 P, &c. would not ſubtend * ſo large an angle on the plane of the picture as they do at preſent: it is alſo manifeſt that theſe rays will alſo riſe higher on the picture in proportion as the caſe of drawers or original object is removed back, conſequently the image 1, 3, 5, 7, of the drawers on the picture would approach nearer to the horizontal plane, until at length the image on the picture would totally vaniſh at *s*, the center of the picture and height of the eye.

To underſtand this yet more clearly; ſuppoſe the drawers to be brought forward cloſe to the picture, then the foot 1 would be at 10, and the foot 3 at 12, on the interſection or ground line G R, and the image of the original object would then appear as large on the picture as the original itſelf; for then the point 5 on the drawers would be at *a* on the picture, and the point 7 at *b*; but the whole image of the original, in this caſe, is lower on the picture than before, and conſequently farther from the horizontal plane, which was to be ſhewn.

* From *ſub* and *tendo*, I ſtretch. The ſubtenſe of an angle coincides with the chord of the arch. Thus the object B D, Fig. 1, ſubtends an angle of 60°, for the rays B P D P cut the arch in that proportion; and therefore the object B D is ſaid to be ſeen under an angle of 60°.

From what has been ſaid, it is obvious that the whole ſpace on the plane of the picture for delineating objects, is comprehended between the ground line G R and the horizontal or vaniſhing line H L. No object can with propriety have its ſeat on the picture below the line G R, for this line is the interſection of the ground plane with the plane of the picture; and therefore, to repreſent the caſe of drawers lower than at 10 and 12 on the ground line G R, would lead us to ſuppoſe a new ground plane below the firſt, and a new horizon to ſuit it, otherwiſe the drawing would be unnatural and diſtorted.

On the other hand, no original object can have its ſeat in the perſpective plane higher than H L, for the line H L marks out the interſection of the horizontal with the perſpective plane; and as the plane of the horizon is generally the vaniſhing plane of all original objects ſituated on the ground, their ſeats in the picture cannot be above the vaniſhing line H L, without producing worſe effects than in the other caſe juſt mentioned. For if the images of all original objects, however large, vaniſh into a point *s* in the vaniſhing line H L, it would be prepoſterous to ſee a tall object ſeated on this line, or above it.

Before I quit this head, it will be proper to obſerve, that the horizontal plane, on which I have ſeemingly laid ſo much ſtreſs, does not poſſeſs any thing peculiar to itſelf, owing

to its being conſidered a plane, perfectly level; for all the various poſitions of vaniſhing planes make no difference in theory, provided they are conſidered as parallels to original planes. It is the poſition that theſe planes have to each other that is to be regarded. This was one principal diſcovery which Dr. Brook Taylor made in his new ſyſtem of perſpective, and which has rendered his principles ſo univerſal. In his book he ſays, " He makes no difference between the plane of the horizon and any other plane whatſoever; for ſince planes, as planes, are alike in geometry, it is moſt proper to conſider them as ſo, and to explain their properties in general, leaving the artiſt himſelf to apply them." Yet it may be obſerved, that we have a natural prejudice in favour of ſomething peculiar to the horizontal vaniſhing plane; becauſe, in nature, the laws of gravity ſettle all ſolid bodies in a horizontal poſition: this being the caſe, we are accuſtomed to view objects in this form, and of courſe are required to draw them ſo; therefore, in the practice of perſpective, the horizontal vaniſhing plane is generally wanted; but in principle and theory, the relation that one plane has to another is only to be regarded.

Of the Directing Plane.

THE directing plane is imagined to be parallel with the picture, whatever poſition it is ſuppoſed to be in; and its diſtance from the plane of the picture is equal to the diſtance of the eye of the ſpectator; therefore it is conſidered as a plane paſſing through the eye, as the plane M F V U, Fig. 2. Hence, if any original line Z X be produced till it cut the directing plane M F V U, a line drawn from Y, where it interſects, to P, the place of the eye is termed the directing line of that original line Z X.

And the repreſentation of any original line in the plane of the picture is always parallel with its directing line in the directing plane.

Of the Vertical Plane.

IN perſpective, the vertical plane is conſidered as perpendicular both to the ground plane and the plane of the picture; conſequently it cuts the other four at right angles. The plane

P ſ Q N,

PſQN, Fig. 2, is thus termed geometrically, becauſe it is in a direction perpendicular to the horizon; but in perſpective it may be in any poſition, provided it be perpendicular to the original and perſpective planes, and at right angles with the other.

The interſection of this plane with the picture HLGR produces the perpendicular line ſQ, termed the vertical line of the picture; and the vertical plane being continued till it cut the directing plane in the line PN, that line PN is the interſection of the vertical with the directing plane; and as ſQ, the vertical line of the picture, is parallel with PN the interſection of the vertical with the directing plane: PN is therefore the directing line of ſQ, the vertical line of the picture.

Vertical planes have vertical vaniſhing lines when the picture is perpendicular to the ground plane; in which caſe the vertical line ſQ is continued to a length above and below the horizon HL, that will admit the neceſſary vaniſhing points.

Of

Of the Viſual Plane.

To theſe planes already deſcribed may be added the radial or viſual planes.

A viſual or radial plane, is ſuch as paſſes through the eye, and any original line whatever.

A plane may be continued by any three points. The three points P X Y are the interſections of three right lines; and, according to geometrical reaſoning, when three ſuch lines meet each other, as the lines P X, X Y, and Y P, they are all in the ſame plane. This, among geometricians, is an axiom or ſelf-evident truth, and therefore needs no demonſtration.

The continuation of the plane P C Y X, which the triangle Y P X is in, till it interſects with the plane of the picture, is therefore the viſual or radial plane of the original line Z X; and the line *v* 16, produced by the interſection of the viſual plane with the plane of the picture, is termed the viſual line of the original Z X.

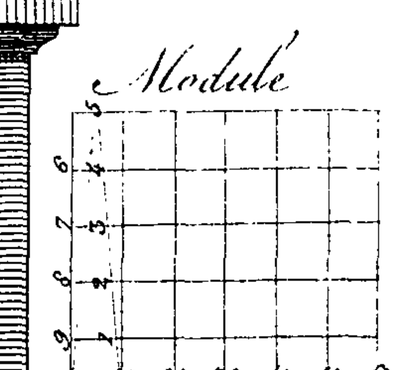
As I have already obſerved and proved that the appearance of objects on the retina is conveyed by rays of light flowing

Tuscan Order

From the Pedestal to the Top of the Entablature 7 Diameters

The whole height into five

Module



T. Sheraton delin.

Published as the Act directs, by T Sheraton Dec.r 6, 1791.

J. Newton, sculp.

ing from every point of any object to the eye in right-lined directions, see page 184; let the right lines X P, Z P, be considered as the rays of light coming from the original object Z X, and converging at P; but these rays are cut or intersected by the plane of the picture G R H L at $x\,z$, therefore the line $x\,z$ is the projection of the original object Z X on the plane of the picture; or, in other words, it is the perspective representation of the original object Z X: for the representation $x\,z$ of the original line Z X is in the line v 16, which is the intersection of the visual plane P C Y X with the plane of the picture: and since the line P C is the parallel of the original line Y X, where P C cuts the plane of the picture at v, proves that the line v 16 is the true line of intersection produced by the visual plane cutting the plane of the picture. Hence the line v 16 is, in perspective, termed the visual line, from *visio*, I see; for the lines P Z, P X, are the rays of light by which vision is performed, or by which we perceive objects, and as the intersection of those rays is in the line v 16, so this line v 16, drawn on the picture, is properly termed the visual line of its original Z X.

Of

Of the Lines in Perſpective generated or produced by the fore-going Planes.

I HAVE already ſpoken of theſe lines in the explanation of the ſeveral planes to which they are related; but it will alſo be requiſite to ſum them up here, that the learner may have a more clear view of them from what has been ſaid.

Firſt.—The ground line G R, is a line produced by the interſection of the picture or perſpective plane H L G R with the original plane A B D O. It may alſo be ſimply termed the interſection of the picture; but ſome chooſe to call it the entering line.

Second.—The vaniſhing line H L, commonly called the horizontal line, is produced by the interſection of the vaniſhing plane F H M L with the plane of the picture H L G R.

Third.—The parallel of the eye F M, is a line produced by the interſection of the vaniſhing plane with the directing plane U V F M; and as this line is the interſection of a plane paſſing through the eye always parallel to the picture, conſequently

F M

FM is always parallel to the vaniſhing line HL, and of equal height to it.

Fourth.—The directing line UV is the interſection of any original plane ABDO with the directing plane UVFM.

Fifth.—The vertical line Q*s* paſſing through the center of the picture *s*, is the interſection of the verticle or upright plane PN*s*Q with the plane of the picture; and PN, the perpendicular height of the eye, is the interſection of the vertical with the directing plane.

Sixth.—The viſual line *v* 16, is produced by the interſection of the viſual plane PYCX with the plane of the picture, and is therefore the indefinite repreſentation of the original ZX.

Seventh.—The director of an original line. If any original Z,X be produced till it cut the directing plane UVFM, a line PY is termed the director of that original line ZX.

Eighth.—The radial line*, or parallel of any original line ZX. In whatever degree of obliquity the original line ZX interſects the ground line GR, in the ſame degree of inclination

* Radial, from ῥαβδος, *rabdos*, or *radius*, a ray of light.

will the radial P v cut the vaniſhing line H L; for P v is parallel to the original line Z X.

Of Points, in Perſpective, produced by the Interſections of the preceding Lines.

As the interſections of planes with each other generate or produce lines, ſo alſo lines meeting or cutting each other produce points.

Hence the following points in perſpective are produced by the interſections of the lines which we have now defined.

Firſt, the point of ſight, or the place of the eye; P is that point where the ſpectator's eye ought to be placed in viewing the picture. Hence, if through the eye P a line perpendicular to the original plane be produced till it cut the parallel of the eye F M, their point of interſection is the point of ſight P.

Second, the center of the picture. If from the point of ſight P a line be drawn perpendicular to the picture, and be produced till it cut the vaniſhing line H L, their interſection will be the point s, or that point termed the center of the picture;

Doric Order

The whole height into five
The Column and Entablature into
Diameters

Module

T. Sheraton Delin.

Published as the Act directs. by T. Sheraton Dec.r 24.th 1791.

J. Newton Sculp

ture; and the diſtance between the point of ſight P, and *s*, the center of the picture, is called the diſtance of the picture; and the line itſelf which meaſures this diſtance, may be termed the direct radial.

Third, the vaniſhing point. If, from the point of ſight P, a line be drawn parallel to any original Z X, and is produced till it cut the vaniſhing line H L, their point of interſection *v* is the vaniſhing point of the original line Z X; becauſe, if the original line Z X were infinitely produced on the ground plane A B D O, its image Z X on the picture would at length vaniſh or diſappear to the eye P in the point *v*. The line which meaſures the diſtance between *v* and P, is the diſtance of that vaniſhing point *v*; and the line itſelf may be termed the oblique radial, becauſe its original Z X is oblique to the picture.

Fourth, the point of interſection. If the original line Z X be produced till it cut the ground line G R, that point 16 where the line G R is cut, is called the point of interſection: and if the original line Z X be ſtill continued till it cut the directing line U V, the point Y, where they interſect, is termed the direct-point of that original Z X.

Laſtly, The point of ſtation. If from the place of the eye P, a line be drawn perpendicular to the ground plane

at N, that point N is the point of ſtation, or foot of the ſpectator.

I ſhall conclude this ſection with adviſing the reader to make himſelf well acquainted with the preceding planes, lines, and points, before he proceed further: which, if he do, it will enable him to read the ſubſequent pages more eaſily, and often prevent the trouble of referring to the plates. Add to this, it will make him underſtand more readily the problems and operations of both this and other publications on the ſubject.

SECTION

Ionic Order

Plate

Profile

Diameters

the Column and Entablature nine Five

the whole height nine five

50 Minutes

60 Minutes

Module

Module

T. Sheraton Del.

Published as the Act directs by T. Sheraton Jan.y 20.th 1792.

J. Newton Sc.

SECTION II.

The Affinity and Agreement between Optical Laws and the Principles of Perſpective demonſtrated—And alſo of the Uſe of the three principal Elementary Planes in the Practice of Drawing—ſhowing, that all that is exhibited by the natural Poſitions of theſe Planes in Fig. 2, *may be correctly drawn on any even Surface without their Aid.—Of the various Poſitions of Lines and Planes to the Picture, and of the Principles of Vaniſhing Points agreeing therewith.*

Of the Affinity of Optical Laws with the Principles of Perſpective.

In Section I. page 183, it has been ſhown that all objects appear proportionably leſs as they are farther removed from the eye; and as the reader is now ſuppoſed to be acquainted with the planes, lines, points, and terms, which have been explained in the preceding ſection, I ſhall proceed to ſhow that the rules of perſpective agree with optical laws.

Thus:

Thus: let G R, Fig. 4, be the ground line, and H L the horizontal or vaniſhing line, whoſe height above the ground line is equal to that of the eye of the ſpectator; *s* is the center of the picture, and *s* D the diſtance of the ſpectator's eye from the object *b d*. Draw *d b* perpendicular and equal to B D, Fig. 1, and as much to the right hand of *s* as D, in Fig. 1, is to *e*. Then, in Fig. 4, draw the viſual lines *d s* and *b s*; which lines are to determine the heights of the two original objects, E C, F G, in Fig. 1. Then take the ſpaces D C, C G, from Fig. 1, and transfer them to Fig. 4, from *a* to *a*, and from *a* to *n*, on the ground line G R. Draw the lines *a*, D, *n* D, cutting the viſual line *d s* in *g c*; and laſtly, from *g* and *e* on the viſual *s d*, raiſe perpendiculars to *s b*; then will *g*, *f*, *c*, *e* be the perſpective repreſentations of G F and C B in Fig. 1.

The analogy between the two figures will appear as follows.—In optics, P, in Fig. 1, is the pupil, and P *e* the direct radial or axis of the eye, and equal to the diſtance of the firſt object D B from the eye. In perſpective, D, in Fig. 4, is the ſame as P in optics, Fig. 1; and, in Fig. 4, *s*, the center of the picture in perſpective, is the ſame as *e* in Fig. 1. Therefore as P *e* in optics is the direct ray, and the diſtance of the firſt object D B from the pupil P, ſo *s* D, Fig. 4, in perſpective, is the diſtance of the ſpectator's eye from the picture. In optics, if the ſecond object C E is removed twice as far from the eye P as the firſt

object D B is, its image *m v*, on the retina, will be little more than half the length of the image *t n* of the firſt object D B on the retina; and, in perſpective, Fig. 4, the repreſentation *c e* of the ſecond object C E, is exactly half the length of the firſt object D B, as Fig. 4 demonſtrates, and which coincides with Fig. 1; for obſerve, the rays of light P E, P C, coming from the ſecond object to the pupil P, cut D B, their ſection, in the ſame proportion as the viſual lines *s d*, *s b*, of Fig. 4, cut the perpendicular *c e*. Hence the ſpace 2, 7, on D B, is equal to the repreſentation *c e*, Fig. 4; and in the ſame manner the ſpace 1, 8, where the rays of light from F G cut the picture D B, is equal to *g*, *f*, Fig. 4, the repreſentation of G F, Fig. 1.

Laſtly, the repreſentations *g f*, *c e*, in Fig. 4, approach to the center *s*, in the ſame proportion as their originals G F, C E, in Fig. 1, approach to *e*, the center of the imaginary plane B D, which is ſuppoſed to cut the rays of light P C, P G, at 2, 1; for the ſpace D 2 and 1 on Fig. 1, is the ſame and equal to *d*, 2, 1, on Fig. 4; ſo alſo is *d*, *e*, Fig. 4, to D *e*, Fig. 1. And hence it may be concluded, that the rays P C, P G, are to their ſection D *e*, Fig. 1, as the viſual line *d s* is to its dividers or meaſuring-lines D *a*, D *n*, Fig. 4.

Before I conclude this head, it will be proper to obſerve, that notwithſtanding the general agreement between optical

laws.

laws and the rules of perſpective, yet in one reſpect there is a difference, for the perſpective repreſentation of any object on a plane, is not the ſame exactly with the appearance of that object to the eye; and therefore, in alluſion to this difference, I have, in the preceding page, already ſaid, " In optics, if the ſecond object C E is removed twice as far from the eye P, Fig. 1, as the firſt object D B is, its image *m v* on the retina will be little more than half the length of the image *t n* of the firſt object D B; but the repreſentation 2, 7, of C E on a plane D B, which is the ſection of the rays P C, P E, is only half the length of the firſt object D B, as the figure itſelf demonſtrates." The reaſon of this difference is owing to the eye being a ſphere, but a picture a level ſurface or plane; for the rays P C, P D, cut the arch or ſphere K L at 6, 5, in a different proportion to what they do on the plane B D, as is plain; becauſe the ſpace D 2, which is the repreſentation of the ſpace D C on the plane B D, is greater than the ſpace 6, 5, on the ſphere K L; which ſpace 6, 5, is the appearance of the ſpace D C to the eye; but the ſpace D 2 is its repreſentation on the picture. This difference, however, decreaſes the further the object is removed from the eye, for then the rays do not cut the picture ſo obliquely; conſequently the repreſentation of the original object on the plane of the picture is more natural, becauſe it has more of the appearance of that real object to the eye. Thus: if the object E C be removed back to F G, the rays P G, P F, are leſs

oblique

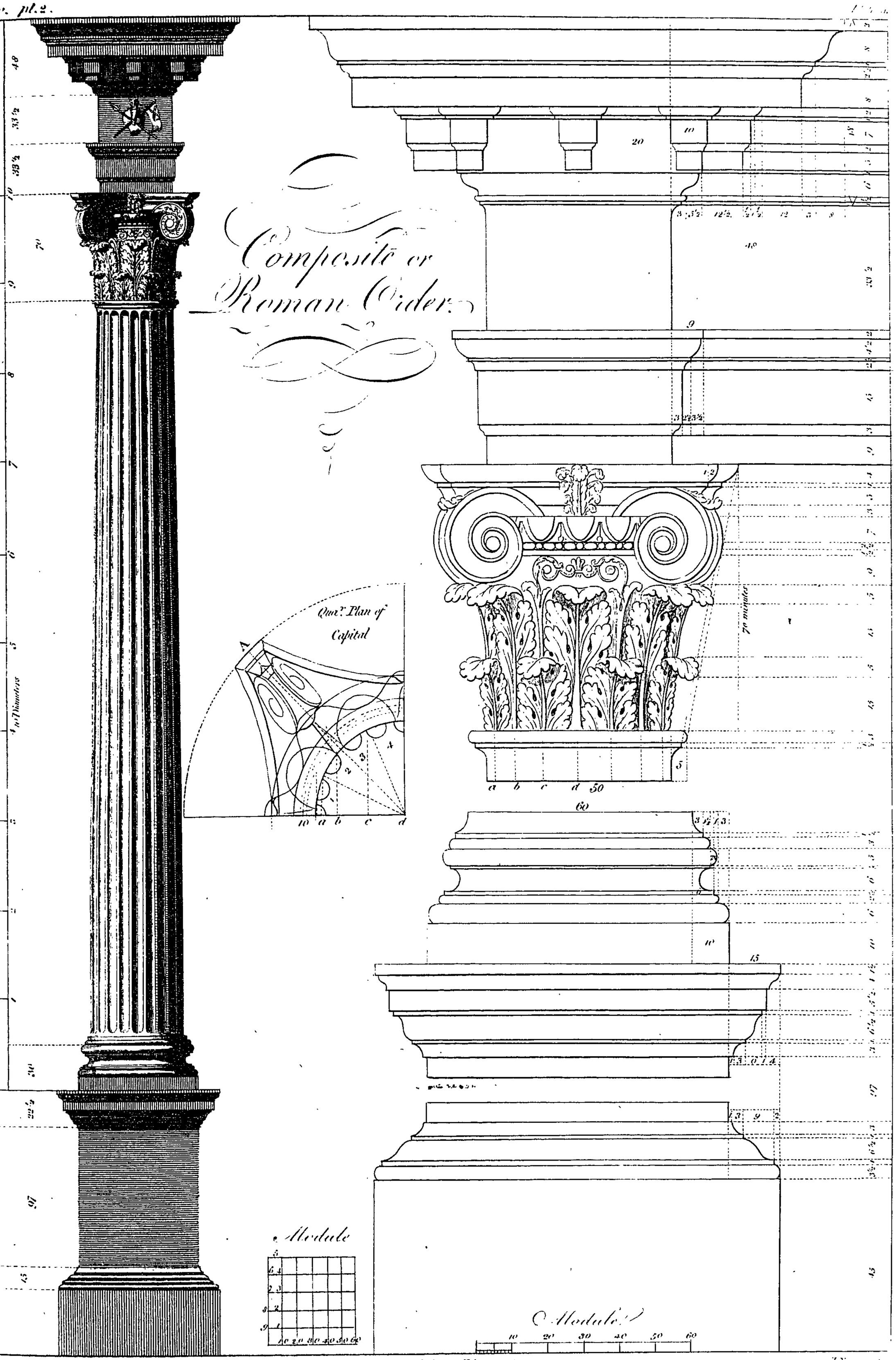
oblique to the picture B D; and therefore the repreſentation 1, 8, on the picture B D, is nearer to its true appearance *o b* on the arch K L, than the repreſentation 2, 7, is to its true appearance 5, 11, on that arch; but much more does this difference appear between the firſt object B D and its real appearance *y*, 60, on the arch K L, which yet would be conſiderably more if P were removed to Z. Hence the neceſſity of chooſing a proper diſtance for the repreſentations of objects on a picture, that their appearance on the picture may be nearly the ſame as the real objects have to the eye. This will be touched on in its proper place.

The difference then between the repreſentation of objects on a plane and their appearance to the eye, which is a circle, is as the difference of the tangent of the arch, which comprehends the angle under which the object is ſeen, is to the ſubtenſe of that angle. Thus: let D C be the object viewed at P, then will 6, 5, on the arch K L, be the opening or ſubtenſe of the angle under which the object D C is ſeen, which meaſures fourteen degrees; and D 2, the repreſentation of DC on the plane BD, is the tangent of that arch 6, 5, which comprehends the angle under which D C, the object, is ſeen.

From what has been ſaid on this ſubject, it is evident that a perfect picture of objects, as they appear to the human eye, cannot be delineated on a plane. It may be done on the ſurface of a ſphere, when the eye of the ſpectator is ſuppoſed to be in its center; for then every part of the picture would be equidiſtant from the eye, and every ray of light perpendicular to its own ſurface, as are the rays *y* P, 11, P, &c. of the ſphere K L. None of the rays, in this caſe, could cut the picture obliquely, and conſequently no diſtortion would appear. But though this be the caſe, yet it will not afford any ſolid objection to the certainty of perſpective rules adjuſted to a plane; for, by the help of light and ſhadow applied in different degrees of ſtrength to objects as they are more or leſs remote from the eye, and by a judicious choice of the diſtance, a picture may be drawn on an even ſurface, ſo as to deceive the eye, and produce in the mind ſimilar effects with the original or real objects.

Of

Composite or Roman Order



T. Sheaton fc.
Published as the Act directs by I. Taylor, February 16. 1792.
XV.

*Of the Uſe of the three principal * Elementary Planes in the Practice of Drawing — alſo ſhewing that every-thing exhibited by the natural Poſitions of theſe Planes in Fig. 2, may be drawn on an even Surface without their Aid.*

It is not always underſtood, even by thoſe who have ſome general notions of perſpective, how it is that theſe planes anſwer to a level ſurface, ſuch as the paper we draw on; but, until there be ſome conception of this, I will venture to ſay that perſpective can never be clearly comprehended. Therefore, that the reader may have a clear view of this matter, I ſhall refer him to Fig. 5, Plate XV. in which are ſhewn ſimilar letters and numerals, correſponding with the ſimilar planes, lines, and points of Fig. 2, as follows:

The plane G O B R, Fig. 5, is the original or ground plane G O B R, Fig. 2; alſo the plane G H L R, Fig. 5, is the perſpec-

* Elementary, "from the Latin *elementum*," the firſt rudiments or principles of any ſcience. Hence, in perſpective, the ground plane, the plane of the picture, and the vaniſhing plane, are conſidered as the three chief elementary planes; becauſe the firſt principles of the art muſt be derived from them. The vertical, directing, and viſual planes, are alſo termed elementary, as has been ſhewn in the firſt ſection, but not ſo eſſential in practice.

tive plane denoted by the ſimilar letters in Fig. 2; and the plane F H L M, Fig. 5, is the vaniſhing plane F H L M, Fig. 2.

If, in Fig. 2, a line be extended from P to *s*, from *s* to Q, and from Q to U, that line will meaſure the length of all the three planes in Fig. 5, as from P to U. Thus the ground plane, the perſpective plane, and vaniſhing plane of Fig. 2, are ſuppoſed to be ſtretched out of their natural poſition till they become an even ſurface, as in Fig. 5. The line G R, in Fig. 5, is therefore the interſection of the picture with its original plane, as in Fig. 2; and the line H L, Fig. 5, is the vaniſhing line, produced by the interſection of the vaniſhing plane with the plane of the picture, Fig. 2. The line F M, Fig. 5, is the parallel of the eye, denoted by theſe letters in Fig. 2. And laſtly, Q *s*, Fig. 5, is the vertical line Q *s*, Fig. 2, which is produced to P, in Fig. 5; on which is placed the diſtance P *s* of the ſpectator's eye from the picture, as P *s*, Fig. 2.

Theſe things being underſtood, proceed to draw the plan of the caſe of drawers on the ground plane G O B R. Thus: from Fig. 2, take the ſpace Q T, equal to the diſtance which the drawers are placed from the picture. Transfer this ſpace to Fig. 5, from Q to *t*, and draw the line 1, 3, parallel to G R; becauſe 1, 3, in Fig. 2, is parallel to the plane of the picture. Ex-

tend the compaſſes from 1 to 3, and from T to *w*, of Fig. 2, for the length and breadth of the drawers, and make the plan on Fig. 5, the ſame.

In Fig. 5 produce the line 8, 3, and 2, 1, to G R, at the points 10 and 12, anſwerable to 10 and 12, Fig. 2. Draw then the viſuals 10, *s*, 12, *s*, Fig. 5, correſponding with 10, *s*, 12, *s*, Fig. 2, on the plane of the picture. Take then, from Fig. 2, the perpendicular height T*y* of the drawers, and place this from 10 to *b*, and from 12 to *a*, Fig. 5. Draw then the viſuals *b s*, *a s*, anſwerable to the ſame letters in Fig. 2. Next, from the points 1, 3, 8, 2, draw lines tending to the point P, which will cut the viſual lines at 1, 3, in the ſame manner as the rays 1, P, 3, P, cut the viſuals 10, *s*, 12, *s*, at 1, 3, Fig. 2.

In Fig. 5, from 1, 3, raiſe the perpendiculars 1, 5, 3, 7, cutting the viſuals *b*, *s*, *a*, *s*, at 7, 5, in like manner as the rays 5, P, 7, P, Fig. 2, cut the points 5, 7, on the plane of the picture. Draw then from 7 to 5, Fig. 5, a line parallel to 1, 3, which will determine the height of the drawers; and for the apparent breadth of the top, raiſe a perpendicular *g*, 6, from *g*, the point where the line 8, P, cuts the viſual 10, *s*, and the point 6 will determine the apparent breadth of the drawers; in the ſame manner as the rays P, 4, P, 6, cutting the viſuals *a*, *s*, *b*, *s*, at

at the points 6, 4, determine the repreſentation of the top of the drawers 5, 7, 6, 4, at the correſponding points on the plane of the picture, Fig. 2.

By theſe operations it is manifeſt that the repreſentation of the drawers in Fig. 5, where the planes are ſtretched out till they become an even ſurface, is the ſame in all its parts as the image or repreſentation of the caſe of drawers on the plane of the picture Fig. 2, where all the planes are in their natural poſitions. This would follow from a proceſs of geometrical reaſoning; but, perhaps, it would be too tedious to the reader, and a deviation from the profeſſed plan of this treatiſe; and, therefore, I ſhall only recommend to him, to apply the compaſſes to each repreſentation in the different figures, by which he will perceive the equality of parts in both; and, if to this be added a little reflection on the preceding operations, I have not the leaſt doubt of its being underſtood.

Of

Corinthian Order.

Column and Entablature into Parts

10 Diameters

Module.

Module.

A

B

D

Half Plan of Ionic Capital

Quarter Plan of Corinthian Capital

C

E

50 Minutes

60 Minutes

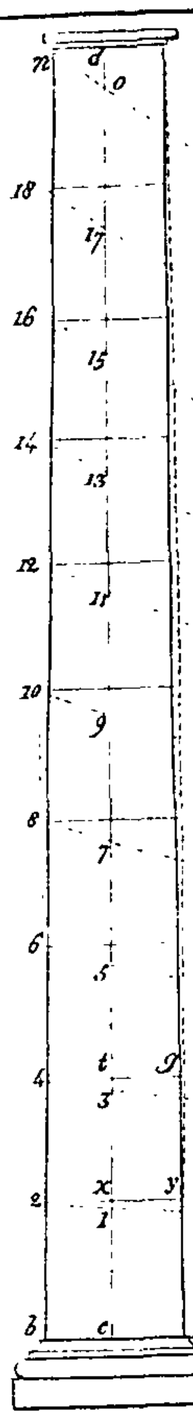
T. Sheraton delin.t

Published as the Act directs March 17. 1792. by T. Sheraton.

J. Newton Sculp.

Two methods of diminishing the shaft of a Column.

Fig 1.



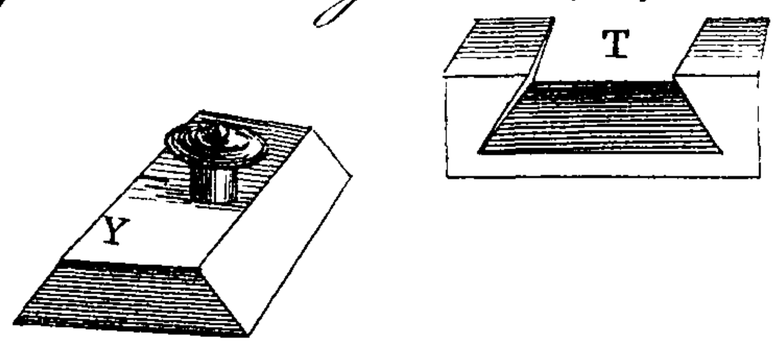


Fig 2.

Fig 3

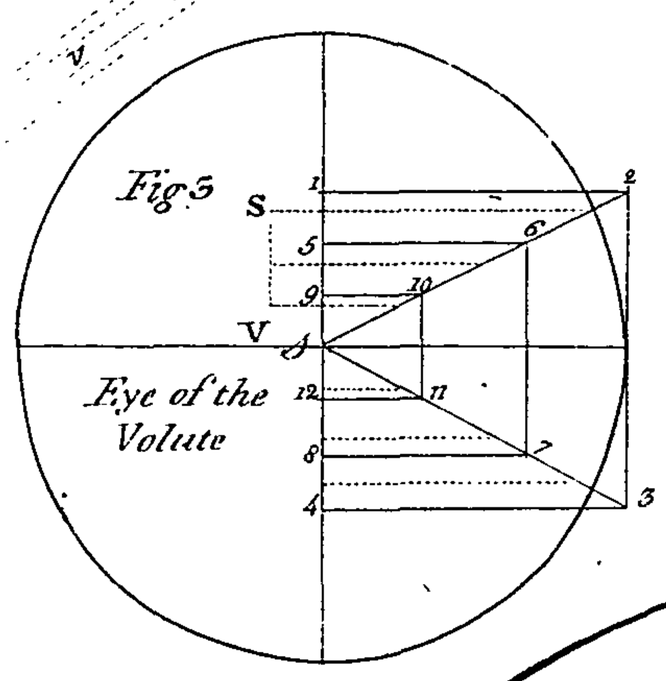


Fig 5.



Fig 4

T. Sheraton delin.
Published as the Act directs by T. Sheraton, Feb.y 2.d 1792.
J. Barlow sculp.

Of the various Poſitions of Lines and Planes to the Picture, and to the Ground Plane—alſo of their Repreſentation on the Picture agreeing therewith, and of their various Modes of Vaniſhing.

THE original line Z X, in Fig. 2, is oblique to the picture, and is therefore treated in a diverſe manner from the lines in the cheſt of drawers, which are all either parallel and perpendicular to the picture, or parallel to the ground plane and perpendicular to it.

Caſe 1.—When any line 1, 3, Fig. 2, is parallel to the picture and to the ground line G R, its repreſentation is parallel alſo. This is ſelf-evident by inſpecting the figure.

Caſe 2.—Lines in the aforeſaid poſitions can have no vaniſhing line or point in the picture, becauſe if infinitely produced would never cut it; that is, the lines 1, 3, and G R, Fig. 2, would never meet in a point, however far produced, for lines truly parallel can never cut each other.

Caſe 3.—The repreſentations of lines originally parallel to each other and to the picture, are parallel to one another

on

on the picture. Thus: the lines 1, 3, 5, 7, 4, 6, Fig. 2, are all parallel to each other and to the picture; therefore their repreſentations 1, 3, 5, 7, 4, 6, on the picture, are all parallel to one another, as is ſelf-evident by comparing theſe with their corresponding lines in Fig. 5.

Caſe 4.—If any original line 1, 5, Fig. 2, be perpendicular to the ground plane, its repreſentation will be perpendicular to the ground line G R; wherefore the repreſentation of the original 3, 7, or any other in the like poſition, ſituated any where on the ground plane, is perpendicular to the ground line G R. Hence the correſpondent lines 3, 7, 1, 5, Fig. 5, are drawn perpendicular to G R, the ground line.

From the above theory it may be concluded, that the repreſentation of a geometrical ſquare or parallelogram *, is a geometrical ſquare or parallelogram, if it be ſituated in a plane parallel to the picture. Hence I K, L M, Fig. 6, is the true repreſentation of the original ſquare A D, B C, which is in this poſition.

Caſe 5.—All lines perpendicular to the picture, have their vaniſhing points in the center of the picture.

* See its definition in page 44, and its figure Plate II.

The

The lines 5, 4, 7, 6, of the ends of the drawers, are perpendicular to the picture H L G R; conſequently their repreſentations 5, 4, 7, 6, on the picture, appear to terminate to a point at *s*, the center of the picture. Wherefore, in repreſenting the top of the cheſt of drawers at Fig. 5, *b a* is made equal to the length 5, 7, Fig. 2; and from *b a*, Fig. 5, lines are drawn to the center *s*.

Hence the repreſentation of a geometrical ſquare, ſituated in any plane perpendicular to the picture, is a trapezoid, as I K, L M, Fig. 6; that is, two of its ſides, I K, M L, are parallel, and the other two, K L, I M, not ſo *.

In whatever poſition an original plane may be in with reſpect to the ground plane, if it be but perpendicular to the picture, the repreſentation of a geometrical ſquare in that plane will ſtill be a trapezoid. If the planes be above or below the horizon, its appearance will be of that figure. Thus, in Fig. 3, *a*, *b*, *o*, *p*, is the repreſentation of a ſquare ſituated in the ground plane, which is certainly perpendicular to the picture, if the picture be perpendicular to the ground; as N *q*, a ſection of the picture, is upright to *q b*, one of the ſides of the ſquare: *c i* is alſo the repreſentation of a ſquare, ſituate in a plane raiſed above the

* See its definition page 44, and its figure Plate II.

ground plane, but parallel with it, and therefore perpendicular to the picture in this caſe; alſo *e f* is the repreſentation of the ſame ſquare, ſituate in the plane of the horizon, which is a plane equal to the height of the eye, as the plane F M H L, Fig. 2. Wherefore in this plane the ſquare does not appear, for it vaniſhes into one right line, as *e* 2. But if thickneſs be attributed to the ſquare, as denoted by the double line, then, by the help of ſhadow, two of its ſides may be ſeen, as *e* 1, 1, 2; but obſerve, both the ſides are in one right line.

The ſquares *g h*, *l k*, are in planes above the horizon, elevated nearly as much as the other two *a b*, *c i*, are below it; their appearances are therefore trapezoids of nearly the ſame dimenſions. And it is alſo evident, ſince all theſe ſquares are ſituate in planes perpendicular to the picture whether above or below the horizon, they muſt have their vaniſhing point in the center of the picture *s*; and, as they are all parallel to the ground plane, their common vaniſhing line will be H L.

Caſe 6.—If a geometrical ſquare be ſituated in a plane inclined in any angle to the ground plane, whether it be above or below the horizon, provided the plane be conſidered perpendicular to the picture, its repreſentation will be, as before, a trapezoid; and likewiſe its vaniſhing point will be in the center of the picture. Thus, in Fig. 8, No. 1, A D B C is the repreſentation of a geometrical ſquare in a plane A E P O, inclined to the ground plane

plane equal to the angle *n* A D. Now it is evident, that the ſquare will incline to any angle, by ſuppoſing it to revolve on its center A C in the arch *u n k*; for the ſide D B of the ſquare may be preſſed to *t k* or *o u*, or to any point in theſe arches, without altering its poſition to G R, the ground line or ſection of the picture; therefore, wherever the ſide of the ſquare D B is in theſe arches, it will ſtill vaniſh to *s*, the center of the picture; and its appearance will be a trapezoid: for *u o*, D B, *k t*, are all parallel among themſelves, and to *r s*, which is perpendicular to the picture. For the ſame reaſons the other ſquares above the horizon, though inclined to the ground in different degrees, and in different directions, have the ſame vaniſhing point.

Caſe 7.—All lines oblique to the picture, but parallel to the ground plane, have their vaniſhing points ſomewhere in the horizontal line H L, Fig. 2; but not in the center of the picture, as in Caſe 6, when the line is perpendicular to the picture. Alſo if oblique lines are parallel to each other, they all have the ſame vaniſhing point. The original line Z X, in Fig. 2, is oblique to the picture, and its vaniſhing point is at *v* in the vaniſhing line H L, not at *s*, the center of the picture; for a line drawn from the eye P, and produced till it cut the picture at *v*, in a parallel direction to Z X, is the vaniſhing point of that original line Z X. Wherefore, in Fig. 5, where the elementary planes are ſtretched out to an even ſurface, draw the original

Z X inclined to G R, in the angle which it is ſuppoſed to be in to the picture in Fig. 2. Produce X Z till it cut G R at 14 in Fig. 5; then lay the diſtance of the eye from the picture on the vertical line at P, and from P draw P v parallel to Z X; then will v be the true vaniſhing point to the line Z X, upon the ſame principles that v, in Fig. 2, is the vaniſhing point to Z X in that figure.

If a number of lines oblique to the picture be parallel to each other, they will all have the ſame vaniſhing point; for the ſame reaſon as a number of lines perpendicular to the picture have but one vaniſhing point in the center. Therefore, in Fig. 9, Plate XVI. the geometrical ſquare 1, 2, 3, 4, having its ſides oblique to the picture, the ſides which are parallel to each other are drawn to one vaniſhing point. The ſides $d b$, $c a$, are originally parallel to each other, for they are the repreſentations of 2, 3, 1, 4, of the original ſquare, wherefore they vaniſh into one point at v. In like manner, and for the ſame reaſon, the ſides $b a$, $d c$, vaniſh at V. It is evident then, that the repreſentation of a ſquare, having its ſides oblique to the picture, is a trapezium *; that is, none of the ſides are parallel to each other.

* See its figure Plate II. and its definition page 45.

Caſe

Fig. 1.

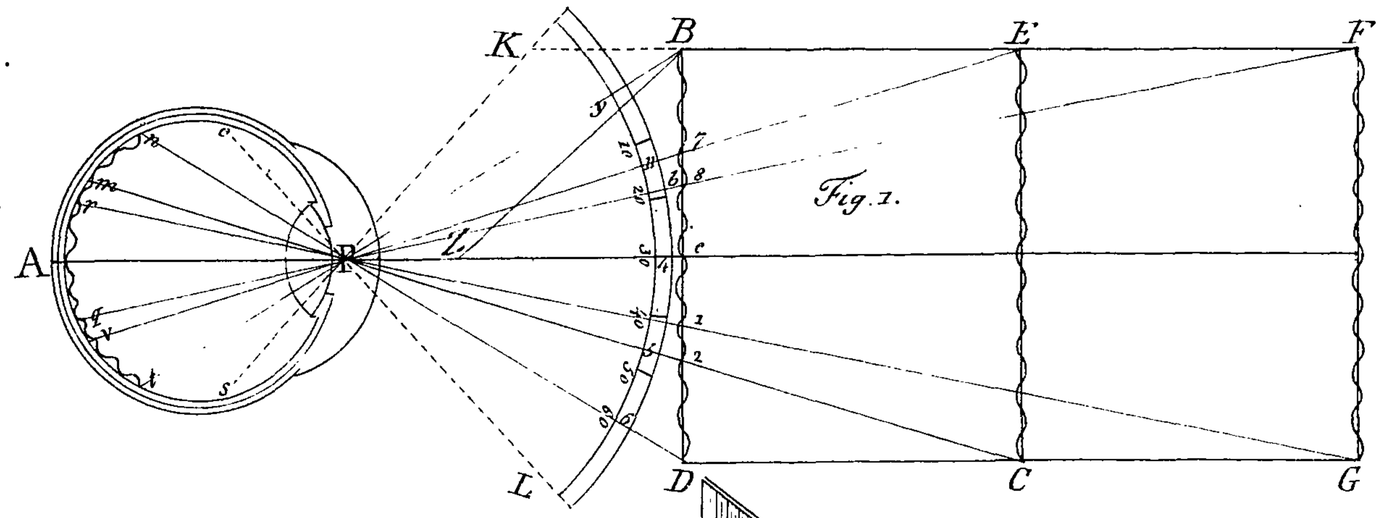


Fig 2

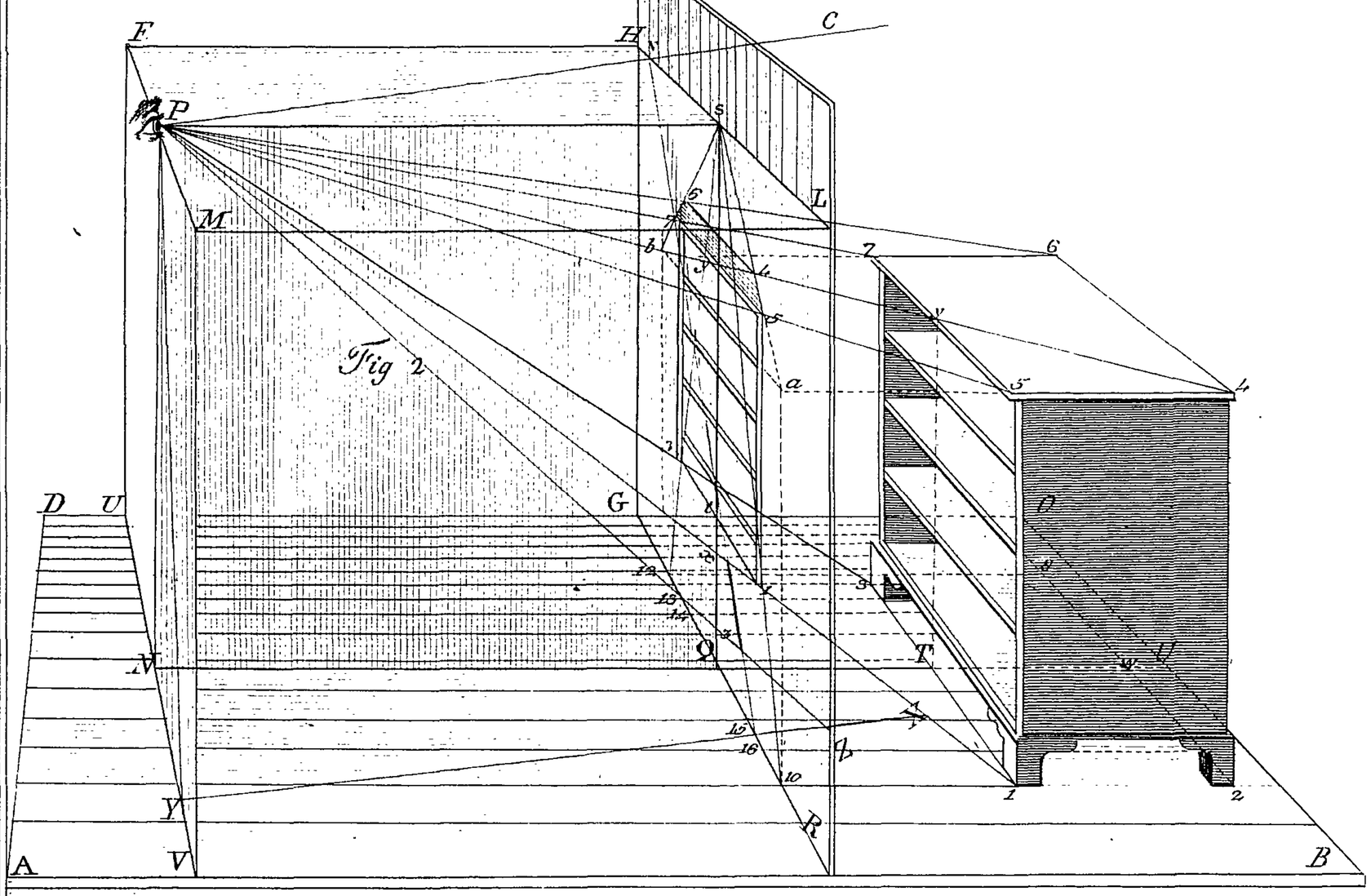


Fig. 3.

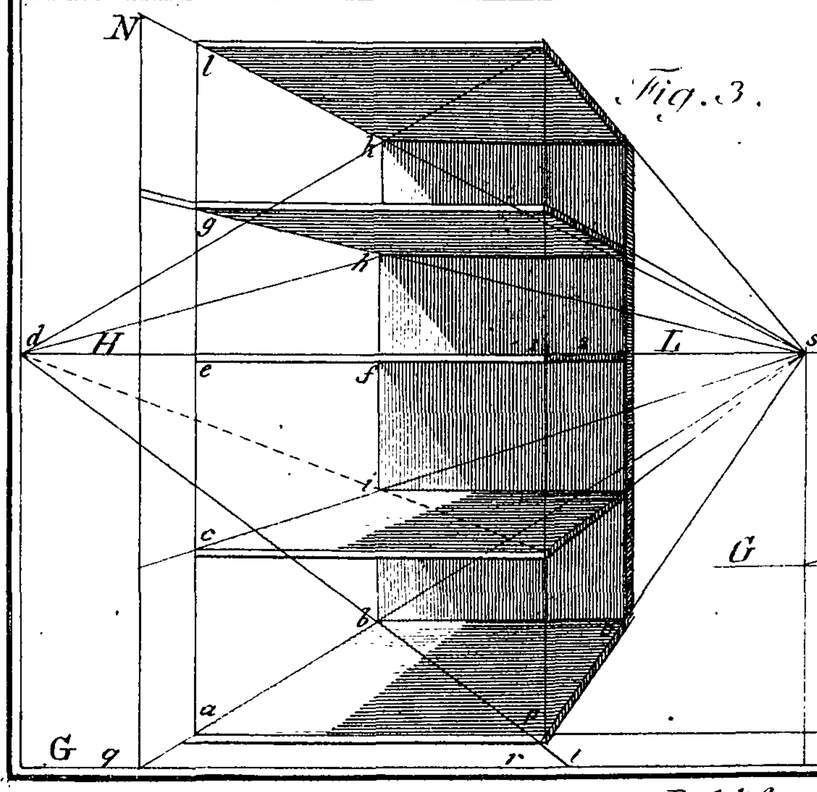


Fig. 4.

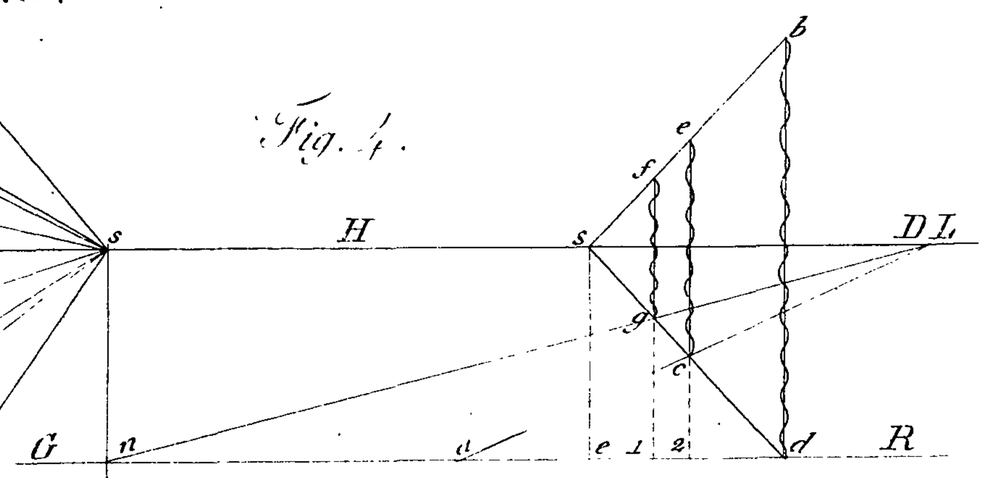
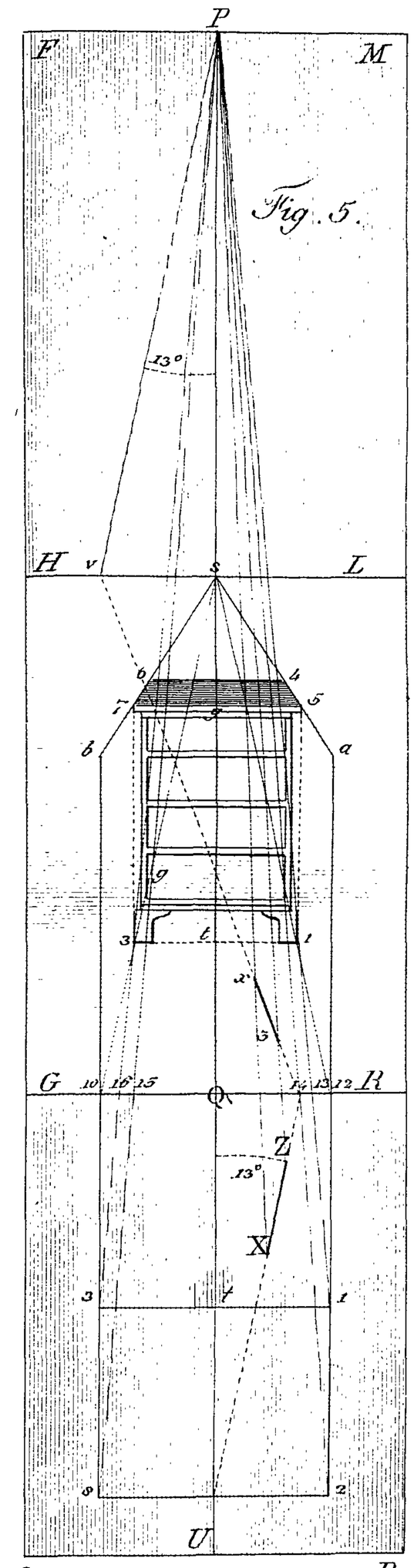


Fig. 5.



T. Sheraton Del. Published as the Act directs by T. Sheraton May 20th 1792. J. Barlow Sculp.

Caſe 8.—When a ſquare is ſituated in a plane perpendicular to the ground, but oblique to the picture, only two of its ſides will vaniſh to a point, as B C, A D, No. 2. The other ſides, A B, D C, can have no vaniſhing point; becauſe they are perpendicular to the ground, and parallel to the picture. See Caſe 2, page 215. Its repreſentation is therefore a trapezoid. And becauſe the ſquare is not perpendicular to the picture, its vaniſhing point is not in the center *s*, but in ſome other point *v* in the horizon, according to the angle which the original ſquare makes with the picture, or with its interſection. Thus M A *i* is the angle which the ſquare A B, D C, makes with the interſection, or ground line G R; or, in other words, it is the original poſition which the ſquare ſtands in to the picture. Hence *v d* being parallel to M A, it forms the ſame angle to the vaniſhing line H L; and being drawn in this direction from the place of the eye *d*, and produced till it cut H L at *v*, conſequently *v* is its vaniſhing point.

Caſe 9.—If a ſquare be ſituated in a plane inclined to the ground plane, and its interſection with the picture be parallel to the interſection of the ground plane with the picture, as A F, No. 3, then the vaniſhing line of that plane will be parallel to the ground line G R; and two of its ſides, A N, F O, may be conſidered as perpendicular to the picture; but the other two

ſides,

ſides, A F, N O, are really parallel, and therefore have no vaniſhing point in the vaniſhing line H L. See Caſe 2, in page 215.

The ſides A N, F O, are conſidered perpendicular to the picture; becauſe, it is evident, that the ſquare may be ſuppoſed to revolve on the ſide A F, and be preſſed or moved to 8, 10; which ſhow the angles of the ſame ſquare in a plane ſtrictly perpendicular to the picture, and therefore its ſides 11, 8, 12, 10, have their vaniſhing point in the center *ſ*. See Caſe 4, in page 216. Wherefore, as the ſquare may revolve on A F, as a table top hinged at the front, and riſing to any angle from its frame, its vaniſhing point will riſe on the vertical line *ſ d*, in proportion to that angle. Hence S is the true vaniſhing point of the ſquare A F, N O, making the angle F A 6 with the ground plane.

Caſe 10.—If a ſquare be ſituated in a plane of the above kind, having its ſides oblique to the picture, every thing will be conſidered the ſame as in the foregoing caſe, only the ſides will vaniſh to two points in the horizon; neither of which can be in the center *ſ*, nor in any part of the vertical line *ſ d*; becauſe the ſide A B, Fig. 10, of the original ſquare, is not perpendicular to G R. But, as the interſection of this inclined plane with the picture is parallel with the ground plane, as in

Caſe 9, the vaniſhing points will riſe in a perpendicular direction above the common vaniſhing line H L, in proportion to the angle which the inclined plane makes with the ground plane.

Hence *v v* on the new horizontal line *h l*, are placed perpendicular to V V in the common horizon H L; which points V V would be the true vaniſhing points of the original ſquare A B, B C, were it repreſented upon the ordinary ground plane; or, in other words, if it were repreſented in a plane perpendicular to the picture, and parallel to the ground plane.

Caſe 11.—If a ſquare A D B G, Fig. 11, be ſituated in a plane oblique both to the ground plane and to the picture, its vaniſhing line will be in an angle to the common horizon H L, in proportion to the angle which the inclined plane makes with the ground. For, as the original plane in this caſe is inclined both to the ground and to the picture, conſequently its interſection with the picture will be oblique to the interſection of the ground plane with the picture. Caſe 9 has a horizontal vaniſhing line, though it ſuppoſes the original plane to be inclined to the ground; but as its interſection is parallel to the ground line, ſo its vaniſhing line is parallel alſo. In the caſe before us, the original plane has an oblique interſection with the

the picture, and therefore its vaniſhing line is oblique to the horizon alſo; which, perhaps, may be better underſtood by No. 1, ſhowing the ſame ſquare in the ſame poſition, conſidered as the top of a table viewed angle-ways, whoſe top is ſuppoſed to be riſing on its hinges at A C in the angle *u* A K. Its vaniſhing line is therefore *v* V, found by drawing M V, making an angle with the horizontal line H L, equal *u* A K, the angle which the inclined plane makes with the ground. Or the vaniſhing line may be found as in Fig. 11; by drawing *v* M, cutting O *m*, which is a line perpendicular to the horizon. From the meaſuring point *m*, draw M V parallel to the horizon, cutting V P at V; then will the line *v* V be the true vaniſhing line as before. The line A X is conſidered as the interſection of the inclined plane, and is therefore drawn parallel to *v* V, the vaniſhing line; for, in perſpective, it is a univerſal theorem, according to Dr. Brook Taylor's ſyſtem, that the vaniſhing line, interſection, and directing line of any original plane, are parallel to each other; alſo, "the vaniſhing points of all lines in any original plane, are in the vaniſhing line of that plane." See his Sixth and Seventh Theorems. Wherefore the line A X is to *v* V the vaniſhing line, the ſame as the ground line G R is to the horizontal line H L.

Theſe, and the other lines which I have hitherto paſſed over

over unnoticed in the various caſes, will be explained in the different problems belonging to each particular caſe, and therefore I deem it unneceſſary to ſay more on them at preſent.

SECTION III.

Containing Problems in Perſpective, ſolved according to the preceding Principles and Caſes—applied to the Methods of drawing rectangular Superficies and Solids in different Poſitions to the Picture.—Alſo, how to draw Viſual Lines, tending to vaniſhing Points, out of the Picture; and how to reduce the Point of Diſtance to any Proportion, ſo as to bring it within the Limits of the Picture.

In the methods of inſtruction generally made uſe of by moſt of thoſe who have written on this ſubject, it is common for them to begin with finding the repreſentations of points and lines, proceeding afterwards to ſuperficies and ſolids.

To me, however, it appears an unneceſſary prolixity, eſpecially it would be ſo to the perſons for whom this treatiſe is chiefly intended. For to go through all the problems neceſſary for points and lines as they may be differently ſituated to the ground plane and picture, and alſo to ſhow how theſe lines are to be meaſured off according to any given length, would take

up as many plates and pages of letter-preſs as would be ſufficient to explain the ſuperficies of figures of which theſe lines are the boundaries.

Beſides, it is preſumed that the general readers of this work will underſtand the various poſitions of lines, and how to meaſure them off, according to their given lengths, better when they are connected with ſome figure, than when theſe ſame lines are conſidered abſtractedly. And, in general, it may be ſaid, that when perſons ſet about drawing, it is not to repreſent a line or a point nakedly, but to draw the perſpective appearance of ſome figure bounded by lines and points; which, when performed, muſt of courſe include every thing requiſite to the repreſenting or meaſuring of a bare line. Therefore, in finding the repreſentation of a geometrical ſquare, for inſtance, the problem for this will teach us both how to find the points of its angles, and at the ſame time how to repreſent and meaſure a line equal to the ſides of the given ſquare, or any other figure of that nature. For theſe reaſons I omit points and lines, and proceed to the firſt problem, which is

PROB.

PROB. I. FIG. 7. Plate XV.

To repreſent a Geometrical Square lying on the Ground, having two of its Sides parallel to the Picture, and the other two perpendicular to it.

OPERATION.—Draw the ground line G R, and draw H L for the vaniſhing line, whoſe height from the ground line is ſuppoſed to be equal to the height of the ſpectator's eye. Make *s* the center, or that point in the picture which is directly oppoſite to the eye when the picture is viewed. Make *d* the diſtance of the eye from the picture, anſwering to P *s*, in Fig. 2, Plate XIV. In this manner the paper or canvaſs we draw on is prepared for delineating objects in the above ſituation.

The next thing to be conſidered, is the ſeat of the object in the picture; that is, how far the ſquare, for inſtance, is to be placed to the right or left of the center *s*, or whether it is to be directly under the center, and how far removed back from the picture. Theſe being fixed on, lay down C A equal to the ſide of the ſquare to be repreſented, and draw the lines C *s*, A *s*, termed viſual lines. Determine then how far the ſquare is to be removed from the picture, which in this example is equal 1 2.

Draw from 2 a line to the point of diſtance *d*, cutting the viſuals C *s*, A *s*, at B and A. Laſtly, from theſe points of interſection at B and A, draw the lines A C, B I, parallel to G R, the ground line, and the repreſentation will be completed as required.

Obſervations.—The ſides C B, A I, of the ſquare, are perpendicular to the picture, and therefore, by Caſe 5, page 216, they muſt vaniſh in *s*, the center of the picture. The ſides C A, B I, are conſequently parallel to G R, the interſection of the picture or ground line; wherefore, by Caſe 1, page 215, they are the repreſentations of original lines parallel to the picture; and being parallel, they can have no vaniſhing point.

Prob. II. Fig. 7. Plate XV.

To find the Repreſentation of a Square perpendicular to the Ground, and alſo to the Picture.

The picture being already prepared in the foregoing problem, the ground line and vaniſhing line remain the ſame; alſo the point of diſtance and the center *s* are the ſame. And it ſhould be obſerved, that G R is the ground line, and H L the horizontal line in every example. Alſo *s* denotes the center of the

the picture, and *d* the diſtance; therefore, in future, the explanation of theſe may be omitted, and we may proceed as follows:

Operation.—Draw the perpendicular A D equal to the ſides of the original ſquare, and draw the viſuals D *s*, A *s*. Then, on the ground line G R, lay on a ſpace from I to C equal to the diſtance of the ſquare from the front of the picture. Make C N equal A D, and draw C *d*, N *d*, cutting the viſual A *s* in I and M. Laſtly, from I and M raiſe perpendiculars to K L, and the ſquare will be repreſented as required.

Obſervations.—The ſides I K, M L, are perpendicular to the ground; wherefore, according to Caſe 4, page 216, they are the repreſentations of lines originally perpendicular, as A D; and being perpendicular to the ground, conſequently they are parallel to the picture, and therefore can have no vaniſhing point. But the ſides K L, I M, are perpendicular to the picture; therefore they vaniſh to *s*, the center.

PROB. III. FIG. 6. Plate XV.

To repreſent a Square ſtanding upright on the Ground, but parallel to the Picture.

THE ground line and horizontal line, &c. remaining as in the preceding problem, proceed to the operation. Draw A D B C a geometrical ſquare on the ground line. Draw the viſuals A *s*, D *s*, B *s*, C *s*; then lay on a ſpace A N on the ground line equal to the diſtance which the ſquare is ſuppoſed to be from the picture. Draw N *d* cutting the viſual A *s* in I. From I draw I M parallel to A C. Draw I K, L M, perpendicular to A D, C B. And, laſtly, draw K L parallel to D B; then will the ſquare I K, L M, be the repreſentation of the original ſquare A D B C, as propoſed.

Obſervations.—The viſual rays A *s*, D *s*, B *s*, C *s*, form a pyramid*, whoſe baſe is a geometrical ſquare A D B C, and whoſe vertex is *s*, the center of the picture. If this pyramid have a ſection parallel to its baſe, it muſt be evident to every one, that the ſection will produce a geometrical ſquare. The

* See its definition page 97, and its figure Plate VI.

repreſentation

repreſentation I K L M is a parallel ſection of the pyramid of rays iſſuing from each angle of the original ſquare A D B C, and therefore I K L M, the ſection, is a geometrical ſquare. See the concluſion drawn from Caſe 4, page 216, in which we ſay,—"That the repreſentation of a geometrical ſquare or parallelogram is a geometrical ſquare or parallelogram, if it be ſituated in a plane parallel to the picture."

Prob. IV. Fig. 8. Plate XV.

To repreſent a Square ſituated in a Plane inclined to the Ground, and perpendicular to the Picture.

A O P E may repreſent the inclined plane, which is merely to aſſiſt the imagination, or to convey what is to be underſtood by the ſquare A D B C, No. 1. being in a plane inclined to the ground.

Operation.—On G R, the ground line, draw the ſemicircle *u n k*, whoſe radius muſt be equal to the ſide of the original ſquare. Draw *n* A perpendicular to the ground line; then make *n* A D equal to the angle of inclination which the original ſquare has to the ground. Draw then, as before, the viſuals A *ſ*, D *ſ*, to the center *ſ*. Let *d*, near L, on the common horizontal line

H L, be the diſtance as in common; draw the line *u d* cutting the viſual line A *s* in C. From C draw C B parallel to A D, then will A D C B be the repreſentation of a geometrical ſquare, ſituated in a plane inclined to the ground, in an angle of twenty-three degrees.

Method ſecond.—Let G 1, R 1, be the interſection of the inclined plane with the picture; or, in other words, let it be conſidered as a new ground line, and turn the plate till this line come into the ſame ſituation with the eye as the old ground line G R appeared to be in when the plate was upright. This will make every thing in this ſecond method appear quite plain, I preſume, and will ſhow that it is as eaſy to repreſent a ſquare in a plane inclined in any degree to the ground, if it be perpendicular to the picture, as it is to repreſent one lying on the ground, having two of its ſides perpendicular to the picture. The plate being placed to the eye as above mentioned, draw a new horizontal line *h i*, *l i*, parallel with G 1, R 1, paſſing through the center *s*. Make *s d* on this new horizontal line equal *s d* on the old one H L. From D lay down the ſide of the ſquare D A, and draw the viſuals A *s* and D *s*. From A draw A *d*, cutting the viſual D *s* in B. Make B C parallel to A D, and the repreſentation will be as before. In No. 2 the ſame ſquare is inclined to the other hand; but the operation is ſtill the ſame, when the new ground line G 2, R 2, is drawn, and when a new horizon

horizon, *h* 2, *l* 2, is drawn parallel to it, paſſing through the center *s*, *d* near *h* 2 will then be its diſtance, or *d* near *l* 2 will do, for they are both the ſame to the ſquare No. 2; ſince both the diagonals of the ſquare, if produced, will tend to each point of diſtance, as is evident from inſpection. The ſquares No. 3 and No. 4 are repreſented above the horizon; but as they are conſidered in planes perpendicular to the picture, this makes no difference in their repreſentations, for their perpendicular ſides vaniſh in *s*, the center, and the operation is the ſame above as below the horizon in all reſpects. As I have marked the ground lines and vaniſhing lines to each ſquare, diſtinguiſhing them by the ſame numeral that the ſquares are marked with, I think it unneceſſary to go through the operations, as it would only be repeating what has been ſaid on thoſe below the horizon. See Caſe 6, on Fig. 8, No. 1, in page 219.

Obſervations.—From what has been ſaid on Fig. 8, it is evident that the foregoing problem may be applied to uſeful purpoſes in repreſenting different pieces of furniture; and that which has been frequently done at random, for want of knowing better, may be done with great eaſe and accuracy. For inſtance, the riſing deſks of the library table, Plate XXX, are repreſented by this problem. The two ſemicircles ſhew that the deſk, raiſed to any pitch, will ſtill be within theſe arches,

which are the boundaries of the deſk, as it paſſes round on its hinges.

Prob. V. Fig. 9. Plate XVI.

To repreſent a Square ſituated in a Plane inclined to the Ground, and to the Picture, when the Interſection of the inclining Plane is parallel to the Ground Line, or when its Interſection is in the Interſection of the Ground Plane with the Picture.

In this caſe the common ground line G R is the interſection of the inclined plane with the picture; and a line, S P, produced parallel to G R will be the vaniſhing line of this plane.

Operation.—Let H L, the common horizon, be drawn as uſual; and let *s* be the center of the picture. From *s* to *p* is the diſtance of the eye from the picture. Take in the compaſſes, A F, equal to the ſide of the ſquare, and with it ſweep the arch *q r* from *p*; then from *r* to *q*, on the arch *q r*, lay on the degree of inclination which the original plane has to the ground; and draw *p q* produced till it cut the vertical line *s d* in S; then will S be the vaniſhing point of the ſquare in the in-

Fig. 7.

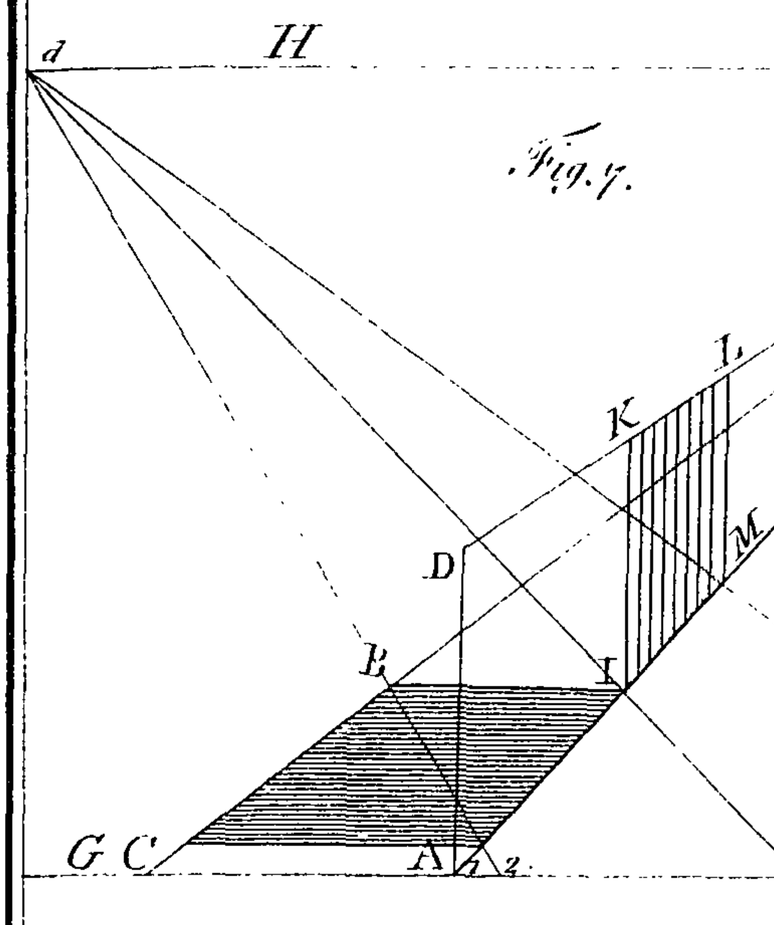


Fig. 6.

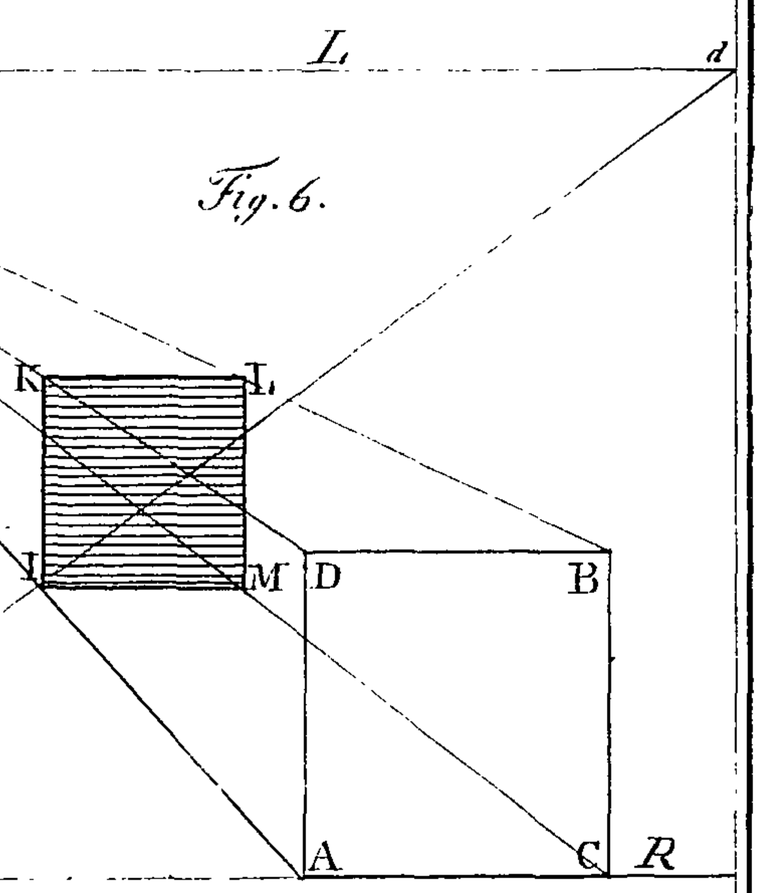
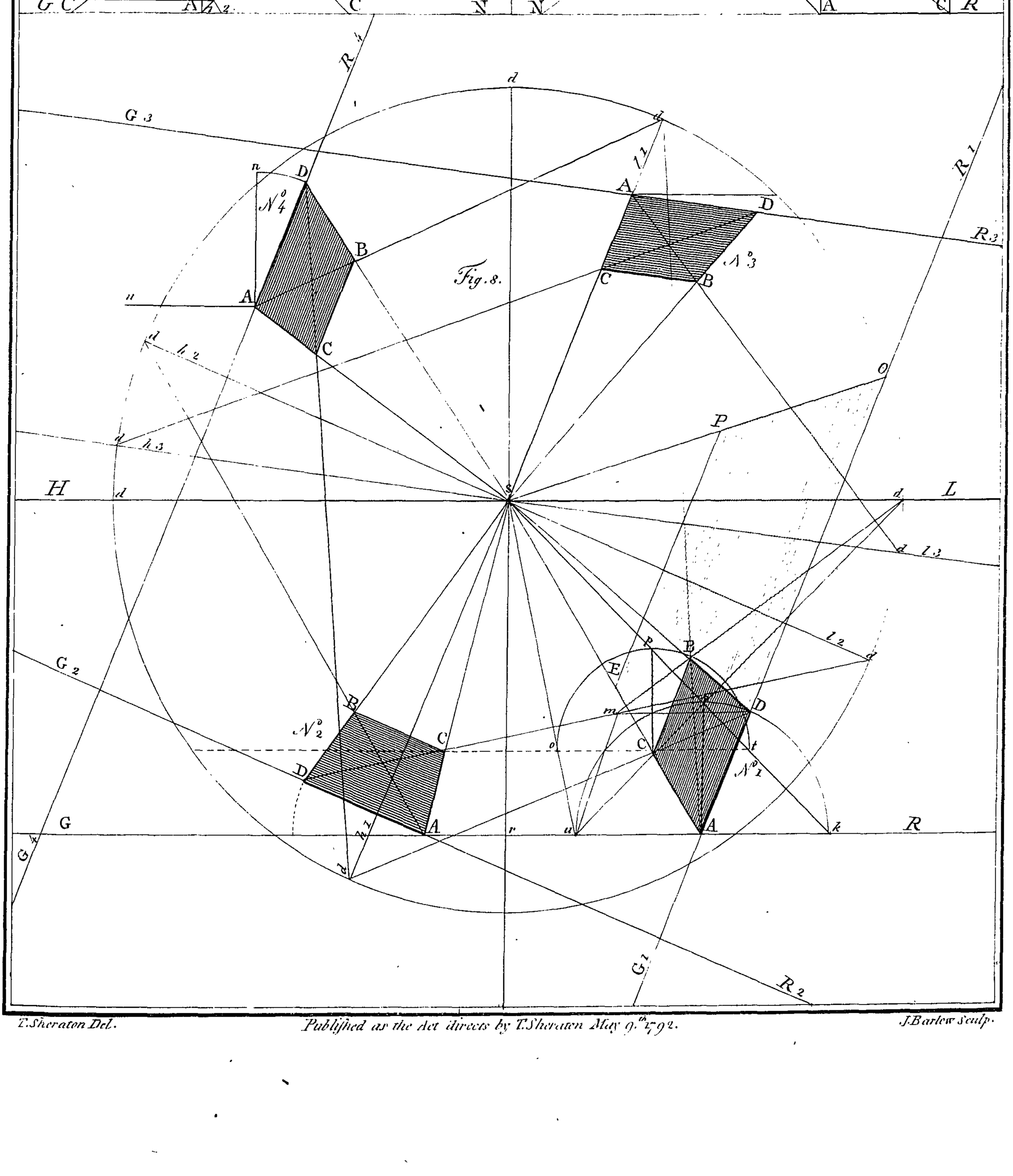


Fig. 8.



T. Sheraton Del. *Published as the Act directs by T. Sheraton May 9.th 1792.* J. Barlow Sculp.

clining plane, for the ſame reaſon as *s* is of the ſquare 11, 12, 10, 8, on the level ground. Make S P equal to *s p*, and P will be the point of diſtance to the inclined plane. Draw the viſuals A S, F S, and from A draw A P, cutting the viſual F S in O. Laſtly, draw O N parallel to A F, and the repreſentation of the ſquare will be found as propoſed. See Caſe 9, page 221.

Obſervations.—The viſuals A S, F S, may be cut by another method to the ſame effect. Thus: draw the line 5 6 parallel to S *p*, and take the ſide of the original ſquare and place it from A to 5. Draw from 5 a line to *p*, the diſtance on H L, and it will cut at N, as before. The truth of this will appear by comparing No. 1 with No. 3. At No. 1 draw G R for a ground line, and perpendicular to it draw A *s*, a ſection of the picture. Lay on, from A to *s*, No. 1, the height of the common horizon; that is, from A to *s* on the perpendicular line A B *s*, Fig. 9. From *s*, the center of the picture at No. 1, draw *s p* equal *s p* the diſtance at Fig. 9. Make A N, the inclined plane, of equal angle to *q p r*, the angle which the original plane makes with the ground. From A to N, No. 1, lay on A F equal to ſide of the ſquare No. 3. Lay the ſame from A to G, No. 1. Laſtly, draw G *p*, N *p*, cutting the picture at *n* and 8. Take, in the compaſſes, the ſpace from A to *n* at No. 1, and lay it from 9 to N at No. 3, and it will be ſeen that they are equal. In the ſame manner take A 8 at No. 1, and lay it from 9 to 8 at No. 3, and

it will be found that they are equal. This fully demonſtrates the truth of the repreſentation of the ſquare A F, N O; for, beyond all diſpute, *n*, at No. 1, ſhows how much the ſquare on the inclined plane riſes on the picture; and 8, at No. 1, as certainly ſhows how much the ſame ſquare lying on the level ground riſes; and ſince they both coincide with their repreſentations at No. 3, there can remain no doubt but S is the true vaniſhing point, and P the true point of diſtance.

N. B. This problem is of uſe to repreſent any table top hinged at the front, and riſing by a horſe behind to any pitch.

PROB. VI. FIG. 9. Plate XVI.

To find the Repreſentation of a Square lying on the Ground, having its Sides oblique to the Picture.

OPERATION.—Draw the plan of the ſquare propoſed, as 1, 2, 3, 4, in any angle to the ground line G R, as may be required. Produce the ſide 1 4 till it cut the ground line at *k*. Alſo produce the ſide 1, 2 till it cut at 1 4. Let *s* be the center of the picture as uſual, and draw *s d* perpendicular to H L. Let *d* be the diſtance of the eye from the picture. From *d*, draw *d* V parallel

rallel to 1, 2, one of the ſides of the ſquare. From *d*, draw *dv* at right angles to *d* V, then will V *v* be the true vaniſhing points of the ſides of the ſquare; for the line *d* V is parallel to the ſide 1 2, and *dv* is parallel to 1, 4; wherefore *v* V are the true vaniſhing points. Hence, from 1 4, and from 3, draw right lines to V, and from *k* and 3 draw lines to *v*; and where theſe lines cut each other at *d*, *b*, *a*, *c*, will be the repreſentation of the original ſquare 1, 2, 3, 4, as required.

Method ſecond.—To draw the ſame ſquare without the trouble of a ground plane.

Operation.—Every thing remaining as before, extend the compaſſes from *v* to *d*, and lay *v d* to *m* on the horizon; then will *m* be the meaſuring point to the viſuals 3, *v*, *k*, *v*. Make *d* 13 on the ground line equal to the ſide of the ſquare. From 13 draw a line to *m*, cutting the viſual 3 *v* at *b*. From *b* draw *b* V, cutting at *a*, as by the firſt method.

The angle of the original ſquare being brought into the picture at 3, a line from 3 to V finds the other ſide *dc*, without any further trouble.

Obſervations.—The truth of this problem will appear from what has been ſaid in Caſe 7, p. 219, which I would adviſe the reader

reader to examine. And I would further remark, that if viſual rays be drawn from each angle of the original ſquare 1, 2, 3, 4, to the vertical line *s d*, they will cut at *b*, *a*, *c*, as in the preceding methods. The rays from Z X to P, in Plate XIV. Fig. 2, are the ſame to the original Z X, as the rays 1 *d*, 4 *d*, are to the ſide of the ſquare 1, 4, in the figure before us. For *c a*, in this figure, is the repreſentation of 1, 4—and *z*, *x*, on the picture in Fig. 2, Plate XIV. is the repreſentation of Z X.

Prob. VII. Fig. 9. Plate XVI.

To find the Repreſentation of a Square ſuppoſed to be ſituated in a Plane perpendicular to the Ground, but oblique to the Picture.

For this problem, the picture being completely prepared as for the preceding one, the operation will be extremely conciſe, as follows:

Operation.—Raiſe a perpendicular line A B, No. 2. On the perpendicular A B lay the ſide of the ſquare from A to B. From B and A draw viſual lines to *v*, the vaniſhing point; found as before. From A, lay down the ſide of the ſquare to *i*; and from *i* draw *i m*, cutting the viſual line A *v* in D. Laſtly, draw D C parallel

parallel to A B, and the repreſentation will be found as required. See remarks in Caſe 8, page 221.

PROB. VIII. FIG. 10. Plate XVI.

To find the Repreſentation of a Square having its Sides oblique to the Picture, ſuppoſed to be in a Plane inclined to the Ground, as in Problem V.

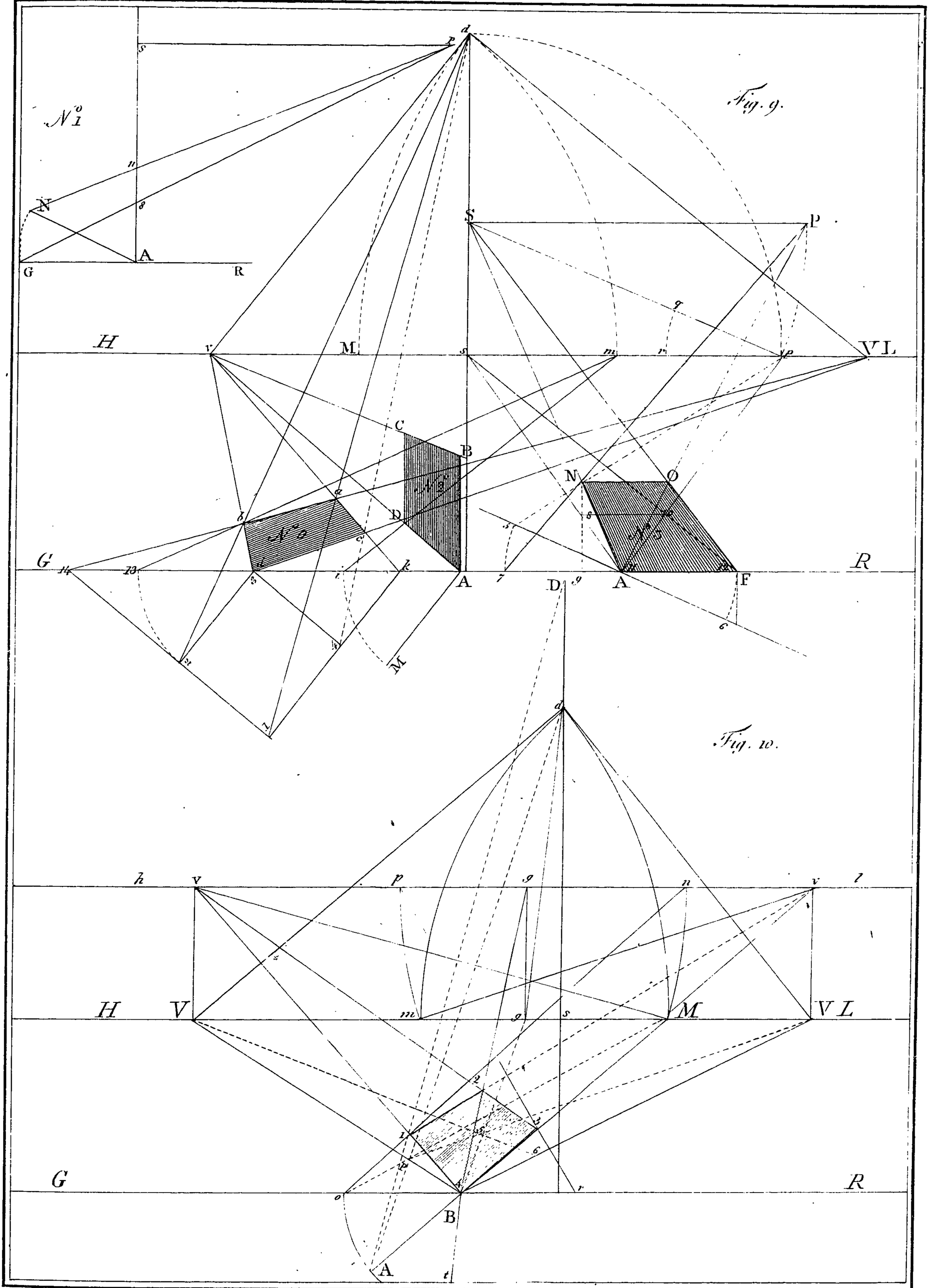
OBSERVATIONS.—This problem differs in no reſpect from the fifth, except what relates to the ſquares repreſented in theſe inclined planes. In the fifth problem, the ſquare in that inclined plane, having two of its ſides parallel to the picture, the others of courſe vaniſh in S, perpendicular to *s*, the center of the picture. In this problem the ſquare repreſented in the inclined plane has its ſides oblique to the picture, and therefore they vaniſh to two points in ſome new vaniſhing line, *h l*, parallel to the common one H L; becauſe the interſection of the inclined plane is parallel to the ground line.

Operation.—Draw, as uſual, G R the ground line, and H L the horizon. Let *s* be the center, and *d* the diſtance of the picture. Draw A B, one ſide of the original ſquare; make

make *d* V parallel to A B, the ſide of the ſquare; and draw *d*, V L, at right angles with *d* V, then will V, V L, be the vaniſhing points of the ſquare 4, *p*, 5, 6, on the level ground. Make V M equal V *d*, and L V *m* equal L V *d*; then will *m* and M be the meaſuring points of the viſuals tending to V, V L. Thus far the picture is prepared only to repreſent the ſquare on the level ground; therefore we muſt proceed to find the vaniſhing line, points, and meaſuring points, of the inclined plane, thus:—Draw perpendiculars at pleaſure from V, and V L. From M draw M *v*, in an angle to V M equal to the angle which the inclined plane makes with the ground. Through *v* draw *h l* parallel to H L, cutting the perpendiculars V *v* at *v*; then will *v v* be the vaniſhing points ſought. Make *v n* equal *v* M, and *n* will be the meaſuring point ſought. Draw then the viſuals 4 *v* and 4 *v l*. Make 4, *o*, 4, *r*, equal to the ſides of the original ſquare B A. From *o* draw *o n*, cutting at 1; and from *r* draw *r p*, cutting at 3. From 3 draw 3 *v*, and from 1 draw *i v l*, interſecting at 2; then will 1, 2, 3, 4, be the repreſentation of the ſquare propoſed.

Obſervations.—The line *t* B paſſes through the diagonal of the original ſquare, whoſe ſide is A B. Draw from *d*, the diſtance, a line parallel to B *t*, cutting at *g* on the common horizon. From 4 draw a line to *g*, and it will paſs through the diagonal of the

ſquare



T. Sheraton. Del.

Published as the Act directs by T. Sheraton May 9th 1792.

J. Barlow Scu.

ſquare 4 *p*, 5, 6, lying on the level ground. Draw from *g*, a perpendicular to *g* on the new horizon *h l*. From 4 draw a line to the uppermoſt *g*, and the line will paſs through the diagonal of the ſquare repreſented on the inclined plane; which is a clear demonſtration of the truth of the whole.

The truth of the method may be proved, alſo, by drawing a line from A to D, the diſtance laid on from the new horizon *h l*; for the line cuts the viſual at 1, as in the other method.

PROB. IX. FIG. 11. Plate XVII.

To find the Repreſentation of a Square, ſituated in a Plane oblique both to the Ground and to the Picture.

THIS figure may, to the workman, appear intricate and perplexed; but he ought not to be diſcouraged at the ſight of an aſſemblage of lines, till, after having made a reaſonable attempt to underſtand them, he finds it not eaſily attained. But it is to be noticed, that there are ſeveral more lines than what are abſolutely neceſſary for repreſenting the ſquare ſimply conſidered; becauſe I have ſhown different methods to effect the ſame thing; and becauſe the whole proceſs is ſhown from firſt to laſt, that the reader might have a clear

underſtanding of a problem really uſeful, but rarely known amongſt workmen, and even not amongſt painters.

Operation.—Draw G R, the ground line, and H L, the horizon, as uſual; and make *s* the center of the picture. Draw *s d* perpendicular to H L; and let *d* be the diſtance of the picture. Make the angle *d v s* equal to the angle which the ſquare in the inclined plane makes with the picture; and draw *d* P at right angles to *d v*; and make *v m* on H L equal *v d*. Draw at pleaſure *m* M *o* perpendicular to the horizon. Make *v* M to incline in an angle equal to that which the original plane makes with the ground. Draw M, V *x* parallel to the horizon; and from V *x*, draw V *x*, *v*, which will be the vaniſhing line of the inclined plane. From the center *s*, draw *s* S, *d x* perpendicular to the vaniſhing line *v*, V *x*. From *s*, draw a line to *d* 1, parallel to *v* S V *x*. Extend the compaſſes from S to *d* 1, and make S, *d x*, equal to S, *d* 1; then will S, *d x* be the diſtance of the picture for the inclined plane. Make V *x*, *m* 2, equal V *x*, *d x*, and *m* 2 will be the meaſuring point.

The picture being thus prepared for delineating the ſquare, draw from A, the viſual A *v*; and from A, the viſual A, V *x*. Draw A X parallel to the vaniſhing line *v*, S V, *x*. Lay on, from A to *w*, a ſpace equal to the ſide of the ſquare; and from *w*, draw *w*, *m* 2, cutting at D. From D, draw a line to *v*, for the ſide

of the ſquare D B. Make alſo A N equal to the ſide of the ſquare; and draw N *m*, cutting at G; and laſtly, draw G V *x*, cutting at B; and the ſquare will be completed as required.

Method ſecond.—From A, ſweep the arch *k* K, whoſe radius is equal to the ſide of the ſquare to be repreſented. Draw A *u* equal to the angle of the inclined plane with the ground; and from *u*, draw *u t* parallel to the ground line; from *t* draw a viſual to P; and from *u*, draw *u* M, cutting at D; from A draw a line through the interſection of *u* M with *t* P, and produce this line till it find the vaniſhing point V *x* in the perpendicular P V. From D draw a line to *v*, as before; and laſtly, from G, found as before, draw G V *x*, cutting at B, and the ſquare will be completed, as in the other method.

Obſervations.—If the original plane inclined to the ground in an angle of forty-five degrees, the viſual line of the ſide of the ſquare A D would paſs through the diagonal of the ſquare A, *k*, *n*, 8, and tend to the upper V, the vaniſhing point in that caſe; and V *v* would then be the vaniſhing line, S would be the center of the picture, *m* the meaſuring point, and *d* 3 its diſtance, and *v*, *d* 3, Q, would be the angle of the inclined plane, which is the diagonal of a ſquare *v*, *d* 3, Q, *m*. It is evident then, that the true repreſentation of a ſquare in any inclination, would

deſcribe a quadrant of a circle, whoſe radius would be the ſide of the ſquare repreſented, as the figure ſhows.

N. B. No. 1 is the ſame problem, diveſted of all lines but ſuch as are abſolutely neceſſary to its repreſentation; which, it is preſumed, will be readily underſtood by inſpection, after what has been ſaid on Fig. 11. See page 224.

Prob. X. Fig. 12. Plate XVIII.

To repreſent a Floor of Squares parallel to the Picture.

G R is the ground line, and H L the horizon.

Let *s* be the center, and *d* the diſtance of the picture.

Let it now be required to repreſent thirty-ſix ſquares.

Operation.—Lay A D, the ſide of the original ſquare, ſix times on the ground line G R, contained between A *h*, as the figure ſhows. Draw from each diviſion on the ground line viſuals to *s*; and from *h*, draw a line to *d*, the diſtance; which line will cut each viſual in *i*, *k*, *l*, *p*, *q*, *r*. Through the

ſeveral

Fig. 11.

T. Sheraton Del. Published as the Act directs, by T. Sheraton May 12th 1792 J. Barlow Sculp.

ſeveral points of interſection marked by theſe letters, draw lines parallel to G R, the ground line, and there will be produced the number of ſquares required. But if it be neceſſary to fill up the picture with theſe ſquares, and there be no room for laying A D on the ground line beyond *b*, then continue the laſt parallel line *r o a b c* the whole extent of the picture; and take *o a* equal to the ſide of the ſquare, and repeat it *a*, *b*, *c*, as may be neceſſary. From *s*, draw *s b*, produced forward to the ground line. In the ſame manner draw *s c* forward, and ſo on repeatedly. Then, laſtly, draw parallel lines from the former ſquares, by which means the picture will be filled up to the ſides.

Obſervations.—The diagonal line *b d* paſſes through the oppoſite angles of the large ſquare A, *r*, *a*, *b*, which includes all the other; and a line through the oppoſite angles of any of the ſmall ſquares, will alſo tend to the ſame point of diſtance *d*.

of

Of the Repreſentation of Rectangular Solids in different Poſitions to the Picture.

Prob. XI. Fig. 12. Plate XVIII.

To repreſent a Row of Cubes, or a Priſm, parallel to the Picture.

Operation.—The ground line, horizon, &c. remaining the ſame as for the floor of ſquares, draw A, B, C, D, a geometrical ſquare, equal to one ſide of the cube. Draw the viſuals A *s*, B *s*, C *s*, D *s*. From D, draw D *d*, cutting at 1. Draw 1, 2, parallel to the ground line, cutting D *s* at 2. From 2 raiſe a perpendicular, cutting C *s* in 5; from 1 raiſe a perpendicular to 4, cutting B *s* in 4. Laſtly, from 4 draw a line to 5, parallel to the ground line, or to BC; and the repreſentation of the firſt cube will be completed. Next, from 2 draw 2 *d*, cutting at 3; draw 3, 8, cutting D *s* in 8; from 8 draw 8 *d*, and it will find the baſe of the ſecond cube; and repeating every thing as in the firſt cube, any number of them may be drawn till they vaniſh in the point *s*.

Obſervations.—If a number of cubes, or priſms, are to be repreſented in various places on the picture, it will be done with

with the moſt eaſe, firſt, to repreſent a floor of ſquares equal to the ſide of the cubes, or baſe of the priſms. Thus, for inſtance, the priſm *r* is eaſily delineated on the back part of the picture, by raiſing a perpendicular M N equal to the original height of the priſm. Draw N *s*, and from any ſquare where it is to ſtand, raiſe perpendiculars cutting N *s* at *r*. From *r* draw a line parallel to the ground line, which will complete the priſm. In like manner the cube *k i* may be repreſented any where.

Laſtly, we may ſee, in the repreſentation of a cube, that it conſiſts of three different caſes of geometrical ſquares; that is, A, D, 1, 2, is the repreſentation of a ſquare lying on the ground; and 1, 4, 5, 2, is the repreſentation of a ſquare perpendicular to the ground, and parallel to the picture: and D, C, 5, 2, is a ſquare repreſented both perpendicular to the ground and to the picture. The other three ſides of the cube are reſpectively parallel to thoſe we have mentioned, and therefore are the ſame in all reſpects.

PROB.

PROB. XII. FIG. 13. Plate XVIII.

To repreſent two Rows of Cubes oblique to the Picture.

OPERATION.—G R is the ground line, and H L the horizon. Let *s* be the center of the picture, and *s d* the diſtance. From *d*, draw *d* V, cutting H L in V, and parallel to that ſide of the original cube; whoſe repreſentation is A B C *g*. Draw *d v* at right angles with *d* V, cutting at *v*; then will *v* be the vaniſhing point of the right hand ſide of the ſquare. Make V M equal V *d*, and *v m* equal *v d*; then will M *m* be the meaſuring points. From A, the angle of the firſt cube, draw the viſual A *v*. Draw alſo A V. Make A B equal to the ſide of the cube, and from B draw B V, B *v*. Next, lay A B to 7, and from 7 draw a line to the meaſuring point *m*, cutting at *a*. Lay A B to *c*; and from *c* draw *c* M, cutting at *g*; from *g* and *a* raiſe perpendiculars to C and D; from D draw a line to V, and from C to *v*, which will complete the repreſentation of the firſt cube.

The ſpace between the cubes being conſidered equal to the ſide of the ſquare, repeat A 7 each way on the ground line, as often as there is room, as at 8, 9—*d*, *e*, *f*. From each of theſe diviſions

diviſions draw lines to their reſpective meaſuring points *m* M, cutting A *v* in *b* and in 2, and AV in *b i k*. Raiſe perpendiculars from *b* and 2, cutting the upper viſuals. Do the ſame from the other points *b i k*, and proceed in all reſpects as with the firſt cube, and there will be two more produced.

Obſervations.—If it were required to repreſent two additional cubes to each row, it is evident that we muſt have recourſe to ſome expedient for this purpoſe; becauſe there is not room beyond 9 and *f* to lay on any more diviſions. Therefore from 2 produce a line parallel to the ground line, and from *k* do the ſame. And obſerve, that a line from 8 to *m*, and from *e* to M, cut theſe parallel lines at *n* and 1. Extend the compaſſes from 1 to 2, and repeat this at 3, 4, 5, 6, and from theſe diviſions draw lines to *m*, and they will cut the viſual A *v* in the ſame points in which it would have been cut if theſe lines had been drawn from the original diviſions on the ground line. Laſtly, a line from *e* to M will cut the left hand parallel at *n*; repeat *n k* at *p q r*, and proceed as before. By this method, which is quite ſimple, it is evident we may draw as many cubes as we pleaſe, by adding parallel lines to the ground line.

Of drawing Viſual Lines tending to Vaniſhing Points out of the Picture.

In the practice of drawing it is frequently found, by experience, that if we make uſe of a ſhort diſtance, the figure we repreſent will appear diſtorted and unnatural; and when we, to avoid this, make uſe of a long diſtance, it will perhaps exceed the paper or picture we draw on: alſo, in the repreſentation of objects obliquely ſituated to the picture, their vaniſhing points not being in the center, it often follows, as the conſequence of chooſing a long diſtance, that the vaniſhing points far exceed the limits of the picture. To alleviate theſe difficulties, we propoſe the following problem.

Prob. XIII. Fig. 14. Plate XVIII.

To repreſent two upright Priſms obliquely ſituated, whoſe Diſtance and Vaniſhing Points exceed the Limits of the Picture.

Let the double line on each ſide of Fig. 14 be conſidered as the boundaries of the picture. Draw, as uſual, the ground line G R, and the vaniſhing line H L, and make *s* the center of

the picture. Let *s d* be conſidered as only half the diſtance, becauſe there is no more ſpace on the picture above *d*. From the point *d*, draw a right line each way, at a diſtance from *s*, equal *s d*, forming a right angle; becauſe the ſides of the priſms are originally perpendicular to each other. Make *v m* equal *v d*; then would *m* be the true meaſuring point, provided *s d* were the whole diſtance of the picture; and in this caſe *v v* would be the vaniſhing points of the ſides of the priſms; but ſince *s d* is only half the real diſtance, take in the compaſſes *s m*, and repeat that ſpace to M, and make *s* M, *s* M, equal, then will M M be the true meaſuring points to the whole diſtance. Produce the vertical line *d s* to A, cutting the ground line at A. Divide *s d* into any number of equal parts, as 1, 2, 3, 4, and, for the ſake of accuracy, ſubdivide theſe as in the figure. Lay on the ſame diviſions downwards from *s* to A.

The next thing to be conſidered, is to draw a line perpendicular to the horizon, of ſuch a proportion to *s d*, at any given diſtance from *s*, the center, according to the boundaries of the picture, that when a line is drawn from *d*, touching the top of the ſaid perpendicular, it would exactly tend to the true vaniſhing point, were it produced to the horizontal line. We ſhall ſuppoſe then, that a perpendicular line is drawn from the point *v*, which is exactly half the diſtance from *s* the center, to V the vaniſhing

point out of the picture. Make then the ſaid perpendicular line $v\,4$, half the length of $s\,d$; then a line paſſing from d to 4 would, if produced, terminate at V, the true vaniſhing point. Divide $v,4$ in the ſame manner as $s\,d$, and downwards from v to 3 lay on the ſame diviſions; for $v\,3$ is half the length of s A. Laſtly, make the other ſcale on the left in the ſame proportion, then will the picture be properly prepared for delineating the propoſed priſms.

Operation.—From A draw a line to 3, which will be the viſual for the bottoms of the priſms, for A 3 produced would tend to V. Make A c equal to the diſtance which the priſm is ſuppoſed to be from the picture; then, from c, draw a line to M, cutting at p; from p lay a ruler acroſs the two ſcale lines, and move the ruler backward and forward till its edge coincide with p, and any correſpondent diviſion on each ſcale. The ruler being thus fixed, draw a line $p\,b$, cutting the ſcale line s A in the ſecond diviſion, and the ſcale line $v\,3$ to the left in the ſame diviſion; then would $p\,b$ produced terminate in a point on the horizon equally diſtant from s as V is. Make A a equal to the left ſide of the priſm, and draw a M, cutting at b. Make $c\,e$ equal A a; and from c draw a line to M, cutting at h. From the points p, b, h, raiſe perpendiculars at pleaſure.

Conſider

Conſider now the height of the priſm, which we ſuppoſe to be A B; from B place the edge of the ruler, and move it till it be at ſimilar diviſions on each ſcale line, as before. The ruler being in this poſition, draw a line cutting the perpendicular p D at D; and from D, place the ruler till it coincide with ſimilar diviſions on each ſcale line on the left, which will complete the repreſentation of the firſt priſm; and for the ſecond, proceed in the ſame way, obſerving that, as there is not room on the ground line G R for repeating the ſide of the priſm *c e*, the ſcale line, or new ground line *h i k*, muſt be found, as in the preceding problem, by drawing through *h* a line parallel to the old ground line, cutting at *g*, then muſt the ſpace *h g* be laid to *i* and *k*, from which lines being directed to M, they will cut at *l o*.

Obſervations.—In Problem XXI. page 71, Plate II. Fig. 15, the geometrical principle is explained, upon which this method of drawing viſuals to points out of the picture is founded.

We there ſay, in page 72, " In whatever proportion the extreme line E P is divided, into the ſame proportion will the hypothenuſe line E O be divided." Agreeably to which, we may obſerve in the perſpective problem before us, that, in whatever proportion the diſtance *s d* is divided, a line being drawn from the ſaid diviſion parallel to the horizon, will cut

the viſual *d* V in that ſame proportion. The line *s d* being divided into two equal parts, a line from 2, parallel to the horizon, will cut at 4, which divides the viſual *d* V into two equal parts; and a line from the point 4, perpendicular to the horizon, will divide *s* V in the ſame manner. Hence it is evident, that if *s d*, *v* 4, be divided into the ſame number of equal parts, a line drawn through any two correſpondent diviſions, will tend to V, the vaniſhing point. It is alſo evident, by the ſame mode of reaſoning, that if the half diſtance *s d* were produced to twice its preſent length, which would then be the whole diſtance, a line from *d* to V would be equal to the ſpace from V to M, on the left the true meaſuring point, in the ſame manner as *d v* meaſures *v m*, which is only half that ſpace.

Of reducing the Point of Diſtance, ſo as to bring it within the Limits of the Picture.

In making deſigns on a large ſcale, it is very common for the point of diſtance to exceed the bounds of the paper or board we draw on: to avoid the inconvenience of which, let the following problem be attended to.

Prob.

PROB. XIV. FIG. 15. Plate XVIII.

To find the Repreſentation of a Number of Squares when the Diſtance is out of the Limits of the Picture.

THE double lines which include the ſquares, are the boundaries of the paper, board, or picture we draw on.

Operation.—Let *s* be the center, and let *s d* be ſuppoſed half the length of the point of diſtance. Make then a ſcale on the ground line, whoſe equal parts ſhall be equal to half the ſide of the ſquares to be repreſented, as 3, 4, 5. Lay on from 3 to 4 half the ſide of the ſquare A, and from 4 draw a line to *d*, half the diſtance, which will cut the viſual 3 *s* in the ſame point as it would have been cut if *d* had been twice its preſent diſtance from *s*, and the whole ſide of the ſquare had been laid on the ground line, as at 5; for it is evident, that a line from 5 through *t* would terminate in a point on the horizon twice the diſtance of *s d*. From 4 lay on 5, 6, equal 3, 4, and drawing lines to *d*, we ſhall have the ſquares B C. Here the learner muſt obſerve another difficulty ariſing; for the ground line of the picture is filled up at 6, and we are ſuppoſed to want the repreſentation of three more ſquares; and as the point 6 is near the extremities

of

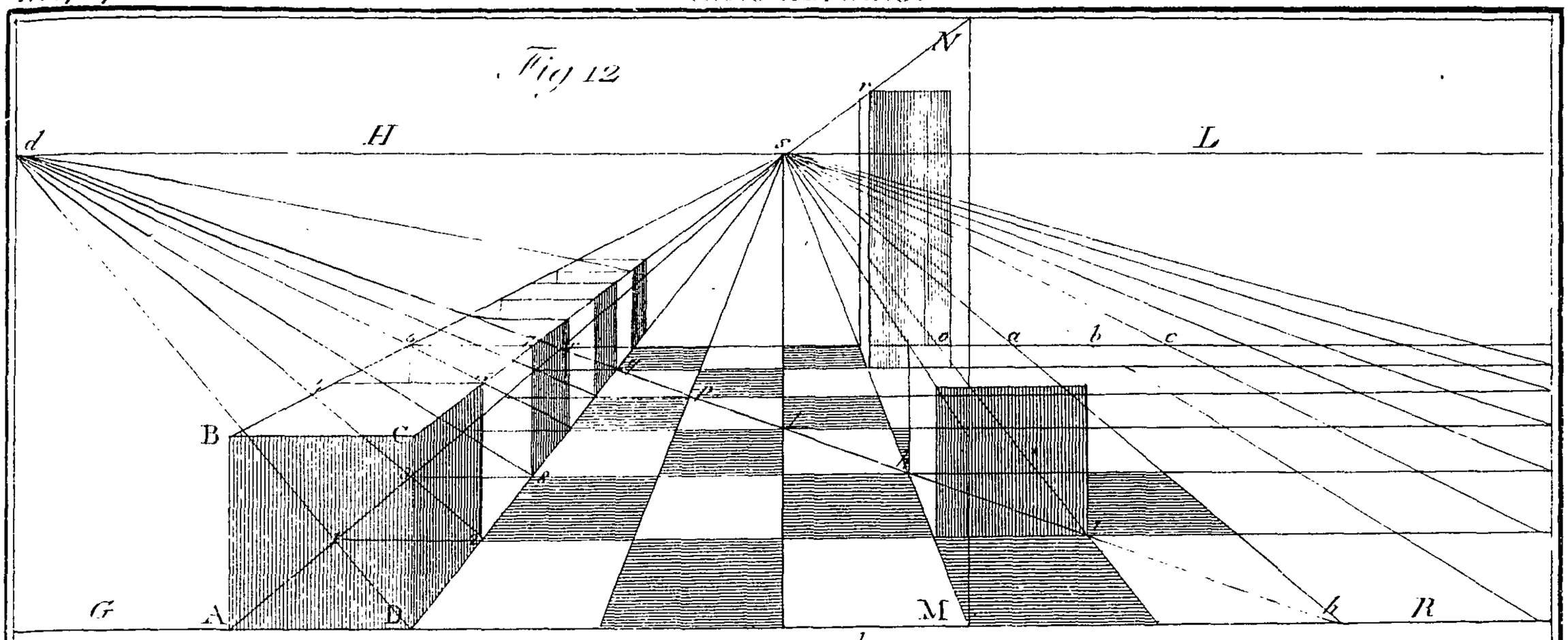
of the picture or board we draw on, there can be no opportunity to lay on the ſides of the ſquare any further; we muſt again therefore reduce the length of the point of diſtance to *h*, which is only one fourth of the whole diſtance; in proportion to which we muſt alſo reduce the ſcale on the ground line to one fourth of the ſide of the ſquare, as 1, 2; or, which is the ſame thing, divide the ſpace 5, 6, into two equal parts, and from 6, *o*, 5 draw lines to *h*, and three more ſquares will be cut off on the viſual line 3, *s*, as is evident from the figure.

Obſervations.—The truth of the repreſentation of the three laſt ſquares will appear, if the whole ſpace between 3 and 6 be placed from 6 to 9. Draw then from 9 a line to *d*, which will cut the viſual in the ſame points as before, when a line was drawn from 6 to *h*.

The advantage of this problem is very much experienced in the repreſentation of long ranges of buildings, ſuch as the internal views of ſtreets; in which caſe it is impoſſible to find room on the ground line for the full meaſurement of each front, not even when we have a very large board to draw on. I remember to have been very much embarraſſed myſelf in drawing the view of a long ſtreet, till I was informed of the above methods.

SECTION

Fig. 12



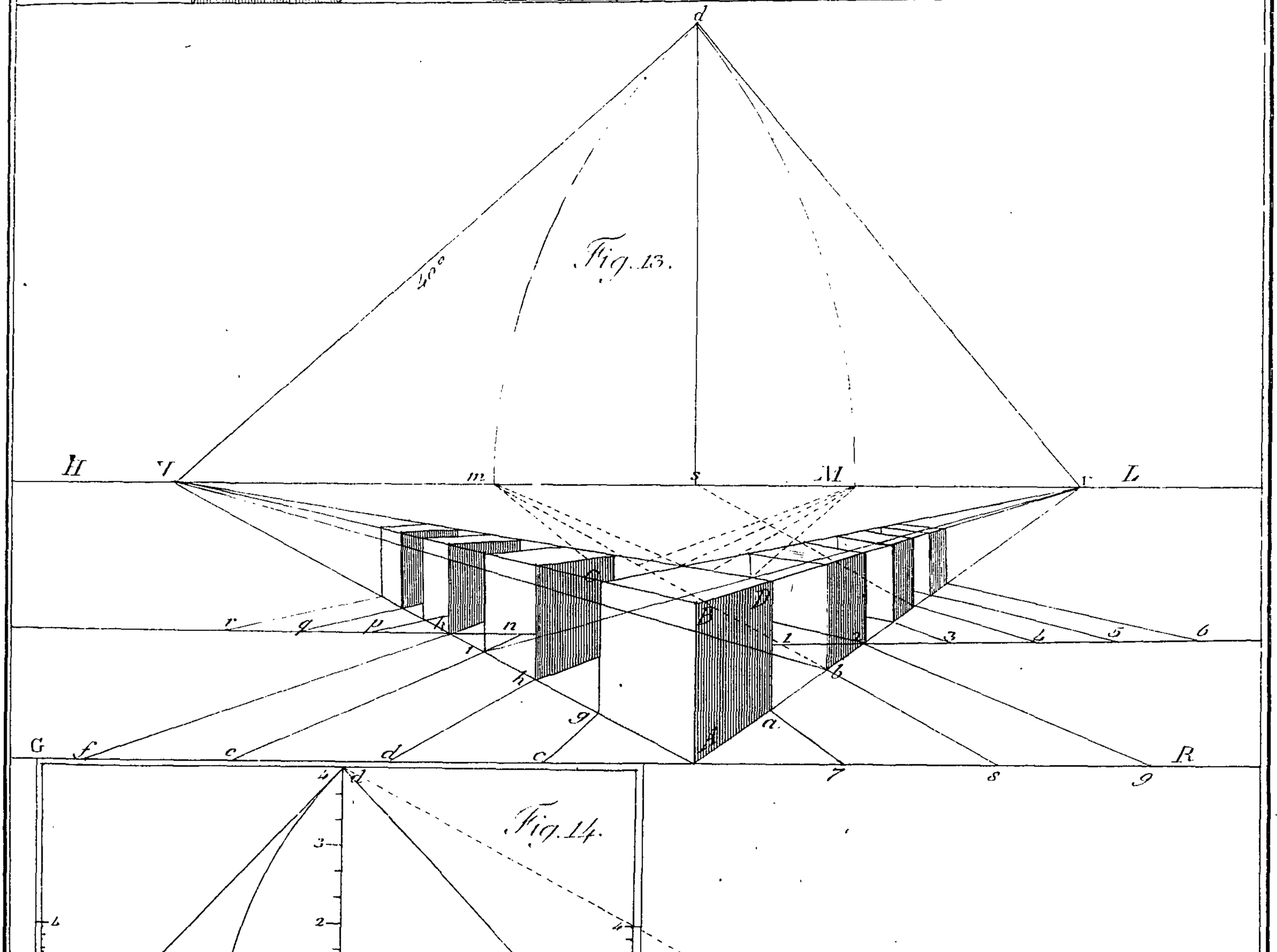


Fig. 13.

Fig. 14.

Fig. 15.

T. Sheraton Del. Published as the Act directs by T. Sheraton May 21st 1792. J. Barlow Sculp.

SECTION IV.

Of the repreſentations of Polygonal and Curvilinear Figures—containing ſome further Remarks on the Difference between the Repreſentation of Objects on a Plane, and their real Appearance to the Eye.—Of long and ſhort Diſtances, and the Repreſentation of a Row of Columns and Pilaſters, parallel to the Picture; together with ſome Obſervations on the Theory of Circular Objects.

Of Polygonal Figures.

LINES in three different poſitions to the picture, will repreſent any polygon in any ſituation whatever *.

A pentagon may have one ſide parallel to the picture; and if ſo, the other four will be oblique to it; or it may be placed ſo as to have all its ſides oblique.

* See the definition in page 49, and the various kinds of polygons in Plate II.

A hexagon may be ſo placed as to have two ſides parallel, and the other four oblique, as Fig. 16, Plate XIX. or it may have all its ſides oblique.

An octagon may have two ſides parallel to the picture, conſequently there will alſo be two perpendicular to it, and the remaining four will be each of them oblique, as Fig. 18, Plate XIX. The octagon in this ſituation, therefore, introduces all the variety of poſitions of lines that can exiſt in a picture, when the figure is ſuppoſed to be on the ground plane, or perpendicular to the picture; and ſince the theory of lines parallel, perpendicular, and oblique to the ground line, &c. has already been conſidered and applied to practice in the preceding ſection, in the repreſentation of geometrical ſquares and of cubes, nothing is requiſite here, but to apply the ſame principles to the repreſentation of polygonal figures.

The moſt uſeful of theſe are the hexagon and octagon; which, for brevity's ſake, I ſhall confine myſelf to, taking it for granted that, after the learner is acquainted with theſe, he will be able to delineate any other, from a pentagon to a duodecagon, as it may be found requiſite.

PROB.

PROB. XV. FIG. 16. Plate XIX.

To repreſent a Hexagon having Two of its Sides parallel to the Picture.

OPERATION.—Draw the ground line and horizon, and make *s* the center of the picture, and *d* the diſtance. Through *d*, draw a line at pleaſure parallel to the horizon. From *d* deſcribe a ſemicircle, in which may be inſcribed half a hexagon, as 1, 2, 3. From *d*, through each angle of the hexagon, produce a line till it cut the horizontal line in V *v*; then will V *v* be the vaniſhing points of the four ſides of the hexagon, which are oblique to the picture. Draw the viſuals F *v*, B *v*, and B V, F V, and make B D and F A each equal F B, the ſide of the given hexagon. Draw A V, cutting the viſuals at 1 K; and draw D *v*, cutting at O N. Laſtly, draw K N parallel to F B, and the repreſentation will be completed as required.

Obſervations.—It is evident that a hexagon is compoſed of ſix equilateral triangles. The repreſentation contains ſix triangles alſo; and if a right line be drawn through each oppoſite angle, as from F N, &c. they will all interſect in the center *e*, in the ſame manner as the lines from each oppoſite angle on the

plan of the hexagon Y interſect each other in the true center, from which a circle may be deſcribed that will touch each angle.

Prob. XVI. Fig. 17. Plate XIX.

To find the Repreſentation of a hexangular Priſm, or Box, having two Sides parallel to the Picture, as before.

This problem may be ſolved by another method, which will help to confirm the truth of the laſt method.

Operation.—Draw the plan Y, and produce its ſides up to the ground line at *g*, *f*, *b*, *c*. Find the vaniſhing points *v* V as in the preceding problem. Draw the viſuals *g* V, *f* V, and *b v*, *c v*, which will interſect each other at *a*, *e*, *t*. Through *e* the center, correſponding with *e* on the plan, draw *h u* parallel to *q*, *r*, on the plan. From *v*, draw *v h*, produced to *o*; and from V, draw V *u*, produced to *n*. Laſtly, from *n* draw *n o*, which will complete the bottom of the box. Or it may be done by drawing the viſuals 8 V, 7 V, when the other viſuals are drawn, as the figure itſelf ſufficiently indicates. From each angle of the bottom perpendiculars muſt be raiſed, and produced at pleaſure. Next, draw *g p* perpendicular to the ground line, and

make

make *g p* equal to the height of the box; and draw *p* V, and produce *n*, *o* to *i*; and from *i* draw *i k*, and from *k* draw a line parallel to the ground line, which will cut the aforeſaid perpendiculars drawn from *o*, *n*, at 1, 6. The perpendiculars from *h*, *a*, were cut by *p* V at 2, 3. Draw 6 V, and 1 V, cutting the perpendiculars from *u* and *t* at 5, 4; from 5 draw 5 *v*, and from 4 draw 4, 3, and the outlines of the box will then be completed.

To ſhew the inſide, and the thickneſs of the edges of the box, proceed thus:—produce from the plan, *x w*, and from *w* draw a line to V, cutting *i o*; from its interſection in *i o*, raiſe a perpendicular to *k* 1; and from its ſection on *k* 1, draw a line to V; and where this line cuts the diagonal 2, 5, a line muſt be drawn from *v*, the vaniſhing point, to 9, the point of interſection, and produced till it cut the diagonal 1, 4, at 1; and from where it cuts this diagonal, draw a parallel to 1, 6; and from where it cuts at 6, draw a line to V; and from where this line cuts at 5, draw a line to *v*, cutting 4; and from where it cuts at 4, draw a line to the other interſection at 3, and the edges of each angle will be finiſhed.

Obſervations.—The hexagon in this figure is nearly the ſame in its plan as the other in Fig. 16; but as it is removed back from the picture, its appearance is more eaſy and natural than

than that. The hexagon in Fig. 16 has one ſide, F B, in the picture, therefore F B is the full length of the ſide of the original hexagon, and the contractions of the other ſides appear more ſudden, and therefore more unnatural; but its repreſentation is equally true. The hexagon may, however, be repreſented by this method as far back as we pleaſe, by repeatedly laying F B, the ſide of the hexagon, on the ground line, as from D to E, and drawing E *v*, by which means we have another hexagon 1, 2, 3, 4, K, Z, whoſe appearance is perfectly natural.

PROB. XVII. FIG. 18. Plate XIX.

To find the Repreſentation of an Octagon, having two Sides parallel to the Picture.

OPERATION.—Draw G R, the ground line, and H L as in common; and make *s d* the diſtance of the picture, and *s* the center. Draw half the plan of the octagon at A, as follows.—Make *b g* equal to half the breadth of the plan; and from *c* ſweep the arch *b*, *i*, *e*. Biſect the arch in *i*. From *i* draw *i c*, cutting at *p*, and *p g* will be half the ſide of the octagon. Lay on *b p* to *b* 1, and a line from *p* to 1 is one ſide of the octagon.

Produce each ſide of the octagon up to the ground line; and from the points *f*, 8, 1, *b*, draw viſuals to *s*. From 8 draw a line to *d*, cutting at 7; from 1 draw a line to *d* alſo, cutting at 6. From 7 and 6 draw lines parallel to the ground line, cutting at 2, 3. Draw *f d*, paſſing through the diagonal of the ſquare in which the octagon is inſcribed. Draw 4, 5, parallel to the ground line. Laſtly, draw the ſides 1, 2,—3, 4—4, 5—5, 6, and 7, 8; which completes the repreſentation.

PROB. XVIII. FIG. 19. Plate XIX.

To find the Repreſentation of an octangular Priſm, or Box, having all its Sides oblique to the Picture.

OPERATION.—Draw the ground line and horizon, and let figure A be half the plan of the octagon. Let *s* be the center, and *d* the diſtance of the picture. Produce *n e*, *n p*, to the ground line; and draw *g* perpendicular to *e*. From *b*, *g*, 1, R, draw viſuals to *s*; and from R draw R *d*; by which a ſquare will be repreſented in which the octagon may be inſcribed.

Draw the other diagonal of the ſquare, which will cut the viſual *g s* in 8; the other diagonal R *d*, cuts the viſual *g s* in 6.

From

From 6 draw a parallel to 4, cutting the diagonal at 4; and from 8 draw a parallel to 2, cutting the diagonal at 2; through the center of the ſquare draw a parallel, cutting at 7 and 3. Laſtly, draw right lines to each point, and the bottom of the box will be completed.

Draw A F parallel to G R, and at a diſtance from G R equal to the height of the box. Then repreſent another ſquare A, F, G, D, and draw the diagonal each way. Then from 8 raiſe a perpendicular to 10, cutting the diagonal A D at 10. In the ſame manner, and to the ſame effect, raiſe a perpendicular from 6 to 11, from 5 to 13, from 4 to 14, from 3 to 15, from 2 to 16, from 1 to *o*, and laſtly, from 7 to 12. Draw then, as before, right lines to each point, and the whole repreſentation of the box will be finiſhed, except ſhewing the inſide and the edges of the box: having deſcribed how this is to be done in Problem XVI, I need not here repeat it; only it will be neceſſary to obſerve, that as the ſides of the octagon are drawn by this method without vaniſhing points, theſe points muſt be found by producing the ſides of the octagon till they cut the horizontal line H L, in the ſame way as the ſide 15, 14, is produced to *v*, which will be the vaniſhing point required for drawing the inſide line to, as the figure ſhews.

Some

Fig. 16.

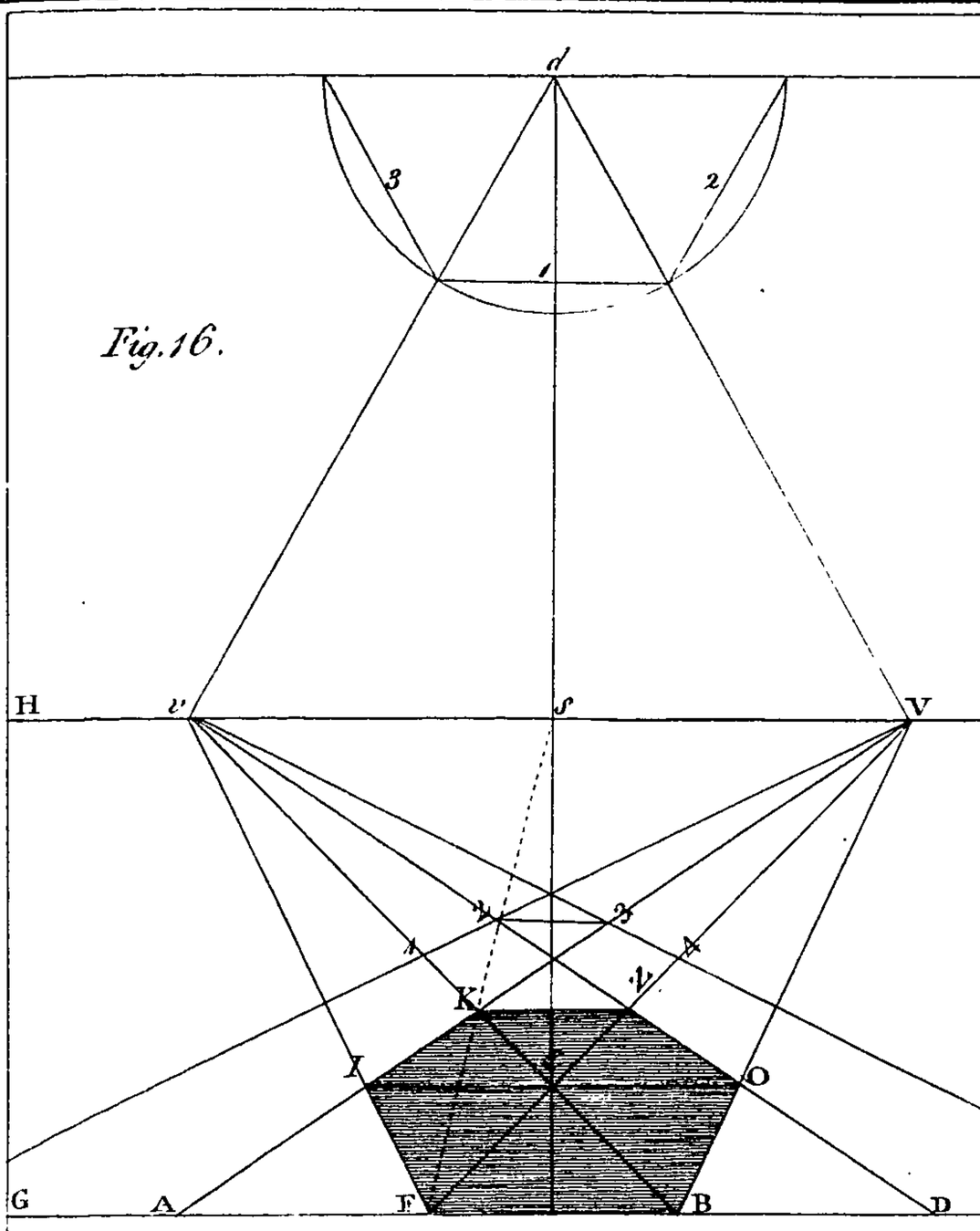


Fig. 17.

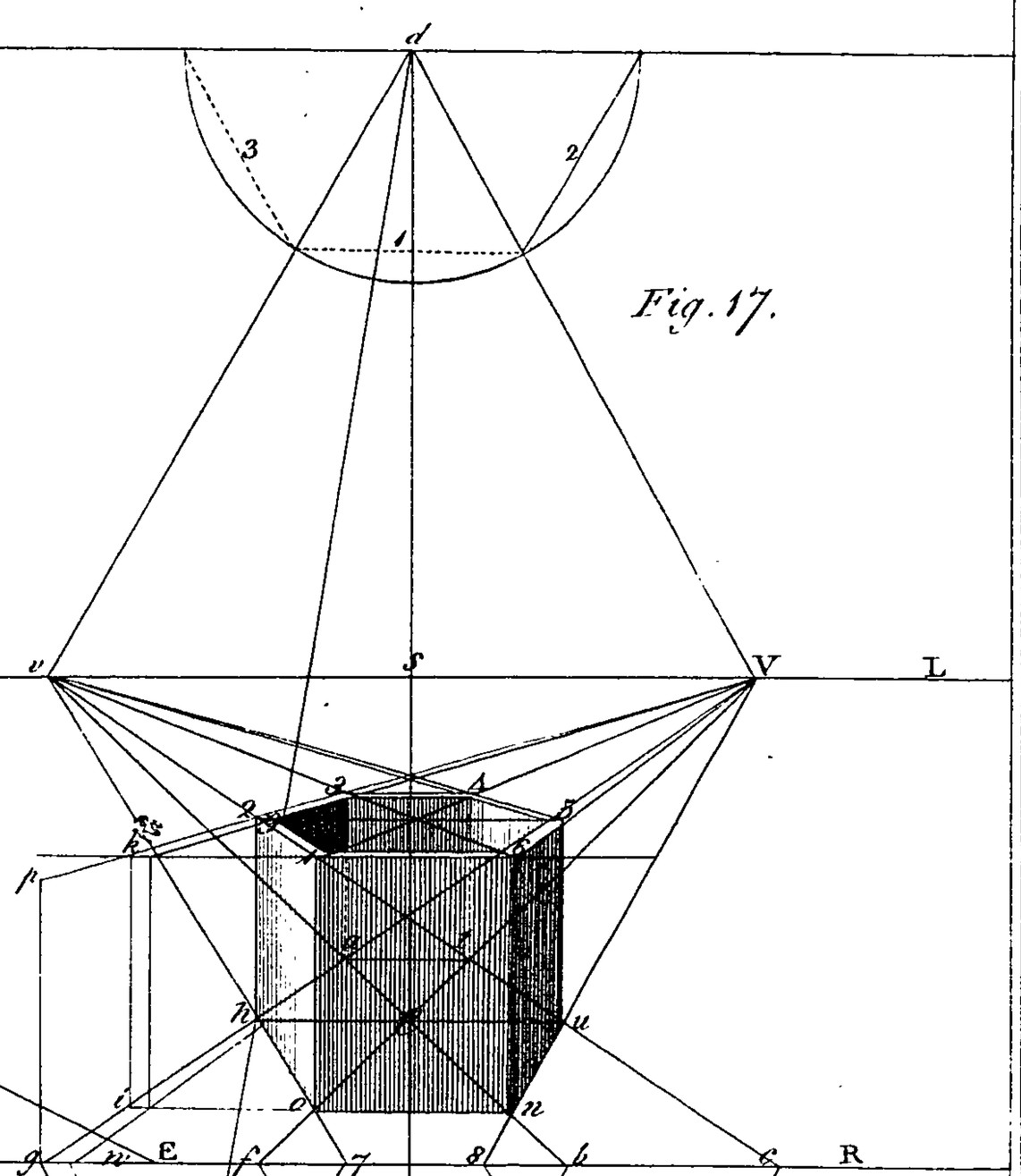


Fig. 19.

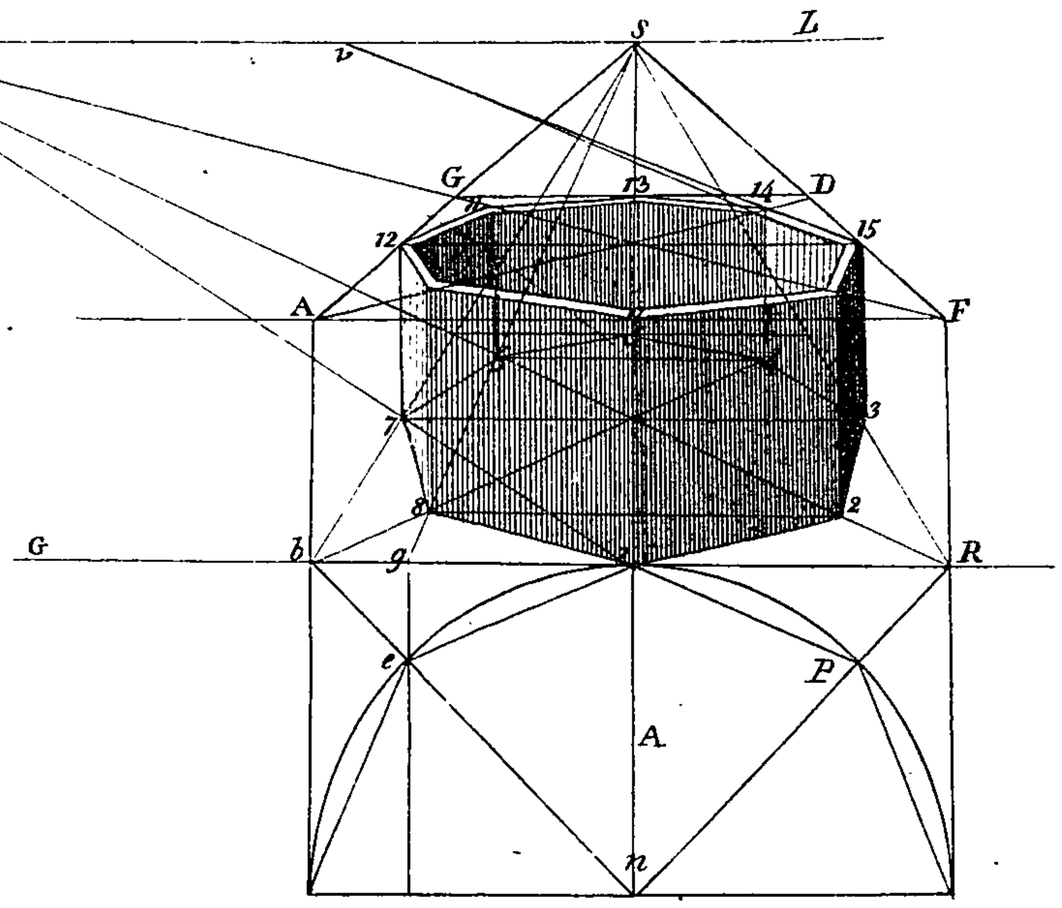


Fig. 18

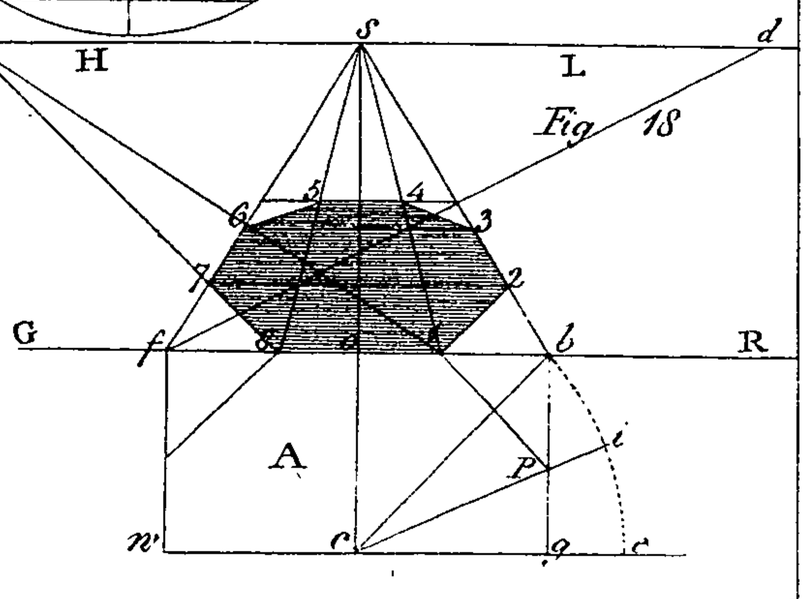
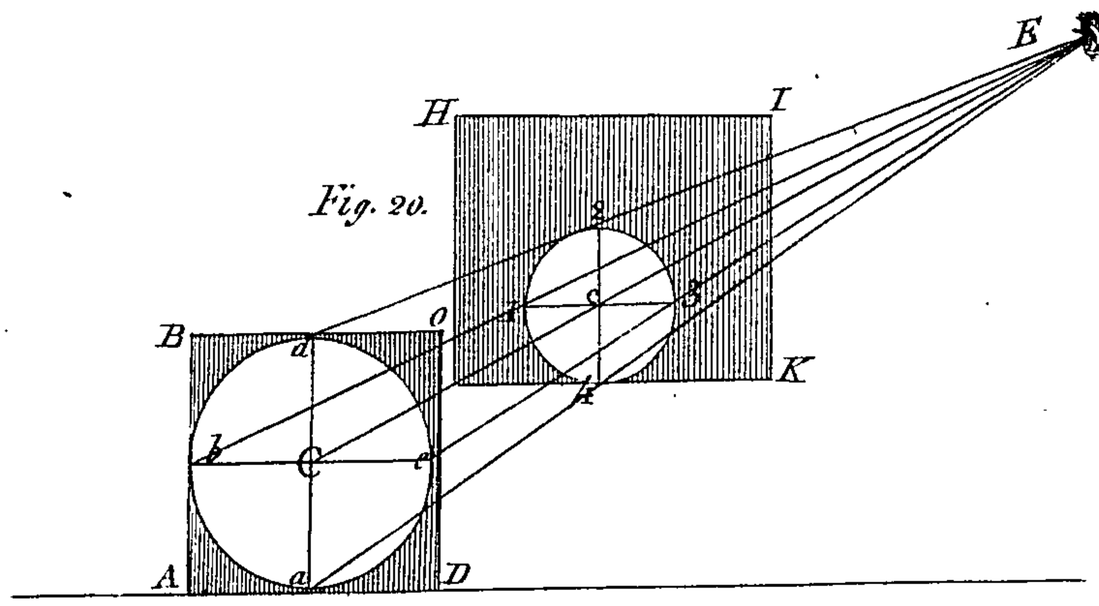


Fig. 20.



T. Sheraton del
G Terry. Sc
Published as the Act directs by. T. Sheraton. June. 4. 1792.

Some further Remarks on the Difference between the Repreſentation of Objects on a Plane, and their Appearance to the Eye.

We have already, in page 210, obſerved, that a perfect picture of objects, as they appear to the eye, cannot be delineated on a plane; we may conceive it to be done on the ſurface of a ſphere, if the ſpectator's eye be in its center. But this is only a ſuppoſition; for, in reality, there can be no ſtrict rules given for drawing perſpective lines on a ſpherical ſurface. A painter, in delineating objects on the inſide of a large dome, may make uſe of ſtraight lines, and the rules of perſpective, as applied to a plane; but he does this, becauſe he perceives that the dome being exceedingly large, and the object but ſmall, the ſpace which the ſaid object occupies on the dome is nearly a level ſurface; and therefore common perſpective comes near enough to the truth for drawing that ſingle object.

But if the object be large, and the dome ſmall, nothing of this ſort can be applied.

Mr. Kirby has, indeed, propoſed a method to draw perſpective repreſentations upon vaulted roofs and domes; and, for

 any

any thing I know, it is as good a method as can be adopted; yet it cannot be called perfect, much leſs a ſyſtem of linear perſpective applicable to ſpherical ſurfaces *.

But the ordinary rules of perſpective applied to a plane is a perfect ſyſtem, as it relates to the repreſentation of objects according to their real appearance on a tranſparent plane interpoſed between the eye and the original figure of any thing: for the tranſparent plane, in this caſe, is a ſection of the rays of light coming from the object to the eye; which ſection is therefore an infallible and moſt perfect perſpective repreſentation of the original figure on a plane; but it is not ſo perfect to the eye, becauſe the eye is globular.

Perſpective then, as it reſpects the appearance of objects on a plane, is perfect, and its rules are ſtrictly mathematical; but as it reſpects the appearance of thoſe objects to the eye, it is a deception, and is therefore liable to defects and imperfections, as every other deceptive art is, owing to various circumſtances depending on the management of the artiſt. Theſe diſtinctions have not been ſufficiently attended to by ſome, which has therefore been the occaſion of ſome diſputes on this ſubject not well founded.

* As this ſubject is foreign to my purpoſe, and not likely to be of uſe to thoſe perſons I wiſh to ſerve in this work, I ſhall not enter upon it; but if the reader chuſes, he may conſult the third ſection, page 74, of the above gentleman's book.

Hence

Hence it has been ſaid, by a certain writer, that a row of columns, or cylinders, cannot be repreſented parallel to the picture, without producing a clumſy and bad effect, if they be drawn according to the ſtrict rules of perſpective; for then thoſe columns which are furtheſt from the center will be the largeſt, which ought rather to be the ſmalleſt, according to their appearance to the eye. But this depends on circumſtances, and is not a ſufficient reaſon for charging the rules of perſpective with falſity, or even a defect, unleſs the laws of this art obliged us always to chooſe a very ſhort diſtance; and that, when we view a picture, we muſt neceſſarily hold our noſe cloſe to it, before we can be a judge of the merit of perſpective.

From pretty much the ſame principles another gentleman, who writes on this ſubject, gives us an inſtance of the imperfections of perſpective, by repreſenting a geometrical ſquare, with a very ſhort diſtance, which occaſions the ſquare to look too long one way, which he therefore terms a falſe repreſentation, though he has obſerved the ſtrict rules of perſpective. Yet I will venture to ſay, having made the experiment, that if this gentleman had placed his eye perpendicular to the center of the picture, and at a diſtance from it equal to that by which he drew the ſquare, he would not have diſcerned any bad effect even in that which he calls a falſe repreſentation. But that the learner may have a proper view of this ſubject, I ſhall firſt re-

preſent a row of columns as they appear to the eye; and, ſecondly, repreſent the ſame row as they appear on a plane, by which the learner will ſee the difference between Mr. Kirby and Mr. Malton's opinions on the ſubject. And, thirdly, we ſhall ſhow the aforeſaid row of columns on a plane, having the advantage of a long diſtance, which, in this caſe, is recommended both by Malton and Noble; the effect of which being a proof that we may abide by the ſtrict rules of perſpective in delineating a row of columns, or any other cylindrical object, and that more pleaſant to the eye than when they are repreſented according to Mr. Kirby's opinion and definition of perſpective, which is, " to draw the repreſentations of objects as they appear to the eye." See page 94 of his Treatiſe on Perſpective.

Firſt, to delineate a row of columns according to Mr. Kirby's definition.

Of the Repreſentation of a Range of equidiſtant Columns parallel to the Picture.

FIRST, Let I, K, L, M, Plate XX. Fig. 20, be conſidered as a horizontal ſection of the four columns A, B, C, D; and let the arch 1, 2, 3, 4, &c. be the ſection of a ſpherical picture, and *d* the diſtance of the eye from the picture, then will *s* be its center.

ter. Draw from the apparent diameters of each column viſual lines to *d*; and where theſe rays cut the arch at 1, 2, 3, 4, &c. will be the repreſentation of the diameters of the four columns as they appear to the eye. Theſe diameters and their intercolumns, or ſpaces between, muſt now be transferred to a level plane or picture, as in No. 1. Draw a line A B, and take 1, 2, from Fig. 20, and place it at 1, 2, No. 1.; then take 2, 3 from Fig. 20, and place it to 2, 3, No. 1. and ſo of all the others. Draw perpendiculars from each number, and finiſh them, as exhibited in the figure, and they will be the repreſentations of the four columns A, B, C, D, as they appear to the eye.

Secondly, We ſhall now repreſent the ſame columns as they appear on a plane, having the ſame center and diſtance as before. Draw the line P P, Fig. 20, parallel to the four columns, which will be the ſection of the picture; and ſince the viſual rays from each column were drawn before, the repreſentations of the apparent diameters of the ſaid columns on a plane will be at *a b*, *c e*, *f g*, *h i*. Transfer theſe diameters and their intercolumns to No. 2, as the figure ſhews; then will A, B, C, D, be the appearance of the four original columns at Fig. 20, on the plane of the picture, according to the ſtrict rules of perſpective.

Now

Now the queſtion is, Which of theſe repreſentations are moſt alike to the originals in Fig 20? If the reader will place his eye perpendicular over A, the center column in each repreſentation, and look through his hand at a diſtance equal *d s*, Fig. 20, I believe he will be able to determine for himſelf; nevertheleſs it may be proper to offer ſome remarks by way of aſſiſting his enquiries. And, firſt,

We may obſerve that the whole ſpace which includes the columns at No. 2, is conſiderably nearer the length of the originals at Fig. 20. than the ſpace which No. 1. includes. The intercolumns are nearer alike at No. 2 than they are at No. 1. And, laſtly, if we look ſteadily through our hand as above directed, we ſhall find that, at No. 2, the apparent thickneſs of the column D will be greatly reduced, and that of C will be alſo reduced, and both in proportion to their diſtance from the center, ſo that there will not be much difference in the thickneſs of each. But if we look in the ſame manner at No. 1, we ſhall find the repreſentation appear worſe, for D C will appear ſmaller than they are repreſented. The reaſon is obvious, for the rays of light by which viſion is performed, being conſiderably oblique at the column D and C, the optic angles which they ſubtend are much leſs than thoſe ſubtended by A and B, as Fig. 20 clearly demonſtrates; for the rays G *d*, H *d*, are more oblique to

the picture P P than the rays N *d*, O *d*; therefore we ſee that the arch 7, 8 is leſs than the arch 5, 6, and ſo of the reſt in proportion.

The figure alſo demonſtrates, that when theſe viſual rays are cut by a plane P P, parallel to the original columns, the effect is reverſed; for then the repreſentative diameters will increaſe as they decline from the center *ſ*, yet the optic angles under which they are ſeen remain the ſame as before, when the viſual rays were cut by a ſpherical picture at 1, 2—3, 4, &c.

Hence it is evident, that the diameter *h i*, viewed by an eye at *d*, would not appear larger than the diameter 7, 8 on the arch. Wherefore the true repreſentations of the original range of columns as they would appear on a tranſparent plane, interpoſed between the ſpectator's eye and the ſaid original columns, are at No. 2, not at No. 1, for that is their repreſentation on a ſphere, as they appear to the eye, anſwering to Mr. Kirby's definition of perſpective, though this is not what he means to recommend in practice; for he ſays, page 97, " that they" (meaning a range of equidiſtant columns) " ſhould be ſo repreſented as not to offend " the eye of a common obſerver;" by which he means they ſhould be drawn of one thickneſs, and at equal diſtances. How far the repreſentation at No. 1, which is according to his definition,

tion, will agree to this, I will leave to the judgment of the reader, and ſhall proceed to ſhew how theſe columns may be repreſented, according to the ſtrict rules of perſpective, ſo as to appear of one thickneſs, and at equal diſtances.

We have hitherto ſuppoſed the eye of the ſpectator at *d*, viewing the original columns A, B, C, D, Fig. 20, in which ſituation the viſual ray H *d*, from the fartheſt column D, and the eye's axis *d s*, form an angle of fifty-four degrees; and ſince *s i* is but half the picture, the whole would be ſeen under an angle of one hundred and eight degrees, which is far too great for viewing any picture; for the eye at *d* cannot take in a ſpace twice the length of *s i*, without being ſtrained and twiſted.

To convince the learner of the truth of this, let him take a pair of compaſſes and extend them from *d* to *s*, and placing one foot on the column A, at No. 2, let the other foot keep his right eye from A, exactly at the diſtance of their opening, equal *d s*. Obſerve, the compaſs foot muſt nearly touch the right eye, or the experiment will not be ſo ſtriking. The eye being thus placed, experience will teach him that he cannot ſee the column D at No. 2 without twiſting his eye; and at the ſame time he will ſee, as we ſaid before, that the columns will be nearly equal in thickneſs. But if the eye *d*, at Fig. 22, be removed back to E,

the

the whole picture will be ſeen with eaſe, for it will only ſubtend an angle of forty-eight degrees; and at this diſtance, the viſual rays being not ſo oblique to the picture as before, they will cut it nearly at equal diſtances from each other, as is denoted by the afteriſms **, where the dotted rays cut PP. The good effect produced on the picture P P, by chooſing E for the diſtance, is clearly demonſtrated by Fig. 21, which exhibits the ſame row of columns drawn by the diſtance E.

Thus:—make *s d*, Fig. 21. half the ſpace of E *s*, Fig. 20; becauſe there is not room for the whole diſtance on the plate. From *s* draw *s* A perpendicular to H L. Draw G R as a ground line, and proceed as before to lay on the ſpaces marked by the afteriſms **, Fig. 20, on the line P P. Draw then the viſuals from A, B, D, C, as the figure ſhews. From 1, Fig. 23, draw a line to *d*, cutting A *s* in 2. Through 2 draw a line parallel to G R, cutting the viſuals; by which will be repreſented four geometrical ſquares, in which the baſes of each column will be inſcribed. Laſtly, from the circles contained in each ſquare, draw the ſhafts, and finiſh them as in the figure. Now let the reader place his eye perpendicular over *s*, and at a diſtance from *s* equal twice *s d*; then I am perſuaded he will ſay, that a common obſerver would pronounce the columns of equal thickneſs, and their intercolumns equidiſtant, although they are repreſented according

to the ſtricteſt rules of perſpective; which Mr. Kirby thinks we muſt not abide by in this caſe.

Before I conclude this head, it may be proper to take ſome notice of the repreſentation of a row of equidiſtant pilaſters.

A little reflection will make it evident, that the repreſentation of a row of pilaſters parallel to the picture, are not ſubject to thoſe awkward appearances which columns are, owing to a ſhort diſtance. For,

Let the dark line 9, 10, on the column D, Fig. 20, be a pilaſter, equal in width to 13, 14, on the column A. Draw the viſuals 9, 10, to *d*, cutting the picture P P at 11, 12; then will the ſpace 11, 12 be equal *a b*, cut by the rays from the pilaſter 13, 14; for as the pilaſter 9, 10 is to 13, 14, ſo will 11, 12, *a b*, their repreſentations, be to each other. The ſame reaſoning ſhows us why columns increaſe in thickneſs as they decline from the center of the picture, if we obſerve where the viſual rays, drawn from their apparent diameters, cut the line paſſing through their centers, as *t v*, *k l*; wherefore, as *k l* is to 13, 14, ſo is *b i*, the repreſentation of the column D, to *a b*, the repreſentation of A. And hence it is evident, that in the repreſentations of buildings whoſe fronts are parallel to the picture, their

doors

doors and windows will be to each other as their originals are; that is, if the windows and ſpaces between them be equal in width, their repreſentations will be equal alſo; and, as Mr. Martin obſerves, " all plane ſurfaces whatever, placed in a front wall or plane, will have in their perſpectives no change of figure at all; a ſquare, a parallelogram, a triangle, a pentagon, a circle, an ellipſis, &c. will be all the ſame figures on the perſpective plane, and perfectly ſimilar to the originals; and this will hold good in every part of ſuch a plane in front, as well above and below the horizon, as on each ſide the eye*."

Of the proper Choice of the Diſtance of the Picture, proportioned to the Height of the Horizon, and the Nature of the Object to be repreſented.

FROM what has now been hinted reſpecting long and ſhort diſtances, the learner will naturally wiſh to know ſome fixed principle about it, and what is the general rule for chooſing a diſtance.

To give him all the ſatisfaction I can on this ſubject, I ſhall propoſe the following remarks.

* See his Principles of the Genuine Theory of Perſpective, page 51.

There is a certain diſtance ſhorter than which the eye cannot eaſily ſee a picture; and therefore if an object be delineated by ſuch a diſtance, it will appear unnatural.

In Plate XIV. Fig. 1, let B D be the length of the picture, and Z the place of the ſpectator's eye, and *e* the center of the picture, then will Z *e* be the diſtance of the picture; but as Z *e* is very little more than half the length of the picture B D, therefore the angle under which the whole picture would be ſeen at Z, is almoſt ninety degrees.

This is an angle which the eye cannot eaſily take in, becauſe the ray Z B is in a ſtate too diverging to the pupil of the eye, and therefore the ſpectator muſt twiſt and ſtrain his eye, before he could ſee the whole extent B D.

The optical reaſon of this is as follows:

Produce the viſual rays L P, K P. Now, it is evident, from the ſcale on the arch, that theſe rays ſubtend an angle of more than ninety degrees. Therefore ſince, according to optical laws, rays will not unite in a point on the retina at a greater obliquity than an angle of forty-five degrees, conſequently the points K L will not appear to the eye. This is probable enough from the

figure

figure of the eye, for the image *s* of K, and *o* of L, are too far forward in the eye to be ſeen; but by turning the eyes a little towards K or L, it is evident they will become viſible; for then P *e*, the axis of the eye, will perhaps be turned to 20; or, on the other hand, at 40; conſequently the angle of obliquity 20, P K, being conſiderably leſs than forty-five degrees, the pencil of rays from the point K will unite in a point on the retina, and ſo become viſible.

A ſimple experiment will convince the reader of the truth of this. Take a lath two feet long, and at the center fix a wire in a perpendicular direction, about thirteen inches long, or we ſhall ſay twelve inches, for then a thread ſtretched from the wire to each end of the lath would form an angle of 90; that is, the threads will be perpendicular to each other. The end of the wire being held cloſe to the eye, the experimenter muſt look along each thread at once, and try if he can ſee them diſtinctly at each end of the lath at the ſame glance, without ſtraining his eyes. If he continue to do ſo a few minutes, the pain which this gives will be a ſufficient proof that the eye cannot eaſily take in an angle of 90; and that therefore twelve or thirteen inches is far too ſhort a diſtance for a picture two feet long.

Therefore,

Therefore, in Fig. 1, if the eye be removed to P, the angle which the rays D P, B P make with the picture B D is conſiderably leſs, and hence the eye at P will more eaſily take in D B, the whole extent of the picture; becauſe the rays D P, B P do not diverge ſo much at the pupil as before. If, therefore, the aforeſaid wire be lengthened in the proportion of *P e* to B D, which will be as twenty-one inches are to twenty-four, the whole length of the lath; and if threads be fixed as before, repreſenting the viſual rays D P, B P, the eye P, placed at the end of the wire, will eaſily ſee at one glance both the threads B D.

This experiment, therefore, induces me to conclude that a picture which is filled the whole length with objects on the front, ſhould never be drawn by a diſtance ſhorter than the perpendicular of an equilateral triangle, whoſe ſides are equal to the whole length of the picture. The angle B, P, D, is equilateral, and P *e* is its perpendicular; and that I take to be the ſhorteſt diſtance that ſhould be uſed in this caſe. And I will venture to affirm, from experience, that any perſon who has never once thought on this ſubject, when viewing a picture two feet long, will not ſtand leſs than twenty-one inches from it when he wants to ſee the effect of the whole; but if he would examine minutely ſome particular part ſeparately, he will naturally

turally approach nearer to the picture, in proportion to the ſize of the part thus examined. Whence, I alſo conclude, if nature is to be a guide in matters of delineation and painting, that the diſtance of the picture ſhould be as 21 is to 24, ſo is the proper diſtance to the ſpace which the front objects occupy on the picture. For, ſuppoſing a picture two feet long to have only two or three regular objects on the front, occupying not more than two thirds of the whole length, which is ſixteen inches, it would not be neceſſary in this caſe to make the diſtance twenty-one inches. A diſtance of fourteen or fifteen inches would then be ſufficient, and produce a more agreeable effect in the appearance of the regular objects, both in front and back, than when drawn by a much longer diſtance. For, if front objects are too much fore-ſhortened by a long diſtance, thoſe on the back ground will be much more ſo, and appear too tall for their thickneſs; and the whole picture will want depth, eſpecially if it be an internal view of a ſtreet, a long room, or any thing of this nature, where the eye is ſuppoſed to be pretty near the firſt object.

I ſhall now apply the foregoing principles to a few practical caſes, by which the learner will ſee the effect of long and ſhort diſtances, and how to chooſe them on particular occaſions.

How to chooſe a Diſtance, when the whole Length of the Picture is filled with Objects on the Front.

LET *p r*, *o t*, Fig. 22, Plate XX. be the lines which mark out the length of the picture filled with ſquares on the front.

Extend the compaſſes from *v* to *v* on the horizon, and ſweep the arch *v* D, D *v*; then will their interſection D be the proper diſtance in this caſe, and *s* will be the center. Make *s* V each way equal *s* D, and V will be the working diſtance, as the figure ſhows.

The ſquares C, K, N, O, drawn by the diſtance *s* V, are perfectly natural. But the ſquares E, P, Q, R, drawn by *s v*, are not ſo; becauſe the diſtance is vaſtly too ſhort; for the eye at *d* views the picture in an angle of ninety degrees, which, as we have already ſhewn, is far too great, and therefore the repreſentation of the ſquares are unnatural to a common obſerver. But if the reader place his eye perpendicular to *s*, and at a diſtance from *s* equal *s d*, he will find that the unnatural length of the ſquares, from front to back, will be greatly diminiſhed in appearance.

On the other hand, it is equally neceſſary to avoid chooſing a diſtance too long; the effect of which is ſeen at the ſquares F, where they appear too narrow from front to back; for the diſtance at *z* forms, with the whole length of the picture, an angle only of 48 degrees; which ſhould not be admitted, except in particular caſes, as in the repreſentation of a row of columns parallel to the picture in Fig. 20, where the eye at E is in the ſame angle with the picture twice PP, as at *z*, Fig. 22.

How to chooſe a Diſtance, when the Objects are drawn by a large Scale, ſituated not far from the Center of the Picture.

Let *p t*, Fig. 22, ſtill be conſidered the whole length of the picture; and let M be the repreſentation of a ſquare, on a much larger ſcale than that at C; and let its ſituation at M be much nearer to F, the center ſquare. From *s*, the center, extend the compaſſes to *t*, the extreme point of the picture, and ſweep the arch *t*, *c*, *b*, then will *c* or *b* be a proper diſtance in a caſe of this kind; for the ſquare M, drawn by the diſtance *c*, appears perfectly natural, which would be too long were it drawn by V, the former diſtance, as appears by the diagonal drawn from 10 to V, cutting the viſual 9, *s* at *a*. This by no means contradicts what has been advanced in page 178; where we ſay, that " a picture filled with objects on the front, ſhould never be drawn by a

diſtance ſhorter than the perpendicular of an equilateral triangle, whoſe ſides are equal to the whole length of the picture." For, let the line 9 be now conſidered the bounds of the picture, and it will be evident, by drawing a line from *b* to *g*, that the diſtance *s b* is greater to the picture at 9, than *s* D is to the picure at *t*, otherwiſe *b g* would be parallel to D *v*.

Another advantage may be obſerved in this method, if we conſider that a very high horizon will produce as much diſtortion in a picture as too ſhort a diſtance. Therefore if we ſuppoſe the horizon to be made higher by the ſpace *t i*, the diſtance will then be *s i*, in the ſame proportion to it as *s c* is to *s t*.

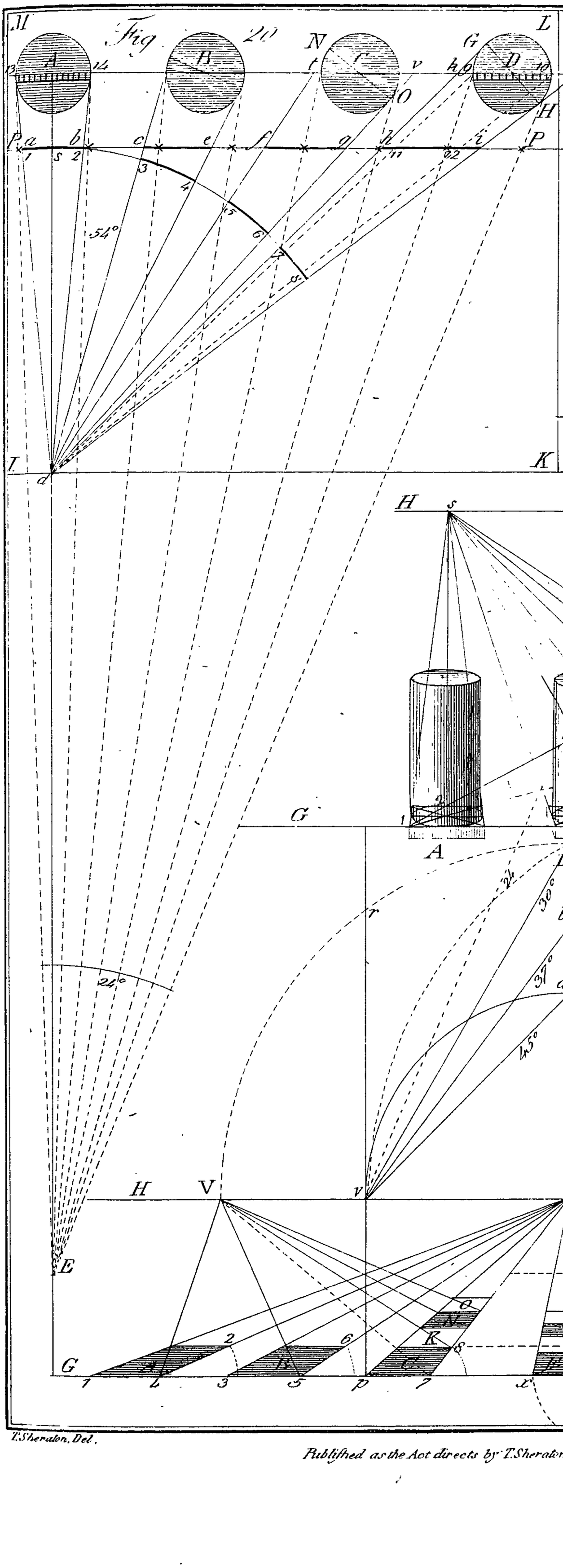
How to chooſe a Diſtance, when a Piece of Furniture, not very long, is repreſented by itſelf on the Center of the Front of the Picture.

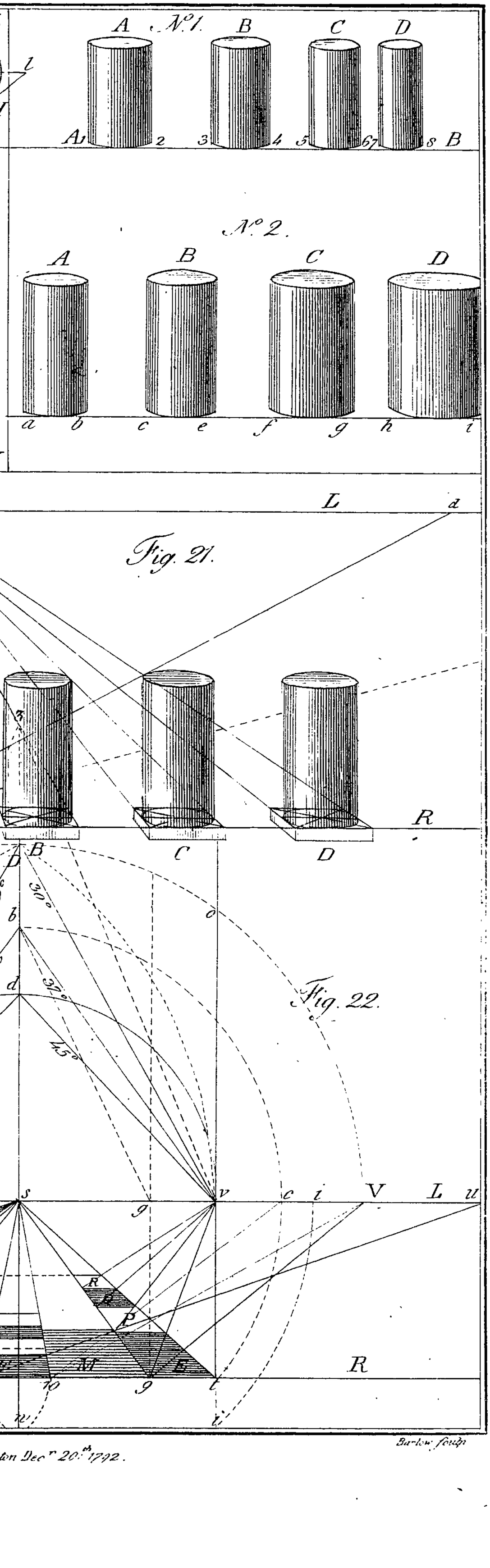
If a ſingle object, or piece of furniture, be repreſented by itſelf on the center of the ground line, an equilateral triangle being drawn, whoſe ſides are equal to the length of the piece of furniture, the perpendicular of this triangle added to the height of the horizon, will be a very agreeable diſtance in ſuch a caſe. Thus, at the ſquare F, ſuppoſed to be the plan of a piece of furniture repreſented on the center of the ground line, extend the compaſſes from 10 to *x*, and ſweep the arches, to form an

equilateral

Plate 20.

Fig. 20.





Nº 1.

Nº 2.

Fig. 21.

Fig. 22.

T. Sheraton, Del.

Barlow sculp

Published as the Act directs by T. Sheraton Dec^r 20^th 1792.

equilateral triangle, whoſe perpendicular will be at *w*; then will *s w* be the diſtance propoſed in this caſe. But if the piece of furniture be of an extraordinary length in front, in proportion to its breadth from back to front, then it will be beſt to adopt the preceding method; for if we ſuppoſe the piece of furniture to extend from 7 to 9, then a perpendicular of an equilateral triangle of that dimenſion added to the whole height of the horizon, would foreſhorten too much. Of theſe things I am perſuaded the reader will be convinced, if he make the experiment as the caſes are here ſtated.

Of the Repreſentations of circular and curvilinear Figures, both plain and ſolid; together with ſome Remarks on their Theory.

THE manner in which ſome painters and deſigners treat circular objects, would lead one to ſuppoſe that there is no certain theory on which to build the practice of drawing objects of that kind.

Sometimes we may ſee a caſk, if not ſhewing both ends, yet the end on which it ſtands is repreſented by a curve conſiderably more flat than that by which its top is ſhewn; than which nothing can be more abſurd, for the very reverſe is the truth.

We may alſo ſee, in ſome cabinet deſigns, the bottom of a round fronted cheſt of drawers, or commode, repreſented by the ſame curve as that which repreſents the top part; which, though not ſo ridiculous as the above, is far from being ſcientific, or according to the rules of perſpective. That the learner may avoid theſe miſtakes, and have a proper conception of this matter, we ſhall propoſe the following ſhort theory.

Caſe 1.—If an original circle be ſituated in a plane parallel to the picture, its repreſentation will be a circle.

Thus:—Let A, B, O, D, Plate XIX. Fig. 20, be an original plane parallel to the picture H, I, K, in which is ſituated a circle *a*, *b*, *d*, *e*, whoſe repreſentation on that picture is required.

The viſual rays from each diameter of the original circle tending to the eye E, are cut by the picture or plane of projection H, I, K, in a parallel direction to the original plane A, B, O, D. Wherefore we have the diameter 4, 2 drawn perpendicular to *a d*, its original. Alſo we have the diameter 1, 3 parallel to its original *b e*; conſequently the diameters 1, 3—4, 2, are the repreſentations of their originals *a d*, *b e*. C is the center of the original circle, and a line from C to E biſects the triangle *b*, E, *e*; conſequently *c* is the repreſentation of the center C. Laſtly, the radii or ſemidiameters *c* 1, *c* 2, *c* 3, *c* 4, are equal and ſimilar to their originals,

originals, and therefore any one of them, as *c* 1, will deſcribe the circle 1, 2, 3, 4, which will be the true repreſentation required. The truth of this may alſo be proved, by conſidering the viſual rays *b* E, *d* E, &c. as the ſides of a cone whoſe vertex is at the eye E, and whoſe baſe is the original circle *a*, *b*, *d*, *e*, and its axis C *c*. Now it is evident, that if a cone have a ſection parallel to its baſe, the curved boundary of that ſection is a circle, in like manner as a pyramid, whoſe baſe is a geometrical ſquare, produces a geometrical ſquare, if its ſection be parallel to its baſe. See page 230. Plate XV. Fig. 6.

By the above theory we ſhall eaſily judge how to proceed in the repreſentation of arches, when they reſt on pillars or piers parallel to the picture. And it ſhould be obſerved, that in whatever ſituation the original arch or circle may be in with reſpect to the center of the picture, if they be parallel to the picture, their repreſentations will be ſimilar to their originals *.

Caſe 2.—If an original circle be ſituated in a plane not parallel to the picture; that is, if it be the repreſentation of a circular object lying on the ground, or in any plane parallel

* The reader may, if he pleaſe, conſult Dr. Brook Taylor's ſecond corollary of theorem fourth, p. 16.

with it, its repreſentation on the picture will be an ellipſis. The reader who has previouſly made this ſubject his ſtudy, may aſk what I mean by the term ellipſis in this place? ſince ſome have diſputed whether the repreſentation of a circle in the above caſe be a regular ellipſis, or a curve of ſome other ſpecies of the conic ſections. Mr. Noble has diſcuſſed this point in oppoſition to the critical reviewers, who had cenſured Mr. Ware in his tranſlation of Sirigatti's perſpective, becauſe the tranſlator had defined the repreſentation of an original circle ſituated in a plane not parallel to the picture, to be a regular ellipſis. In oppoſition to which definition of Mr. Ware's, the Critical Reviewers for July 1756, page 509, make the following obſervations.

" In regard to his regular ellipſis for the repreſentation of a circle, it appears, from the very nature of perſpective, that the fore part of a circle will appear more round than the back part, which being further removed from the eye, cannot appear to have the ſame degree of curvature; and conſequently the whole figure, if drawn, muſt be very far from having the form of ſuch an ellipſis as is to be made by a tranſverſe and conjugate diameter."

Mr. Noble, in oppoſition to the above remarks, attempts to prove that the repreſentation in queſtion muſt be a regular ellipſis; but his arguments are ſo abſtruſe, that if they were

founded

founded in truth they would not be convincing to the ordinary reader, and therefore I ſhall not trouble him with them, but proceed to offer a remark or two in confirmation of thoſe made by the Reviewers, which I think eaſily underſtood. Let A, B, C, D, Plate XXI. Fig. 23, be the repreſentation of a geometrical ſquare in which an octagon and circle may be inſcribed. The circle, truly repreſented, will touch every ſide of both the ſquare and octagon, as ſhewn by the figure. Now, I cannot ſee by what mode of reaſoning we can prove that the ellipſis is regular any more than we can prove that the octagon is regular, becauſe it is the repreſentation of one that is ſo; but, perhaps, to uſe Mr. Noble's words, "we are ignorant of thoſe few geometrical præcognitæ which alone can render us capable of conviction on this point:" and this may be the reaſon why I have conſidered Mr. Noble's arguments ſo abſtruſe*. At the ſame time I do not think the Reviewers were ignorant of thoſe few firſt principles of geometry, nor even wanted their recollection, when they animadverted on Mr. Ware. They juſtly ſay, "that the fore part of a circle will appear more round than the back part," which muſt be evident to every one, by obſerving that the whole curve on this ſide of the diameter *g c*, is what they mean by the fore part of the circle,

* The reader, if he chooſe, may ſee the arguments in Noble's Linear Perſpective, page 142.

and

and all beyond *g c* is conſidered the back part of it. We may alſo obſerve, that the curves contained in the quarter parts of the ellipſis are not one of them ſimilar to another. How then can we pronounce it a regular ellipſis? When we ſpeak of the perſpective appearance of any original object, do we not denominate it by the figure which it aſſumes upon a plane, and not as it appears to the eye? where then is the good ſenſe or propriety of calling that a regular ellipſis which is no way regular? One would think Mr. Noble had forgotten the diſtinction which he ſo properly maintains in other parts of his book, namely, between the appearance of objects to the eye, and their repreſentation on a plane; for if we ſtand at a diſtance from the top of a round table, it will appear to the eye a regular ellipſis; but if the top be repreſented on a picture according to that diſtance, it will be an irregular ellipſis, and its irregularity will be in proportion to the ſhortneſs of the diſtance of the picture. But ſuppoſe we were to conſider *b d* the tranſverſe diameter, and conſequently *b f* the conjugate, yet there is a manifeſt difference between the two ſemi-ellipſes. Nor is it poſſible to draw a tranſverſe diameter in ſuch a direction, as when the two ſemi-ellipſes are turned down on each other that they would coincide. Yet it muſt be obſerved, that if the repreſentation were drawn in the center, and by a long diſtance, it would, in this caſe, approach ſo near a regular ellipſis as the difference could not be eaſily diſcerned.

From

From what has been ſaid, the learner muſt obſerve then, that when he proceeds to draw the repreſentation of an original circle, he muſt not think of applying the compaſſes or trammel to draw it by; but a number of points muſt be found, through which the path of the ellipſis muſt be directed by a hand ſuperior to his who only can draw an ellipſis by a trammel or compaſſes.

Of the Repreſentations of circular and curvilinear Figures, both plain and ſolid.

PROB. XIX. FIG. 23. Plate XXI.

To repreſent a Circle lying on the Ground Plane, or when it is ſituated in any Plane parallel to the Horizon.

OPERATION.—Let H L be the horizon, and G R the ground line, *s* is the center of the picture, and *d* its diſtance. Make *s v* equal *s d*, and draw *d* V at right angles to *d v*, then will *v* V be the vaniſhing points to four ſides of the octagon. Make V M equal V *d*. Likewiſe make *v m* equal *v d*, and M *m* will be the true meaſuring points. Draw a half plan of an octagon, as was ſhewn in Problem XVII. and Fig. 18. Make A D equal to the diameter of the given circle. Draw the viſuals 2 V, 1 *v*, indefinitely.

finitely. Make 2 P, 1 *l* equal 2 *q*, the ſide of the octagon; and draw from *l* and *p* meaſuring lines to their reſpective points M *m*, cutting at 3 and 8. From 3 and 8 draw 3 *s*, 8 *s*. Take the ſpace 1 D, and lay it from D to 10, and from A to 12. From 12 draw a line to V, cutting at 7, 6. From 10 to *v* do the ſame, cutting at 4, 5. Laſtly, draw 5, 6 parallel to 1, 2, and the octagon in which the given circle is to be inſcribed is completed.

Method ſecond.—In this method, which is very ſimple, we proceed without regard to any of thoſe lines uſed in the firſt method, which was more ſcientific, and according to Dr. Brook Taylor's ſyſtem. The ground plane F is ſuppoſed to remain as before. Let A, B, C, D, be the repreſentation of a geometrical ſquare, found by the diagonals paſſing to each vaniſhing point, conſequently S will be the center. Through S draw *g c*, and draw *a s*, from which we have four points, *a*, *g*, *e*, *c*, of the intended circle. Draw a line from 2 to V, and from 10 to *v*, cutting the diagonals at *b*, *d*, whence we have two more points. From the points *b* and *d* draw parallel lines, cutting the diagonals in the points *b f*, adding other two; which in all make eight points, ſufficient for the repreſentation of the given circle.

N. B. A quarter plan F is ſufficient for this method.

Method third.—Draw the quarter plane of the circle to be repreſented, contained in the ſquare A, E, *a*, O. Draw the diagonal O A; and from the point *n*, where the diagonal cuts the arch E *a*, raiſe a perpendicular to *t*. Repreſent a ſquare as before, drawing its diagonals each way. From *t* draw a viſual to *s*, cutting the diagonals in the points *b f*. Laſtly, from the points *b* and *f* draw parallels to the other diagonals, cutting at *b* and *d*, by which method there will be eight points gained as before. This laſt method being ſo ſimple, and totally diveſted of every thing that can any way perplex the learner, it has been adopted in the following problems, and in moſt of the repreſentations in this book. There are, however, various other methods of effecting the ſame thing, which might prove more pleaſing to men of ſcience, but which would not be ſo advantageous to the workman, nor even to the artiſt, with whom facility and diſpatch are principal objects.

Prob. XX. Fig. 24. Plate XXI.

To repreſent a Circle ſituated in a Plane perpendicular to the Ground Plane.

Operation.—Let the line R be the ground line, and L the horizon, *s* is the center of the picture, and *s d*, on the vertical line, the diſtance. Draw half the original circle B, *n*, C. Draw

the diagonals *o* D, *o* A; from A and D repreſent a geometrical ſquare, by drawing a line from A to *d*, cutting at F. From 1, 2, draw parallels to 3, 9; and from 3, 9, direct viſuals to the center *s*, and the diagonals of the ſquare will be cut at 8, 5, 6, 7, forming four points, by which the repreſentation of the circle may be correctly drawn.

PROB. XXI. FIG. 25. Plate XXI.

To repreſent a Cylinder erect on the Ground Plane.

AFTER what has been ſaid on the preceding problem, it is ſcarcely neceſſary to ſay any thing on this; and therefore I ſhall only obſerve, that having drawn the baſe of the cylinder by the ſame method as in the laſt, proceed to raiſe perpendiculars from A, B, D, C; and from *a* draw *a b* parallel to A B, at a diſtance from A B equal to the original length of the cylinder. From *a b* repreſent another ſquare, as *a*, *b*, *c*, *q*. Draw its diagonals and diameters. From the point 4 raiſe a perpendicular till it cut the diagonal *b c*. From the point 7 raiſe one till it cut the diagonal *a q*. Do the ſame at the points 6 and 5, and eight points will be found at the top correſponding with thoſe on the baſe, by which the cylinder may be completed.

PROB.

PROB. XXII. FIG. 26. Plate XXI.

To find the Repreſentation of a Cylinder lying on the Ground, whoſe Sides are oblique to the Picture.

OPERATION.—Draw the ground line and horizon as uſual; and let *s* be the center, and *d* the diſtance of the picture. Make *s v* equal *s d*, and from *d* draw *d* V at right angles to *v d*, then will *v* V be the vaniſhing points of the ends and ſides of the cylinder. Make a half plan of the baſe of the cylinder at *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, as in the preceding caſes. Draw C A perpendicular to the ground line, and equal to the diameter of the cylinder. Draw the viſuals C *v*, A *v*, and C V, A V. Make C F equal C A, and C S equal to the given length of the cylinder. Draw F *m*, S M, cutting at D and 3. Draw D B perpendicular to the ground line, and we have a ſquare in which the end of the cylinder is to be inſcribed. In like manner repreſent a ſquare at the other end, as 1, 2, 3, 4; and having drawn the diagonals and diameters of both ſquares, draw parallel lines from 5, 6 to *e f*. From *e* and *f* direct viſuals to V, cutting *g* and *h*; from *e*, *f*, *g*, *h*, draw viſuals to *v*, which will cut the diagonals of each ſquare in four points, by which each end of the cylinder may be completed.

N. B.

N. B. A circle or cylinder may be repreſented without drawing a plan, by dividing the given diameter *c a* into ſeven equal parts, one of which will cut the diagonals as before, at leaſt near enough for practice.

PROB. XXIII. FIG. 27. Plate XXI.

To find the Repreſentation of a ſemi-ellipſis, whoſe tranſverſe Diameter is parallel to the Picture.

OPERATION.—Draw the ground line and horizon as in common, and let *s* be the center, and *d* the diſtance of the picture. Make then a plan of the ſemi-ellipſis, whoſe tranſverſe diameter is D G, parallel to R, the ground line. Draw A B, including half the conjugate diameter. Draw the diagonals O B, O A, cutting the ellipſis at P and N. Divide A D at K, and draw E F. From E, P, N, F, O, raiſe perpendiculars to the ground line at 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, and from each of theſe draw viſuals to *s*. Make 3, 2, 1, each reſpectively equal A, K, D; and from 1, 2, 3, draw lines to *d*, the diſtance, cutting at *a*, *k*, *b*. From *a*, *k*, *b*, draw parallel lines to *g*, *l*, *c*; and laſtly, draw *o a*, *o g*, then will the ſeveral viſvals be cut at the points requiſite for deſcribing the elliptic curve, as the dotted points in the figure ſhow.

PROB.

PROB. XXIV. FIG. 28. Plate XXI.

To find the Repreſentation of an elliptic Segment inverſely.

SUPPOSE A, B, C, D, to be the ſhelf of any table, &c. hollowed in front in the figure of an elliptic ſegment, A, 1, 2, 3, 4, D. Having drawn one ſide A, 1, 2, 3, 4, of the given ſegment at pleaſure, divide the curve into four equal parts, and from 1, 2, 3, 4, raiſe perpendiculars to *a*, *b*, *c*, *f*; then, to make the other ſide of the curve ſimilar to that already drawn, lay on the ſeveral diviſions *f*, *c*, *b*, *a*, to the right hand, and from theſe let fall perpendiculars at pleaſure; then, from 1, 2, 3, draw parallel lines, cutting the correſponding perpendiculars on the right hand, by which the other half of the ſegment may be accurately drawn. The plan being thus prepared, draw viſual lines to *s*, the center, and make *d* the diſtance. At *a* fix one foot of the compaſſes, and extend the other to 1, and with it ſweep the firſt arch; and in like manner ſweep the arches 2, 3, 4. From the ſeveral points where thoſe arches cut the line A D, direct lines to the diſtance, cutting the ſeveral viſuals at the points 1, 2, 3, 4. Laſtly, from 1 draw a parallel to 7, from 2 draw one to 6, and from 3 draw one to 5; thus will ſeven points be found through which the path of the repreſented curve muſt paſs.

SECTION

SECTION V.

The Application of the preceding Problems to the Practice of Drawing the Repreſentation of Pieces of Architecture, and particularly various Pieces of Furniture in different Poſitions to the Picture.

THE preceding problems, and the various figures referred to, muſt be conſidered as only laying the foundation for the repreſentation of more compound objects, conſiſting both of right and curvilinear parts. It becomes neceſſary, therefore, to ſhew the moſt eaſy application of theſe problems in a variety of examples, that the whole may appear practical and uſeful, and that we may alſo ſee the real effect of that art which we have hitherto laboured to underſtand. Nor do I think that perſpective could well be applied in many caſes without ſuch examples. Beſides, the uſefulneſs of having a few proper examples always ready to turn to, muſt be of conſequence to thoſe who but ſeldom repreſent things in perſpective; in which caſe the rules and methods will frequently eſcape the memory, and make it neceſſary to have recourſe to the book; and for the ſake of more readily finding the explanation of each example, the page of letter-preſs where the explanation begins, is engraved on the copper-plate, it being a practice ſometimes

to

Fig 23

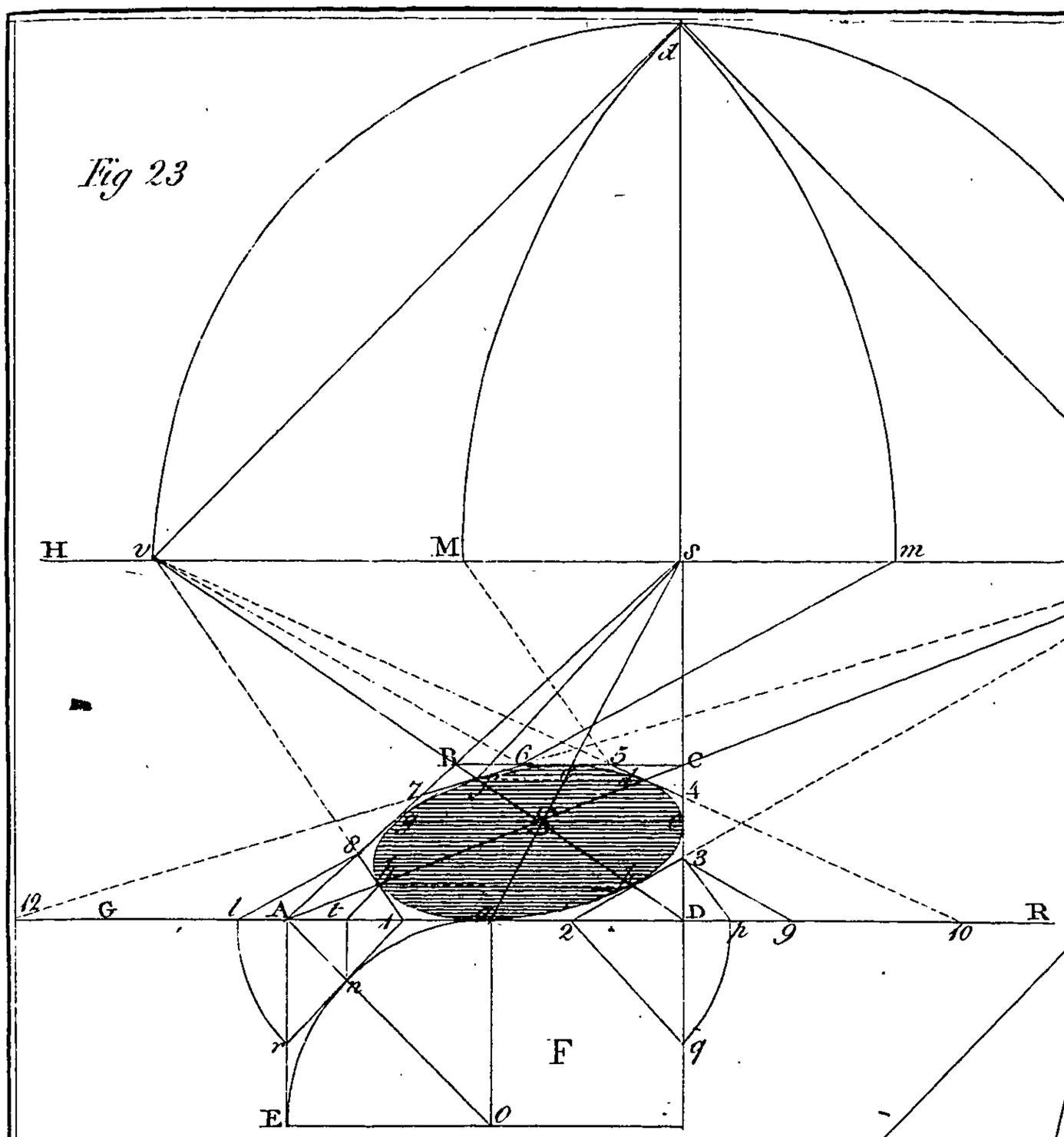


Fig 24

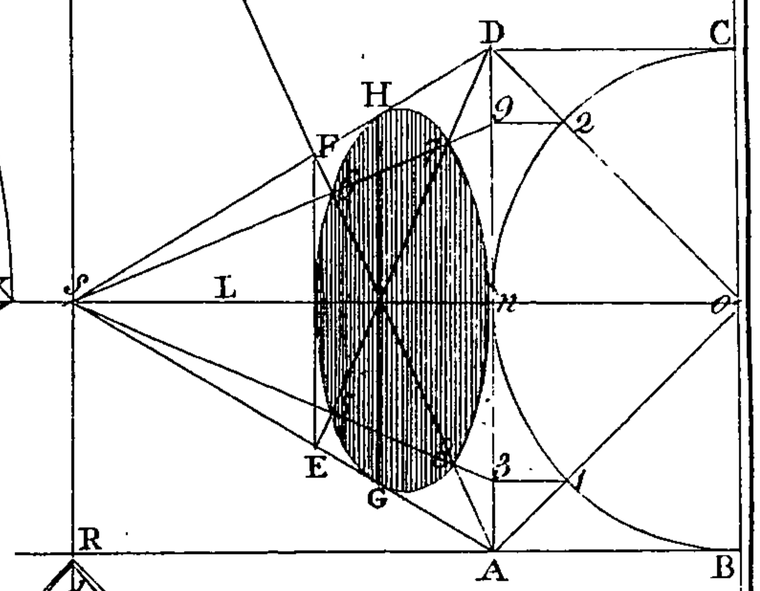


Fig 25

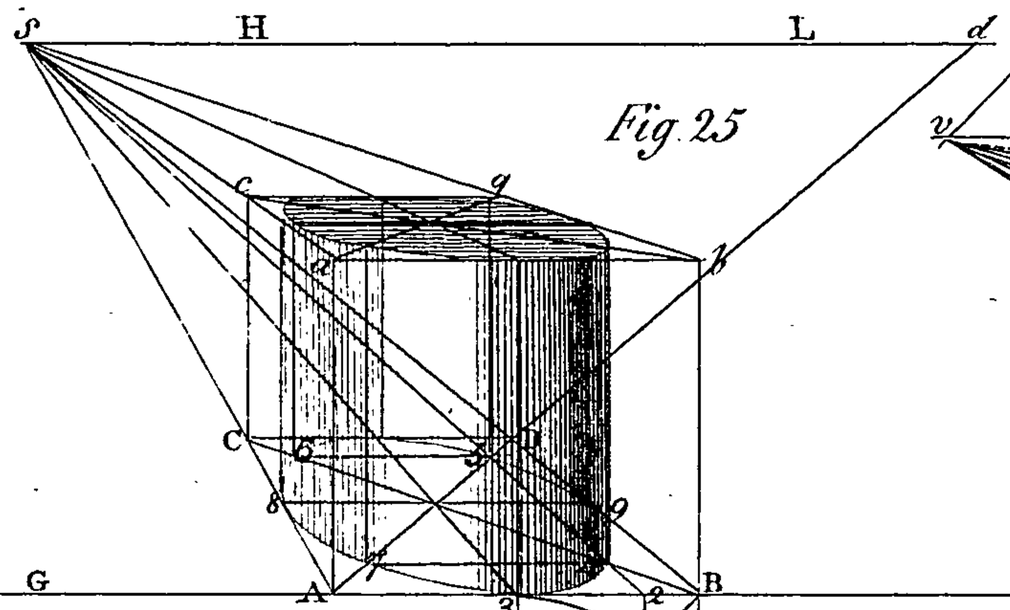


Fig 26

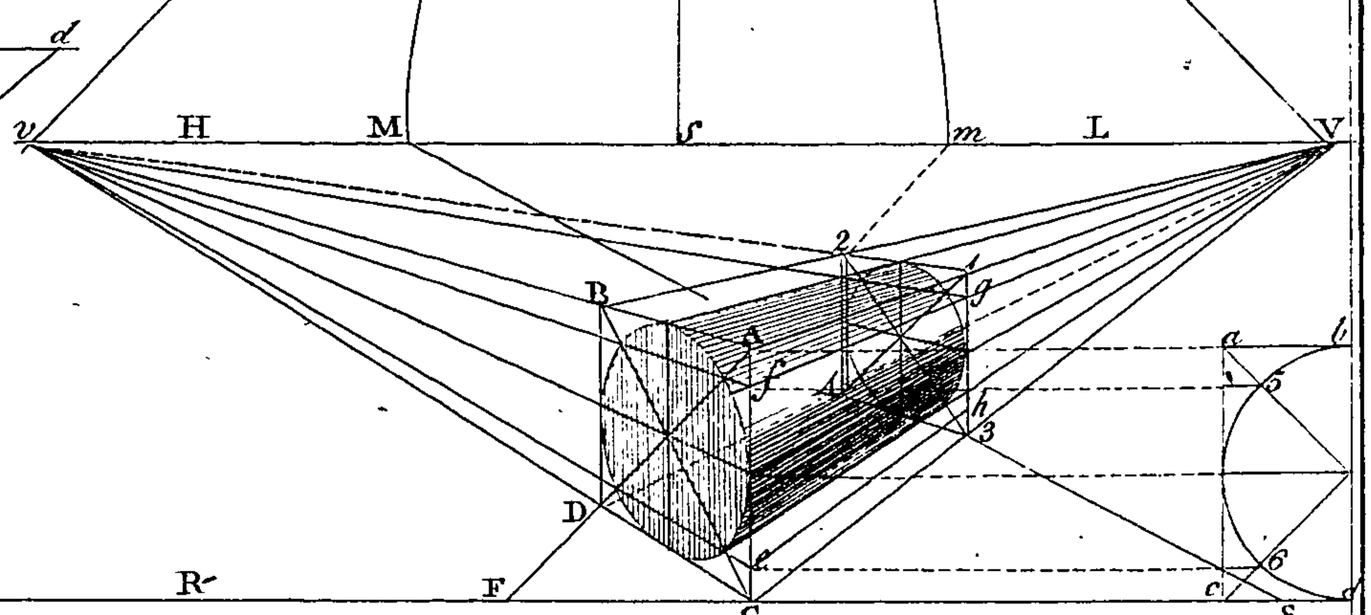


Fig 28

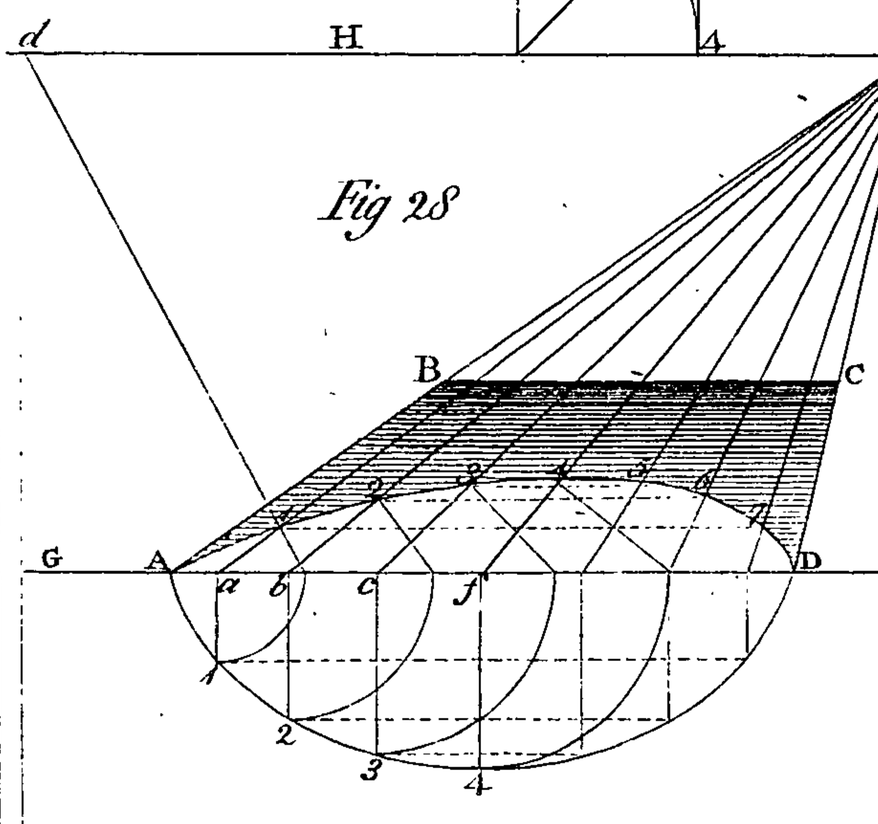
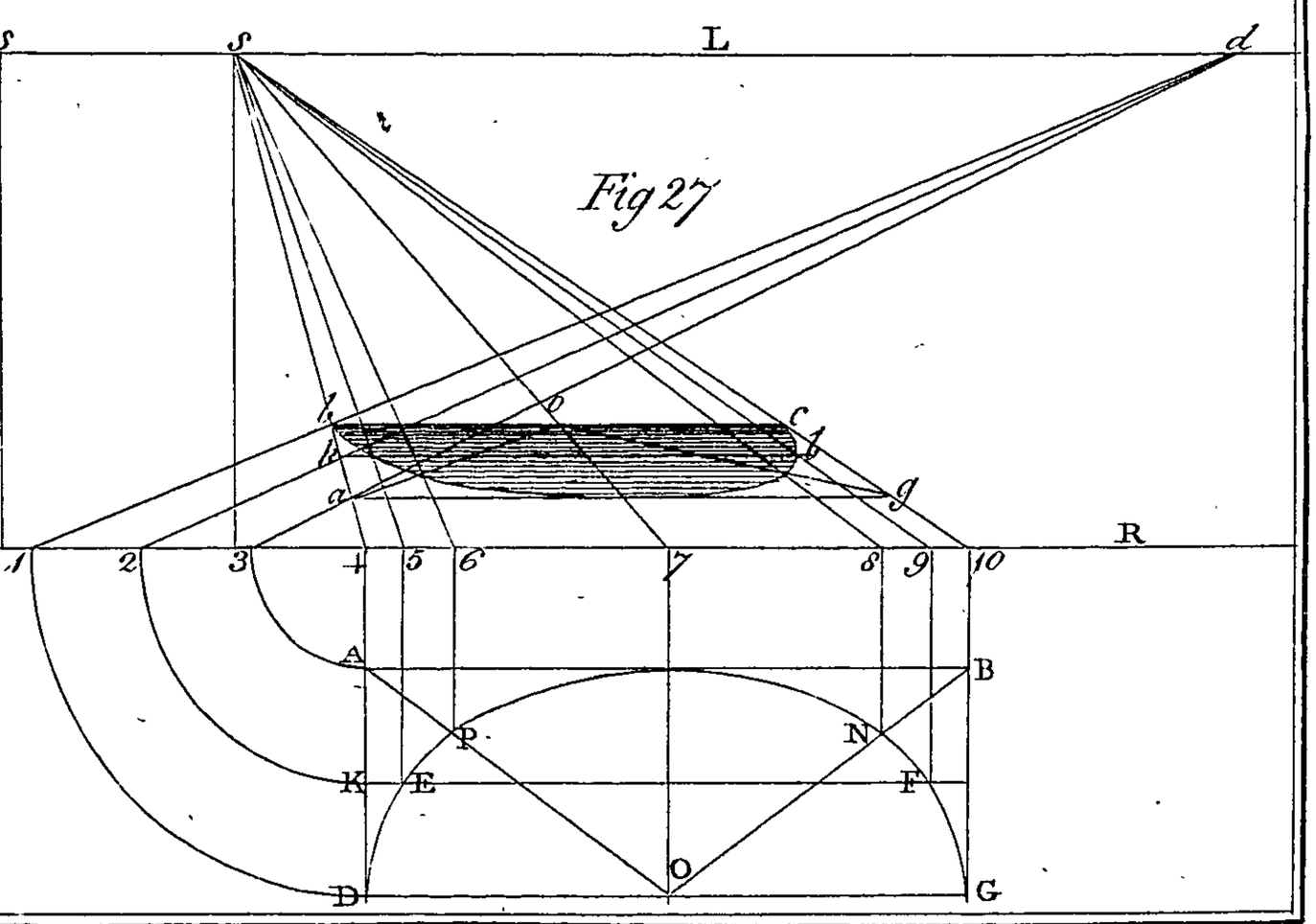


Fig 27



I. Sheraton. del.

G. Terry. Sc

Published. as the Act directs. by. T. Sheraton Aug 4. 1792.

to look at the plates firſt for an example of what we intend drawing.

Example I. Fig. 29. Plate XXII.

How to repreſent a receding and returning Flight of Steps whoſe Riſers are parallel to the Picture.

Let H L be the horizontal line, *s* the center, and *d* the diſtance of the picture; G R is the ground line. Make A B on the ground line equal to the original length of the ſteps, and draw A E perpendicular to the ground, and make the ſpaces A F, F N, N O, and O E, equal the original height of the riſers. Draw viſuals from each of theſe diviſions tending to *s*. Draw F T parallel to A B, and from B and T draw lines to *s*. Next, lay on the ground line the breadth of the ſtep, from B to *a*; and from *a* draw a line to *d* the diſtance, cutting at *k*; raiſe a perpendicular from *k*, cutting at *n*; and from *n* draw a parallel to *p*. Then from *p* raiſe a perpendicular to *q*, cutting the viſual N *s* at *q*; draw a parallel to *r*, and from *r* a viſual to *s*. Then from *a* to *b* lay the breadth of the ſecond ſtep, and draw a line to *d*, cutting at *m*; raiſe a perpendicular from *m* to *u*, and draw a line from *u* to *s*, and a parallel from *u* to *w*, cutting the viſual C *s* at *w*. Laſtly, lay on from *b* to *e* the breadth of the half ſpace, and from *e* draw a line to *d*, cutting at 5, and raiſe a perpendi-

cular to *x*, and from *x* a parallel; which will complete the firſt flight.

The returning ſtep leading to the ſecond flight is next to be conſidered.

For this, draw the perpendicular *y*, 7, 8, 9, 10, at a diſtance from A equal to the width of the returning ſteps; draw the line 6, 7, parallel to Y A, and at 6 there is an allowance made for the bearing of the ſtep; alſo at Z there is an allowance for the other half ſpace to reſt on. Draw the viſuals R *s* and E *s*; and how to complete the reſt of the ſteps muſt be evident from the figure. The returning flight comes forward until it is in the ſame plane with A B, the firſt riſer; therefore, after having placed the original height of the riſers at 8, 9, 10, and drawn from theſe diviſions viſuals to *s*, it remains only to lay on the bearing of the ſteps at 1, 2, tending to the diſtance, and cutting at 3, 4. Theſe being traced along the ſteps, as ſhewn by the dotted lines, till they cut the viſuals 7 *s*, R *s*; how to perform the other part will appear obvious. N. B. The laſt ſtep of the returning flight 10, 12, does not all come into the plate, otherwiſe its length would be equal A B, the original length of the ſtep. Theſe ſteps might have alſo been repreſented oblique to the picture; but as I have not plate-room for ſo many examples, the learner muſt try if he can do it himſelf, by reflecting on what

what has already been ſaid and done on objects in oblique ſituations; but if he fail in his attempt, he may conſult Mr. Malton's complete treatiſe, in its practical part.

EXAMPLE II. FIG. 30. Plate XXII.

How to repreſent a Tuſcan Pedeſtal and Baſe parallel to the Picture.

DRAW A firſt, the profile of the pedeſtal and baſe, which is taken from the large module of the Tuſcan order in Plate VIII. Let H L be the horizon, and make *s* the center, and *s d* only half the diſtance of the picture, for want of room on the plate. Make G R the ground line, and on it, from B to C, lay a ſpace equal to the length of the original plinth. Draw from theſe lines to *s*. Next, conſider how far the pedeſtal is to be repreſented from the picture, which in this example is equal twice C D; becauſe the whole diſtance is equal twice *s d*. Therefore, from D draw a line to *d*, cutting at F. Make D E equal half B C, cutting at I. Draw F K and I O parallel to B C, by which a ſquare will be repreſented equal to the plinth. Proceed now to repreſent the projection of the ogee or baſe of the plinth. For this, take *o* 1, half the original projection of the plinth, and place it from B to 2. From 2 draw a line to S, cutting at 3; and from 3 draw one to *d*, the diſtance, cutting 4. Draw next

the diagonals KI, FO. From 4 draw a parallel line, cutting the diagonals at 8, 5, and from 5 draw a line to *s*, cutting at 6; then will be projected each miter of the plinth, and alſo the ſize of the dado will be determined at the ſame time. Therefore from 8, 5, and 6, raiſe perpendiculars at pleaſure, which will ſerve both for the angles of the dado and the plinth of the baſe. From *o* draw a line to *s*, which will cut the parallel produced from 8 at 5, and will give an internal miter at 5, K; raiſe perpendiculars from 5, K at pleaſure. From *c* and 12 on the profile, draw lines to *s*, cutting the perpendiculars raiſed from 5, K at *f*, *m*, which will give the correſpondent miter to 5, K. Draw the projecting diagonals of each moulding on the profile, as 9, 10, 11, 12, and draw *a b*; from all which points in the mouldings draw viſuals to *s*, which will ſeverally cut the aforeſaid perpendiculars at *q*, *p*, *n*, *m*, *r*. Draw then the line *m n*, *p q*, which will be the diagonal lines of the internal miters. Now draw parallels from *p q*, which will cut the perpendiculars at 13, 14, 17. From 14, 17, draw viſuals to *s*, which will cut at 15, 16; and it is evident that by theſe the three miter lines will be correctly determined. From each angle of the mouldings on the profile draw lines to *s*, and afterwards obſerve how the profiles are cut by each projecting diagonal, to which make every reſpective miter agree. For inſtance, draw a line from *v*, the point where the diagonal cuts the upper ſquare of the ogee, till it cut the miter line at *t*; from *t* raiſe a perpendicular ſhewn by

the

the dotted line, which will form the ſquare on that miter, from which the ſame ſquare muſt be traced round the dado, as is evident from the figure. In the ſame manner muſt the upper moulding be managed; which, after what has been ſaid, it would be a dull and tedious repetition to go through a deſcription of it. And I am perſuaded, that if the learner cannot comprehend it from what has already been ſaid and done on the figure, he would fail of attaining it after all that I could ſay on it. It remains now to conſider the baſe, with a part of the ſhaft of the column: and this will admit but of very little deſcription, when we ſuppoſe the learner already acquainted with repreſenting ſquares and circles, of which the baſe is compoſed; and if he be not, he muſt turn back to theſe, for it is impoſſible to draw a figure to ſhew all theſe, without confounding the whole. The principal thing to be obſerved in this matter is, firſt, after having drawn z, the plinth on which the baſe reſts, on it a circle muſt be repreſented for the bottom of the torus, ſomewhat leſs than the plinth, determinable from the profile; after which the projection of the torus muſt be found, by drawing the lines h, g, w, to s, cutting a parallel from the plinth L at i, k, b. Take half $k\,l$ and place it from x to z, and a line from z to d, cutting the viſual $x\,s$, will find the projection of the torus, as the dotted upright line ſhews. Upon this torus muſt be repreſented a ſquare, ſo much leſs as the projection of the torus; in this ſquare a circle muſt be repreſented to guide the top of the

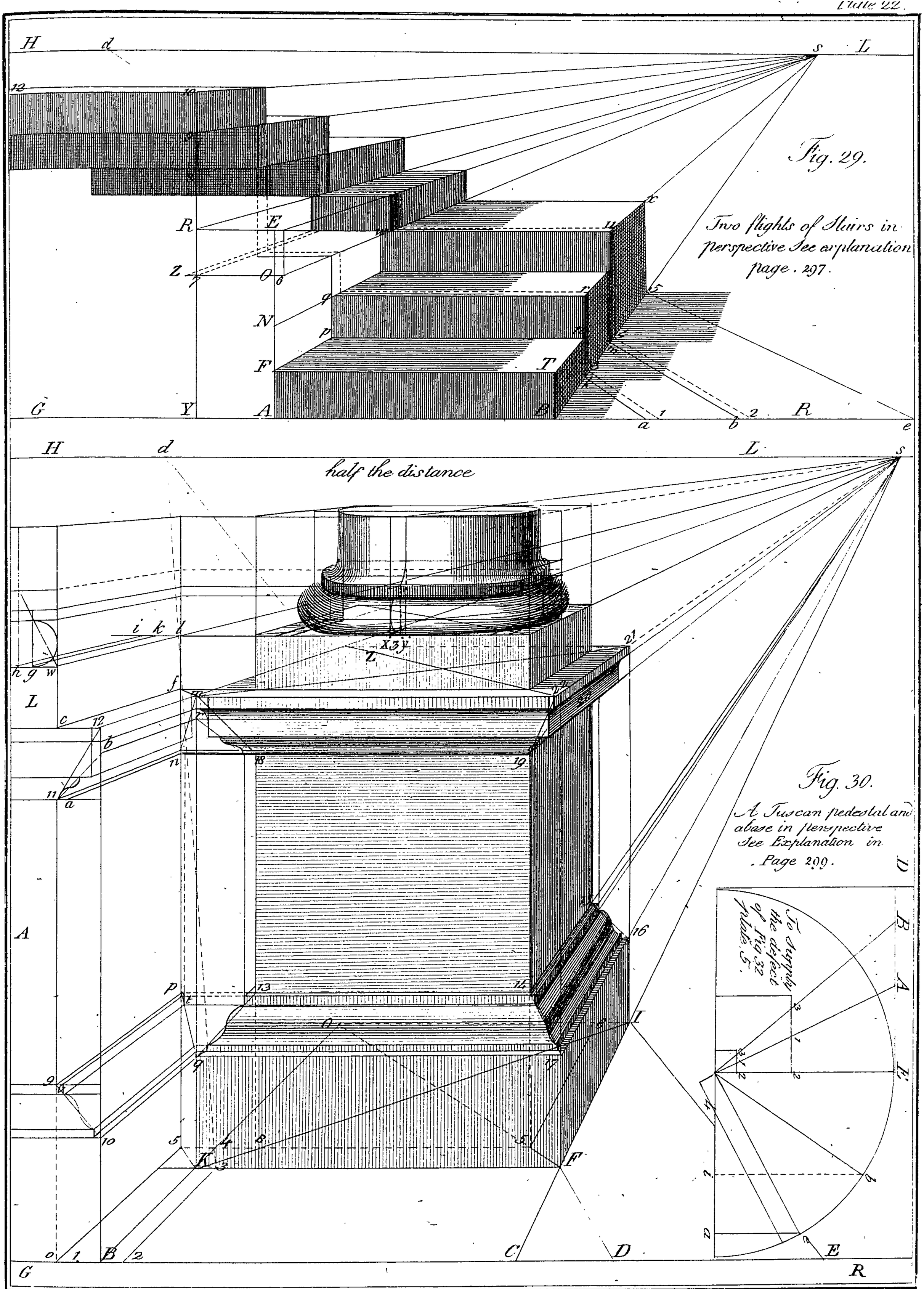
torus,

torus, and having already drawn one for its bottom, by theſe it may be completed. Next find the height of the fillet above the torus, which is done by drawing viſuals from the points above *x*; and by a ſteady hand and good eye the fillet may eaſily be drawn, by following the upper part of the torus. Laſtly, to find the projection of the conge or hollow; take half *k l* and place it from *z* to *y*, and direct a line to *d*, as before, cutting at the ſecond upright dotted line; how the reſt is performed is only to repeat what was neceſſary in repreſenting the other parts of the baſe, and therefore it is needleſs to ſay more, except to obſerve the neceſſity of taking care in drawing the curve lines, ſo that the torus may ſeem to reſt eaſy on its plinth, and not appear to ſtart ſuddenly up, as is commonly the caſe in ſuch repreſentations, when they are drawn by perſons who only underſtand perſpective, but are deſtitute of taſte in drawing.

EXAMPLE III. FIG. 31. Plate XXIII.

How to repreſent a Tuſcan Entablature and Capital parallel to the Picture.

IN the preceding example, the pedeſtal, baſe, and part of the ſhaft, are all under the horizon, conſequently the returns of each moulding ſeem to riſe up; but in the example before us,



T. Sheraton del. Published as the Act directs by T. Sheraton Dec.r 4.th 1792. Earlaw sculp.

us, every part is above the horizon, and therefore each returning member appears to defcend. Hence this horizontal line is in a reverfe fituation to the other, being under the object as the line H L, and that which we formerly ftyled the ground line, whereon was laid each original meafurement, is now at S P, properly termed a fection of the picture, on which thefe muft be placed. Therefore having drawn Y, the profile of the entablature, taken as before from Plate VIII. lay on A B the full extent of the cornice, and from A B draw vifuals to *s*; divide A B at E, and draw another vifual to *s*. Confider then how far the entablature is to be repref ented from the picture, which in this example is equal twice E F, becaufe we have only ufed half the full diftance. Draw then a line from F to *d*, cutting at G; through G draw a parallel, cutting at I K, which will then be the front edge of the greateft projecting part of the cornice. And fince the line from F to *d* is in a direction only to half the diftance, it will cut the vifual A D, tending to *s*, in the fame point as it would be cut if a line from K was directed to a diftance twice *s d*; therefore a parallel line from D to C will repref ent a fquare equal to the whole projection of the cornice. It is neceffary for the learner to be clear in this, otherwife he will not know what he is about, nor underftand the fucceeding directions. Having then found this fquare, draw the diagonals K D, I C, which diagonals muft neceffarily give the

proper direction to each miter at the top of the cornice. Take then, from Plate VIII. half the upper diameter of the column, and place it each way from E at M N. Draw from M N visuals to *s*, which will cut the aforesaid diagonals at 1, 2, and 3, determining the seat of the cornice, and the other mouldings. Let fall perpendiculars from the points 1, 2, 3. Proceed now to draw lines from each moulding in the profile to *s* the center; and also from Q draw one to the center. Produce the parallel from 1 to 4, cutting the line Q. From 4 let fall a perpendicular, then will the visual line O from the bottom of the cornice be cut at U. From U draw a parallel, cutting the perpendiculars from 1, 2, at 6, 7; from 7 draw a visual to the center *s*, cutting the perpendicular from 3 at 8. Draw the projecting diagonal O 9 of the profile, and strictly observe how it cuts each moulding. Draw also U 10 of the internal miter. In like manner draw 6, 10, 7, 12, and 8, 13. Now from the internal miter, as at *e*, *a*, *b*, *c*, draw parallels, cutting the other projecting diagonals round the cornice, in the same proportion as that of the profile. Every other particular must be obvious from inspection, after what has been said already on the pedestal.

It now remains to find the representations of the architrave and capital. To do this, take the projections *f*, *g*, *h*, from the profile, and place them from Q at *i*, *k*, *l*, and from these direct

lines

lines to *s*, cutting the miter line near 4, as ſpecified by the points. From each of theſe points let fall perpendiculars to their reſpective viſuals already drawn; that is, from the point neareſt 4 let fall a perpendicular to *m*, from the next point let fall one to *o*, and from the laſt point let fall one to *n*, which will find the internal miter. From each of theſe miters draw parallels at pleaſure, as ſhewn by the figure. Laſtly, theſe parallels muſt be cut, in order to determine the projection of each miter in the repreſentation, which is eaſily done, by the ſame method uſed in the internal miter: thus, from M N lay on each way *i*, *k*, *l*, the ſame as *i*, *k*, *l*, near Q, and direct viſual lines to each miter line at 1, 2, 3. From each of theſe points let fall perpendiculars as before to their reſpective parallels, and each miter will be found, as is evident from the figure. With reſpect to the circular mouldings in the capital, theſe muſt be drawn by firſt finding the ſquares in which they may be inſcribed, and then uſing that freedom of hand and good taſte, which are the beſt and only guides that can be uſed in theſe caſes. And here the learner ſhould be put in mind, that the example before us not only ſhews how to repreſent the Tuſcan entablature, but alſo how to draw broken mouldings parallel to the picture, or how to repreſent a cornice round the inſide of a room. For if the dotted lines drawn from the internal miter were made good and ſhaded, and if thoſe returning to the profile were alſo ſhaded, the effect would then be ſeen.

I ſhould have been glad to have aſſiſted the learner in the repreſentations of the other four orders, but he muſt be ſenſible that it would be impoſſible for me either to find room or time for ſuch an arduous taſk in a work like this, which calls for place and attention to ſo many different articles. It is my opinion, however, that if the learner thoroughly acquaint himſelf with the repreſentation of the Tuſcan order, he will not be at much loſs how to draw the other, except in the capitals of the three laſt orders when they are oblique to the picture. But theſe will rarely, if ever, be wanted by thoſe for whom this work is intended. However, if they ſhould, I will refer the reader to Mr. Malton's work, as the beſt I know of, for their aſſiſtance in this matter.

EXAMPLE IV. FIG. 32. Plate XXIII.

How to repreſent Arches parallel and perpendicular to the Picture.

FIRST, of arches parallel to the picture.

Let A, B, C, D, be an arched paſſage, whoſe entrance is parallel to the picture, in which caſe the arch is ſimilar to its original; that is, a perfect ſemicircle, as demonſtrated by Fig. 20. Plate XIX. and page 284. Therefore let the line 2, 4, drawn

parallel

parallel to the ground be the diameter, and E the center of the arch; ſweep the arch as in any other circle; draw the viſuals A *s*, B *s*, and make *d* the diſtance. Conſider next the ſize of the pier or pillar on which the arch is to reſt. Let A K be the thickneſs, and draw K *d* cutting at P. Draw P Q parallel to the ground, and raiſe a perpendicular from Q. From 2, 4 at the ſpring of the arch, and from E the center, draw lines to *s* the center of the picture; and the viſual line from 4 to *s* cutting the perpendicular from Q at 3, draw from 3 a line parallel to 2, 4, cutting the viſual E *s* at I; then will I be the center of the furtheſt ſemicircle, which completes the arch, by fixing the foot of the compaſſes in I, extending the other to 3, and ſweeping the arch 1, 3, as the figure ſhews.

EXAMPLE V. FIG. 32. Plate XXIII.

To repreſent Arches in a perpendicular Direction to the Picture.

LET the perpendicular line A 7 be the original height of the arch-way. Draw from 7 a line to the center *s*, and make 7, 8 equal to the ſemidiameter of the arch, and from 8 draw a line to *s*. Next conſider how far the arch is to be from the front of the picture, which is here equal A K. From K

draw a line to *d*, the diſtance, cutting at P; and from P raiſe a perpendicular, cutting at 10. Take 8, 7 equal to the ſemidiameter of the original arch, and repeat it from K to N, from N to S, from which draw lines to the diſtance, cutting the viſual A *s* in O Y. From theſe raiſe perpendiculars, cutting at 11 and *e*; then will *a* be the center of the arch. Draw then the diagonals *a* 11, *a* 10, and divide 9, 10, or 8, 7, into ſeven equal parts, and take two of theſe, as at 12; from which draw a line to *s*, cutting the diagonals, as the figure ſhews by the points. Through theſe points draw, by a ſteady hand, this ſide of the arch. For the other ſide of it proceed in the ſame manner, by drawing viſuals from 2, 13. Laſtly, draw *a c* parallel; alſo 10, 14, and 11, 15; then from *c* to 15 and to 14 draw diagonals agreeing with the other, and cut theſe as before, by a line from 16, by which the other ſide of the arch will be repreſented; that is, as much of it as ought to appear. The part which does not appear is denoted by the dotted curve. In the ſame manner proceed with the ſecond, or with as many more arches as may be wanted, by repeatedly laying on the ground line the original meaſurement at T V.

EXAMPLE

Fig. 31.

A Tuscan Entablature and Capital in perspective
See explanation in page 302.

Fig. 32.

To represent Arches in perspective
See explanation page 306.

T Sheruton. Del.

Barlow. Sculp

Published as the Act directs by T Sheraton Dec.r 26th. 1792.

EXAMPLE VI. FIG. 33. Plate XXIV.

How to repreſent a Houſe in Perſpective, having its Front parallel to the Picture.

LET H L be the horizon, and G R the ground line, *s* is the center, and *s d* the diſtance of the picture. Make A C the original length of the front, from which draw viſuals to *s*. Conſider next how far the houſe is removed back, which is here equal C 1. From 1 draw a line to *d*, cutting at 7; and from 7 draw a parallel to 8. Draw a plan of the roof 1, 2, 3, 4. And from *d* the diſtance, draw *d v* parallel to the ſide of the roof 1, 2; then will *v* be the vaniſhing point for that ſide of the roof. Take *s v* and place it below the horizon at V, perpendicular to *s*; then will V be the vaniſhing point of the other ſide of the roof 2, 3. From 8 and 7 raiſe perpendiculars at pleaſure, and make A F the original height of the front. From F draw a line to *s*, cutting at 9; draw a parallel from 9 to 10. For the windows and door, lay their original meaſurements on A F and A C, drawing viſuals to *s*, as the figure ſhews; and as the front is parallel to the picture, conſequently each object on it is ſimilar to their originals*, and therefore lines perpendicular to 8, 7,

* See pages 274 and 275.

and 9, 8, will form the ſides, tops, and bottoms of each window and door-way. From 9, 10 draw lines to *v*, the vaniſhing point of the roof; from 10 draw a line to *s*, the center. Take then 1, 3, the ſpan of the roof, and place it from F to B; and from B draw a line to *s*, cutting at 11; from 11 draw a line to V, below the horizon, cutting at 14; from 14 draw a parallel to 13, for the top of the roof; and from 13 draw a line to V, cutting the line 10 *s* at 15, forming the fartheſt ſide of the roof; draw a perpendicular from 15 to 6, which will complete the end of the houſe. Laſtly, to find the height of the chimney, draw a line from *s* through 14, cutting at E; and from E lay on the original height of the chimney to D; and from D draw a line to *s*, cutting a perpendicular from 14, which will give the height required.

Method ſecond.—The front of the houſe being drawn as has been deſcribed, to find the appearance of the roof and gable-end, draw the roof 1, 2, 3, as before; and from 4 and 3 draw lines to *d*, cutting at 5, 6; from 5, 6 raiſe perpendiculars at pleaſure; from 5 draw a parallel to O, cutting the viſual A *s* at O, for the center of the left gable-end; from O raiſe a perpendicular at pleaſure. Take then the perpendicular height of the roof, from 4 to 2, and place it from F to E; and from E draw a line to *s*, cutting the aforeſaid perpendicular at 14, which will give both the

the pitch and height of the roof. From 14 draw a parallel to 13, cutting the other perpendicular correſpondent with 14. Laſtly, from 9 draw a line to 14, and from 10 draw a line to 13, and from 13 to 15, which will determine the appearance of the roof, as before.

EXAMPLE VII. FIG. 34. Plate XXIV.

To find the Repreſentation of a Houſe whoſe Gable-end is parallel to the Picture.

IN this caſe the front that was before parallel to the picture is now turned perpendicular to it. The gable is therefore parallel to the picture, and is nothing more than a geometrical elevation, found by laying on the heights on *a b*, and the widths on *a f*, and drawing lines from theſe to *s*, the center; *m f* is the diſtance of the houſe from the picture; and a line from *m* to *d*, cutting at *n*, finds the repreſentation of that diſtance. The other lines to the left of *m*, all tend to *d* alſo, by which the windows and doors, &c. are found; *m q* is equal to the original length of the front, a line therefore from *q* to *d* determines its apparent length on the picture. For the pitch of the roof, draw *e s*, cutting at *p*; from which raiſe a perpendicular; draw another perpendicular from *w*, the center of the other

other gable-end; alſo draw the viſuals *k s*, *l s*, for the roof; which viſuals will cut perpendiculars at *h* and *i*, anſwering to the points *l k*, by which the roof is formed. For the reſt, the figure itſelf is ſufficient, by obſerving that *u t* is the perpendicular height of the roof, and *t b* of the chimney.

EXAMPLE VIII. FIG. 35. Plate XXIV.

How to repreſent a Chair, having its Front parallel to the Picture.

AFTER having made a ſcale of feet and inches to proportion each part of the chair by, draw A, the profile of the back and ſide rail; and draw B on the right, according to the bevel of the ſeat; and obſerve, to diſtinguiſh the lines of each chair, one is marked with ſmall letters, and the other with numerals.

Let H L be the horizon proportioned by the ſcale, about five feet high from G R the ground line. Make *a b* equal to the length of the front; from which draw lines to *s*, the center, which, in general, ought to be perpendicular over the middle of the chair, becauſe it affords the moſt eaſy and natural view of its back. Next, from *q*, the width of the ſeat, draw a line to the diſtance, here out of the plate, cutting the viſual *a s* at *c*; from

from *c* draw a parallel to *e* at pleaſure. Take C D, the bevel of the ſeat, and place it from *a* to *d*; and from *d* draw a line to *s*, cutting *c e* at *y*, which gives the bevel of the ſeat. From *a* draw a line through *y*, cutting the horizon at V, which will be the vaniſhing point to every line originally parallel to *a y*, the ſide rail; take *s* V and place the ſame ſpace to *v*, which will be the vaniſhing point to the other ſide of the chair; therefore from *b* draw a line to *v*, cutting at *e*, which forms the ſeat. For the thickneſs of the back rail, draw a line from *p* to the diſtance, as the figure ſhews. For the height of the back, raiſe a perpendicular *a g*, and draw a parallel from *r* to *g*; draw alſo a perpendicular from *y*, and a line from *g* to V will cut it at *f*, determining the height of the back. For the bottom of the back foot, draw a line from *u* to the diſtance, cutting a perpendicular from *c* at *w*. From *w* draw a parallel, and from *z* draw a line to the vaniſhing point V, cutting at *x*, which will determine the place of the back foot*. How every other part is done, muſt be evident from inſpecting the figure.

* The reader will perceive that the line from *z* to *x* is not accurately drawn, for the engraver did not follow his copy, otherwiſe the line would have touched the bottom of the back foot tending to V, which the learner may prove, by drawing a line from *z* to V. This inſtance may ſerve to ſhew the trouble there is with engravers, who in general are totally ignorant of perſpective.

EXAMPLE IX. FIG. 36. Plate XXIV.

How to repreſent a Chair having its Front perpendicular to the Picture.

IN this example the ſame ground line, horizon, center, and diſtance, is uſed as in the preceding; therefore let the ſpace 7, 1, be equal to the length of the chair front. From 7 draw a line to *s*, and from 1 draw a line to the diſtance, cutting at 16. Make 7, 9 equal to the length of the ſide rail, and from 9 draw a line to *s*; make 9, 10 the thickneſs of the back foot, and from 10 draw a line to *s*, as before. Draw a parallel line for the depth of the ſide rail, and from 8 draw a line to *s*. Next conſider how much the back foot ſweeps off from the perpendicular, which is equal to the ſpace 12, 13, or 2, 22; draw viſuals from each of theſe points, as the example directs. To find the bevel of the ſides, take C D and place it from 7 to 5, and from 1 to 3; from which draw lines to the diſtance, cutting at 11 and 17; from 11 and 17 draw parallels cutting the viſual 9 *s* at 20 and 18; from 7 draw a line to 20, and from 16 draw one to 18, which will finiſh the outline of the ſeat. Laſtly, from 18 and 20 let fall perpendiculars, cutting at 24, 25; from which draw parallels to the viſual 13 *s*, which gives the bottom of

Houses in Perspective. see explanation page 309

Fig. 33.

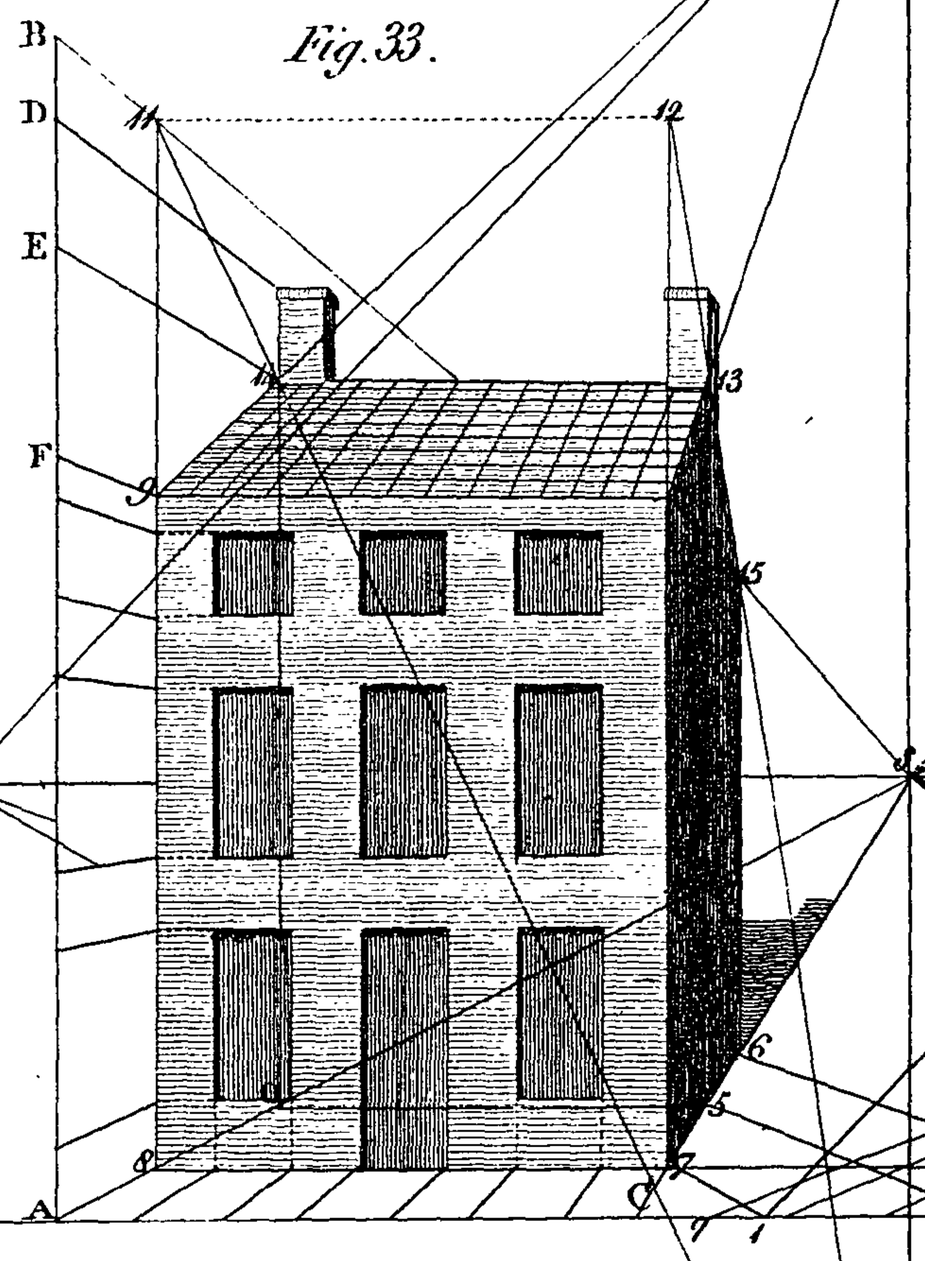


Fig. 34.

Chairs, in Perspective. see page 312

Fig. 35.

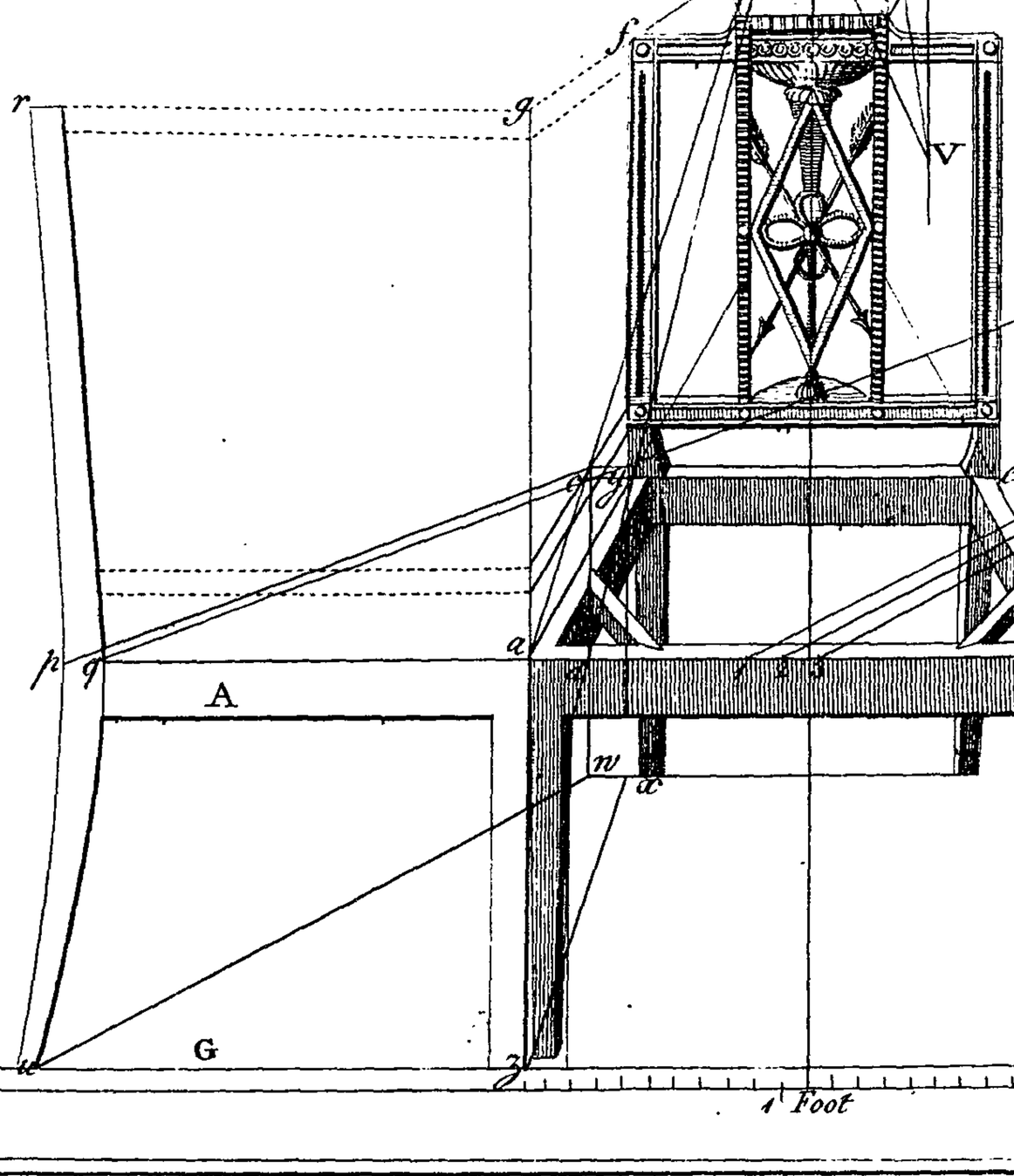
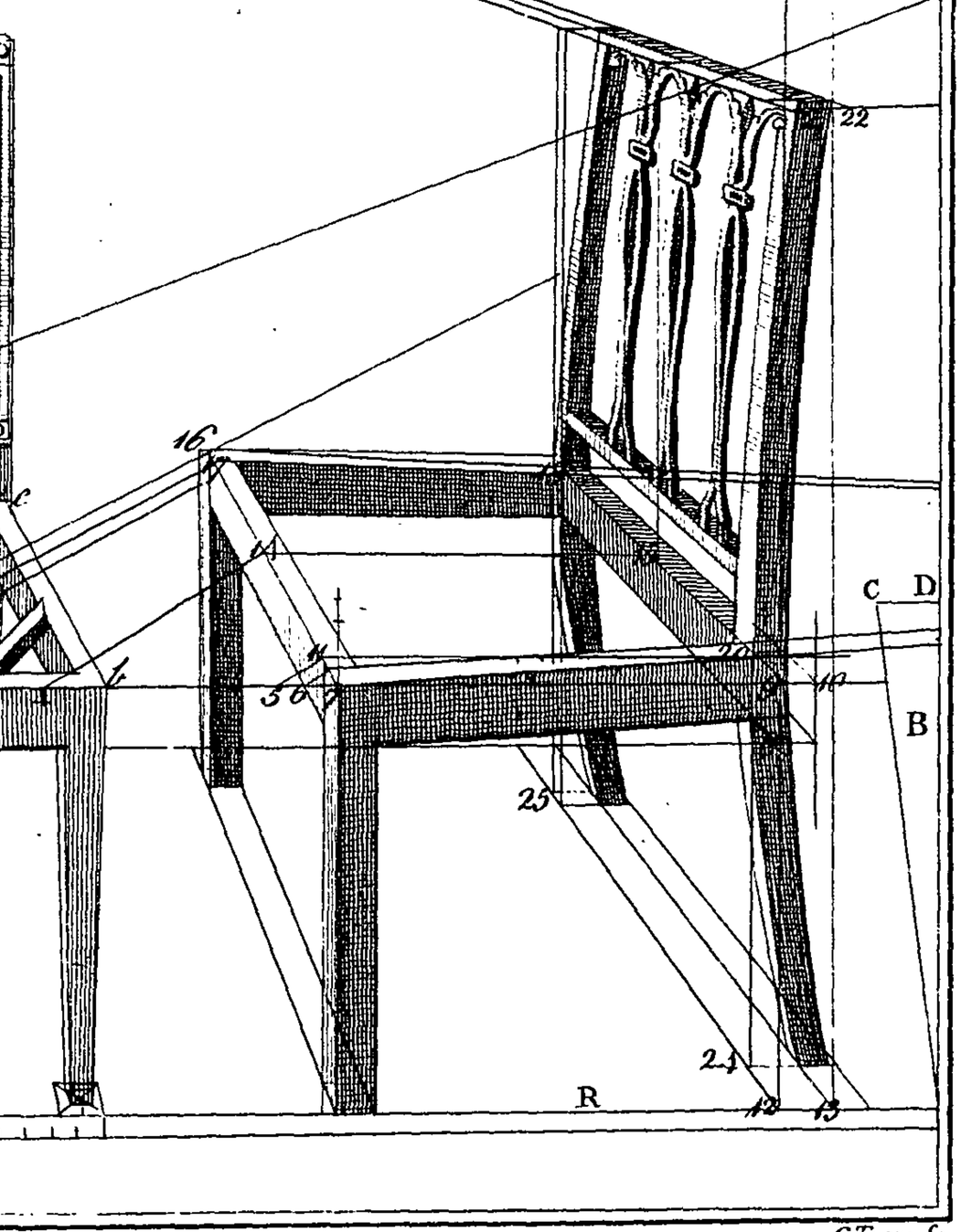


Fig 36



T. Sheraton del

Published by G. Terry ... Aug. 1. 1792.

G Terry Sc

each back foot; and for every other particular, a little reflection and obſervation will be ſufficient.

EXAMPLE X. FIG. 37. Plate XXV.

How to repreſent a round Table in Perſpective, having two of its Claws in front parallel to the Picture.

DRAW a profile of the pillar and claw, as at A. Take *a b*, the ſpring of the claw, from the center of the pillar, and with it deſcribe a circle 1, 2, 3; divide the circle into three equal parts, ſo as to ſuit the intended poſition of the claws, as 1, 2, 3; draw from theſe perpendicular lines to *i*, *e*, *f*. Repreſent a ſquare 4, 5, 6, 7, equal to the diameter of the top; draw the diagonals and diameters of the ſquare, and from *i f* draw viſuals to *s*; from C, the center, draw a perpendicular for the pillar; and having determined the height of the table at B D, from B D repreſent a circle for the top, as has been taught in page 289, ſee Fig. 23. Next find the place of the claws; for which make *f e* equal *f* 2, and from *e* draw a line to the diſtance *d*, cutting at *g*; from *g* draw a parallel to *h*, for the other claw. To find the place of the back claw; extend the compaſſes from *e* to 3, and make 4 *c* equal to it; from *c* draw a line to the diſtance, cutting at *m*; and from *m* draw a parallel to *i*, which will be the place

of the claw. For the different parts of the pillar, draw from the profile lines to the diſtance, cutting the perpendicular C F, as the figure ſhews. It now remains for every part to be finiſhed by a good hand and eye accompanied with judgment, as no other rules can be of any ſervice in caſes of this ſort.

EXAMPLE XI. FIG. 38. Plate XXV.

How to repreſent an octagon Table having one of its Claws in Front perpendicular to the Picture.

DRAW the profile of the pillar and claw, as at B; and, as in the other example, take the ſpring of the foot or claw from the center of the pillar, and with it deſcribe a circle, and mark out the place of the claws at 1, 2, 3. Draw 1, 2, 3 up to the ground line, and produce 1 up to *u*, for the height of the table. Repreſent a ſquare both at top and bottom, and draw the diagonals, finding the center for the pillar. Draw now the dotted lines from the profile to *k u* the perpendicular, and where they cut draw lines to *s*, the center of the picture, cutting the center of the pillar for each reſpective moulding. Next find the ſituation of the claws; having drawn lines from *k*, *h*, *a*, to *s*, make *h b* equal *h i*; and from *b* draw a line to the diſtance, cutting at *g*, which will be the place for the firſt claw. Make *a c* equal *a* 3, and from *c* draw a line to *d*, as before, cutting at *b*; from *b* draw

draw a parallel to *e*, then will *b e* be the place of the two other claws. From 5 and 4, produced from 7, the height of the toe, draw lines to *s*; and from *e* and *b* raiſe perpendiculars cutting theſe, which will be the height of the toes of the back claws. Laſtly, we here ſuppoſe the top to be an irregular octagon, wherefore let *m n* be equal to four of its ſides; draw from *n m* lines to *s*, from *n* draw a line to *d*, cutting at *o*; from *o* draw a parallel to *t*; finding the oppoſite angle, draw *m t*; and from the diſtance draw a line through *w*, cutting at *r*; from *r* draw a parallel to *p*; and draw *p q*, which will finiſh the octagon for the top.

EXAMPLE XII. FIG. 39. Plate XXV.

To put a Commode Table in Perſpective, having its Front parallel to the Picture.

OBSERVE, the ground line for the tables is here uſed as the horizon for the commode.

Make *s d* half the diſtance, for want of room on the plate, and make G R the ground line. Draw then the plan P of the front, according to the intended ſcale. And, in cutting of each viſual line, uſe one half of a foot inſtead of a whole one; becauſe only half the whole diſtance is uſed. Therefore, having drawn

drawn the viſuals 3 *s*, B *s*, draw a line from 1 foot on the ſcale line to *d* the diſtance, cutting at *g*; then will 3 *g* repreſent a line two feet long, equal to the breadth of the commode. From *g* raiſe a perpendicular, cutting at *m*, finding the apparent width of the top; draw 5, 10 parallel and equal to the height of the foot and bottom of the commode; draw parallel lines, alſo, for the partition below and above the drawer, and for the top, as ſhewn by the figure. Proceed now to find the place of the feet and the ſweep of the front: for the feet take half 3, 4, and from 3 place it to 6; from which draw a line to *d*, cutting at 2; from 2 draw a parallel cutting B *s*, for the other foot. Find now two points by which to direct the ſweep of the front thus: draw perpendicular lines from the plan at 9, 12, and from 13, *i*, *k*, where they cut, draw lines to *s*; then take half 8, 9 and place it from *k* to *i*; and from *i* draw a line to *d*, cutting at *p*, finding a point for the curve; from *p* draw a parallel to *t*, finding the oppoſite point, which will be ſufficient for the whole. Laſtly, for the receſs draw viſuals from *r f*, and, ſuppoſing the receſs to be a foot deep from front, make *e f* equal half a foot on the ſcale; draw from *e* a line to *d*, cutting at *o*; and from *o* draw a parallel to the oppoſite viſual. Every other thing may be learned by obſervation, without going through a minute detail of every particular, which would become an exceeding dry taſk indeed.

Tables in perspective see explanation page. 315.

Fig. 37

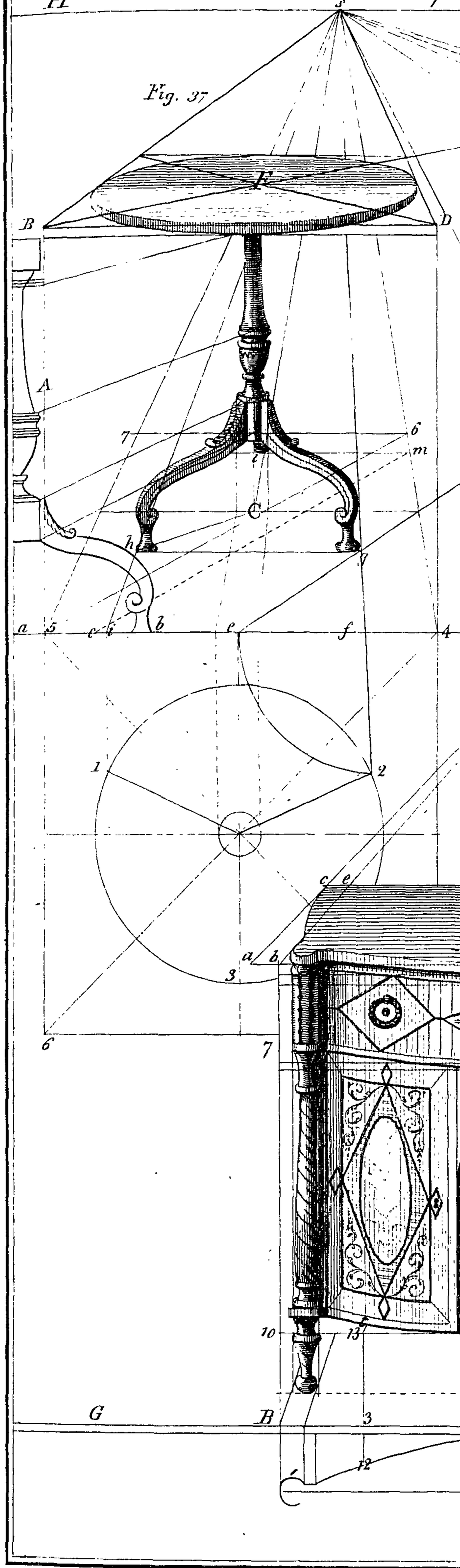


Fig. 38

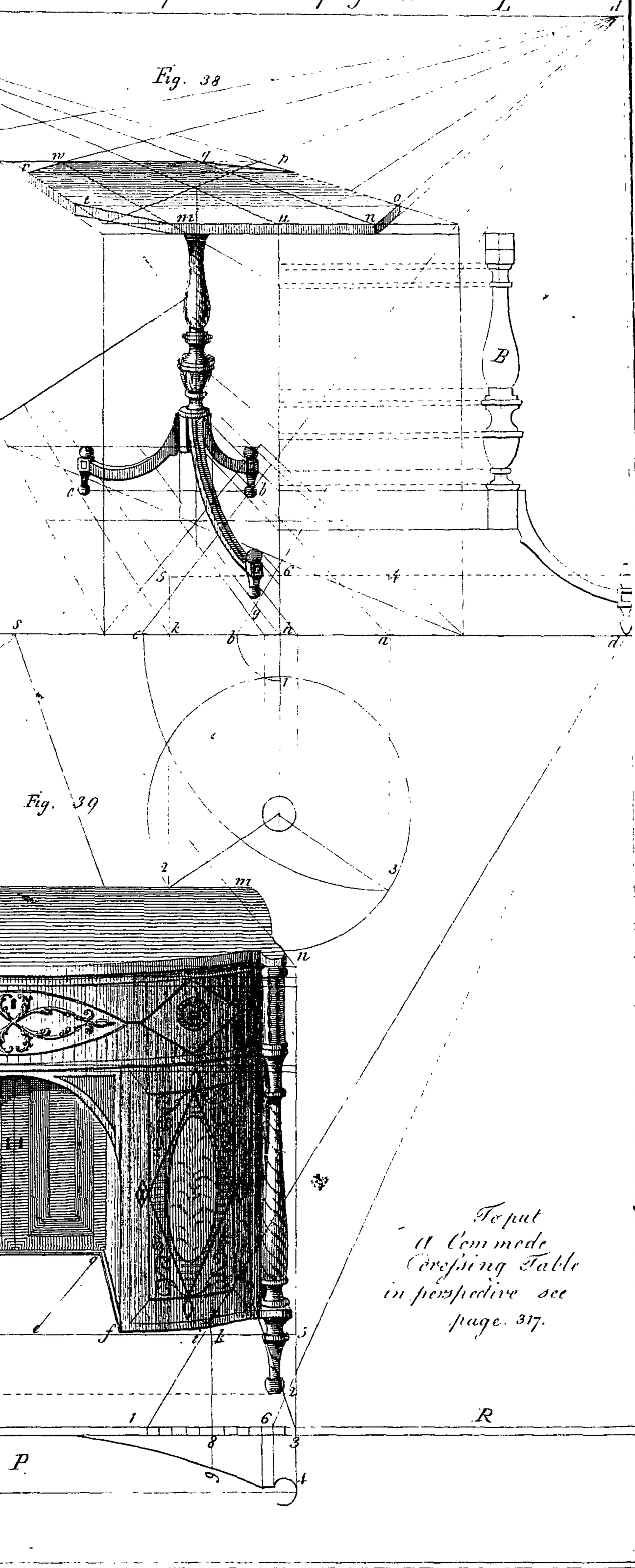


Fig. 39

To put a Commode Dressing Table in perspective see page. 317.

T. Sheraton. Del.

Barlow Sculp.

Published as the Act directs. by T. Sheraton. October 1792.

EXAMPLE XIII. Fig. 40. Plate XXVI.

How to repreſent a Chair obliquely ſituated to the Picture.

IN the two former examples of chairs in perſpective, the firſt of theſe had its front parallel to the picture, which is the moſt uſual way of repreſenting a chair when it is wanted to be viewed as a pattern; for the back being parallel alſo, it gives the moſt natural and diſtinct view of the baniſter and all its parts. The ſecond is put with its front perpendicular to the picture, which is a poſition wanted in the repreſentation of internal views of rooms or paſſages: and this third example being put oblique, is conſidered by painters moſt pictureſque or ſuitable for a picture, in which caſe the pattern of the chair is not much regarded, only its unformal ſituation ſuiting to the ſubject and circumſtances of the deſign. In this example I ſhall therefore conſider myſelf as offering ſome aſſiſtance to the painter, as well as in a few other inſtances in this book.

Obſerve, that the vaniſhing points *v* V, and meaſuring points *m* M, of this example, are all found by laying the diſtance downwards to D, for want of room on the plate, and which needs not here be explained, after what has been done

in

in problem VI. page 236, as it makes no difference whether the diſtance be above or below the horizon. Therefore proceed in conſidering G R the ground line, drawn parallel to the horizon H L; on G R make a ſcale of inches to proportion every part by. Make *a f* equal to the original length of the front, which in parlour chairs is generally 21 or 22 inches; and let *a g* be equal to the width of the ſeat from the inſide of the back to the front, commonly 16 inches. As *a* is conſidered the neareſt angle to the picture, from *a* raiſe a perpendicular at pleaſure, on which the original heights of each part muſt be laid, as from *a* to *m*, for the height of the ſeat rail, about 16 inches without the ſtuffing. From *a* and *w* draw viſuals tending to V and *v*. From *f c* draw lines to *m*, cutting at *x y*; from *b* do the ſame, cutting at 3; from which points raiſe perpendiculars for each foot. Next, from *g* draw a line to M, cutting at *k*; from which raiſe a perpendicular to *o*; from *o* draw a line to V; and from 4, the inſide of the front foot, whoſe thickneſs is ſuppoſed equal to the bevel of the ſide rail, draw a line to *v*, cutting at *p*; then from *w*, the outſide of the foot, draw a line to *p*, produced till it cut the horizon at *o*, which will be the vaniſhing point to every line originally parallel to the ſide *w p*. From *v* extend the compaſſes to *o*, which lay on to O, and O will be the vaniſhing point to all lines parallel to the other ſide *t* 5. Therefore, from *t* draw a line to O, which will cut at 5, completing the form of the ſeat. On the perpendicular line from *w*,

lay

lay on 21 inches for the height of the back, and direct a line to *o*, and through *p* draw a perpendicular at pleasure for the joint of the side rail. Next consider how much the back foot pitches, which in this example is equal *b g*, and *b i* is for the thickness of the toe. From these draw lines to M, cutting at *k*, *l*, *n*; and from *k*, *l*, *n*, draw lines to V, which will cut the visual *b v* in the place for the toe at 8, 6; from 6 raise a perpendicular cutting at 7, and from 7 direct a line to V, for the top rail; and how the rest is performed must be obvious from what has already been said and done.

EXAMPLE XIV. FIG. 41. Plate XXVI.

To put a Cylinder Desk and Book-case in Perspective, having its Front oblique to the Picture.

DRAW first an elevation of the cornice and pediment, and proportion the pediment according to Fig. 36, Plate V. by dividing half the length of the cornice into nine equal parts, of which take four for the pitch. Take one of these parts for the height of the pedestal, and the remaining three for the vase. Draw lines up to the ground line at *q*, *r*, F, *p*, *f*, and the vanishing points having been already found, draw from *r* lines tending to each; from *r*, the nearest angle of the book-case, raise a

perpendicular at pleaſure, on which the ſeveral heights muſt be laid. From *r* to A lay on the depth of the lower part, and direct a line to M, cutting at U, and make A B the depth of the book-caſe, and draw a line as before, cutting at X, from which raiſe a perpendicular. In the ſame manner draw lines from F *p*, tending to *m*, and cutting at 3, 12, for the length and center of the book-caſe. The ſeveral original heights for the deſk part, doors, and cornice, muſt now be placed on the perpendicular, from which lines muſt be drawn to each vaniſhing point. And here we muſt obſerve, that as the neareſt angle of the book-caſe comes forward to the picture*, conſequently the ſlider is on this ſide of it. To project the ſlider in this caſe, a vaniſhing point muſt be found, from which, if a line be directed it will paſs through the diagonal of any ſquare. Thus: on D, the diſtance, ſweep the arch S, and biſect it at S, and through S direct a line to the horizon, cutting at *d* on the ſmall drawers; lay from *r* to *g* a ſpace equal to the projection of the ſlider; and from *g* direct a line to *m*, cutting at *i*; from *i* raiſe a perpendicular to *y*; and from *d*, the aforeſaid vaniſhing point, draw a line through *y* at pleaſure; and from *v* draw a viſual for the end of the ſlider, cutting at *n*; from *n* draw a line to V, and from *v* draw one through 10, for the other end of the ſlider. The opening of the door is next to be conſidered. It is evident

* When any object is repreſented to touch the ground-line, that part which touches it is ſaid to be in the picture.

that

that a door turning on its hinges muſt deſcribe a ſemicircle, and therefore if a ſemi is repreſented, whoſe radius is equal to the breadth of the door, its circumference will determine any opening that can be propoſed.

To deſcribe the ſemicircle proceed thus.—From the vaniſh-point *v* draw a line through *z*, the center of the book-caſe, and produce it at pleaſure; then from *d*, the vaniſhing point of any diagonal, draw a line through 12, cutting at C; from C draw a line to V; and from *v* draw a line through 12, cutting at K; and from K draw another diagonal to *d*, cutting at *w*; from *v* draw a line through *w*, cutting at E, and produced to Q, cutting a parallel from C; from 12 to E draw a diagonal, and if the door is intended to be opened 45 degrees more than ſquare, produce this diagonal, as ſhewn by the dotted line, till it cut the horizon, and its interſection with it will be the vaniſhing point for the top and bottom of the door. Divide C Q into ſeven equal parts, and from one of which at 7 direct a line to *m*, cutting at 13; and from 13 draw a viſual to *v*, cutting at 1; from 1 draw a viſual to V, cutting the other diagonal at 2; from 2 raiſe a perpendicular for the apparent breadth of the door in this poſition; and from the laſt mentioned vaniſhing point found by the dotted line, draw lines for the top and bottom of the door, by which it may be completed. For the ends of the cylinder we need not ſay any thing, as this is the ſame as in pro-

blem XXII. therefore we ſhall proceed with the cornice and pediment.

Set off the projection *q r* of the cornice at 6, 5, on a parallel line drawn at the full height of the book-caſe, and draw lines to *v*, and the line 5 will cut the perpendicular raiſed from X, and the line 6 will cut a perpendicular at 8, ſuppoſed to be raiſed from *t*, the miter point of the cornice, which is found by drawing a line from *d*, the vaniſhing point of the diagonal to X, cutting at *t*; from *t* direct a line to V, cutting at *a*; and from *a* raiſe a perpendicular, which will cut a line drawn from 8 to V, at the other miter point; every other part of the cornice muſt be finiſhed by the reader's judgment, governed by theſe principles, as it would be impoſſible to apply every rule in ſuch ſmall examples.

Laſtly, for the pitch of the pediment, a vaniſhing point muſt be found, according to the principles in Problem IX. Plate XVI. by drawing a line from *m* parallel to the pitch line at the elevation P, produced to V P, cutting a perpendicular from V; from 8 draw a line to V P, cutting a perpendicular in the center of the front edge of its cornice; from which draw the other ſide of the pediment, which, if produced, would cut a point as much below the horizon as V P is above it. Theſe pitch lines being found, the ſcroll pediment may be drawn by hand with

ſufficient accuracy; but if the pediment be a ſtraight pitch, then the lines for each moulding muſt tend to V P, and to a point as much below the horizon. And I would here obſerve, that in drawing after theſe examples, it is not intended that the diſtances made uſe of in them ſhould be a precedent to the learner. Theſe are choſen to ſuit the plate; but the learner having ſufficient room on his drawing-board, muſt chooſe his diſtance to give the moſt natural and pleaſing effect to his drawing, by the rules already laid down. See page 275.

In theſe examples almoſt every difficult part of perſpective is introduced, and it is preſumed that, after the learner has made himſelf fully maſter of them, nothing will occur in practice that can give him much trouble, eſpecially if he be properly acquainted with the ſhort theory that has been given. However I am fully perſuaded, that no cabinet-maker or upholſterer will ever want to practiſe more; and, if I am not miſtaken, there are but very few painters who are at the trouble of practiſing ſo much. But if the reader's profeſſion or neceſſities ſhould require him to extend his ſkill in this art further than what has been advanced in this treatiſe, I will freely refer him to Mr. Malton's complete Treatiſe, from which, it is here gratefully acknowledged, I have received conſiderable aſſiſtance.

SECTION

SECTION VI.

Containing a ſhort View of the Nature and Principles of Shadows, cauſed by the Sun coming in different Directions to the Picture; together with ſome Remarks on the Effect of Light and Shade in general.

WHAT has hitherto been done in the foregoing ſections is termed by artiſts linear perſpective, which propoſes rules for drawing the outlines of objects in every ſituation, proportioned one to another according to their magnitude and diſtance from the picture; but the ſubject of the preſent ſection is to propoſe rules for giving effect to theſe outlines, by the different circumſtances of light and ſhade. The mere outlines of a drawing is but as a ſkeleton without fleſh or life, but by the addition of proper light and ſhadow, we may almoſt behold nature in a picture: and that which before appeared flat and inſipid, now obtains the force and effect of the objects themſelves.

The doctrine of light and ſhadow may be conſidered under three heads. As,

Firſt, when the force of the ſun's rays fall on objects, and thereby produce a ſhadow ſtrongly defined.

Secondly,

Secondly, When the ſun is not ſuppoſed to ſhine, and the ſhadow is only produced by light ſimply conſidered, or by reflection.

Thirdly, When the light or ſhade of one object is proportioned with that of another at a greater diſtance in the ſame picture. This is termed the aerial part of perſpective, or the diminution of tints according to the diſtance of objects.

The firſt of theſe heads is, however, that which principally concerns us, it being reducible to ſtrict rules; the ſecond follows of courſe; and the laſt can only be learned by obſervation and practice.

In conſidering the ſhadows cauſed by the ſun's rays we may obſerve the following diſtinctions.

Firſt, When the ſun's rays are in the plane of the picture, or, which is the ſame thing, when they are conſidered parallel to it.

Secondly, When the rays come from behind the picture. And,

Thirdly, When they have their direction from the front of the picture.

CASE I. FIG. 42. Plate XXVI.

To project the Shadows of Objects in various Positions when the Sun's Rays are parallel to the Picture.

THE ſun, which is the great ſource of light, being at an immenſe diſtance from the earth, the rays of light iſſuing from it in right-lined directions, are conſidered as parallel to each other. The truth of this is proved by the parallel ſhadows which it always produces on a plane from objects which are parallel to each other and of equal thickneſs.

When, therefore, the rays are conſidered as parallel to the picture, the ſhadows of all objects are found by parallel lines paſſing by the angles of each object, and in ſuch a degree of inclination as the ſun is ſuppoſed to be in, either to the right or left of the center of the picture. Theſe lines, repreſenting the ſun's rays, being cut by lines from the baſes of each object drawn parallel to the ground-line, find every ſhadow in this caſe.

The learner will recollect, that in ſtating the theory of lines parallel to the picture in page 215, it is there ſaid, " Lines " which are parallel to the picture can have no vaniſhing line

or

" or point in it, becauſe if infinitely produced would never " cut it." The ſame holds good in the theory of ſhadows when the ſun's rays are parallel to the picture; for then they cannot cut it, and conſequently a vaniſhing point is not wanted in this caſe.

Hence the ſhadows of all lines perpendicular to the ground are drawn parallel to the ground line; and as, in perſpective, all lines perpendicular to the picture vaniſh into its center, ſo likewiſe the ſhadows of every ſuch line will tend to it. Therefore,

EXAMPLE I. Fig. 42.

SUPPOSE A to be the repreſentation of a wall perpendicular to the ground and to the picture, R R is a ray from the ſun inclining to the left in an angle of forty-five degrees, therefore the ſhadow 2, 3 of the perpendicular line 1, 2 is equal in length to the line itſelf. Draw the other ray *r r* parallel to R R, and the ſhadow *r o* will be equal to the height of the wall *o r*. The line 1 *r* is originally perpendicular to the picture, and vaniſhes in *s*, the center; ſo is its ſhadow 3 *r*, which likewiſe tends to it.

EXAMPLE II. Fig. 42.

SUPPOSE EB an object any where on the ground, whoſe ſides EB are oblique to the picture. Draw through each angle a ray *r r* parallel with R R the given one, and draw lines from the foot of each perpendicular, as 4, 6, parallel to the ground line, and their ſections with each other will form points for the outline of the ſhadow. Laſtly, from the point 5 draw a line to 7, and from 7 draw one to 8, and filling it up, the ſhadow will be completed.

Obſerve, the line 4, 9, and its parallels, are not perpendicular to the picture; therefore its ſhadow line 5 7 does not tend to ſ the center, but to the ſame vaniſhing point neceſſary for drawing the ſide B. In the ſame manner the ſhadow line 7 8 vaniſhes to the point requiſite for drawing the ſide E.

EXAMPLE III. Fig. 42.

LET D be an object having the ſide D inclined to the horizon, and the other ſides oblique to the picture. Draw a ray through *b*, and through *f* parallel to the given ray R R; from *g* the foot of *b*, and from *d* the foot of *f*, draw lines parallel to the

ground

ground line, which will interſect the rays at *a* and *c*. To complete the ſhadow, draw a line from the extremity of the inclined plane to *a*, and from *a* to *c*.

EXAMPLE IV. Fig. 42.

LET F be the ſtump of a column reſting on one end, whoſe ſhadow is required. Find the diameter of the column each way, both at top and bottom, as the figure ſhews; and through the extremities of theſe diameters draw parallel rays as before. Laſtly, from the foot of each perpendicular falling from the center and diameter, draw lines parallel to the ground line, cutting the rays at *v*, *w*, *x*; draw a curve to paſs through theſe three points, and the ſhadow will be projected.

Thus it is evident how eaſy a matter it is to project the ſhadow of any kind of object when the rays are parallel to the picture, and when the ſhadow is to fall on the ground plane, as in the foregoing examples.

It is, however, ſometimes neceſſary to project ſhadows falling on other objects contiguous to thoſe whoſe ſhadows are required. Therefore,

EXAMPLE I. Fig. 42.

SUPPOSE the object D ſtanding in the way of the ſhadow of A, a plane of rays paſſing by the end 1, 2 of the wall, will make a ſection of D at *t*, *i*, 3; which is found by drawing the line from 2 through to 3, and from 3, where it cuts the ray RR, raiſe a perpendicular to *i*, and from *i* draw a line to *t*, which will determine how far the ſhadow comes in front. Laſtly, the baſe line *t d*, of the object D, cuts a line from 3 at *e*; therefore, from *e* raiſe a perpendicular correſponding with 3 *i*, and from *i* draw a line to the aforeſaid perpendicular, and the ſhadow, ſo far as it affects the inclined plane D, will be found.

EXAMPLE II. Fig. 42.

SUPPOSE the object C near ſome inclined plane G, whoſe ſhadow falls upon it. To find the ſhadow, draw a line *h* to G, parallel to the ground line, at pleaſure; draw then a ray, as before, cutting at G, where the ſhadow would have terminated if the inclined plane had not been there; draw *m l* parallel to *n o*, cutting the ray at *p*; do the ſame at the other end, and the ſhadow will be completed.

Before I enter upon the other caſes of ſhadows, I would here remark, that this which has now been exemplified is, in my opinion, the moſt uſeful, as well as moſt eaſily practiſed. Particularly it is the moſt uſeful to the cabinet-maker and upholſterer, who only want it for ſhading different pieces of furniture; becauſe the ſhadows thus projected will be to the right or left of the piece, according as the light is ſuppoſed to come in; but in the two following caſes of the ſun's rays, the ſhadows will be projected either behind, or on the front of the piece of furniture, which ſituations of ſhadow are liable to the following objections.

Firſt, if the rays come from behind the picture, the front of the piece will be all in ſhadow, and conſequently the effect of diſtinctneſs of parts, which is always expected in furniture, will be deſtroyed.

Secondly, if the rays come on the front, then the ſhadow will be behind the piece, and therefore little or none of it will be ſeen, unleſs the point of light be taken very low, which is not very agreeable. Beſides, the light coming thus ſtrong on the piece, leaves a glare on the front that does not produce a pleaſing effect in furniture, nor ſufficiently diſtinguiſhes the front from the white ground of paper on which it is generally drawn.

Painters,

Painters, indeed, are ſaid to make this laſt-mentioned poſition of light to the picture their choice, becauſe, I ſuppoſe, it clears their picture from the appearance of long black ſhadows, which would frequently look too harſh, and introduce confuſion, as is the caſe when the light comes in from behind. Yet as every caſe of ſhadowing may be neceſſary at times, though not out of choice, I ſhall therefore proceed to the ſecond caſe propoſed.

CASE II. FIG. 43. Plate XXVI.

To project the Shadows of Objects when the Rays come in a Direction from behind the Picture.

WHEN a ray of light comes in a direction not parallel to the picture, it will neceſſarily cut it in ſome point in the horizontal line, or vaniſhing line of the ground plane; for the ſun being at an immenſe diſtance, and the plane of the horizon being conſidered as infinitely extended, we may ſuppoſe a perpendicular let fall from the place of the ſun will touch ſomewhere on the horizon. And hence, the point where it touches the horizon is the vaniſhing point of the ſhadows, and conſequently a line drawn through the ſaid point perpendicular to the horizon will be the vaniſhing line of the ſun's rays; and any where on this line, if a point be fixed according to the ſuppoſed

altitude of the ſun, it will be the vaniſhing point of thoſe rays.

Thus:—in Fig. 43, the center and diſtance of the picture remaining the ſame as when uſed for drawing the cube, let it be required to find its ſhadow when the ſun's inclination to the left is thirty-two degrees, and when its altitude is forty-five. From *d*, the diſtance, draw the line *d h*, inclining from the perpendicular *s d* in an angle of thirty-two degrees; and through *h* draw S S perpendicular to the horizon; then will S S be the vaniſhing line for the ſun's rays. Make *h* M equal *h d*, and from M draw M S, making an angle with the horizon equal to forty-five degrees; then will S above the horizon be the vaniſhing point of the rays when the ſun comes from behind the picture, and S below it will ſupply its place when the rays come on the front. From the vaniſhing point *h* of the ſhadow draw lines through the angles 1, 3, 8, of the cube; and from S draw lines through its upper angles 2, 4, 9, interſecting the lines drawn from *h* in the points 5, 6, 10; from the point 5 draw a line to 6, and from 6 a line to 10, which completes the ſhadow.

Obſervations on the Theory of the above Figure.

THE rays S 6 and S 10, forming a triangle, may be conſidered as a plane of rays paſſing by the angle 4, 9 of the cube, and

and being ſtopped on the ground plane at 6, 10, occaſions a ſhadow up to the cube, which ſhadow will vaniſh in the line 6, 10, to V; becauſe the angle or line 4, 9, which projected it, was drawn to, and vaniſhes in V; conſequently a line from V to S, the ſuppoſed place of the ſun, will be the vaniſhing line of the ſaid plane of rays. The ſhadow on the other ſide is compoſed of two lines, becauſe it is projected by two lines in different poſitions to each other. Thus the line 2, 4, originally parallel to the horizon and to the ground, projects the ſhadow line 5, 6 by the plane of rays 5, S, 6; which ſhadow line 5, 6 will vaniſh in V, becauſe the angle or line 2, 4 vaniſhes there. The ſhadow line 5, 1 is projected from the perpendicular line 1, 2 by the plane of rays 5, *h*, S, paſſing by the angle or perpendicular line 1, 2, and therefore the ſhadow line 5, 1 will vaniſh in *h*, the ſeat of the luminary on the picture; through which a line S S paſſing in a perpendicular direction to the horizon, anſwerable to the perpendicular ſides of the cube, is the vaniſhing line of the plane of rays 5, S, *h*, in the ſame manner, and for the ſame reaſon, as the horizontal *v* V is the vaniſhing line of the ſhadows of lines originally parallel to it. The vaniſhing line S S of the ſun's rays may be ſuppoſed to move along the horizon anſwerable to the ſun's inclination to the right or left of the center of the picture *s*, whether the ſun be ſuppoſed on this or that ſide of the picture, or, as we conceive of it by the figure, whether it be above or below the horizon. Hence, if a plane

of

of rays be ſuppoſed to come from behind the picture, in a direction perpendicular to it, the place of the ſun will be ſomewhere on a perpendicular line drawn through the center of the picture, as S *d*. And this place of the ſun, or, which is the ſame thing, the vaniſhing point S, of its rays, will be above or below the horizon, according to the ſuppoſed altitude of the ſun. If, therefore, we imagine the ſun's altitude to be as before, its place will be at *d* when the ſun is behind the picture, and at S when it is before it; and the vaniſhing point of the ſhadow will be at *s*, the center of the picture. This is evident, for the angle V, *d*, *s*, is the ſame and equal to M, S, *b*. In both caſes the lines *b* S, *o d*, of the angles of the ſun's altitude are the ſame, being equal to the diſtance *s* V of the picture: for, in the ſhadow of the cube, when the plane of rays from behind the picture cut it in the oblique direction of the line *d b*, the line *d b* is then conſidered as the diſtance of the picture, and being turned up to S, is equal to the diſtance of the place of the ſun above the horizon. And ſuppoſe the rays to come to the picture in the direction of *d v*, then *b* would be moved to *v*, and *v d* would be equal to the diſtance of the picture; and being turned up to *v* S, S would then be the place of the ſun, or the vaniſhing point of its rays, and *v* the vaniſhing point both of the ſhadow and ſide of the cube 2, 4. In which caſe we ſhould only have the ſhadow of the ſide 4, 9, 3, 8.

It is further obſervable, that as the ſun may be ſuppoſed to move in a circle, and if that circle be deſcribed by a radius equal to the diſtance of the picture, we may ſhow the different ſhadows of the ſun upon objects at the various times of the day.

Thus:—in Fig. 44, ſuppoſe a line drawn from E W forming the horizon; from the center *s* deſcribe a circle with the diſtance of the picture, and through *s* draw a line perpendicular to the horizon, and M will be the place of the ſun at noon. Now let it be required to find the morning ſhadow of the rod *a* when the ſun has riſen 40 degrees above the horizon, as at 40° S. From 40° S let fall a perpendicular to the horizon at *b*, and draw it through to the other ſemicircle; from *b*, the vaniſhing point of the ſhadow, draw lines paſſing by the bottom of the rod at pleaſure; and from 40° S, the place of the ſun, draw a ray through *a*, the top of the rod, cutting at 1; which ſhews the length of the ſhadow required. Suppoſe the ſhadow of the ſame rod be wanted at noon, *s* will then be the vaniſhing point of the ſhadow, and M the vaniſhing point of the ſun's rays, and the length of the ſhadow will be at 5. Again, if it be required to find the ſhadow of the ſame rod after the ſun has paſſed the meridian 50 degrees, this will bring the ſun to the ſame degree in the afternoon as it was in the morning; and by drawing lines

in

in the ſame manner as in the morning, the ſhadow in the afternoon will be at 2.

Now, if the ſun be conſidered on this ſide the picture, the ſhadows of the ſame rod *a*, at theſe different periods of the day, will be reſpectively beyond the rod at 3, 4, 6, towards the horizon; which is done by tranſprojecting the place of the ſun to S M S, and drawing rays from the top of the rod to each place of the ſun. Thus: from *a* draw the dotted line to S on the left, cutting at 3, and 3 will be the length of the morning ſhadow; and from *a* draw the dotted line to S on the right, cutting at 4, which will be the evening ſhadow. Laſtly, a dotted line from *a* to M, cutting at 6, will be the ſhadow at noon, which is hardly ſeen on the picture. Thus we ſee that the ſhadows of a morning or evening view are long, tending oppoſite ways; and thoſe of a view repreſenting noon-day are ſhort, tending from ſouth to north, nearly ſo. But if we lived in a meridian on the line, then it is evident that at noon there would not be the leaſt ſhadow of objects of equal thickneſs ſtanding perpendicular on the ground: for, ſuppoſe the rod *a* moved into the line M M, then the object would be in the ſame plane with the rays of the ſun; and being directly under it, of courſe all ſhadow would be excluded excepting ſuſpending objects, as No. 2, and thoſe ſupported like tables; in which caſe the rays *r r* falling perpendicular to the

ground, and parallel to each other, on account of the ſun's great diſtance, they would form a cylinder, of which the ſhadow would be a parallel ſection, and therefore muſt be perfectly ſimilar to the object itſelf, both in magnitude and form, as muſt be evident from the figure, and a little reflection on the foregoing principles.

CASE III.

To find the projections of Shadows when the Sun's Rays come on the Front of the Picture.

HAVING already explained the theory of this in what has now been advanced, it remains only to give an example or two to illuſtrate it.

EXAMPLE I. FIG. 45. Plate XXVI.

When the Shadow falls on the Ground.

IN Fig. 45, A is a priſm whoſe ſhadow is projected by the ſun as above propoſed, *h* is the vaniſhing point of the ſhadow, *v* of the ſide of the cube, and S of the rays. Therefore from the angles 1, 2, 3, draw lines to *h*; and from 4, 5, 6, at the top, correſponding with theſe, draw lines to S, cutting at 9, *c*, *b*;

from *b* draw a line to *c*, and from *c* to 9, which, when filled up, will complete the ſhadow.

Example II. Fig. 46. Plate XXVI.

When the Shadow falls at the ſame Time on upright, oblique, and horizontal Planes.

This figure having the moſt neceſſary lines for repreſenting the two houſes, as well as for finding the ſhadow of one houſe falling upon the other, may be conſidered as an example both of perſpective and of ſhadow. And as the lines for both are here joined together in one view, it will ſhew their relation, and the neceſſary dependence they have on each other; which, it is preſumed, will contribute more to the learner's advantage, than if many examples of ſhadowing had been added without regard to the perſpective lines.

The horizon and ground line being drawn, fix the center of the picture as uſual; from which raiſe a perpendicular as to *d*. Make *d* the diſtance of the picture, and, according to the obliquity ſuitable for the front of the houſe, draw a line to V, for one vaniſhing point; next draw V *d*, and from *d* draw a line to *v*, at right angles with V *d*; becauſe the end and front of the houſe are originally at right angles to each other. Make *v* M equal to *v d*, and whatever angle the pitch of the roof makes,

produce

produce a line from M equal to that angle, continued till it cut a line perpendicular to *v*, as at V; then is V the vaniſhing point for the ſide of the roof of both houſes, and a line from V to V will be the vaniſhing line of the plane which the roof is in, and H will be the vaniſhing point of ſhadows lying in the ſaid plane; and producing V V at pleaſure, and meeting it in *o* at Fig. 44, by a parallel from S, *o* will be the vaniſhing point of the ſun's rays on that plane. Extend the compaſſes from V to *v*, and place it below the horizon, and that point will ſerve for the other ſide of both roofs. The houſes being completed in their outlines, according to theſe vaniſhing points, proceed to ſhade them upon a ſuppoſition that the light comes on in the front of the picture, and in a direction from the left hand parallel to the dotted line *d h*. Therefore the point *h* will be the vaniſhing point of the ſhadows falling upon the ground plane, and producing *h* perpendicular to the vaniſhing line V V, H will be the vaniſhing point as aforeſaid. The place of the ſun S is fixed very low, not as a precedent, but that it might throw the ſhadow of the firſt houſe on the ſecond, affording an occaſion of ſhewing the nature of ſuch ſhadows.

From *g*, the pitch of the roof on the gable-end, draw a line to S; and from *a* draw a line to *h*, which will cut the front of the other houſe at *o*; from *o* raiſe a perpendicular, cutting the line drawn from *g* to *h* in *e*; from *e* direct a line to V, the vaniſhing

niſhing point for the fronts of each houſe, which gives the ſhadow for the roof. From the tops of each chimney draw lines to S, and obſerve that the ſhadow of the firſt chimney falls partly on the roof, becauſe the ray drawn to S cuts the roof; and that ray muſt be cut again, by drawing a line from the top of the perpendicular ſhadow *o e* to H, the vaniſhing point of ſuch ſhadows as fall on the roof, and from the top of the ſhadow on the roof direct a line to *o*, in Fig. 44, which gives the complete ſhadow of the chimney. Laſtly, from *b*, at the bottom of the ſecond houſe, draw a line to *b*; and cut that line by two others, one from the top of the chimney, and another from the pitch of the roof, as before; from theſe interſections draw lines to V, the vaniſhing point of the houſe, and the ſhadows will be finiſhed.

Of Shadows when the Sun is not ſuppoſed to ſhine, or thoſe produced by common Light.

AFTER what has been ſaid on ſhadows produced by the ſun, it will not be requiſite to ſay much on this head. It will, however, admit of a few remarks.

And firſt, ſuppoſe an object *a*, *b*, *c*, Fig. 47, placed to the light, and conſider the parallel lines as rays of common light falling on it; for common light directs its courſe to objects

jects in this manner. Now it is evident, therefore, that the ſide or plane *a* will have moſt of the light, becauſe the rays fall nearly perpendicular on it, which conſequently excludes all ſhadow; but the plane or ſide *b* receives the ſaid rays obliquely, and in proportion thereto occaſions a ſhadow, becauſe the light partly miſſes the ſurface. The plane *e* is totally in ſhadow, becauſe the ray *r* cannot touch that ſurface.

Secondly, in ſhadows of this kind the contraſt of light and ſhade is not ſo ſtrong as when the ſun's rays fall on objects; the light is not ſo glaring, nor the ſhadows ſo black. The outlines of ſuch ſhadows ought not to be ſtrongly defined, but faint, and ſometimes indiſtinct, eſpecially when the light is ſuppoſed to come from different apertures.

Laſtly, ſuch objects as are ſuppoſed to be viewed in a room have their upper parts lighteſt; but the lighteſt parts will bear a tint, and ſometimes conſiderable, ſo that there will not be much oppoſition of light and ſhade in their different ſurfaces.

It is requiſite to conſider the natural colours of objects, in order to fix the tone and true ſcale of light ſuitable to them *. The lighteſt part of an object that is of itſelf black, would be

* This is alſo neceſſary when the ſun is ſuppoſed to ſhine.

a ſhade

a ſhade to one that is white, and therefore, in producing a ſhadow to any thing black or blue, it will require all the force and ſtrength of the Indian ink. The other colours, as green and yellow, &c. will alſo require a due degree of light and ſhade to diſtinguiſh them by.

Mr. Kirby conſiders the colours receding from white to black in the following order: *i. e.* yellow after white, then green, red, blue, and black, ſucceſſively. It is difficult, however, to diſtinguiſh ſome of theſe by the effect of Indian ink, yet it is evident ſomething may be done towards it. Thus: the cube W is ſuppoſed to be white, Y yellow, G green, R red, B blue, and BL black *.

Of the Proportion of Tints ſuited to Objects at different Diſtances in the ſame Picture. See a View, Plate XXVI.

It is evident, from the nature of perſpective in general, that not only the proper dimenſions of objects, but alſo the degree of tint, is eſſential in making them appear at different diſ-

* This is not the order of the ſimple colours, according to Sir Iſaac Newton's theory of their origin. His theory informs us, that when the rays of light are ſeparated by the refraction of a priſm, the firſt will be red, then orange, yellow, green, blue, indico, and violet, ſucceſſively. See his Optics, Book I. Prop. 6. According to this, white is not a ſimple colour, but a compound or mixture of all that are ſimple, and black a total privation of every colour.

tances. For, as in linear perſpective, objects are viewed under a ſmaller angle in proportion as they are at a diſtance, ſo in the aerial part every tint and ſhadow gradually weakens as the object is ſituated at a diſtance from the front of the picture. The reaſon of this is obvious, when it is admitted that we are made to ſee objects by innumerable beams of light iſſuing from them to the eye. It is eaſy then to conceive, that when theſe beams or rays of light have to make their way through the air from diſtant parts of the horizon to the eye, they muſt greatly weaken before their arrival to it, and therefore ſuch diſtant objects muſt appear leſs diſtinct and more dim in proportion to that diſtance. Hence, in a picture, as in the view given in Plate XXVI. objects on the fore ground are not only larger, but they are more made out, more diſtinct, and ſtrongly marked. Their lights are brighter, and their ſhades are darker, than thoſe on the back ground. This will, perhaps, be more eaſily underſtood by the following obſervations on the view.

The tree on the left is neareſt to the eye of the ſpectator, and is therefore moſt made out; its leaves are ſeen in cluſters, and its ſhade is ſtrong.

The firſt tree on the right, being further back, is leſs diſtinct in its parts, and rather fainter in its ſhadows; and ſo of the reſt in proportion to their diſtance.

With

With reſpect to the houſes, we ſee the ſecond weaker in its parts, and its ſhadow, partly on the water and on the ground, fainter than that of the firſt. The laſt houſe being at a vaſt diſtance, appears as one maſs without diſtinction of parts; and thus objects diminiſh off till they and the horizon on which they ſtand mix with the ſky.

Of the reflected Images of Objects on Water.

To aſcertain the reflected images of objects on water is exceeding eaſy, and very eſſential to ſome pictures. It is a law in catoptrics*, that the angle of reflection is always equal to the angle of incidence †.

The angle of incidence and reflection may be thus underſtood and diſtinguiſhed. The inclined poſt, and its ſhadow on the water, form an angle with each other; and at the bottom of the poſt, where the line of reflection on the water and the line

* Catoptrics, from κατοπτρον, *katoptron*, a mirror or looking-glaſs. Catoptrics teach the ſcience of reflex viſion, and optics that of direct viſion, though in the general and extenſive meaning of the term optics, "from οπτομαι, *optomai*, I ſee," it includes in it "whatever relates to ſight, or the doctrine of viſion;" and therefore muſt imply dioptrics alſo, which teaches the properties of refracted viſion; that is, when rays of light paſs through one medium into another, as air and water.

† See ſecond axiom of Sir Iſaac Newton's Optics.

of incident rays from the poſt meet, that point is termed the point of incidence; and if from the top of the poſt a perpendicular be let fall, it will form a triangle; and if that triangle be biſected; that is, by drawing a parallel line from the point of incidence *b*, cutting the perpendicular at *c*, then the angle *c*, *a*, *b*, is the angle of incidence, and *c*, *d*, *b*, the angle of reflection, which are equal. Therefore if an object be perpendicular to the horizon, its reflected image on water will alſo be perpendicular, but in an inverted poſition to the object which reflects the image. And whatever angle of obliquity any object makes with the ground, the ſame will be its reflection to the ſurface of the water.

The reflections of images on water are the ſame as thoſe in a plain mirror. The ſurface of the mirror or looking-glaſs is the plane of reflection; and it is evident, that in whatever poſition any object is preſented to it, the ſame will be that of its reflection on the ſaid plane. If a rod, &c. be placed perpendicular to the mirror, its reflected image will be perpendicular to it alſo. And if one end of it touch the glaſs, its image will alſo appear to touch the ſurface of it; or if it is withdrawn, its image will appear equally removed from the reflecting plane. This experiment is within the reach of every one, and will be ſufficient to convince any of the truth of the above propoſition.

EXAMPLE

EXAMPLE I. See the View, Plate XXVI.

IF, therefore, the reflection of the inclined poſt be wanted, let fall a perpendicular at pleaſure, and cut that perpendicular by a line drawn from the bottom of the poſt inclining to the ſaid perpendicular in an angle equal to the object, and it will give the length and inclination of the reflected image. And obſerve, that the length of the reflection on the water will be in proportion to the diſtance of the object from it; conſequently if the poſt were removed a little further from the edge of the water, we ſhould loſe its reflection entirely.

EXAMPLE II.

IF it be required to find the reflection of any of the trees ſuppoſed to ſtand nearly perperdicular, let fall a perpendicular from the bottom of it, and take the whole height of the tree and place it downwards from the bottom of it, then take the length of the trunk and do likewiſe, which will give the reflection as required.

Laſtly,

Laſtly, it is manifeſt from theſe principles, that if any object be floating in the water, ſuch as a piece of timber or a ſhip, that its reflected image will be equal in length to the object itſelf, and the depth of the reflection below the ſurface of the water will be equal to the height of the object above it.

END OF THE SECOND PART.

THE

Fig. 41.

How to put a Cylinder Desk and Bookcase in perspective being oblique to the picture

See expl. in p. 321.

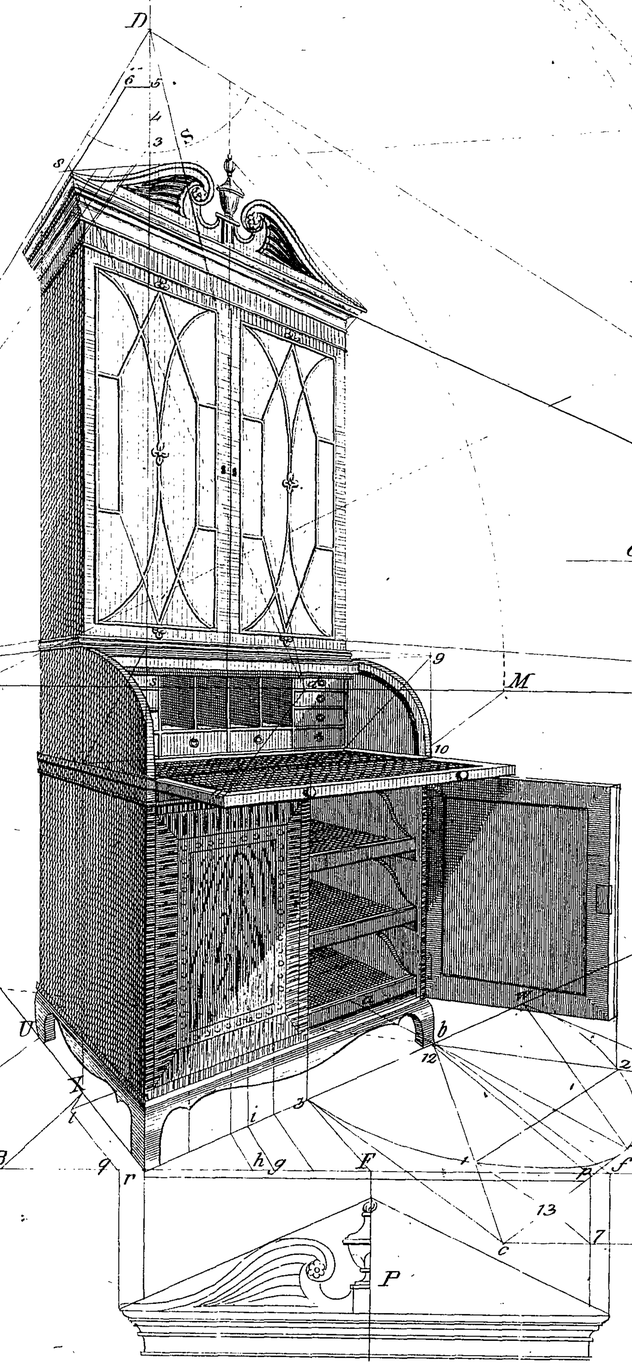
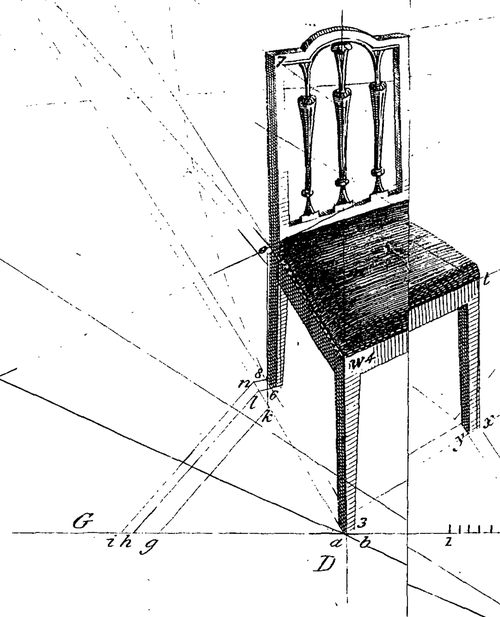


Fig. 40.

An obl. view of a chair

See p.



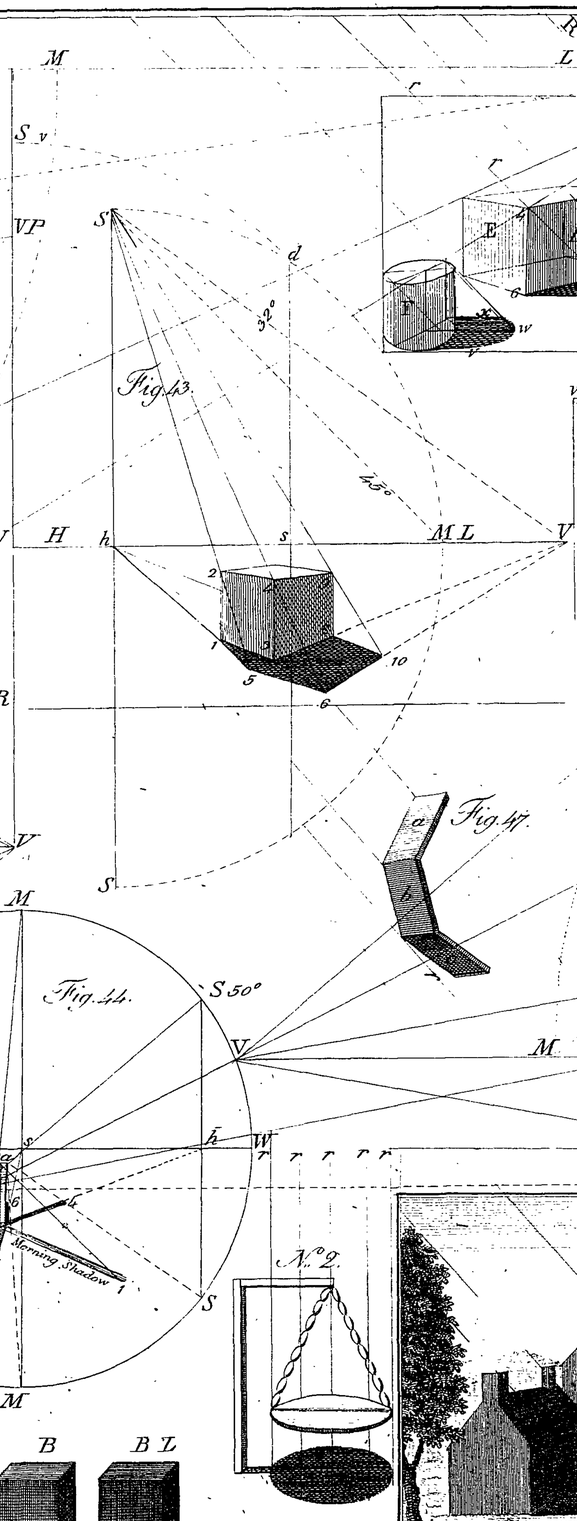


Fig. 43.

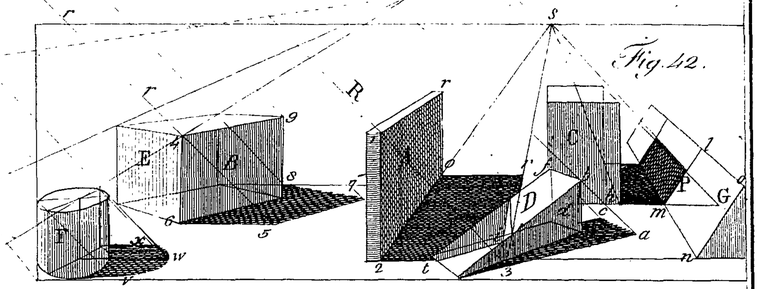


Fig. 42.

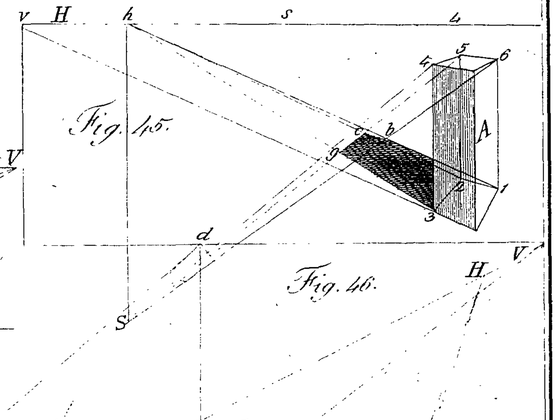


Fig. 45.

Fig. 46.

Fig. 44.

Fig. 47.

T. Sheraton, del.

Published as the Act directs by T. Sheraton Nov.r 20.th 1792.

Barlow. sculp.

THE

CABINET-MAKER AND UPHOLSTERER'S

DRAWING-BOOK.

PART III.

CONTAINING A DESCRIPTION OF THE SEVERAL PIECES OF FURNITURE. I. OF THE USE AND STYLE OF FINISHING EACH PIECE. 2. GENERAL REMARKS ON THE MANUFACTURING PART OF SUCH PIECES AS MAY REQUIRE IT. 3. AN EXPLANATION OF THE PERSPECTIVE LINES WHERE THEY ARE INTRODUCED. TO WHICH IS ADDED, A CORRECT AND QUICK METHOD OF CONTRACTING AND ENLARGING CORNICES OR OTHER MOULDINGS OF ANY GIVEN PATTERN.

INTRODUCTION.

THE deſign of this Part of the Book is intended to exhibit the preſent taſte of furniture, and at the ſame time to give the workman ſome aſſiſtance in the manufacturing part of it.

I am ſenſible, however, that ſeveral perſons who have already encouraged the work, will not want any help of this

nature; but it is preſumed many will who are not much converſant in the buſineſs, and who have had no opportunity of ſeeing good pieces of furniture executed.

For the advantage of ſuch, it is hoped that the experienced workman will exerciſe candour and patience in reading the inſtructions intended, not for himſelf, but for thoſe now mentioned.

There are few but what may, with propriety, reflect on their own paſt ignorance, even in things which afterwards become exceeding ſimple and eaſy by a little practice and experience. Such a reflection ought, therefore, to promote both candour and good nature in the minds of proficients, when they read the documents neceſſary to young beginners. And yet, I hope, it may be ſaid, without arrogance, that it is probable the experienced workman may derive ſome information from the ſubſequent remarks, when it is conſidered that they are made not merely from the knowledge and experience I have myſelf of the buſineſs, but from that of other good workmen.

In converſing with cabinet-makers, I find no one individual equally experienced in every job of work. There are certain pieces made in one ſhop which are not manufactured in another, on which account the beſt of workmen are ſometimes

ſtrangers

ſtrangers to particular pieces of furniture. For this reaſon I have made it my buſineſs to apply to the beſt workmen in different ſhops, to obtain their aſſiſtance in the explanation of ſuch pieces as they have been moſt acquainted with. And, in general, my requeſt has been complied with, from the generous motive of making the book as generally uſeful as poſſible.

The methods therefore propoſed, and the remarks made, may be depended on by thoſe who have not yet had an opportunity of ſeeing the different pieces executed.

This is an attempt which has not yet been made in any book of cabinet deſigns, except a very few ſlight hints; and, though it muſt be acknowledged by every impartial mind as highly uſeful, and even in ſome caſes abſolutely neceſſary, yet I am apprehenſive it will not meet with the approbation of thoſe who wiſh to hoard up their own knowledge to themſelves, leſt any ſhould ſhare in the advantage ariſing from it. In ſome inſtances it may be neceſſary for a man to keep knowledge to himſelf, as his own property, and upon which his bread may depend; but I do not ſee any impropriety in perſons of the ſame branch informing each other. In trades where their arts depend on ſecrets, it is right for men to keep them from ſtrangers; but the art of cabinet-making depends ſo much on practice, and requires ſo many tools, that a ſtranger cannot

ſteal it. But in every branch there are found men who love to keep their inferiors of the ſame profeſſion in ignorance, that themſelves may have an opportunity of triumphing over them. From ſuch I expect no praiſe, but the reverſe. Their pride will not ſuffer them to encourage any work which tends to make others as wiſe as themſelves; and therefore it is their fixed reſolution to deſpiſe and pour contempt upon every attempt of this kind, in proportion as it is likely to ſucceed. But thoſe I will leave to themſelves as unworthy of notice, who only live to love themſelves, but not to aſſiſt others.

Here I would beg leave to obſerve, that it is natural for every man under a heavy burden to pour out his complaint to the firſt ſympathizing friend he meets with. If the reader be one of theſe, I will pour out mine, by informing him of the difficult taſk I have had to pleaſe all, and to ſuit the various motives which different perſons have for encouraging a publication like this.

I find ſome have expected ſuch deſigns as never were ſeen, heard of, nor conceived in the imagination of man; whilſt others have wanted them to ſuit a broker's ſhop, to ſave them the trouble of borrowing a baſon-ſtand to ſhew to a cuſtomer. Some have expected it to furniſh a country wareroom, to avoid the expence of making up a good bureau, and double cheſt of drawers,

drawers, with canted corners, &c. and though it is difficult to conceive how theſe different qualities could be united in a book of ſo ſmall a compaſs, yet, according to ſome reports, the broker himſelf may find his account in it, and the country maſter will not be altogether diſappointed; whilſt others ſay many of the deſigns are rather calculated to ſhew what may be done, than to exhibit what is or has been done in the trade. According to this, the deſigns turn out to be on a more general plan than what I intended them, and anſwer, beyond my expectation, the above various deſcriptions of ſubſcribers. However, to be ſerious, it was my firſt plan, and has been my aim through the whole, to make the book in general as permanently uſeful as I could, and to unite with uſefulneſs the taſte of the times; but I could never expect to pleaſe all in ſo narrow a compaſs: for to do this, it would be neceſſary to compoſe an entire book for each claſs of ſubſcribers, and after all there would be ſomething wanting ſtill.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE SEVERAL PIECES OF FURNITURE.

Of the Univerſal Table. Plate XXV. *of the Cabinet Deſigns.*

THE uſe of this piece is both to anſwer the purpoſe of a breakfaſt and a dining-table. When both the leaves are ſlipped under the bed, it will then ſerve as a breakfaſt-table; when one leaf is out, as in this view, it will accommodate five perſons as a dining-table; and if both are out, it will admit of eight, being near ſeven feet long, and three feet ſix inches in width.

The drawer is divided into ſix boxes at each ſide, as in the plan, and are found uſeful for different ſorts of tea and ſugar, and ſometimes for notes, or the like. In this drawer is a ſlider lined with green cloth to write on. The ſtyle of finiſhing them is plain and ſimple, with ſtraight tapered legs, ſocket caſtors, and an aſtrugal round the frame.

Of the manufacturing Part.

This table ſhould be made of particularly good and well-ſeaſoned mahogany, as a great deal depends upon its not being

liable to caſt. In the beſt kind of theſe tables the tops are framed and pannelled; the bed into two pannels, and the flaps each into one, with a white ſtring round each pannel to hide the joint. The framing is three inches broad, and mitered at the corners; and the pannels are ſometimes glued up in three thickneſſes, the middle piece being laid with the grain acroſs, and the other two lengthways of the pannel, to prevent its warping. The pannels are, however, often put in of ſolid ſtuff, without this kind of gluing.

When the pannels are tongued into the framing, and the miters are fitted to, the tops ſhould ſtand to ſhrink as much as poſſible before they are glued for good. There are different methods of ſecuring the miters of the framing. Some make ſimply a ſtraight miter, which they can ſhoot with a plane; after which they put a couple of wooden pins in. Others, again, having fitted the miters to by a plane, they ſlip in a tenon. But the ſtrongeſt method is to mortice and tenon the miters together, having a ſquare joint at the under, and a miter joint at the upper ſide. This method, however, is the moſt tedious of the three, and where the price will not allow of much time, the above methods are more ready, and, if managed with care, are ſufficiently ſtrong. In gluing the miters, it will be proper, firſt, to glue on the outſide of each miter a piece of deal in the ſhape of a wedge, which will take a hand-ſcrew, ſo that when they

they are putting together, the glue may be brought out, and the miters made clofe.

The frame, as fhewn in the plan, is made exactly fquare, either of faulty mahogany, or of wainfcot veneered. In making this frame a box is formed at each end, about three inches in width, containing two fliders apiece, which run paft each other in the faid box, as fhewn in the plan. In the bottom of each box are put two pieces, with plough grooves in them, and raking contrary to each other. In the line N O, on thofe raking pieces the fliders run, and are ftopped from coming too far out by a pin fixed in the under edge of the flider; which pin runs in the plough grooves already mentioned, denoted in the plan by a dark line. The raking line of the fliders is found by taking the width of the flap, as from S to M, and making the line incline in that width equal to the thickneſs of the flap. This may be eafily underftood, by placing a rule from the outer point M of the flap, to S the inner point, which then will be parallel to the raking line. The fliding pieces being in a right line their whole length at the under edge, of courfe their upper edge muft be bevelled off, fo that when they are drawn fully out, they may be even, and in an exact line with the top of the frame.

The frame and tops being thus prepared, they are connected together by an iron fcrew and nut, as at A, which is about

about the ſubſtance of a bed-ſcrew. This ſcrew is jointed into a plate, which plate is let into the under ſide of the bed, level with it; though I have deſcribed it at A with its thickneſs out, merely that the plate might be ſhewn. At B the bed A is repreſented on the frame, and the iron ſcrew paſſing through the rail of the table, is confined to its place by the nut, which is let into the under edge of the rail by a center-bit. And obſerve, in making this center-bit hole for the nut, it muſt be ſunk deeper than its thickneſs, that the bed may have liberty to riſe a little, and ſo give place to the flaps when they are wanted to be puſhed in. It muſt be noticed alſo, from the plan of the frame, that there is a middle piece, about five inches broad, and of equal thickneſs with the flaps, ſcrewed down to the frame with four ſcrews at each end. This middle piece anſwers three purpoſes; it ſecures the frame, ſtops the flaps when they are puſhed in, and prevents the ſliding pieces from tilting.

Before the bed is finally fixed to its place, there muſt be four pieces of green cloth let into the under ſide of it, to prevent the flaps from rubbing as they ſlide under. Upon the edges of the flaps a hollow is worked all round, leaving a quarter of an inch ſquare, for no other purpoſe than to take off the clumſy appearance of the two thickneſſes when the flaps are

under

under the bed. At the under ſide of the flaps muſt be goged out finger-holes, to draw them out by.

The drawer is next to be conſidered, which is ſometimes made with two fronts, and to draw out both ways, as in the plan. On each front of the drawer is a lock, for the convenience of ſecuring it at either end; for in caſe one flap be drawn out, then the drawer can be locked or pulled out at the contrary front, without the trouble of puſhing the flap in to come at the drawer.

The covers of each box before mentioned, may have an oval of dark wood, and the alphabet cut out of ivory or white wood let into them, as in the plan; or they may be white ovals and black letters; the uſe of which is to diſtinguiſh the contents of each box.

Laſtly, the ſlider to write on is made exactly half the inſide length of the drawer; ſo that when it is puſhed home to either front, there is immediate acceſs to ſix of the boxes.

And here I would obſerve, that ſometimes the flaps of theſe tables have round corners, but they do not anſwer the bed ſo well when they are in. And, to ſave expence, the tops have been found to anſwer the purpoſe in ſolid wood, without being framed.

framed. When they are made in this manner, particular regard ſhould be had to placing the heart ſide of the wood outward, which naturally draws round of itſelf, and may therefore be expected to keep true, notwithſtanding its unfavourable ſituation.

N. B. The heart ſide of a board is eaſily known by planing the end, and obſerving the circular traces of the grain, which always tend outwards.

The Perſpective Lines explained.

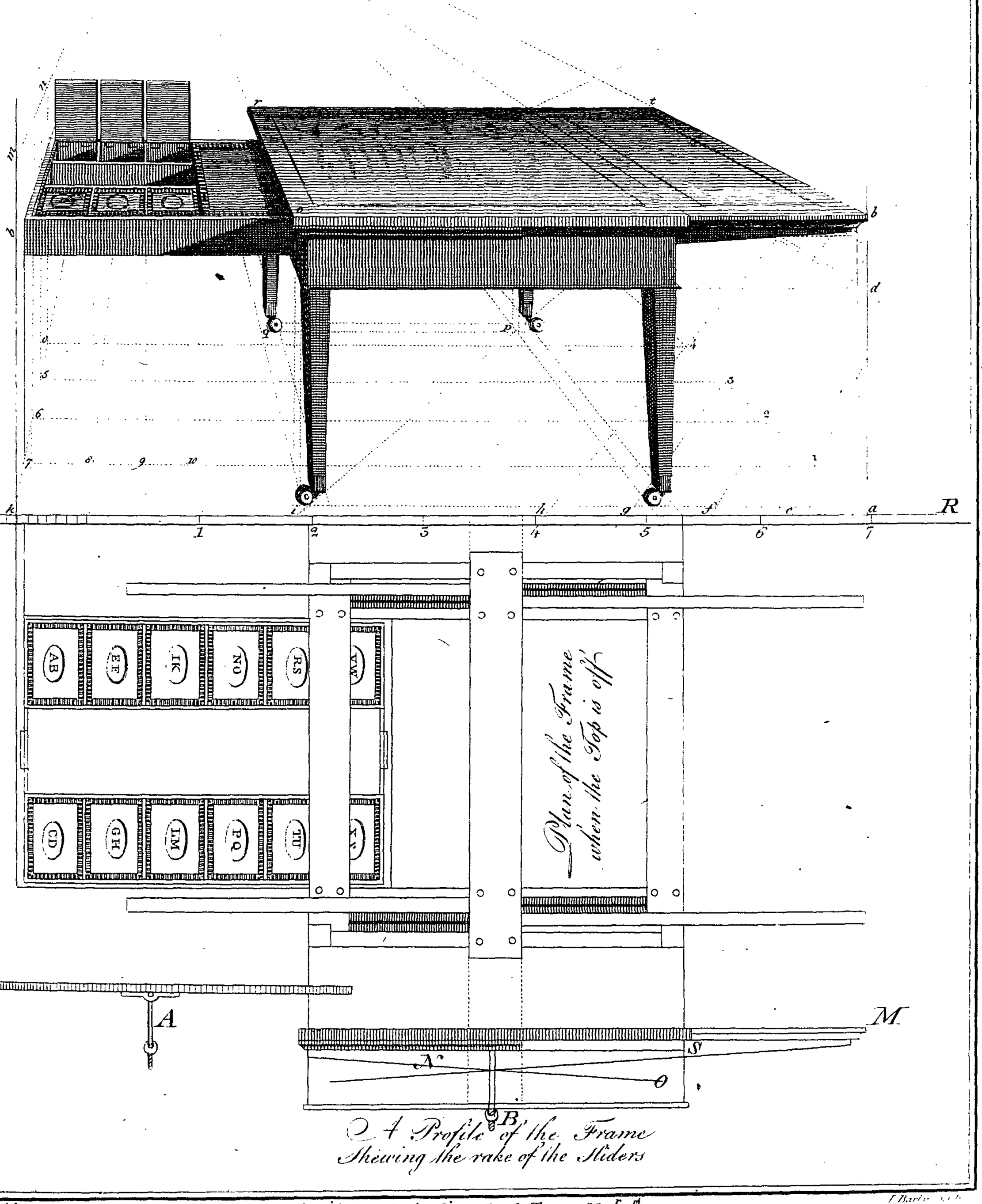
In making deſigns in perſpective, the firſt thing to be attended to is the ſcale of feet and inches, by which to proportion the different parts to each other, to determine the height of the horizon, and the diſtance of the picture.

Having made the ſcale, take from it about five feet ſix for the height of the horizon at H L. On this line place the point of ſight, ſo as to give the moſt favourable view of the deſign, as at *s*. Next lay on the diſtance, which is here out of the plate, and being equal to the ſpace *s a*, agrees to the rule for chooſing a diſtance contained in page 281. Draw *a b* perpendicular to the ground line, and from *a* draw a line to the point of ſight *s*.

Next conſider how much the top projects over the frame, and as much as this is, lay it from *a* towards *e*, as the firſt line ſhews, which is directed to the point of diſtance. Where this cuts the aforeſaid line drawn to *s*, raiſe a perpendicular anſwering to *a b*. From *b* lay on the ſpace *b d*, for the depth of the framing; and from *d* draw a line as before to *s*; and from where the line cuts the ſecond perpendicular, draw a parallel for the under edge of the framing. On a parallel line from *b*, lay on the dimenſions of the bed and flap; and from theſe draw lines to *s*, as the deſign ſhews. Now, as the bed of the table is ſquare, nothing more is wanted to find its apparent width than to draw a line from *o* to the diſtance which cuts at the oppoſite angle; and through this angle draw *r t* parallel, which completes the out-line of the top.

To find the place of the drawer and the boxes in it, proceed thus.—On the ground line make *a e* equal to the whole ſpace, from the drawer in the plan to the projection of the middle piece acroſs the frame. Alſo make *e b* the whole length of the drawer, and *g f* the diviſions for the boxes. From each of which draw lines to the diſtance, cutting at 1, 2, 3, 4; from which draw parallels to 7, 6, 5, 8. Again, from 7 raiſe a perpendicular, and make *k b*, on *k m*, equal to the height of the drawer; from *b* draw a line to *s*; and from *m*, the height of the covers of each box, do the ſame. Laſtly, from 6, 5, &c.

A Universal Table



A Profile of the Frame shewing the rake of the Sliders

T. Sheraton del.

Published as the Act directs by G. Terry Nov.r 18.th 1791.

I Barlow sc.

raiſe perpendiculars, which will cut *b s* in the place for the boxes, and at *n* for the height of the covers. How every other thing is done, muſt be obvious from inſpection.

Of the Sideboard Tables, Plate XXVI. *and* XXIX. *and of Tables of this Kind in general.*

The ſideboard in Plate XXVI. has a braſs rod to it, which is uſed to ſet large diſhes againſt, and to ſupport a couple of candle or lamp branches in the middle, which, when lighted, give a very brillant effect to the ſilver ware. The branches are each of them fixed in one ſocket, which ſlides up and down on the ſame rod to any height, and fixed any where by turning a ſcrew. Theſe rods have ſometimes returns at each end of the ſideboard; and ſometimes they are made ſtraight, the whole length of the ſideboard, and have a narrow ſhelf in the middle, made of full half-inch mahogany, for the purpoſe of ſetting ſmaller diſhes on, and ſometimes ſmall ſilver ware.

The right-hand drawer, as in common, contains the celleret, which is often made to draw out ſeparate from the reſt. It is partitioned and lined with lead, to hold nine or ten wine bottles, as in Plate XXIX.

The drawer on the left is generally plain, but ſometimes divided into two; the back diviſion being lined with baize to hold plates, having a cover hinged to encloſe the whole. The front diviſion is lined with lead, ſo that it may hold water to waſh glaſſes; which may be made to take out, or have a plug-hole to let off the dirty water. This left-hand drawer is, however, ſometimes made very ſhort, to give place to a pot-cupboard behind, which opens by a door at the end of the ſideboard. This door is made to hide itſelf in the end rail as much as poſſible, both for look and ſecrecy. For which reaſon a turn-buckle is not uſed, but a thumb-ſpring, which catches at the bottom of the door, and has a communication through the rail, ſo that by a touch of the finger the door flies open, owing to the reſiſtance of a common ſpring fixed to the rabbet which the door falls againſt, as is denoted by the figure A. F is for the finger, B is the braſs plate let into the rail, L is the lever, *p* is the ſpring that preſſes the lever upwards, and *c* is the end of it which catches the under edge of the door as it paſſes over it and ſtrikes into a plate with a hole in it, and *s* is the ſpring ſcrewed to the rabbet which throws the door out when F is puſhed upwards.

But the reader muſt here obſerve, that the ſhape of this ſideboard will not admit of a cupboard of this ſort in the end rail.

rail. Thoſe which are ſquare at the ends, and only a little ſhaped in front, are fitteſt for this purpoſe.

In large circular ſideboards, the left-hand drawer has ſometimes been fitted up as a plate-warmer, having a rack in the middle to ſtick the plates in, and lined with ſtrong tin all round, and on the underſide of the ſideboard top, to prevent the heat from injuring it. In this caſe the bottom of the drawer is made partly open, under which is fixed a ſmall narrow drawer, to contain a heater, which gives warmth to the plates the ſame as in a pedeſtal.

In ſpacious dining-rooms the ſideboards are often made without drawers of any ſort, having ſimply a rail a little ornamented, and pedeſtals with vaſes at each end, which produce a grand effect. One pedeſtal is uſed as a plate-warmer, and is lined with tin; the other as a pot-cupboard, and ſometimes it contains a celleret for wine. The vaſes are uſed for water for the uſe of the butler, and ſometimes as knife-caſes. They are ſometimes made of copper japanned, but generally of mahogany.

There are other ſideboards for ſmall dining-rooms, made without either drawers or pedeſtals; but have generally a wine-cooper to ſtand under them, hooped with braſs, partitioned and lined with lead, for wine bottles, the ſame as the above-mentioned celleret drawers.

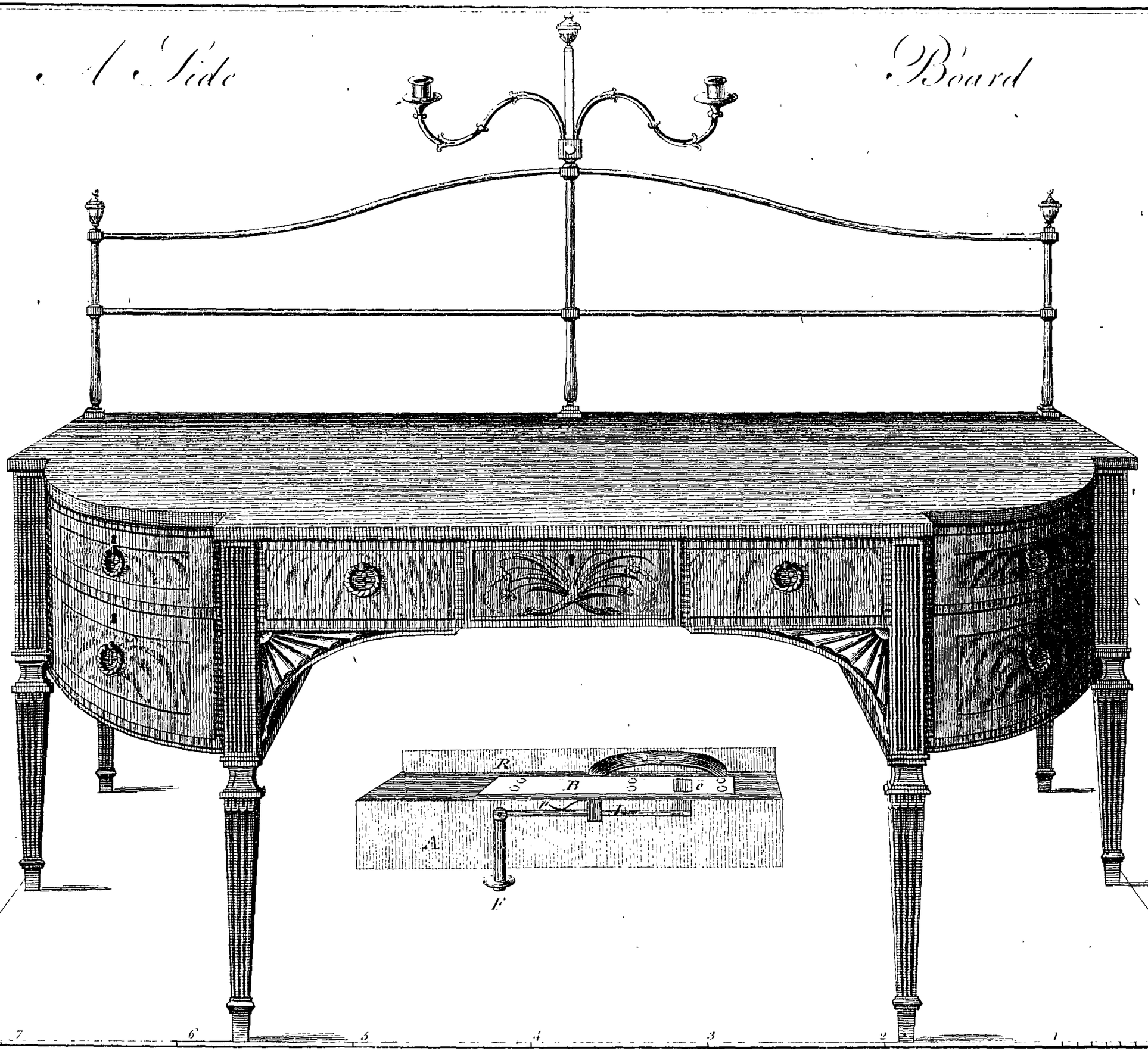
The

The ſideboard in Plate XXIX. ſhews two patterns, one at each end. That on the left is intended to have four marble ſhelves at each end, incloſed by two backs, and open in front. Theſe ſhelves are uſed in grand ſideboards to place the ſmall ſilver ware on. The pattern on the right is intended to have legs turned the whole length, or rounded as far as the framing and turned below it, with carved leaves and flutes. The diviſion beyond the celleret-drawer is meant for a pot-cupboard.

It is not uſual to make ſideboards hollow in front, but in ſome circumſtances it is evident that advantages will ariſe from it. If a ſideboard be required nine or ten feet long, as in ſome noblemen's houſes, and if the breadth of it be in proportion to the length, it will not be eaſy for a butler to reach acroſs it. I therefore think, in this caſe, a hollow front would obviate the difficulty, and at the ſame time have a very good effect, by taking off part of the appearance of the great length of ſuch a ſideboard. Beſides, if the ſideboard be near the entering door of the dining-room, the hollow front will ſometimes ſecure the butler from the joſtles of the other ſervants.

A Side

B Board



T. Sheraton Del

Barlow Sculp.

Published as the Act directs, by T. Sheraton, October 29th 1792.

Of the Perſpective Lines.

HAVING drawn the plan and adjuſted the height of the horizon by the ſcale, as was mentioned in the univerſal table, repreſent a parallelogram *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, equal to the length and breadth of the table; and from every part of the plan draw lines up to the ground line, and from the ground line direct theſe to the point of ſight. Take from the plan the ſpace M N, and place it from 1 to 2; and from 2 direct a line to the point of diſtance, cutting a point next to *y*; from which point draw a parallel for the place of the front legs. In like manner take the other dimenſions from the plan to find every other correſpondent point in the repreſentation. To find the repreſentation of the hollow and round fronts, conſult the treatiſe on perſpective in pages 294 and 295, together with the lines here ſhewn as hints, and it is preſumed that the learner will not be at any loſs in drawing ſuch a table.

Of the Book-caſe Doors. Plate XXVII. and XXIX.

IN the execution of theſe doors, the candid and ingenious workman may exerciſe his judgment, both by varying ſome parts of the figures, and taking other parts entirely away, when the door is thought to have too much work.

No. 1,

No. 1, in Plate XXVII. might do for a plain door, if the ornament and ſquare part in the middle were taken away.

No. 2 might alſo have the ſquare in the middle taken away, and look very well.

No. 4 may have the upright and horizontal bars away, and No. 5 the ſmall ſquares; and at each angle of the hexagon the ſtraight bar might be carried through to the frame.

With reſpect to No. 6, it may be uſeful to ſay ſomething of the method of making it, as well as of ſome of thoſe in Plate XXIX.

The firſt thing to be done, is to draw, on a board, an oval of the full length and breadth of the door. Then take half the oval on the ſhort diameter and glue on blocks of deal at a little diſtance from each other, to form a caul; then, on the ſhort diameter, glue on a couple of blocks, one to ſtop the ends of the veneer with at the time of gluing, and the other, being bevelled off, ſerves to force the joints of the veneer cloſe, and to keep all faſt till ſufficiently dry. Obſerve, the half oval is formed by the blocks of the ſize of the aſtragal, and not the rabbet; therefore conſider how broad a piece of veneer will make the aſtragals for one door, or for half a door. For a whole door, which takes

takes eight quarter ovals, it will require the veneer to be inch and quarter broad, allowing for the thickneſs of a ſaſh ſaw to cut them off with. Veneers of this breadth may, by proper management, be glued quite cloſe; and if the veneer be ſtraight baited, and all of one kind, no joint will appear in the aſtragal. Two half ovals thus glued up, will make aſtragals for a pair of doors, which, after they are taken out of the cauls and cleaned off a little, may be glued one upon the other, and then glued on a board, to hold them faſt for working the aſtragals on the edge; which may eaſily be done, by forming a neat aſtragal in a piece of ſoft ſteel, and fixing it in a notched piece of wood, and then work it as a gage; but before you work it, run on a gage for the thickneſs of the aſtragal; and after you have worked the aſtragal, cut it off with a ſaſh ſaw, by turning the board on which the ſweep-pieces are glued on an edge; then having ſawn one aſtragal off, plane the edge of your ſtuff again, and proceed as before.

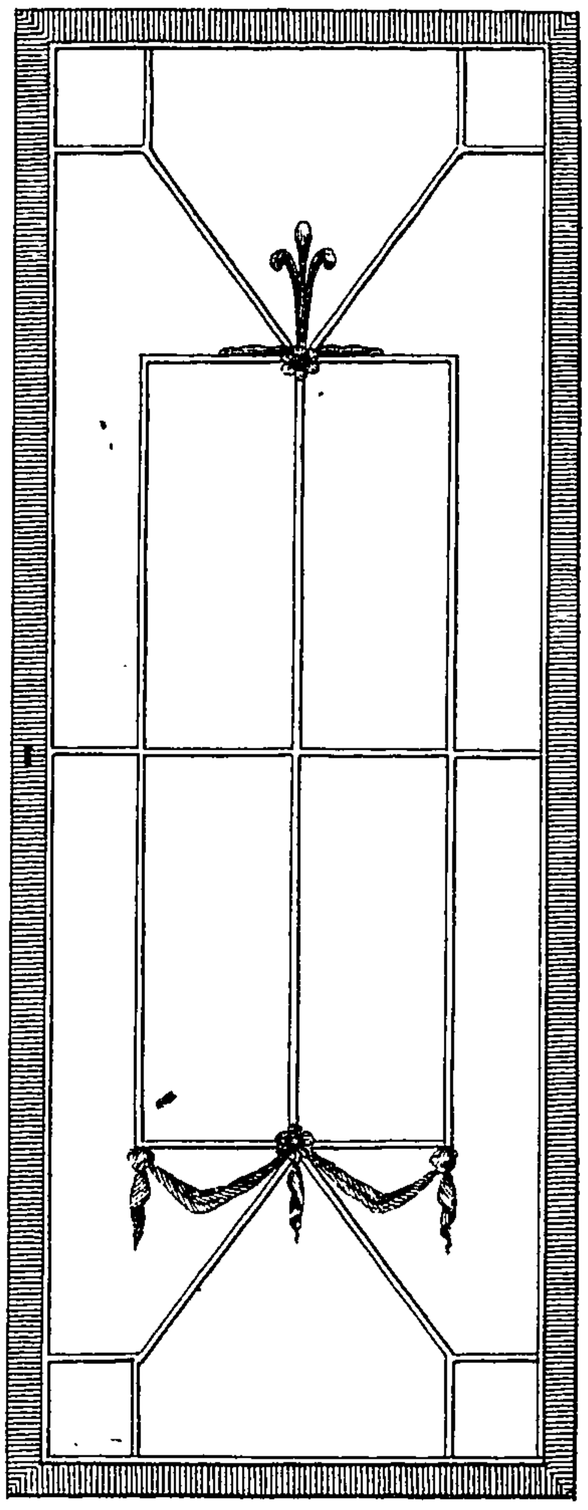
For gluing up the rabbet part, it muſt be obſerved, that a piece of dry veneer, equal to the thickneſs of the rabbet, muſt be forced tight into the caul; and then proceed as before in gluing two thickneſſes of veneer for the rabbet part, which will leave ſufficient hiding for the glaſs, on ſuppoſition that the aſtragal was glued in five.

The door being framed quite ſquare, without any mould-ing at the inner edge, proceed to put in the rabbet pieces. Put, firſt, an entire half oval, and ſcrew this to the inner edge of the door, and level with it; then jump up the other half oval to it, and ſcrew it as before; which completes the center oval. Next, fix the ſquare part, having been before mitered round a block, and keyed together; after which, half-lap the other quarter ovals into the entire oval where they croſs each other, and into the ſquare part, liping it into the angle of the door; put in the horizontal bars for the leaves to reſt on; glue on the aſtragals, firſt on the entire oval, tying it with pack-thread, to keep it on; then the ſtraight one on the edge of the framing, fitting it to the oval; laſtly, miter the aſtragal on the ſquare part, and every other particular will follow of courſe.

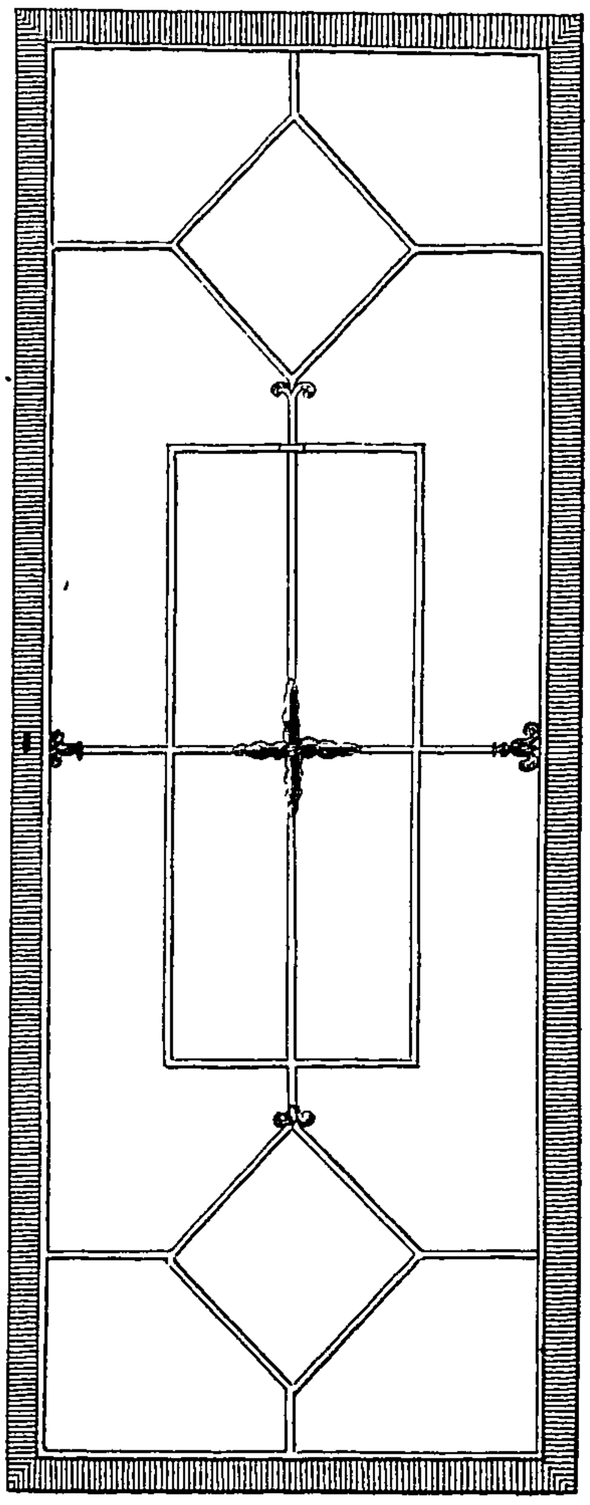
With reſpect to the doors in Plate XXIX. all of them may be made nearly on the ſame principles, at leaſt the rabbet parts muſt; but the aſtragals in No. 1, being all of them portions of circles, ſhould be cut out of ſolid wood, and glued on a deal board and ſent to the turner's. The ſame may be ſaid of No. 5, which, in the vaſe part, may have a piece of ſilvered glaſs. The center in No. 2, is intended to have a print or painting in it. The ſweeps, in No. 6, ſhould be cut out of the ſolid, and worked by a tool. As to fixing any part of the ornaments introduced in theſe doors; this is eaſily done, by preparing a very

DOORS for BOOKCASES

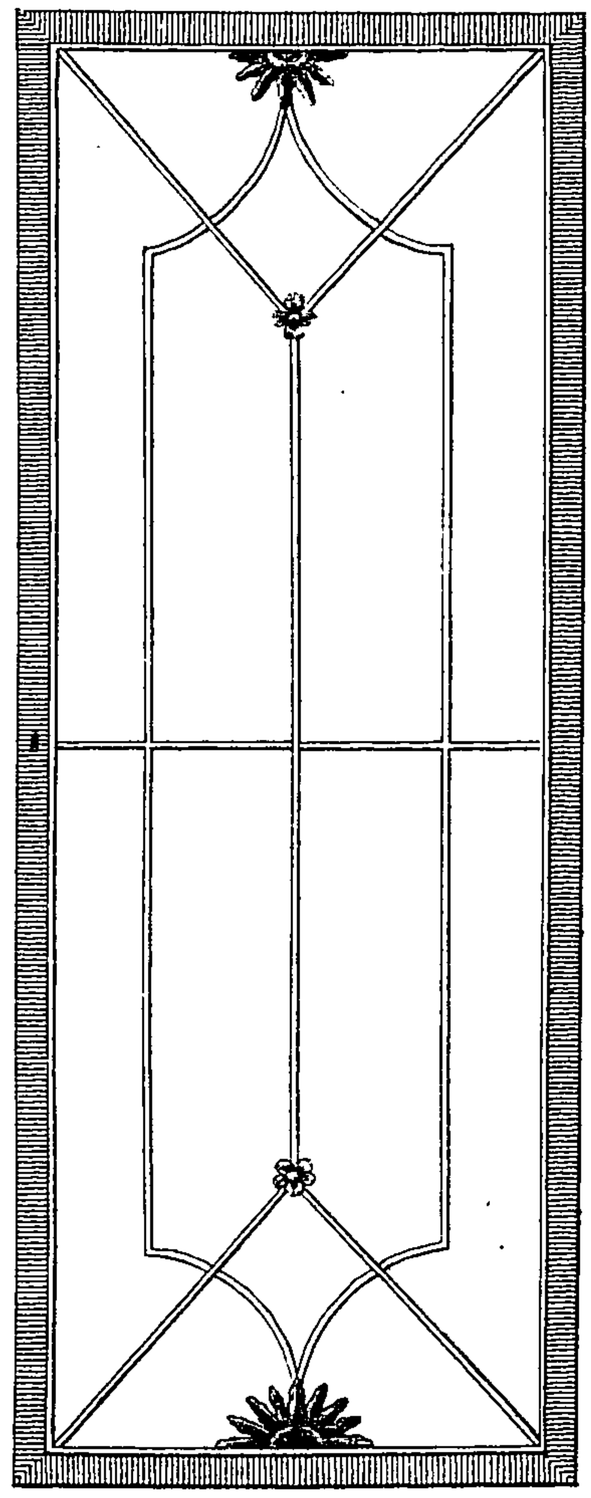
№1



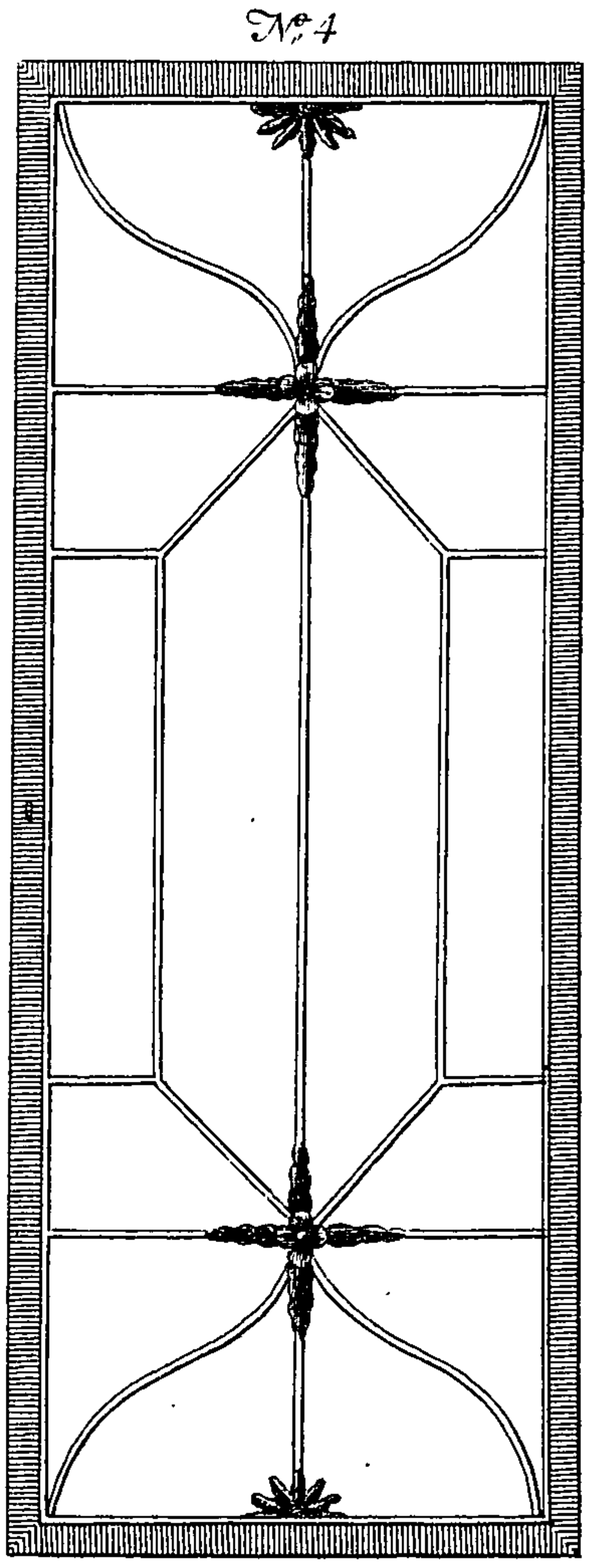
№2



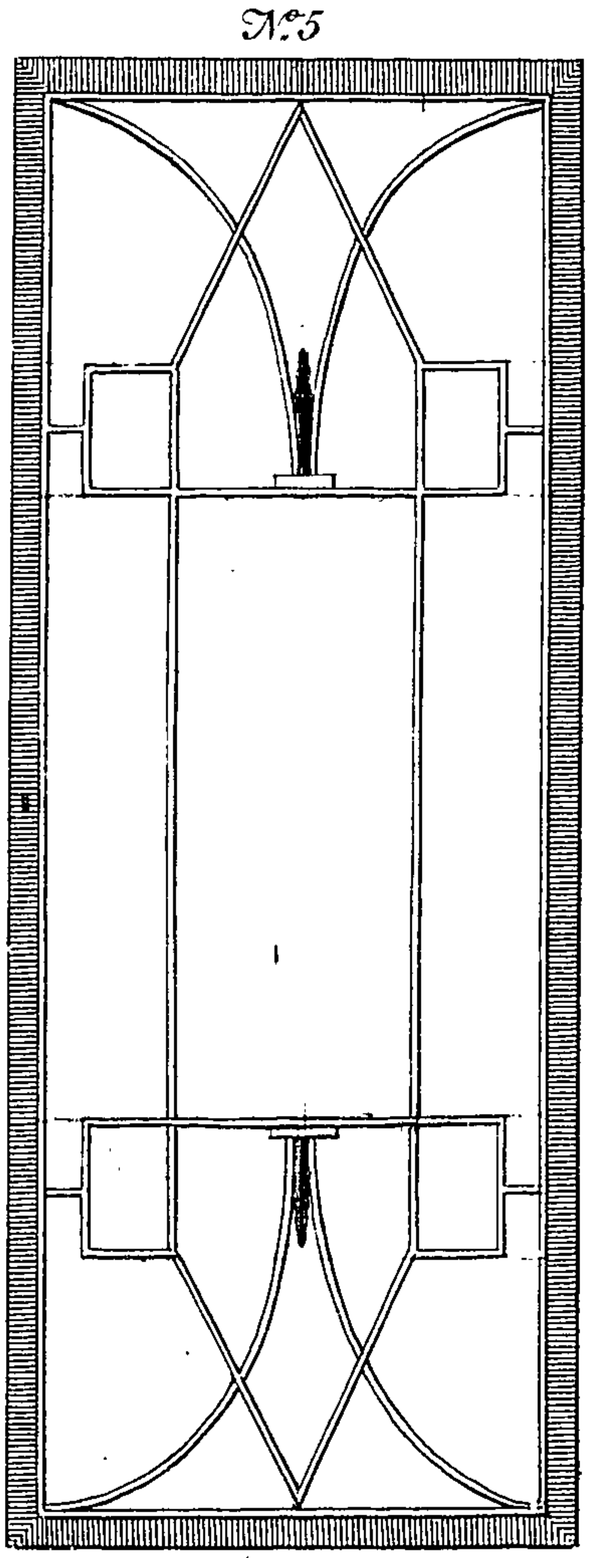
№3



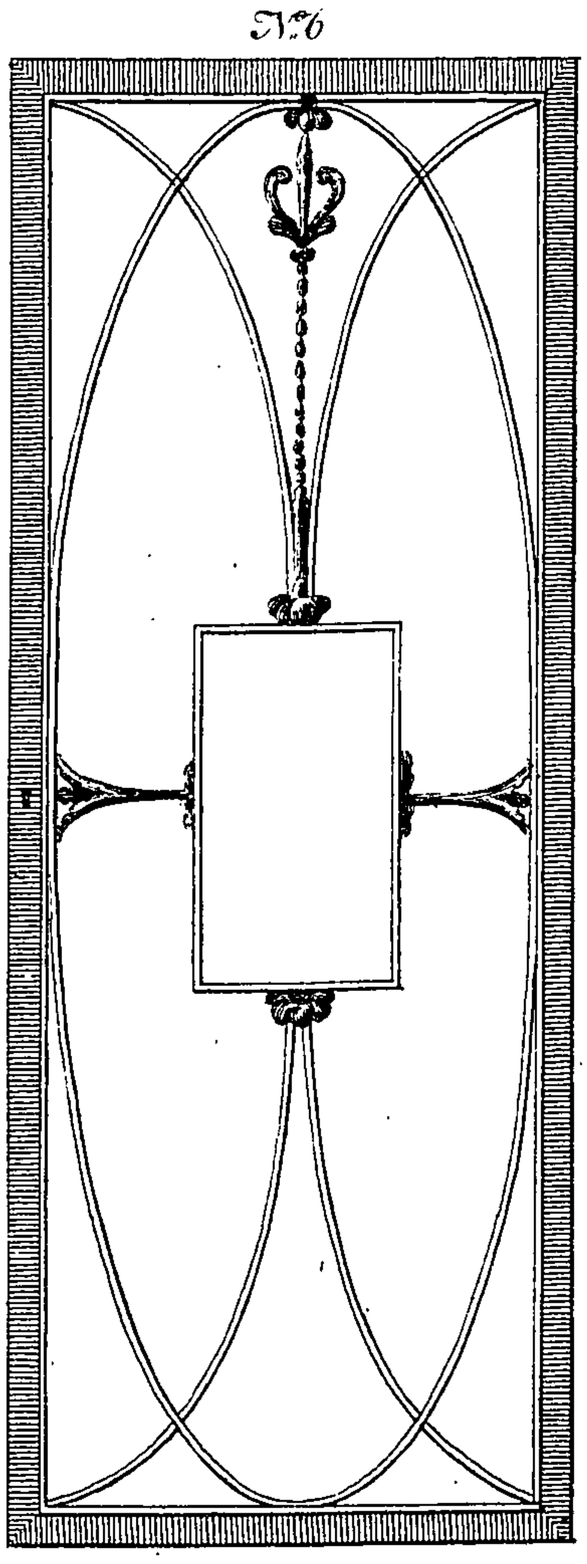
№4



№5



№6

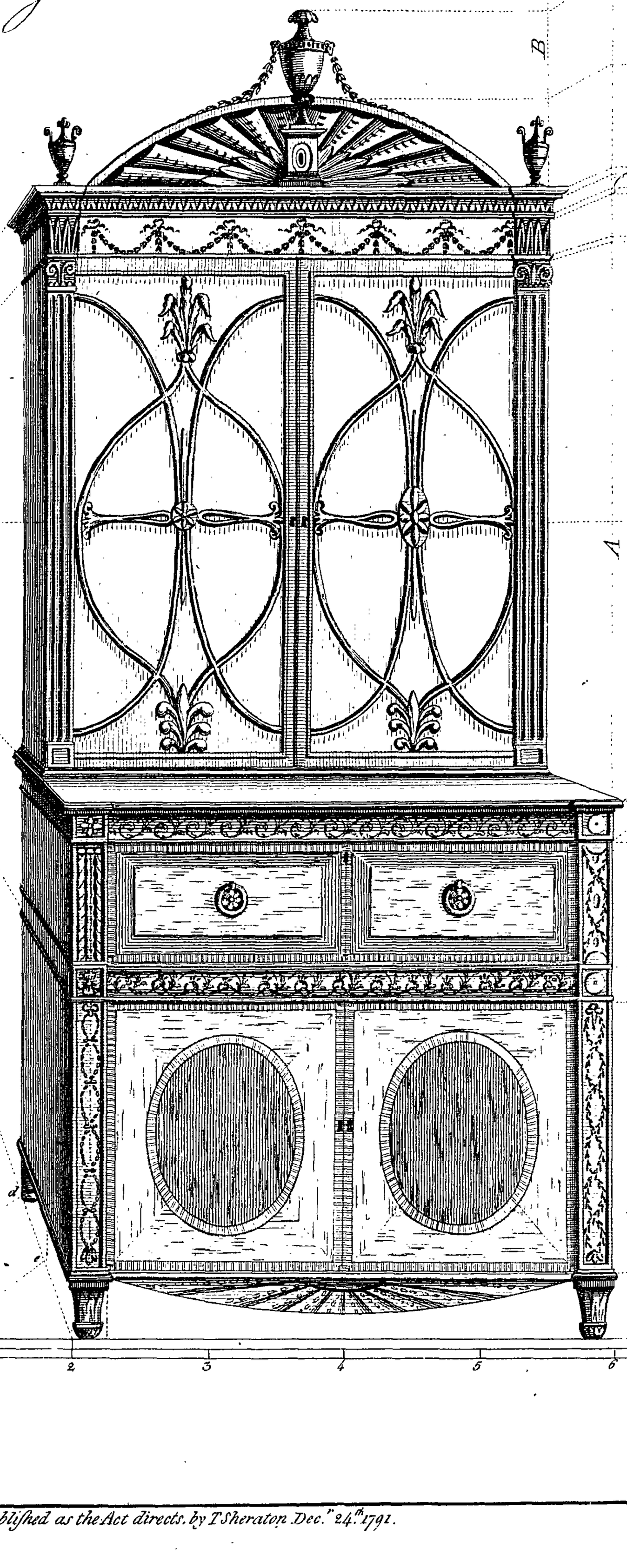


T. Sheraton del.

Publish'd as the Act directs by T. Sheraton, May 3, 1792.

Barlow sculp.

A Secretary and Bookcase



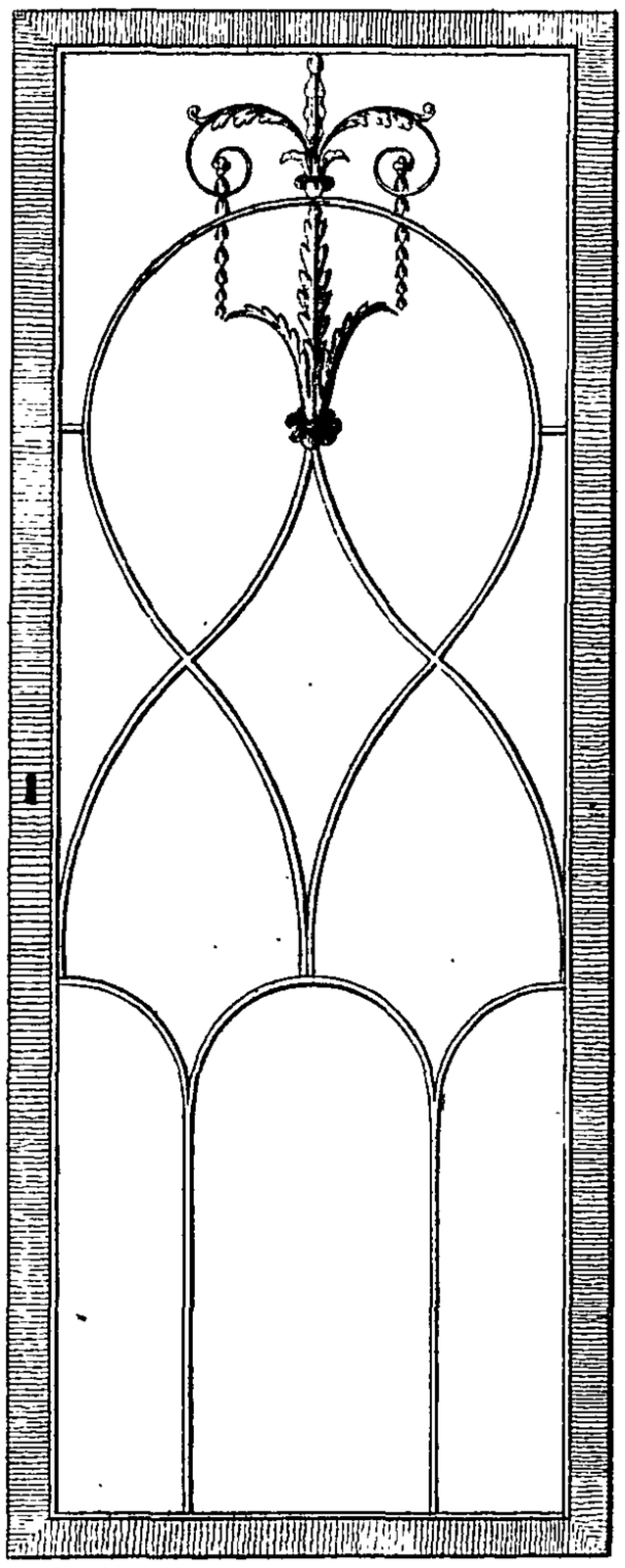
T. Sheraton Del.

Published as the Act directs. by T Sheraton Dec.r 24.th 1791.

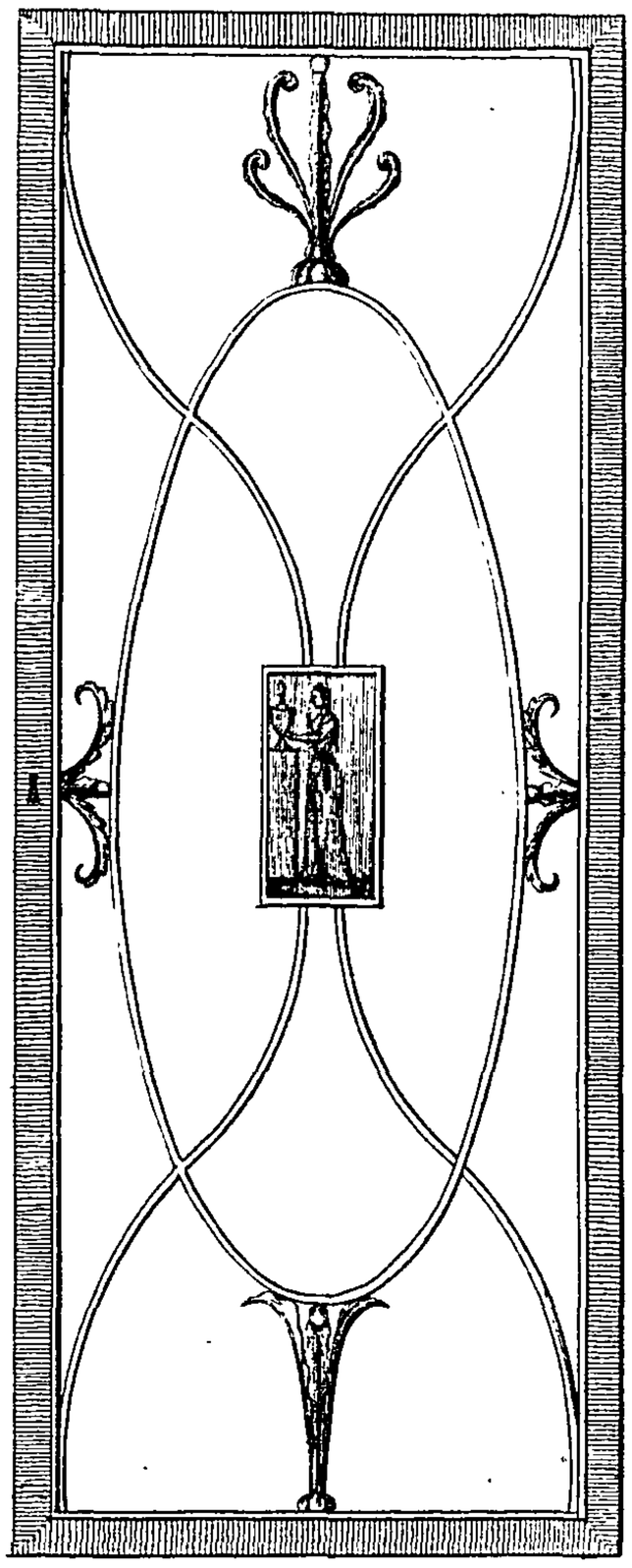
I. Barlow sculp.

DOORS for BOOKCASES

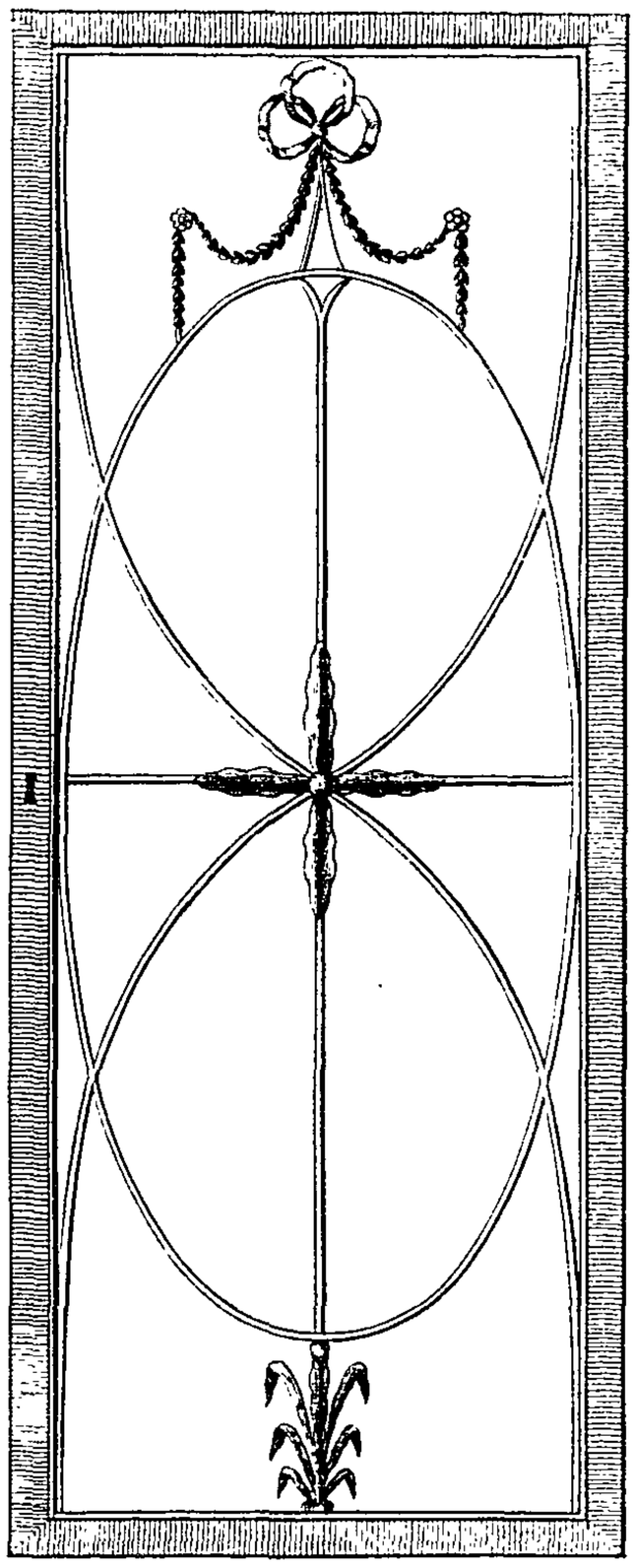
N.º1.



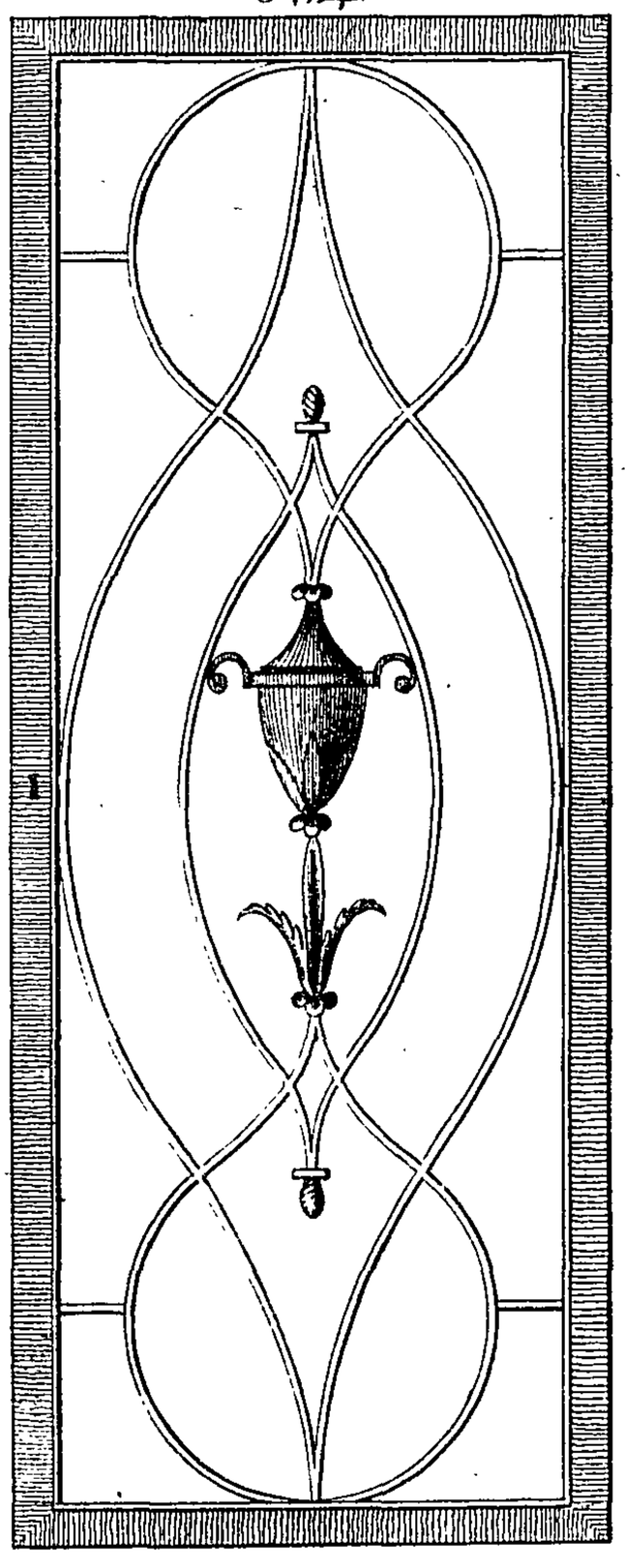
N.º2.



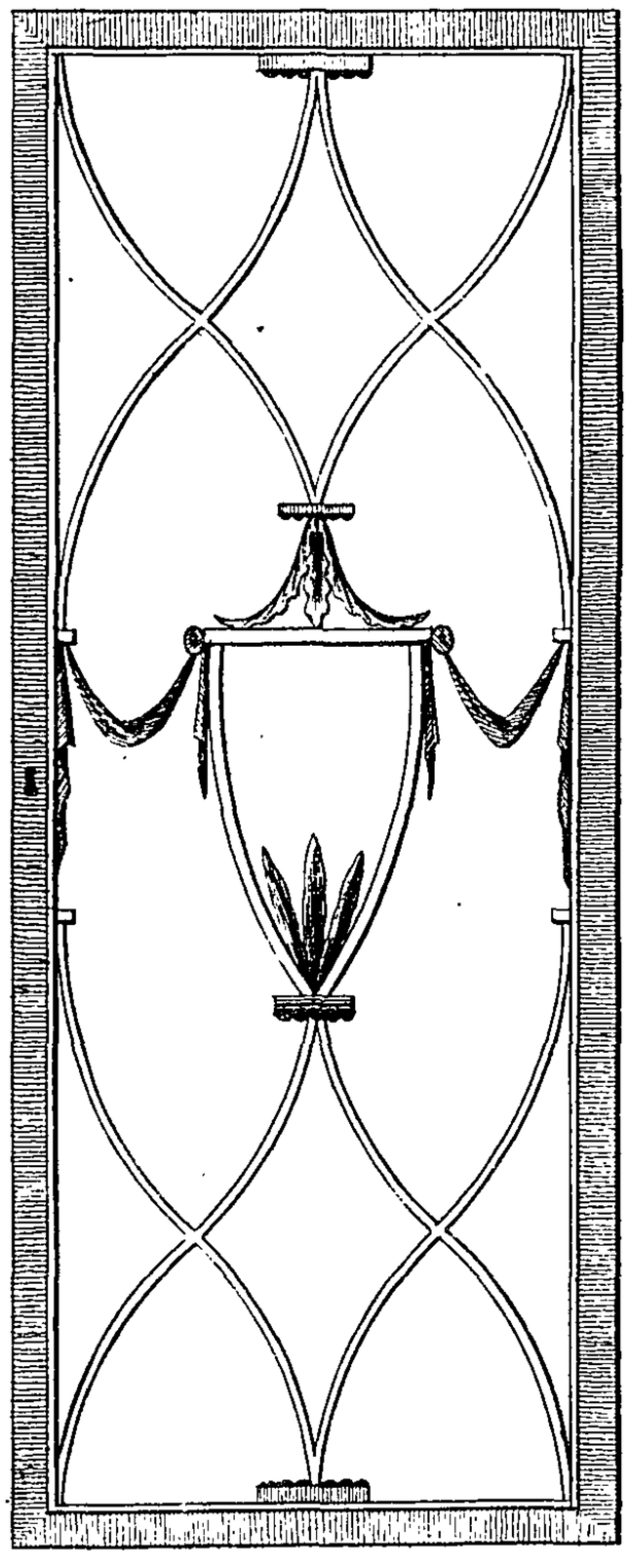
N.º3



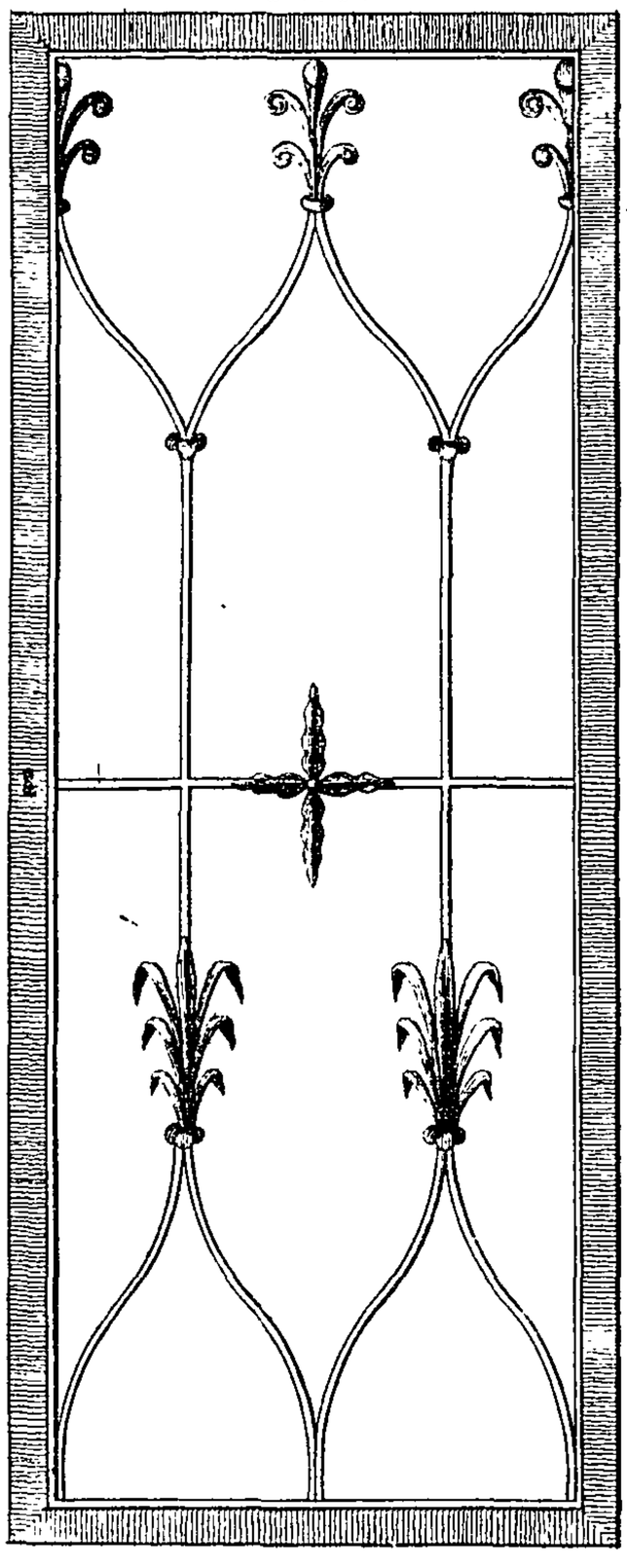
N.º4.



N.º5.



N.º6.

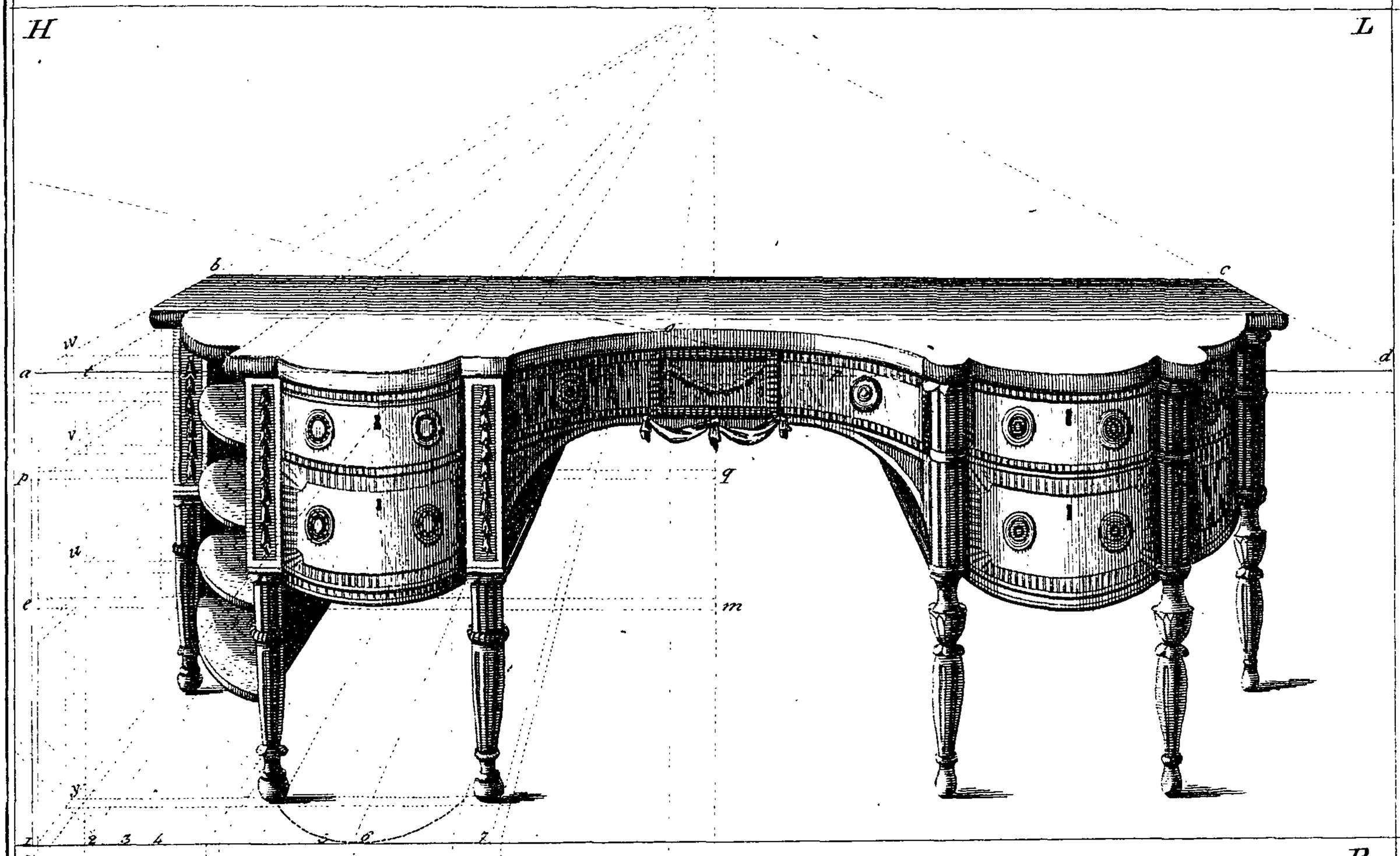


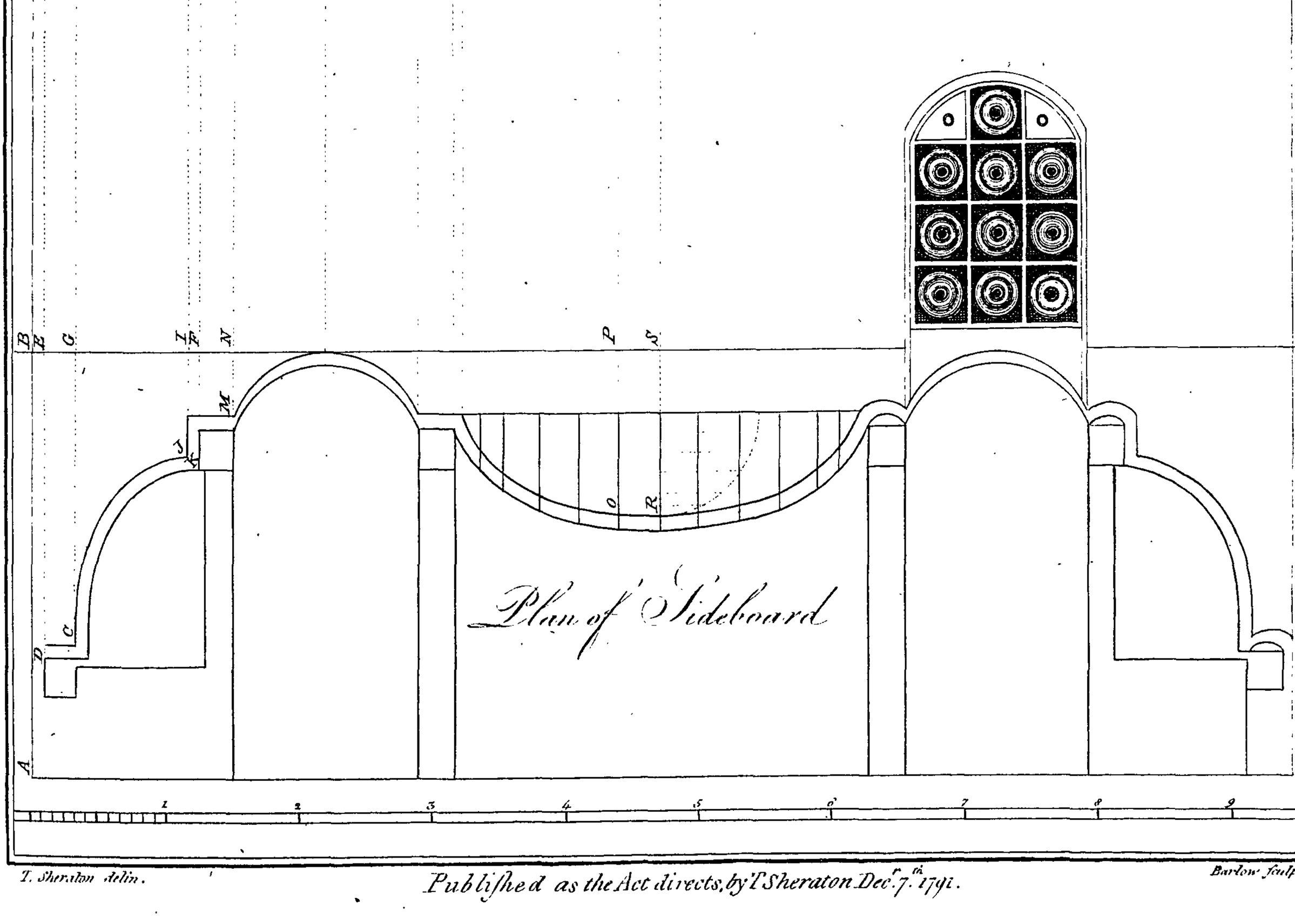
T. Sheraton del

Published as the Act directs. by T. Sheraton.

Terry Sc

A Sideboard Table





Plan of Sideboard

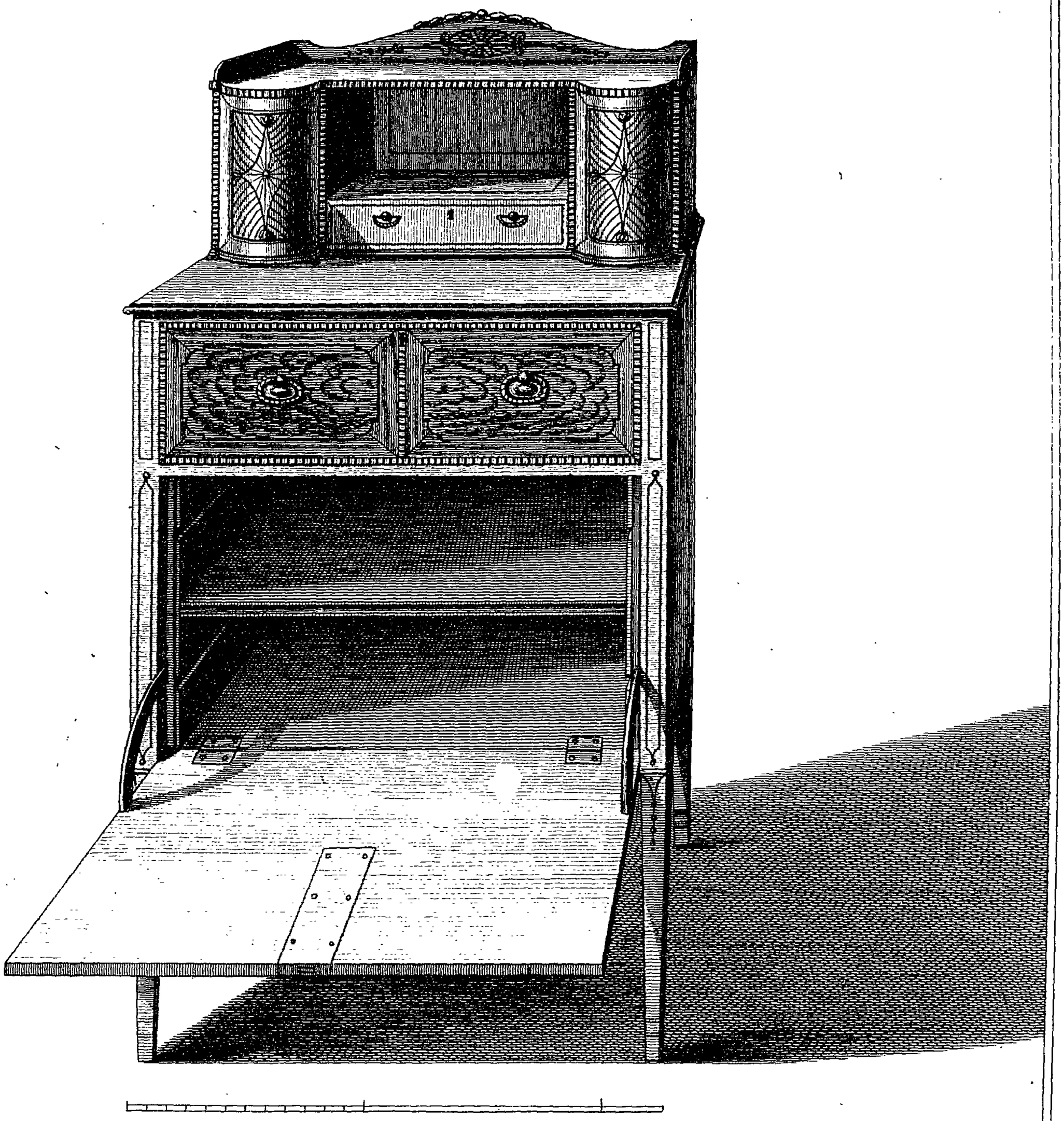
T. Sheraton delin.

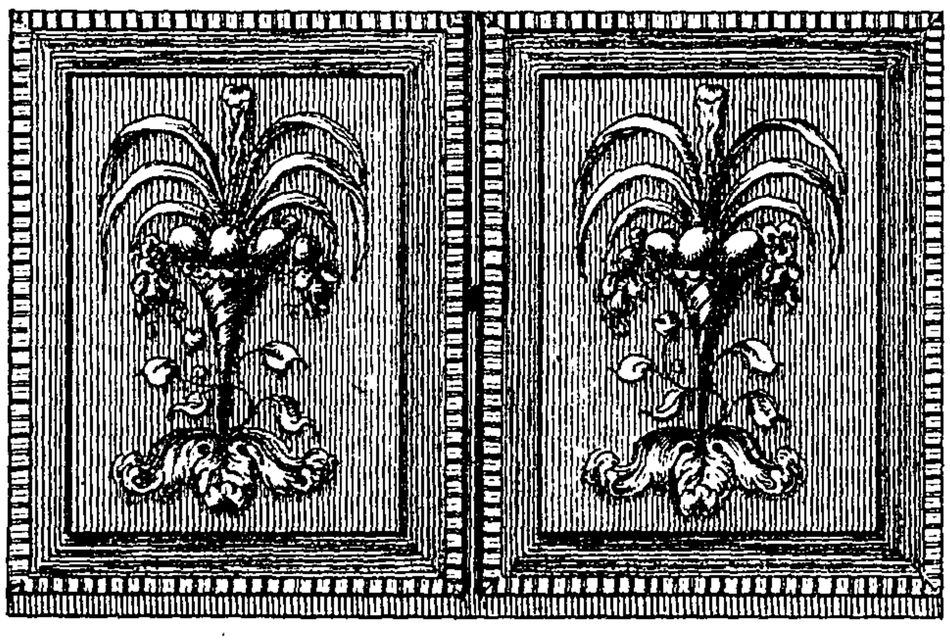
Published as the Act directs, by T Sheraton Dec.r 7.th 1791.

Barlow sculp.

A New Design of a Ladys Secretary & Cabinet

Pl. 64.





T. Sheraton Del.

J. Caldwall Direxit

Published as the Act Directs by T. Sheraton. Apr. 21. 1794.

very ſtrong gum, which will hold on glaſs almoſt as ſtrong as glue on wood.

Of the Secretary and Book-caſe. Plate XXVIII.

THE uſe of this piece is to hold books in the upper part, and in the lower it contains a writing-drawer and clothes-preſs ſhelves. The deſign is intended to be executed in ſatin-wood, and the ornaments japanned. It may, however, be done in mahogany; and in place of the ornaments in the friezes, flutes may be ſubſtituted. The pediment is ſimply a ſegment of a circle, and it may be cut in the form of a fan, with leaves in the center. The vaſes may be omitted to reduce the work; but if they are introduced, the pedeſtal on which the center vaſe reſts is merely a piece of thin wood, with a necking and baſe moulding mitered round, and planted on the pediment. The pilaſters on the book-caſe doors are planted on the frame, and the door hinged as uſual. The top of the pilaſters are made to imitate the Ionic capital.

Of the Perſpective Lines.

G R is the ground line, and H L the horizontal line, or height of the eye. Lay on the original heights of the book-

caſe, as at *g*, *h*, *i*, *j*, *k*, &c. and draw a perpendicular line at the angle of the piece, as at A; to which direct parallel lines as ſhewn. On the ground line lay *a*, or two feet, for the breadth of the end; and from *b a* direct lines to the diſtance, which is here out of the plate, cutting the viſuals at *d e*; from *e* raiſe a perpendicular, which will determine the front of the book-caſe, provided it be only a foot deep. The perpendicular B is neceſſary, in order to find the perſpective heights of the book-caſe, as ſhewn in the figure.

Of the Library Table. Plate XXX.

THIS piece is intended for a gentleman to write on, or to ſtand or ſit to read at, having deſk-drawers at each end, and is generally employed in ſtudies or library-rooms. It has already been executed for the Duke of York, excepting the deſk-drawers, which are here added as an improvement.

The ſtyle of finiſhing it ought to be in the medium of that which may be termed plain or grand, as neither ſuits their ſituation. Mahogany is the moſt ſuitable wood, and the ornaments ſhould be carved or inlaid, what little there is; japanned ornaments are not ſuitable, as theſe tables frequently meet with a little harſh uſage.

The

The ſtrength, ſolidity, and effect of braſs mouldings are very ſuitable to ſuch a deſign, when expence is no object. For inſtance, the pilaſters might be a little ſunk, or pannelled out, and braſs beads mitered round in a margin, and ſolid flutes of the ſame metal let in. The aſtragal which ſeparates the upper and lower parts might be of braſs; and likewiſe the edge of the top, together with the patera in the upper pannel, as ſhewn on the left hand. The top is lined with leather or green cloth, and the whole reſts and is moved on caſtors hid by the plinth.

Of the manufacturing Part.

The top ſhould be framed in inch and quarter wainſcot, in the figure of a long hexagon, which beſt ſuits the ſhape of the oval. The pannels, which are tongued in, ſhould be of at leaſt three quarters hard mahogany, about nine inches ſquare, and the ſtiles three and an half broad. The top being thus framed of very dry wood, it ſhould be planed over, and ſtand for ſome time at a moderate diſtance from a fire, after which it may be glued together, and when hardened it ought to be planed over again, and remain in that ſtate till the lower part is finiſhed. If theſe methods are not purſued, the pannels will ſhrink, and their joints will draw down the leather or cloth, ſo that the

figure

figure of the framed top will appear, eſpecially when it is lined with leather.

Next, it muſt be conſidered how to glue on the mahogany on the framing, ſo as to make the ſurbaſe moulding appear of ſolid wood. Firſt, plough the four ſhort ſides of the hexagon, and then tongue in ſuitable mahogany lengthways, meeting in a ſtraight joint in the center of the top; and, laſtly, after the tonguing is dry, glue in ſtraight joints pieces on the two long ſides of the hexagon, and when dry, the top will be prepared for cutting to its elliptic ſhape.

The manner of framing the upper and lower parts of the carcaſe muſt be learned from the plan.

The upper part, framed in an entire oval, contains the deſk-drawers; and, if thought neceſſary, two ſhort ones may be obtained over the ſide niches.

The cupboard part is framed in two, each of which has a niche at the end, and one-third of the ſide niches; for the niches are all of them divided into three pannels, and the middle pannels of the ſide ones ſerve as doors, by which an open paſſage is gained through the table. There are four cupboards in the whole, divided in the manner ſpecified by the dotted lines in

the

the plan, one or two of which may be fitted up in a neſt of ſmall drawers and letter-holes.

The plinth is framed entire of itſelf, and the baſe-moulding ſtands up a little to receive the whole and hide the joint.

In putting on the baſe-moulding there are two or three methods which I would offer as the beſt I know of. The frame being made ſo thick as to take the projection of the baſe, it muſt then be rabbeted out of the ſolid to receive it. This being done, proceed to glue the baſe in three or four thickneſſes, confining them to their place by hand-ſcrews, or other devices of that nature; but obſerve to let the baſe project further out than the deal plinth, that it may receive the mahogany veneer which is to be glued on lengthways to hide the deal.

After the whole is glued faſt to its place, the veneer on the plinth and the baſe muſt be cleaned off level with each other. The convex parts of the baſe-moulding may be worked with hollows and rounds; and after theſe are finiſhed, the niches ſhould be worked down to them, by a tool made on purpoſe.

Another method of gluing the baſe-moulding is as follows: —Prepare the inch deal, and make cauls to fit the end and ſide niches of the plinth; after which take ſtraight baited three-

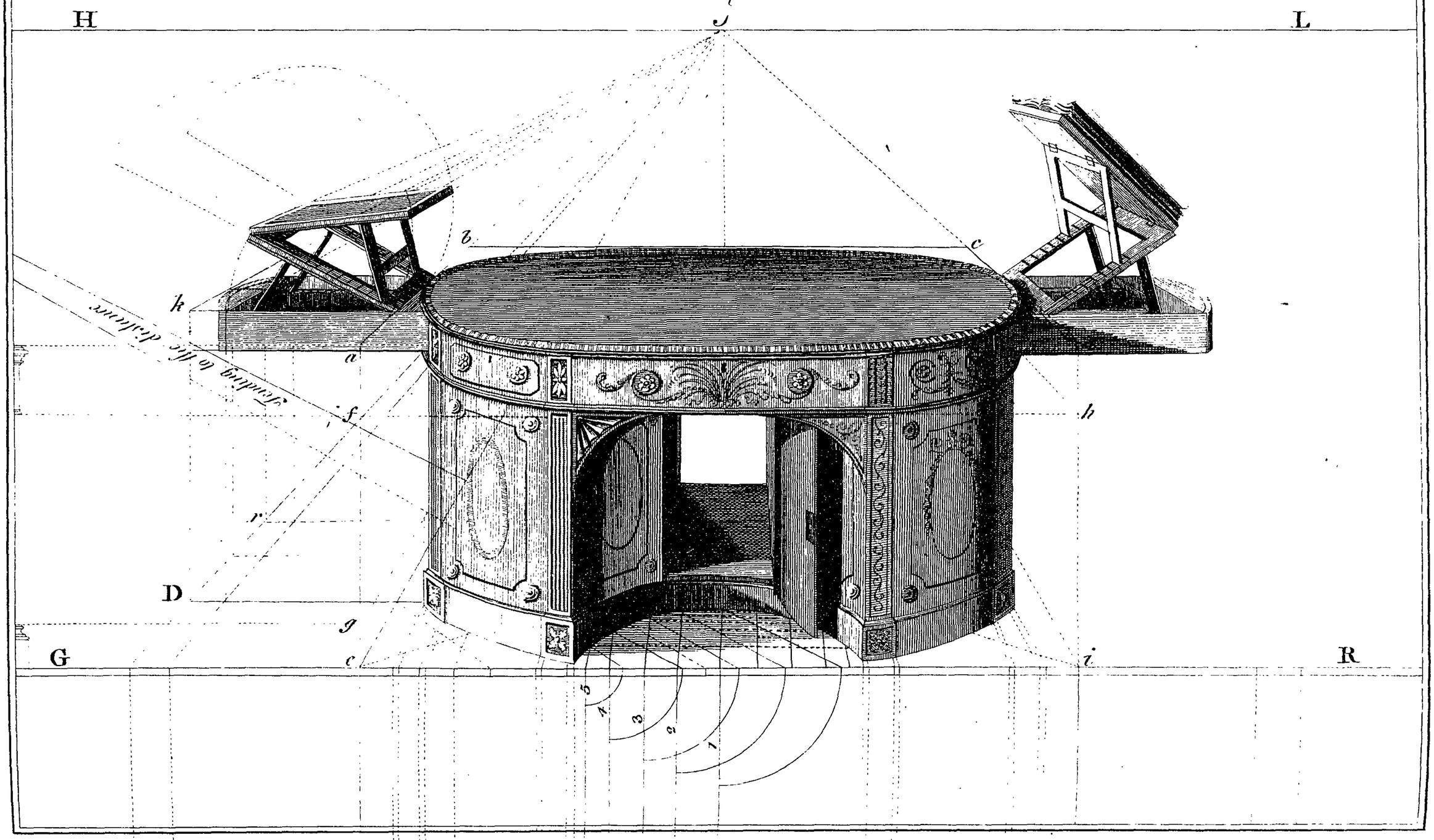
eighths

eights Spaniſh wood, and work the hollow part of the baſe ſeparate from the torus; then, from quarter ſtuff of the ſame kind, cut off ſlips for the torus; heat the caul well, and both wet and heat the ſlips, which will then eaſily bend. When the hollow part is well tempered, and alſo the torus, begin at one end, and by a thin chip run glue in between them; and as you go on drive in nails about every inch, having between the nails and the moulding a thin ſlip of wainſcot well heated. Obſerve to let the moulding paſs beyond the caul at each end, that a pack-ſtring may be tied to keep it to its place when it is taken out. The torus may then be worked before it is glued on the plinth.

A third method is, to make the plinth itſelf the caul, and firſt work the hollows, and ſoak them in water a whole night. Next morning take a hand-iron and heat it well, and over the curved ſide of which bend the hollow as near as may be to the ſweep. Having already a ſtop ſcrewed on the plinth, jump one end of the moulding to it, and glue as you go on; at the ſame time fixing ſmall hand-ſcrews to draw it to, or brads may be put through the ſquare part to aſſiſt in this buſineſs, if neceſſary, for theſe will be covered by the torus. After the hollow is ſufficiently dry, the torus being worked off and well ſoaked, and bent round the iron as above, it will glue to the hollow without the ſmalleſt difficulty, by firſt jumping it againſt the

ſtop

A Library Table.



Feet and Inches

5 4 3 2 1

Plan

T. Sheraton del.

G. Terry sculp.

Publish'd as the Act directs Augt. 27. 1791.

ſtop before mentioned; and after it is brought pretty near, take another ſtop and ſcrew it againſt the end of the torus, which will draw it down without further trouble. Theſe two methods are founded on experiment; for, at my requeſt, it was performed by ſome cabinet-makers to my full ſatisfaction; therefore, ſhould either of theſe methods fail in the hands of any, it muſt be owing to ſome defect in the management.

Of the Perſpective Lines.

DRAW firſt a plan of the whole, and make G R the ground line, and H L the horizon. From the plan draw perpendicular lines from every part to G R, as ſhewn in the Plate; make *ſ* the center, and lay on the diſtance, which is here out of the plate. From each perpendicular line drawn to G R draw lines to *ſ*; then repreſent a parallelogram both at top and bottom, in which the ellipſis may be inſcribed; and draw the diagonal correſponding with that ſhewn in the plan, which will cut the viſual drawn from the ſaid diagonal in the plan, finding a point to guide the ellipſis. For other particulars relative to the repreſentation of an ellipſis, ſee page 294, and Plate XXI; for the repreſentation of the niche, ſee page 295; and for the deſk-drawer, ſee page 231, Prob. 4.

Of the Kidney Library Table. Plate LVIII.

THIS piece is termed a kidney-table, on account of its reſemblance to that inteſtine part of animals ſo called. Its uſe, however, is the ſame as that already deſcribed.

The drawers which appear in the deſign are all real, and are ſtrung and croſs-banded, with the grain of the mahogany laid up and down. The pilaſters are pannelled or croſs-banded, and the feet below turned. The view of it below ſhews the ends pannelled, and the back may be ſo too, or it may be plain.

With reſpect to the manufacturing part, I need not ſay any thing after what has been ſaid on the other, except to explain the reading deſk which ſlides out, as ſhewn below. Obſerve, B is the profile of the frame which ſlides out, in the edge of which there is a groove ſhewn by the black ſtroke, and a tongue is put into the edge of the well part to ſuit it. F is the deſk part which riſes by a horſe; and A is a part of that, which riſes at the ſame time to ſtop the book; *b* is a tumbler-hinge let in fluſh with the top, and hid by the cloth or leather; *c* is a common but-hinge let in the edge of F, and upon the frame B; ſo that when F falls to B, A does alſo. The length of the table is four feet, its width two, and its height thirty-two inches.

Of

Of the Sofa Bed. Plate XXXI.

THE frames of theſe beds are ſometimes painted in ornaments to ſuit the furniture. But when the furniture is of rich ſilk, they are done in white and gold, and the ornaments carved. The tablets may have each a feſtoon of flowers or foliage, and the cornice cut out in leaves and gilt has a good effect. The drapery under the cornice is of the French kind; it is fringed all round, and laps on to each other like unto waves. The valance ſerves as a ground, and is alſo fringed. The roſes which tuck up the curtains are formed by ſilk cord, &c. on the wall, to ſuit the hangings; and obſerve, that the center roſe contains a braſs hook and ſocket, which will unhook, ſo that the curtains will come forward and entirely encloſe the whole bed.

The ſofa part is ſometimes made without any back, in the manner of a couch. It muſt alſo be obſerved, that the beſt kinds of theſe beds have behind what the upholſterers call a fluting, which is done by a ſlight frame of wood faſtened to the wall, on which is ſtrained, in ſtraight puckers, ſome of the ſame ſtuff of which the curtains are made.

The left plate ſhews the plan of the teſter, and the manner of fixing the rods, which are made in two parts to paſs each

other, ſo that the curtains may come cloſe to each other in the center.

The teſter rods ſcrew faſt in front, and hook paſt each other behind. The manner of fixing the teſter up is by an iron bracket at each end; one arm of the bracket ſcrews to the under-ſide of the teſter, and the other againſt the wall, by driving in plugs for that purpoſe.

Of the Perſpective Lines.

THE left plate ſhews theſe lines, and the right ſhews the ſcales of proportion. Theſe beds ſeldom exceed twelve feet in height, including the feather at top. Their length is ſeven feet, and width about five.

The perſpective lines are drawn by a contracted diſtance, being only one third of the whole. The front of the ſofa is merely a geometrical elevation. For the apparent width of it take five feet from the ſmall ſcale, which is termed one third of the real ſcale of feet and inches; place this meaſurement from 14 to *e*, and draw a line to *d*, cutting at 15; *a*, *b*, *d*, are for the tablets at each end; and at *f* is laid on the full meaſurement of the back tablet, from which lines are drawn to *s* the center, which

Plan of the Dome.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 c

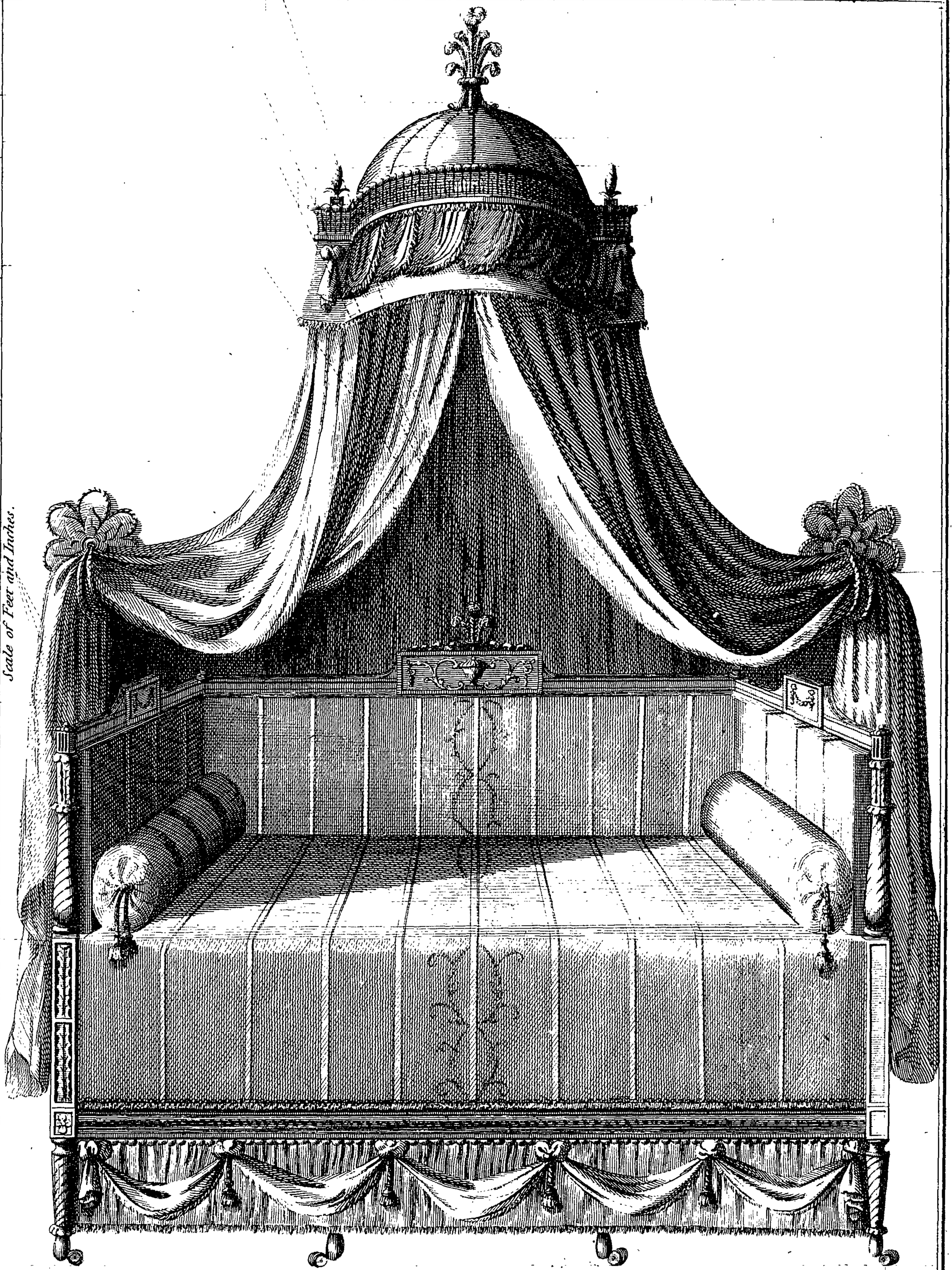
d H s L

From d to s one third of the real distance .

10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 h

a b d e f g

A SOFA BED.



Scale of Feet and Inches.

One third of the real Scale of Feet and Inches.

T. Sheraton del. *G. Terry. Sculp.*

Pub.d as the Act directs. Sep.r 30. 1791 by. T. Sheraton

ALCOVE BED.

Plate. 50.

T. Sheraton delin.

J. Barlow sculp.

Published as the Act directs, by T. Sheraton Feb.y 4.th 1792

which cuts the back of the ſofa at the line 15, 16, and determines its length. The back tablet being the higheſt, lay on the additional height from 10, and draw a line to *s*, cutting a perpendicular at 11; from which draw a parallel as ſhewn. The line drawn through *h* is to find the front of the dome, which comes forward rather ſhort of half of the breadth of the ſofa. The line 4 is the back of the dome, 5 is the center line, and 3 is its front; 7 ſhews the height of the under ſide of it, 8 of the top of the cornice, and 9 the top of the dome; the reſt muſt be underſtood by obſervation.

Of the Alcove Bed. Plate XL.

THE term alcove, in buildings, means a part of a room ſeparated off from the reſt by columns and arches correſponding, in which is placed a bed: ſo that it is not the particular form of the bed which gives riſe to this name, but the place in which it ſtands. The learned inform us, that the word alcove is from the Arabic *elcauf*, which means a cabinet or ſleeping-place. This deſign is repreſented ſtanding on a plinth, covered with carpet, and having a border round it ſuppoſed to be on the floor of the room. The ſteps are introduced to ſhew that beds of this ſort are raiſed high, and require ſomething to ſtep on before they can be got into. The ſteps are generally covered with

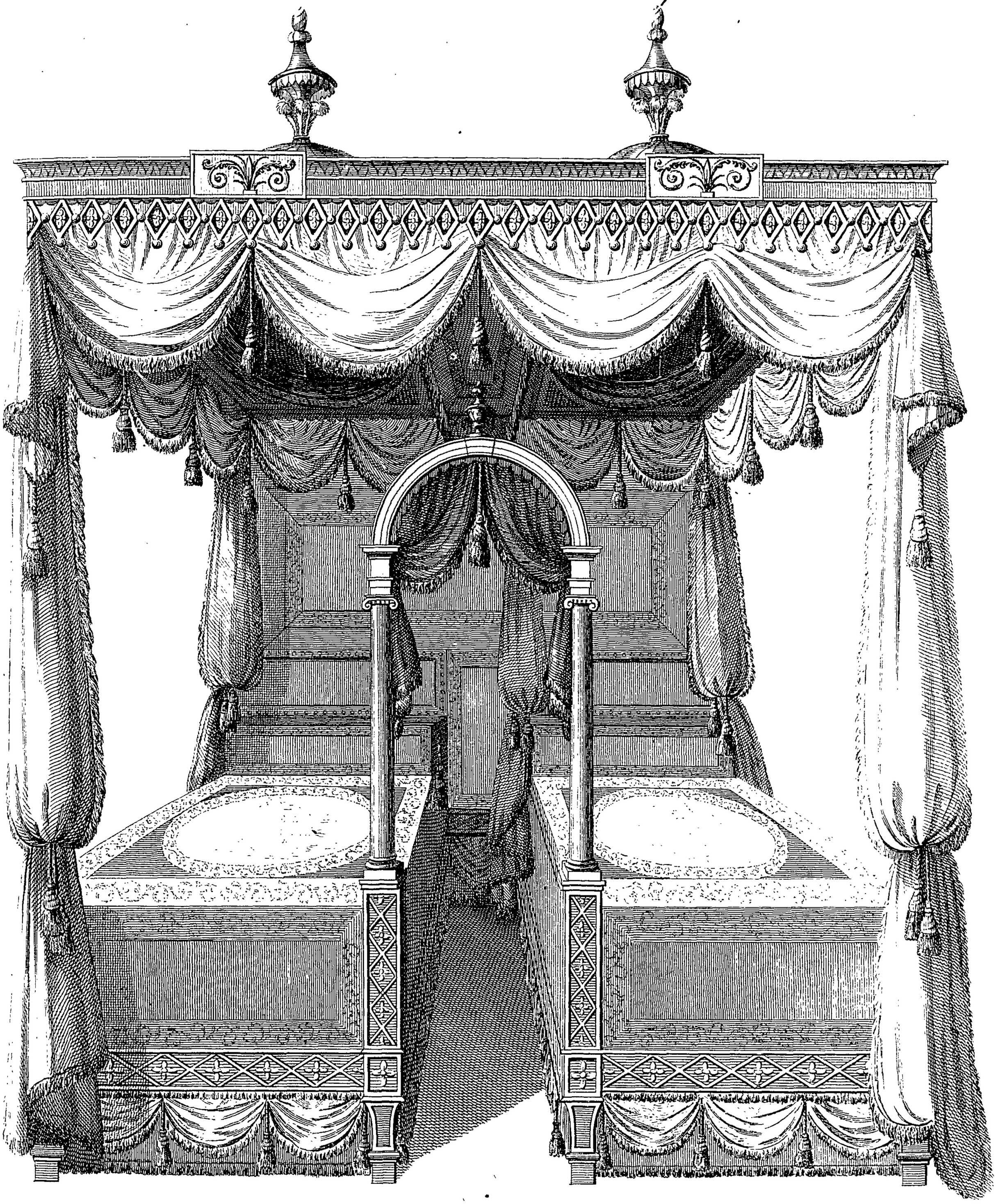
with carpet, and framed in mahogany. Both this, the ſofa, and French ſtate bed, require ſteps. The dome of this bed is fixed in the ſame manner as the other; but the roſes to which the curtains are tucked up are different. This is made of tin, and covered with the ſtuff of the bed, and unbuckles to take in the curtains behind the roſe. Upon the fluting, as before mentioned, is fixed a drapery in this, as ſhewn in the deſign; and ſometimes in the arch of the alcove a drapery is introduced.

Of the Summer-Bed in two Compartments. Plate XLI.

THESE beds are intended for a nobleman or gentleman and his lady to ſleep in ſeparately in hot weather. Some beds for this purpoſe have been made entirely in one, except the bed-clothing being confined in two drawers, running on rollers, capable of being drawn out on each ſide by ſervants, in order to make them. But the preference of this deſign for the purpoſe, muſt be obvious to every one in two or three particulars.

Firſt, the paſſage up the middle, which is about twenty-two inches in width, gives room for the circulation of air, and likewiſe affords an eaſy acceſs to the ſervants when they make the beds.

A Summer Bed in two Compartiments.



Feet and Inches

Sheraton Del.

Barlow Sculp.

Published as the Act directs by T. Sheraton June 20th 1792

Secondly, the paſſage gives opportunity for curtains to encloſe each compartment, if neceſſary, on account of any ſudden change of weather.

Thirdly, it makes the whole conſiderably more ornamental, uniform, and light.

The firſt idea of this bed was communicated to me by Mr. Thompſon, groom of the houſhold furniture to the Duke of York, which, I preſume, is now improved, as it appears in this deſign.

The manufacturing part may eaſily be underſtood from the deſign by any workman; I ſhall, however, point out a few particulars. The arch which ſprings from the Ionic columns ſhould be glued up in thickneſs round a caul, and an architrave put on each ſide afterwards. The arch ſhould be tenoned into the columns, with iron plates ſcrewed on, ſo that it may be taken off when the bed is required to come down. In this arch a drapery is fixed, with a taſſel in the center, and a vaſe above. The head-board is framed all in one length, and the two inner ſides of the bed tenoned into the head-rail, and ſcrewed. The teſter is made in one, in which there are two domes, one over each compartment. It may, however, be made without domes, but not with ſo good effect. In the middle of the teſter, perpendi-

cular

cular to the ſides of the paſſage, are fixed two rods, for the curtains above mentioned. Theſe rods are hid by valances, and between the valances is formed a pannel, by ſewing on variegated margins to ſuit the reſt of the upholſtery work. The ornamented margins, and the oval with creſts in the center of the counterpanes, may all be printed to any pattern, at a manufactory which has been lately eſtabliſhed for ſuch purpoſes.

The ſcale ſhews the ſizes which applies to every part of the end of the bed, it being merely a geometrical elevation.

Of the French State-Bed. Plate XLV.

BEDS of this kind have been introduced of late with great ſucceſs in England.

The ſtyle of finiſhing them, with the management of the domes, is already deſcribed in general terms, in page 113, &c. I ſhall, therefore, omit it here, and proceed to give ſome hints relative to the manufacturing part. The dome is ſupported with iron rods of about an inch diameter, curved regularly down to each pillar, where they are fixed with a ſtrong ſcrew and nut. Theſe iron rods are covered and entirely hid by a valance, which comes in a regular ſweep, and meets in a point

at

at the vaſes on the pillars, as the deſign ſhews. Behind this valance, which continues all round, the drapery is drawn up by pulleys, and tied up by a ſilken cord and taſſels at the head of the pillars. The head-boards of theſe beds are framed and ſtuffed, and covered to ſuit the hangings, and the frame is white and gold, if the pillars and cornice are. The bed-frame is ſometimes ornamented, and has drapery valances below.

Obſerve, that grooves are made in the pillars to receive the head-boards, and ſcrewed at the top, by which means the whole is kept firm, and is eaſily taken to pieces. Square bolſters are now often introduced, with margins of various colours ſtitched all round. The counterpane has alſo theſe margins; they are alſo fringed at bottom, and have ſometimes a drapery tied up in cords and taſſels on the ſide.

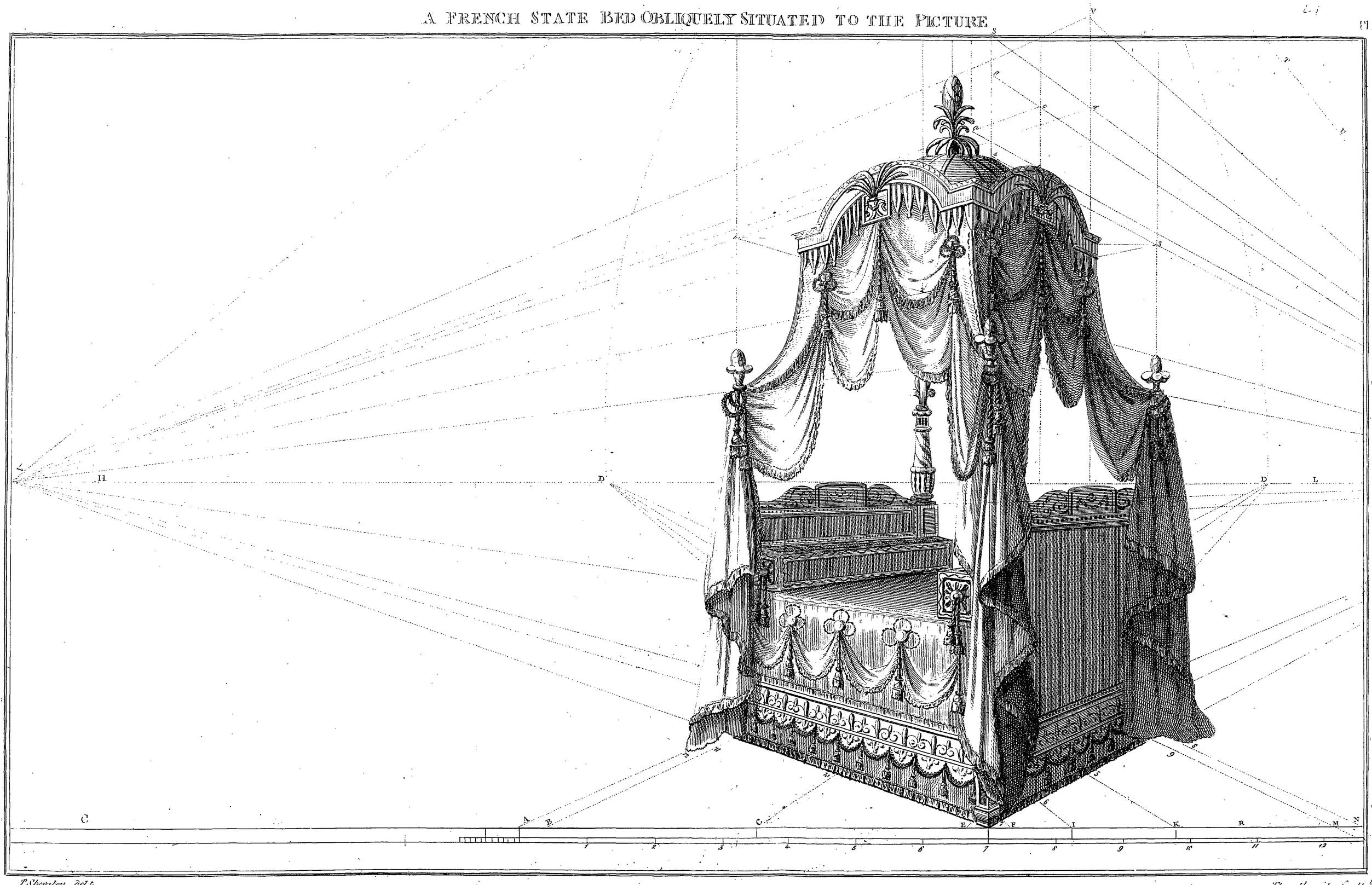
Of the Perſpective Lines.

THIS deſign is in an oblique ſituation, ſo termed becauſe none of its ends or ſides are paralled to the picture. I have here taken the neareſt angle of the bed for the center of the picture, from which raiſe a perpendicular as from ſeven on the ſcale line. Conſider next the height of the horizon, which ſhould be about five feet ſix, taken from the ſcale you draw the

bed by. On the perpendicular line now mentioned lay on the diſtance of the picture from the horizontal line. Then determine the poſition of one ſide of the bed, by drawing a line from the angle E to V; from V draw a line to the diſtance here out of the plate, on the aforeſaid perpendicular; from the diſtance draw a line T U at right angles with this, which produced cuts the horizon, and finds the vaniſhing point for the ends of the bed; conſequently V is the vaniſhing point for the ſides of the bed. From 7 to A is ſeven feet, the length of the ſide; and from 7 to N is the width of the bed. From N A draw lines to D D, the dividing centers, or meaſuring points, found as in Problem VI. Method 2. page 237, which will cut the viſuals for the apparent length and width of the bed. A perpendicular from 5 is the center of the end of the bed; S is the original height of the dome, from which a line is directed to the right hand vaniſhing point, cutting at *d*; a line from *d* finds the center of the dome, and V the top of the pine-apple; *c a* give the height of the cornice; the diagonals 1, 3, 2, 4, find the center of the dome, by raiſing a perpendicular from their interſection. Every other thing will follow of courſe to him who has previouſly ſtudied the rules given; without which, it would be impoſſible to make every particular underſtood here.

of

A FRENCH STATE BED OBLIQUELY SITUATED TO THE PICTURE



T. Sheraton delt.

Publd as the Act directs Feb.y 20 1792. by T. Sheraton

Thomthwaite sculp.

Of the Drawing-Room Chairs. Plates XXXII, XXXIV.

THESE chairs are finiſhed in white and gold, or the ornaments may be japanned; but the French finiſh them in mahogany, with gilt mouldings. The figures in the tablets above the front rails are on French printed ſilk or ſatin, ſewed on to the ſtuffing, with borders round them. The ſeat and back are of the ſame kind, as is the ornamented tablet at the top of the left-hand chair. The top rail is pannelled out, and a ſmall gold bead mitered round, and the printed ſilk is paſted on. Chairs of this kind have an effect which far exceeds any conception we can have of them from an uncoloured engraving, or even of a coloured one.

The perſpective lines in the left chair may ſerve as hints; but I need not explain them, ſince I have fully done this in Plate XXIV. and XXVI.

The parlour chairs in Plate XXXIII. and XXXVI. need no explanation, as every one muſt eaſily ſee how they are to be finiſhed.

Of the Sofa. Plate XXXV.

THESE are done in white and gold, or japanned. The looſe cuſhions at the back are generally made to fill the whole length, which would have taken four; but I could not make the deſign ſo ſtriking with four, becauſe they would not have been diſtinguiſhed from the back of the ſofa by a common obſerver. Theſe cuſhions ſerve at times for bolſters, being placed againſt the arms to loll againſt. The ſeat is ſtuffed up in front about three inches high above the rail, denoted by the figure of the ſprig running longways; all above that is a ſquab, which may be taken off occaſionally. If the top rail be thought to have too much work, it can be finiſhed in a ſtraight rail, as the deſign ſhews.

Of the Lady's Writing Table. Plate XXXVII.

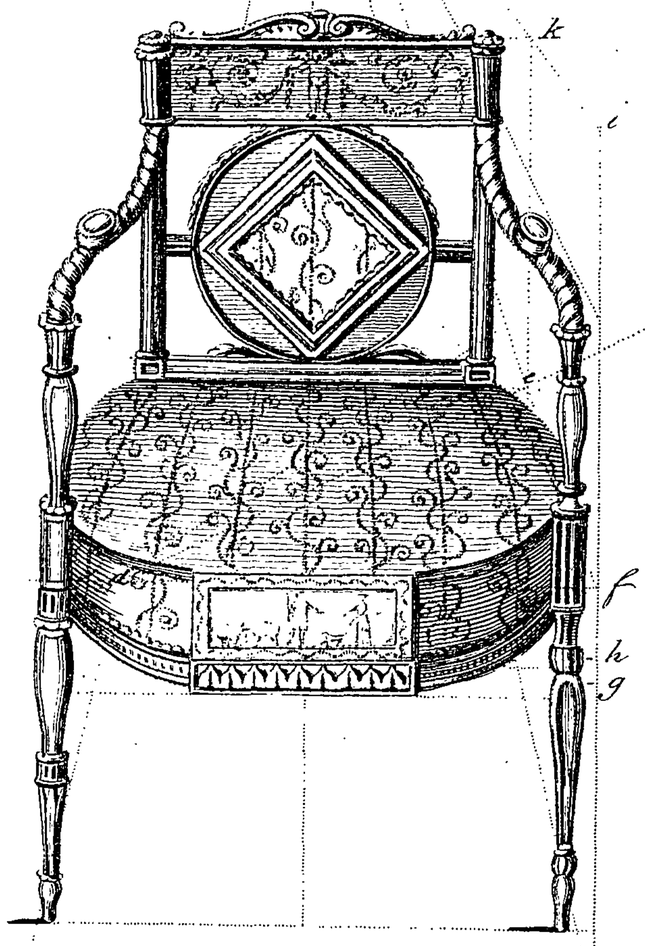
THE convenience of this table is, that a lady, when writing at it, may both receive the benefit of the fire, and have her face ſcreened from its ſcorching heat.

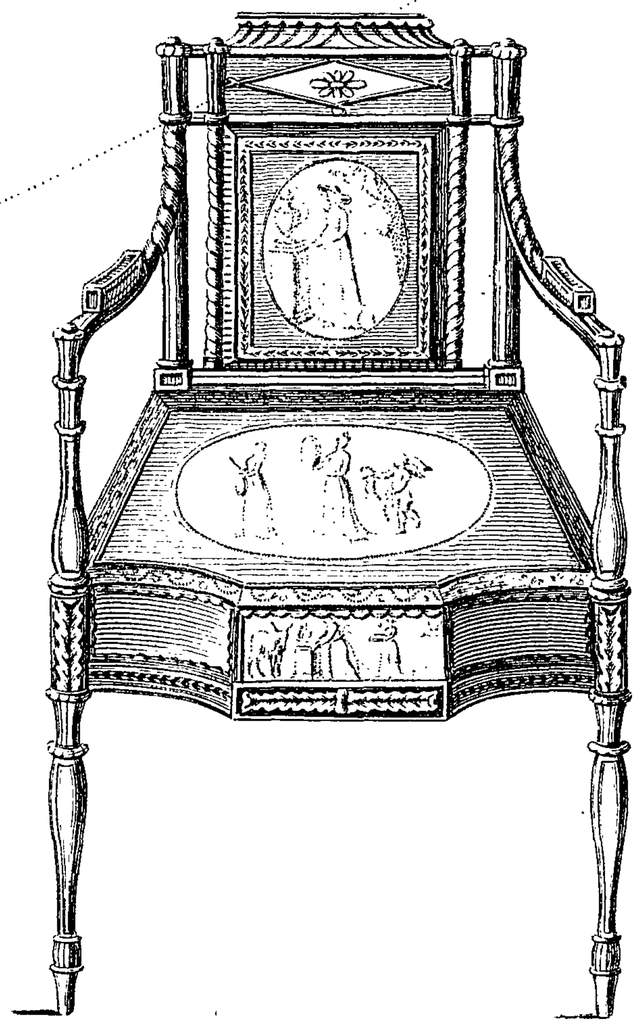
The ſtyle of finiſhing them is neat, and rather elegant. They are frequently made of ſatin-wood, croſs-banded, japanned, and the top lined with green leather.

H S D L

Plate 32

Drawing Room Chairs,





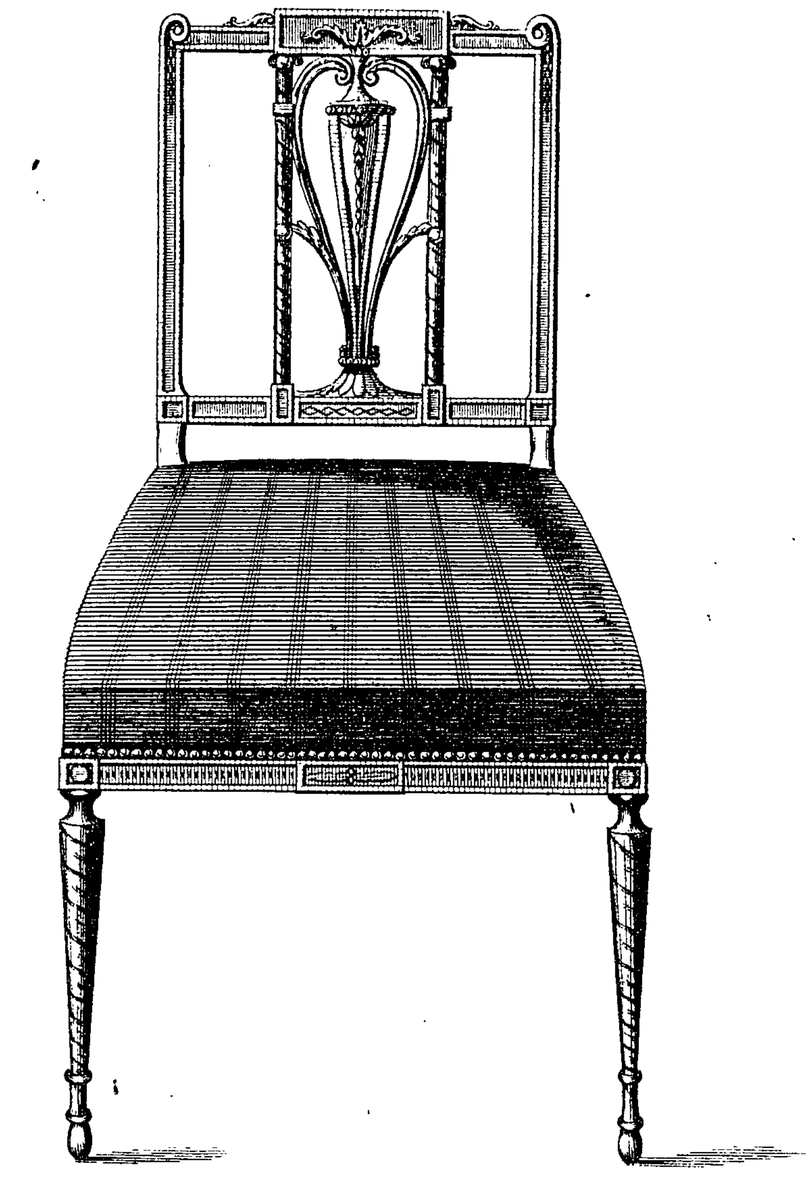
Whole Height of Back
Breadth of Back
Height of Seat

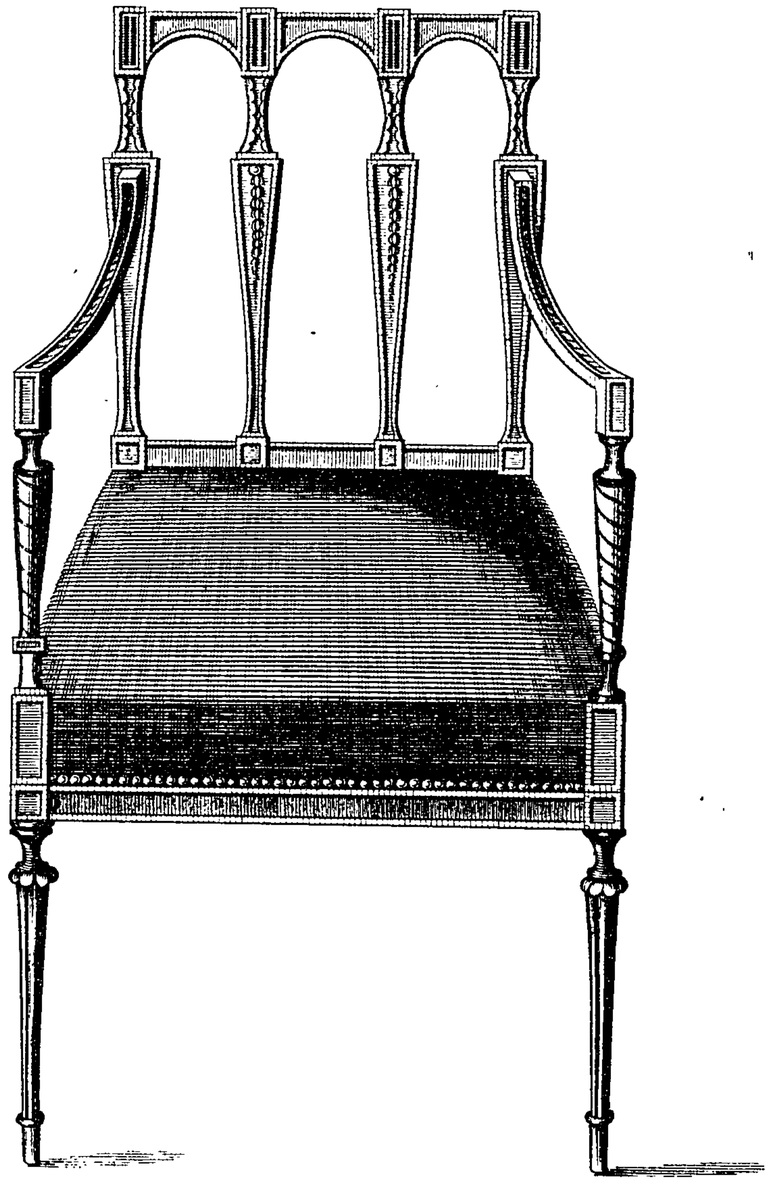
T. Sheraton del.t

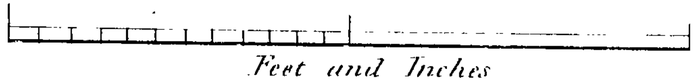
Publd as the Act directs Janry 17. 1792 by T. Sheraton.

Thornthwaite scu.t

Parlour Chairs





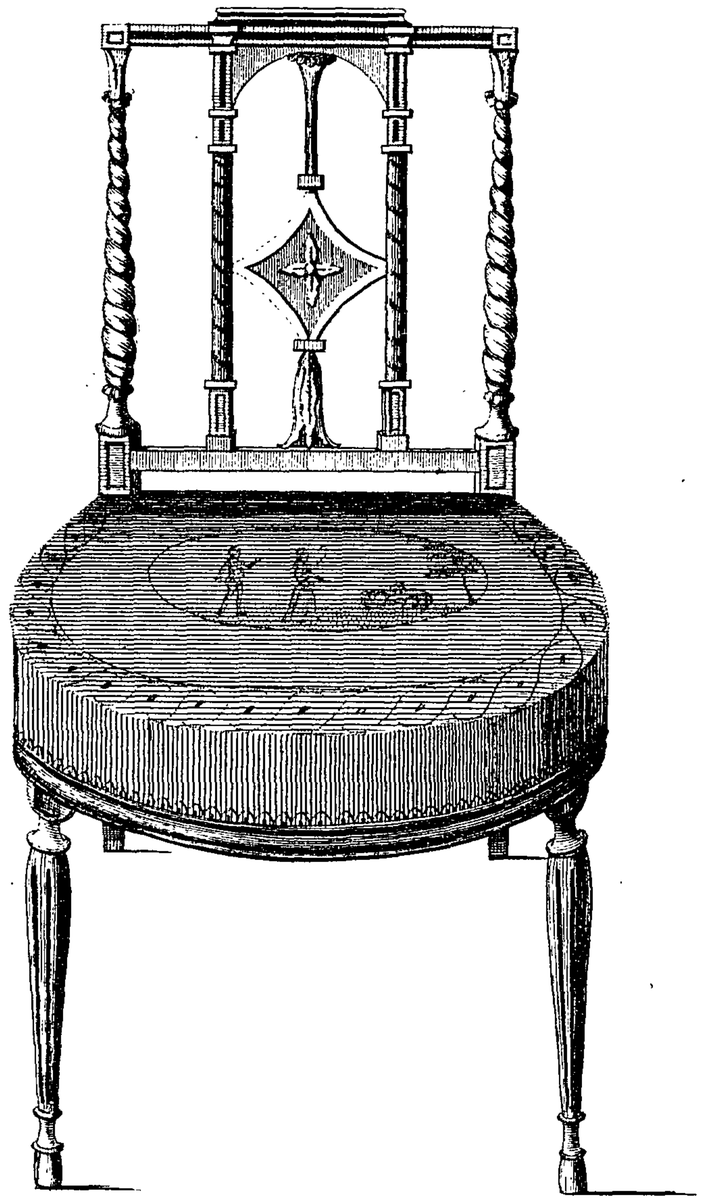


T. Sheraton Del.

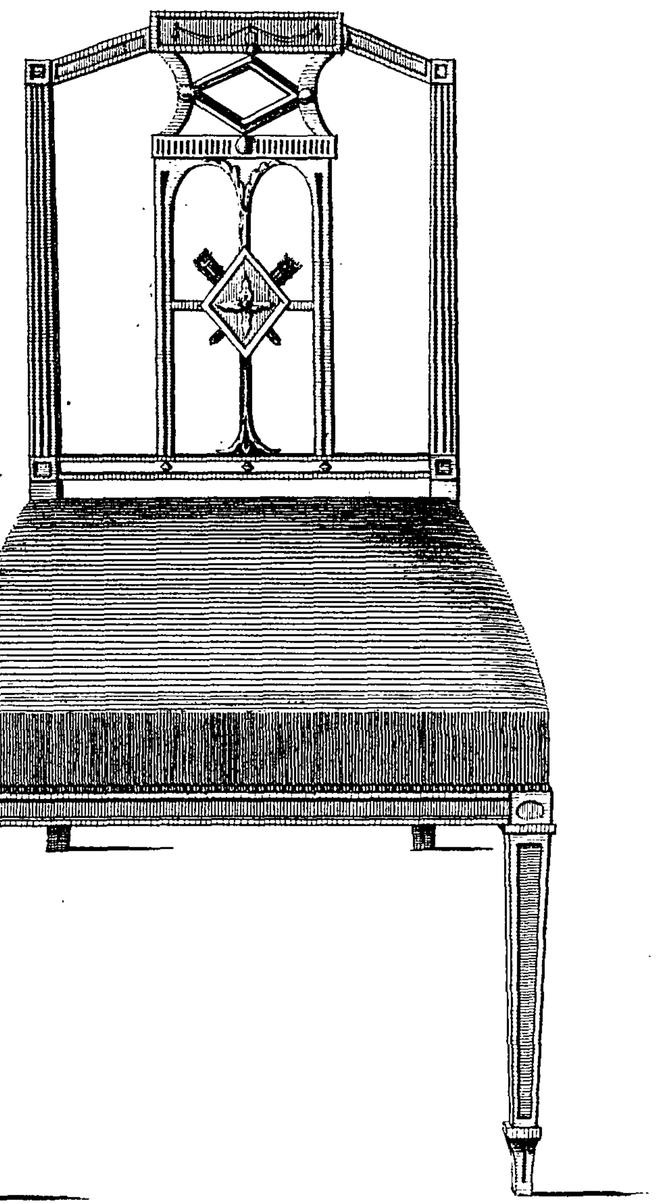
Published as the Act directs. by T. Sheraton. September 10th 1792.

J. Barlow. Sculp.

Drawing Room Chair



Parlour Chair

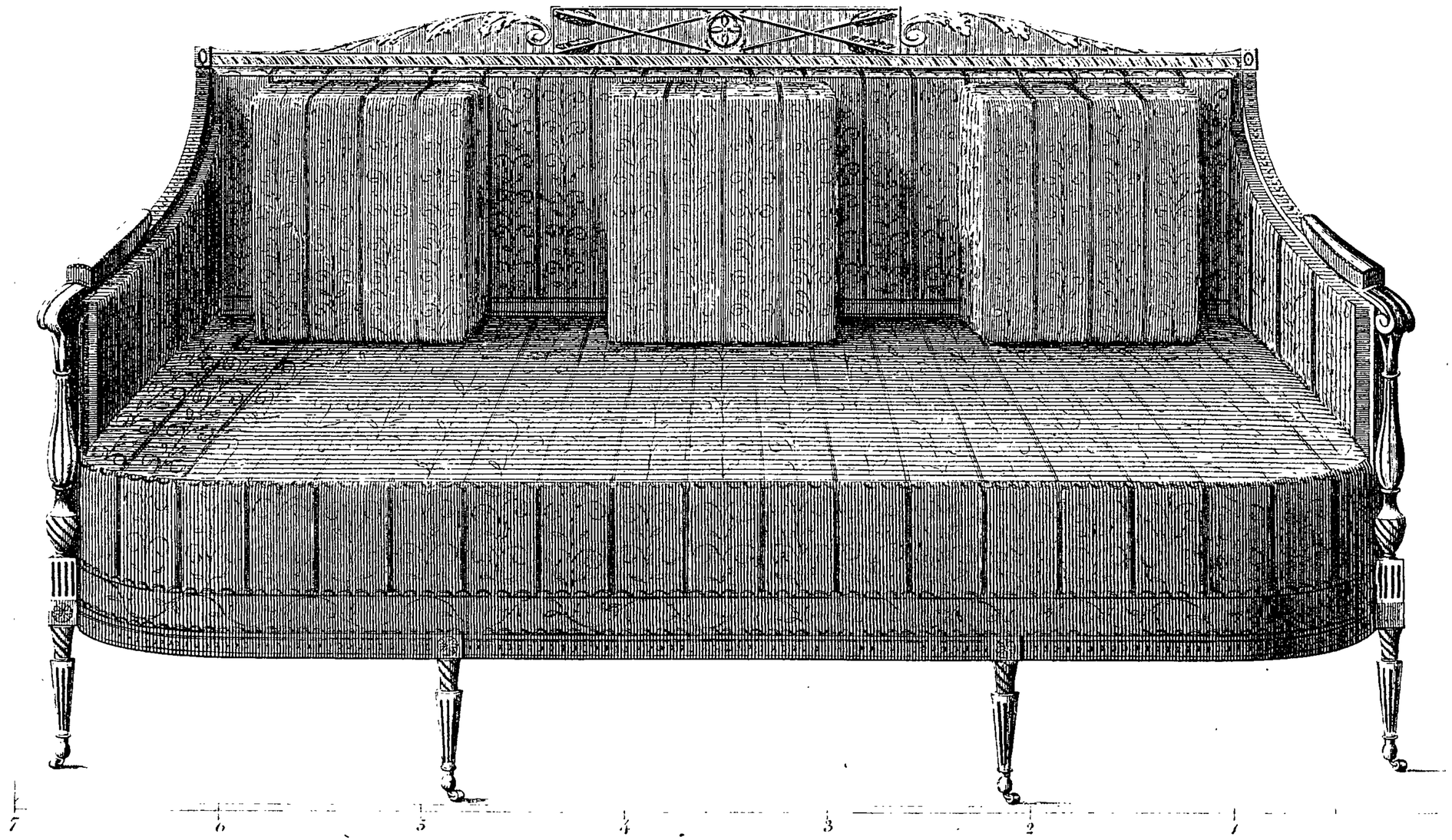


Feet & Inches

T. Sheraton. del.

Publishid as the Act directs by T. Sheraton, May. 12, 1792.

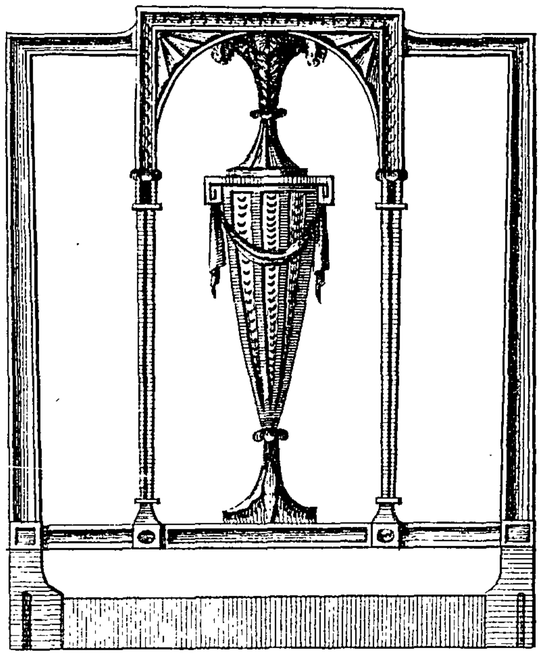
G. Terry. Sc



Feet & Inches.

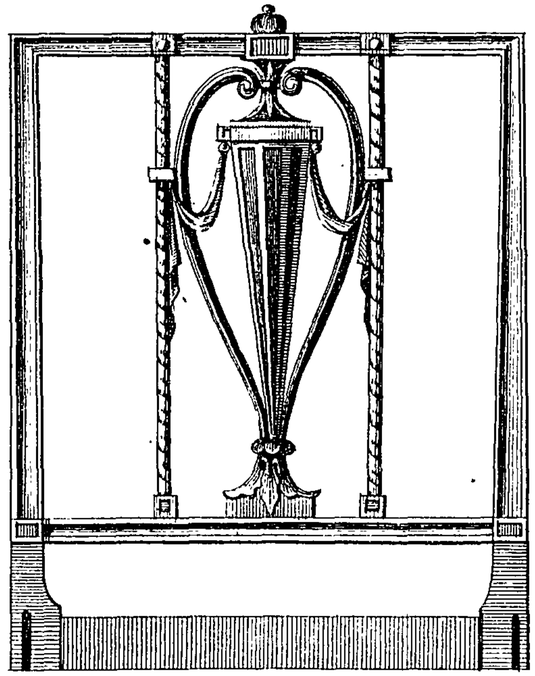
T. Sheraton, Del.: Pub. as the Act directs by T. Sheraton, Aug.st 20.th Towes sc.

N.°1.

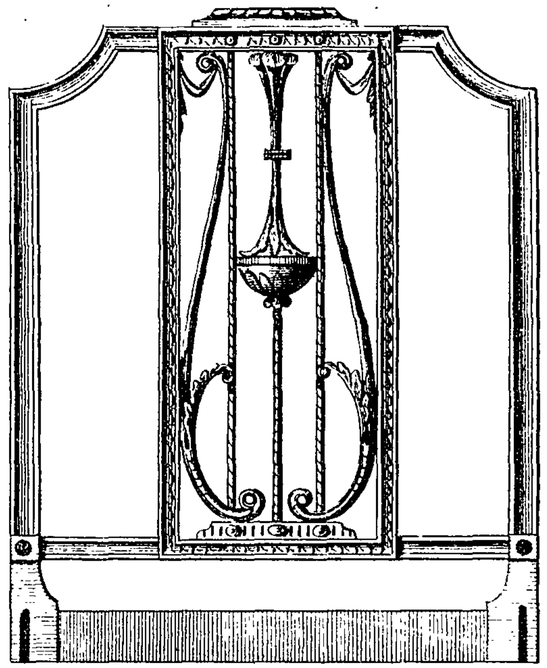


Inches

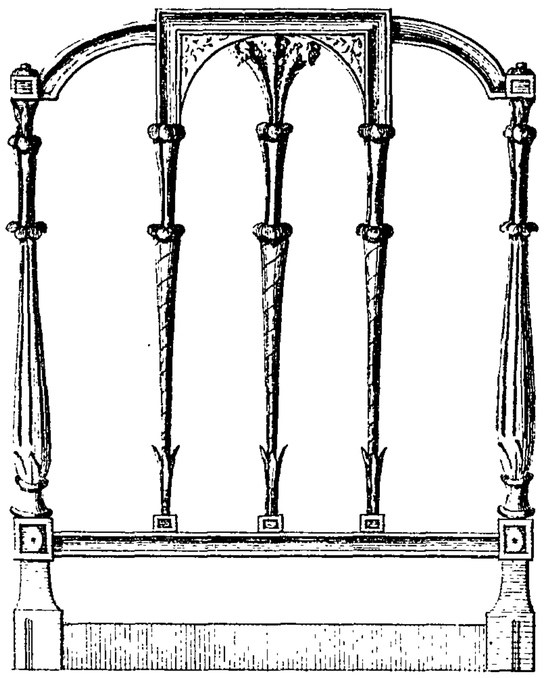
N.°2.



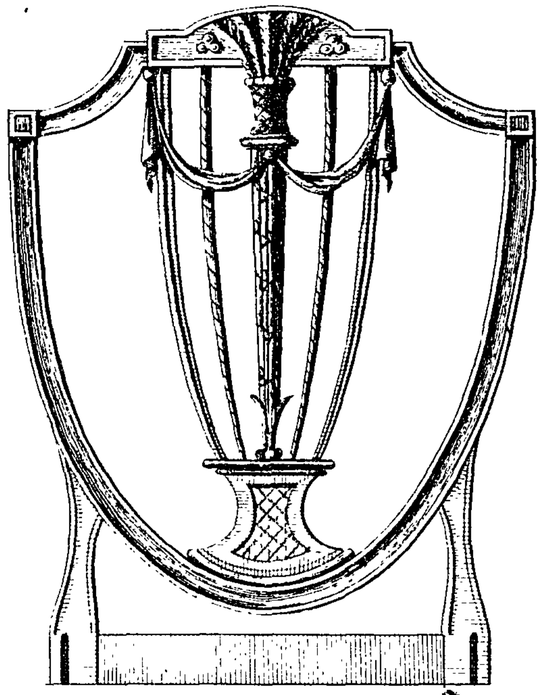
N.°3.



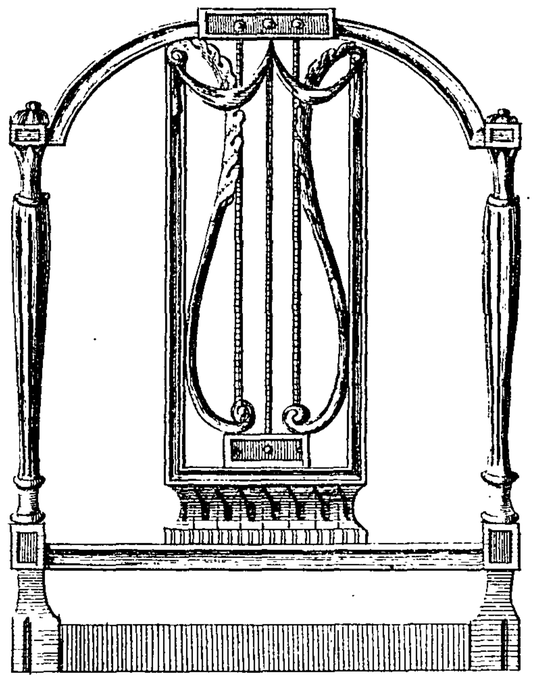
N.°4.



N.°5.



N.°6.



T. Sheraton. del.

Terry. Sc.

Published by T. Sheraton. Aug. 1792.

The manufacturing part is a little perplexing to a ſtranger, and therefore I have been particular in ſhewing as much as I well could on the plate.

Obſerve, that in the ſide-boxes the ink-drawer is on the right, and the pen-drawer on the left. Theſe both fly out of themſelves, by the force of a common ſpring, when the knob on which the candle-branch is fixed is preſſed. Figure A is the ſpring which is let in under the candle-branch; C is a lever which is preſſed to B, the end of the drawers, by a ſpring riſing from D; N is a part of the candle-branch, and *e* is the knob juſt mentioned, which is capable of being preſſed down; therefore, if P be ſcrewed into E by preſſing *e*, C riſes and relieves B, which immediately ſtarts out, by a common ſpring fixed on the inſide of the boxes.

Obſerve a patera in the center of the back amidſt the ornament. This patera communicates to a ſpring of preciſely the ſame kind as A; which ſpring keeps down the ſcreen when the weights are up: and by touching the ſaid patera, which has a knob in its center like *e*, the ſpring is relieved, and the weights of courſe ſend up the ſcreen, being ſomewhat aſſiſted by a ſpring at the bottom, which may be ſeen in the deſign. Figure T ſhews the lead weight, how the pulleys are fixed, and the manner of framing the ſcreen before it is covered with ſtuff.

The

The workman will obſerve, that a thin piece of mahogany ſlides out in a groove, to afford acceſs to the weights, and afterwards encloſe them.

There is a drawer under the top, which extends the whole of the ſpace between the legs.

The ſcale ſhews the length of the table, *b* its height, *a* the depth of the drawer, *b c* the depth of the ſide-boxes, and *e d* the height of the ſwell of the ſcreen part; the width of the table is twenty inches.

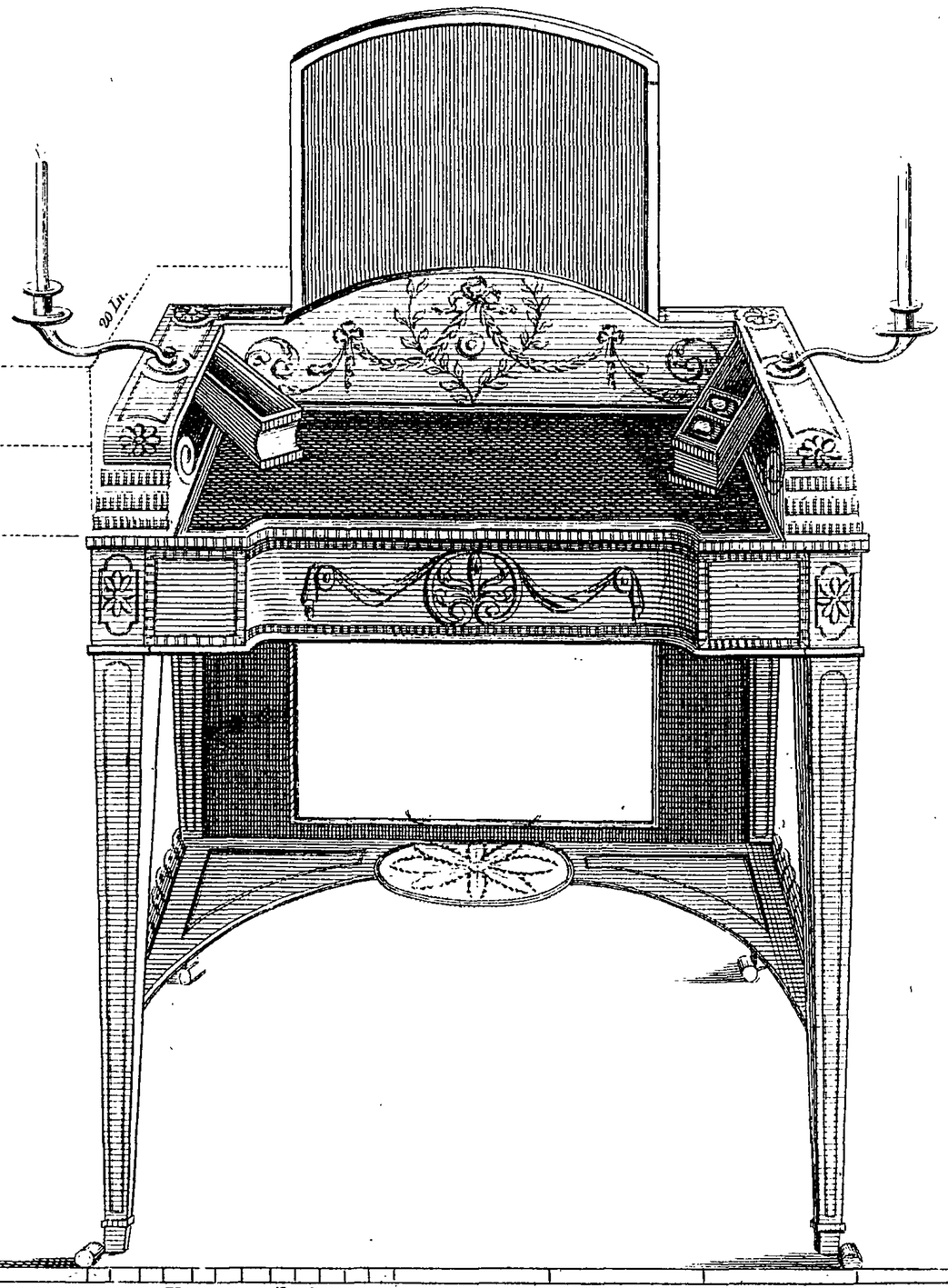
Of the Tripod Fire-Screens. Plate XXXVIII.

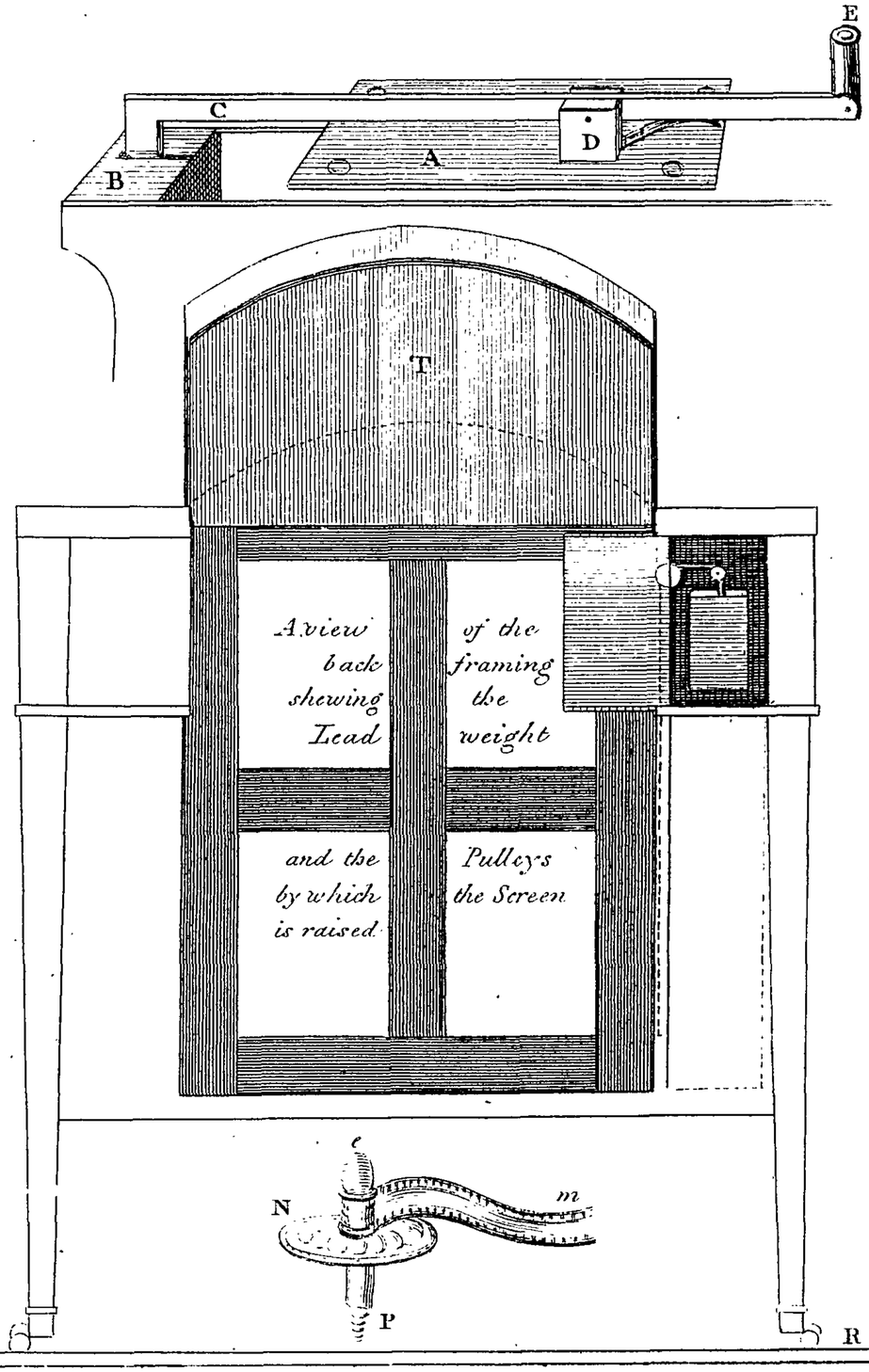
SCREENS of this kind are termed tripod *, becauſe they have three feet or legs.

The middle ſcreen may be finiſhed in white and gold, or japanned; and the other two of mahogany, or japanned. The rods of theſe ſcreens are all ſuppoſed to have a hole through them, and a pulley let in near the top on which the line paſſes,

* Tripod, of τρεις, *treis*, three; and ποδιον, *podion*, a foot. Anciently the word tripod uſed to be applied to a kind of ſacred three-footed ſtool, on which the heathen prieſts were ſeated to receive and deliver their oracles: from which we may learn how time alters words.

and





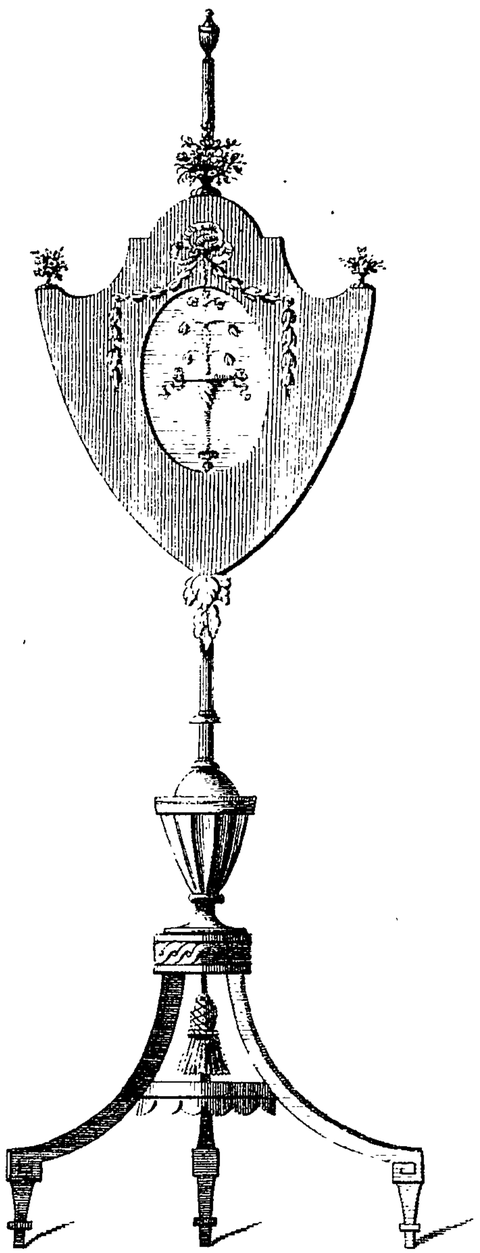
Feet and Inches 1 2

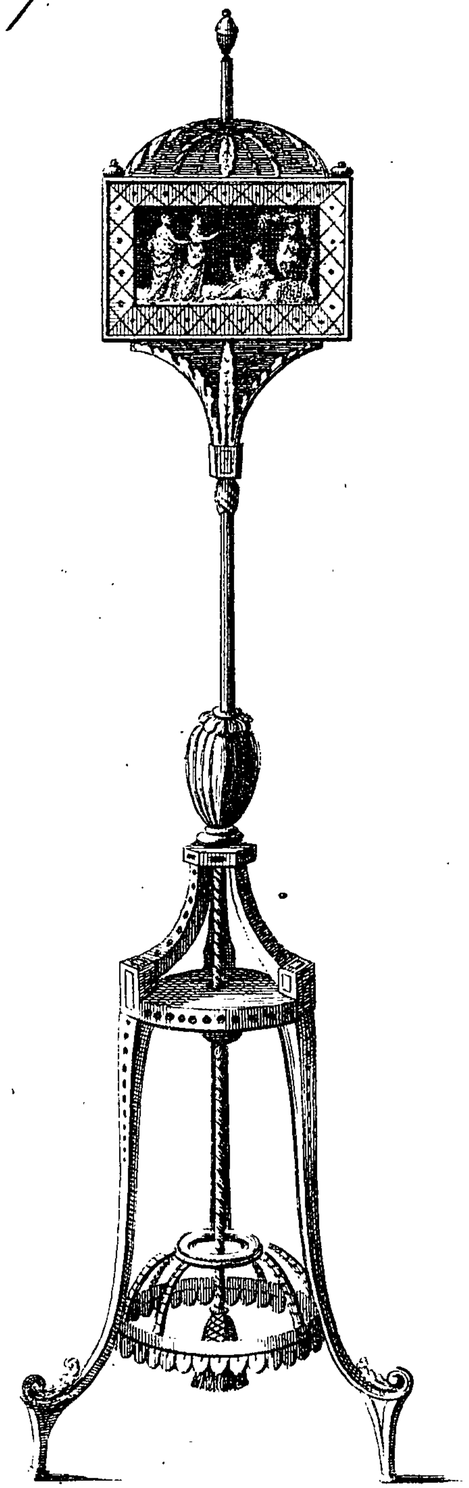
I. Sheraton delt.

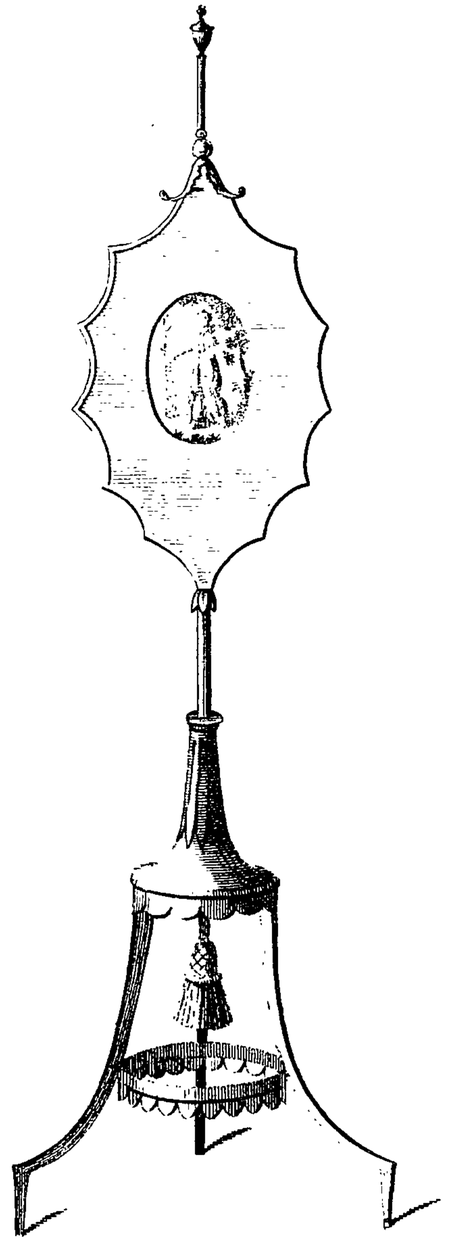
Published as the Act directs March 4. 1792. by T. Sheraton.

Thornthwaite sculpt.

Tripod Fire-screens







T Sheraton delin

Published as the Act directs by T Sheraton April 2 1792

G Terry Sc

and a weight being encloſed in the taffel, the ſcreen is balanced to any height. The rods are often made ſquare, which indeed beſt ſuits thoſe which have pulleys, while thoſe that are made round have only rings and ſprings.

Such ſcreens as have very fine prints, or worked ſatin commonly have a glaſs before them. In which caſe a frame is made, with a rabbet to receive the glaſs, and another to receive the ſtraining frame, to prevent it from breaking the glaſs; and to encloſe the ſtraining frame a bead is mitered round.

Of the Knife-Caſes and Lady's Travelling-Box. Plate XXXIX.

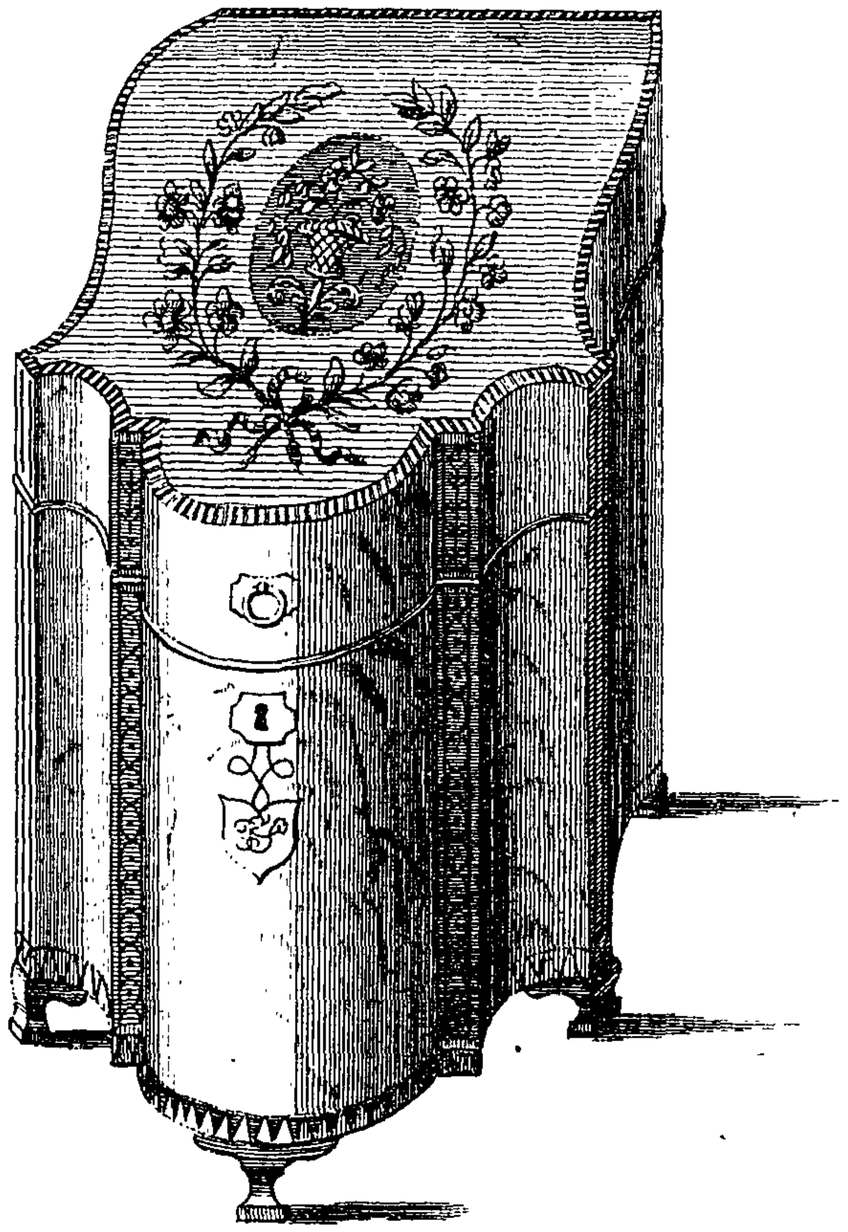
LITTLE need be ſaid reſpecting theſe. It is only wanted to be obſerved, that the corner pilaſters of the left-hand caſe has ſmall flutes of white holly or other coloured wood let in, and the middle pilaſters have very narrow croſs-bands all round, with the pannels japanned in ſmall flowers. The top is ſometimes japanned, and ſometimes has only an inlaid patera. The half columns of the right-hand caſe are ſometimes fluted out, and ſometimes the flutes are let in. The feet may be turned and twiſted, which will have a good effect.

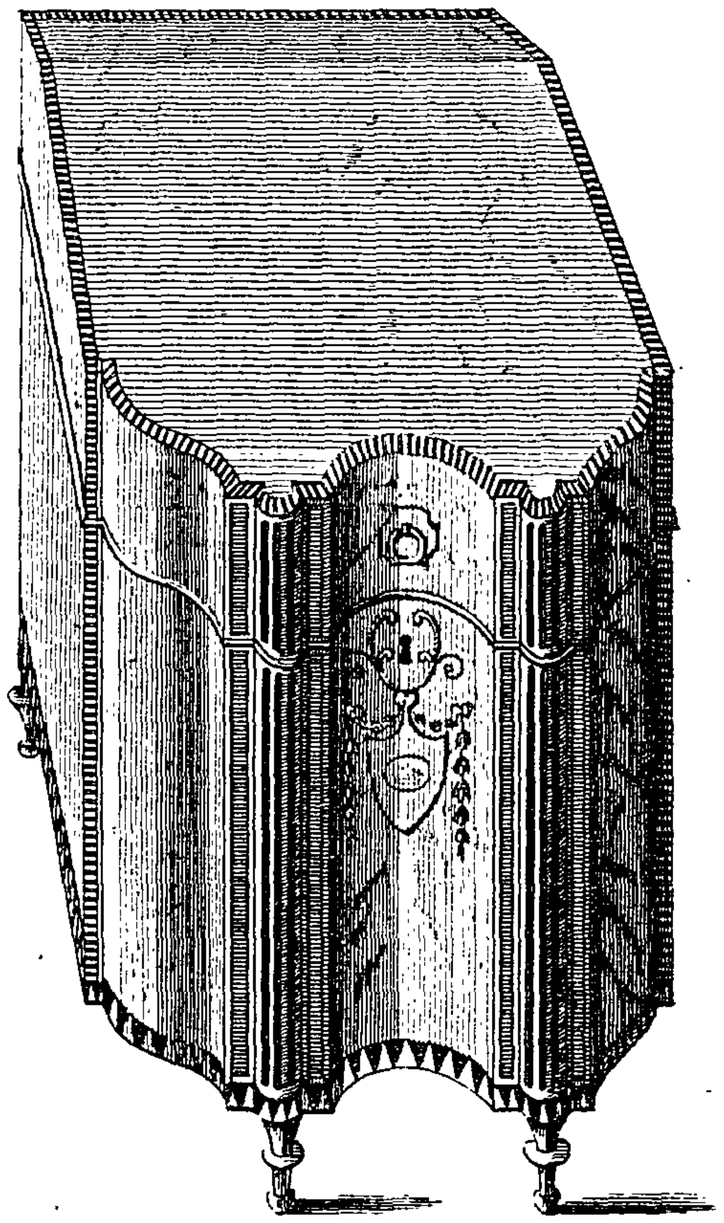
As

As theſe caſes are not made in regular cabinet ſhops, it may be of ſervice to mention where they are executed in the beſt taſte, by one who makes it his main buſineſs; *i. e.* John Lane, No. 44, St. Martin's-le-grand, London.

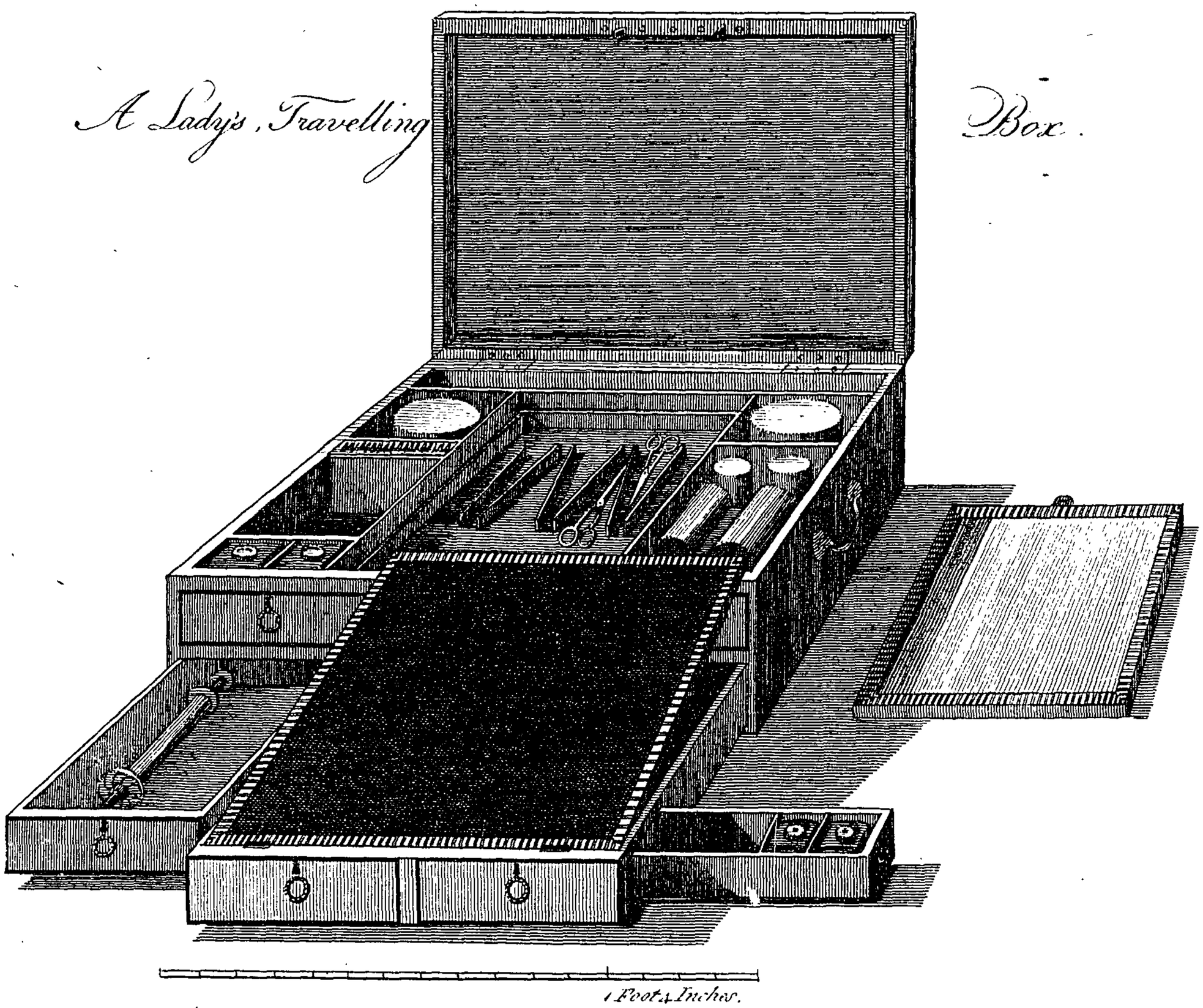
The Lady's travelling-box in the ſame plate, is intended to accommodate her in her travels with conveniences for writing, dreſſing, and working. The front is divided into the appearance of ſix ſmall drawers; the upper three ſham, and the under real. The writing-drawer takes up two of theſe fronts in length, and contains an ink-drawer, and a top hinged to the front, lined with green cloth. The top being hinged at front, by puſhing in the drawer, it will riſe to any pitch. The other drawer on the left, which only takes up one front, holds a kind of windlaſs or roller, for the purpoſe of fixing and winding up lace as it is worked. The middle vacuity, which holds the ſciſſors and other articles of that nature, takes out, which gives acceſs to a convenience below it for holding ſmall things. The boxes on each ſide hold powder, pomatum, ſcent-bottles, rings, &c. The dreſſing-glaſs, which is here repreſented out of the box, fits into the vacuity above the ſciſſor-caſe.

Of





A Lady's Travelling Box.



1 Foot 4 Inches.

Sheraton del

Pubd as the Act directs by T. Sheraton Nov. 27. 1792.

Gleny Sculp

Of the Corner Baſon-Stands. Plate XLII.

THE right-hand baſon-ſtand contains a cupboard and a real drawer below it; by the top folding down the baſon is incloſed and hid when it is not in uſe. The left-hand top is fixed to the ſide of the baſon-ſtand by a rule-joint, the ſame as the flap of a Pembroke table; but inſtead of iron the hinges are made of braſs. The right-hand top is hinged to the other by common butt-hinges, by which means it will fold againſt the other, and both may be turned down together. When the tops are in their place, there then appears a rule-joint on both ſides. The front edges of the tops are hollowed and beaded, which hang a little over, ſo that the fingers may get hold to raiſe them up. Short tenons are put to the under edge of the right-hand top, to keep it in its place on the end of the lower part.

The baſon-ſtand on the left has a rim round the top, and a tambour door to incloſe the whole of the upper part, in which is a ſmall ciſtern. The lower part has a ſhelf in the middle, on which ſtands a veſſel to receive the dirty water conveyed by a pipe from the baſon. Theſe ſort are made large, and the baſon being brought cloſe to the front, gives plenty of room. The advantage of this kind of baſon-ſtand is, that they may ſtand in a

genteel room without giving offence to the eye, their appearance being ſomewhat like a cabinet.

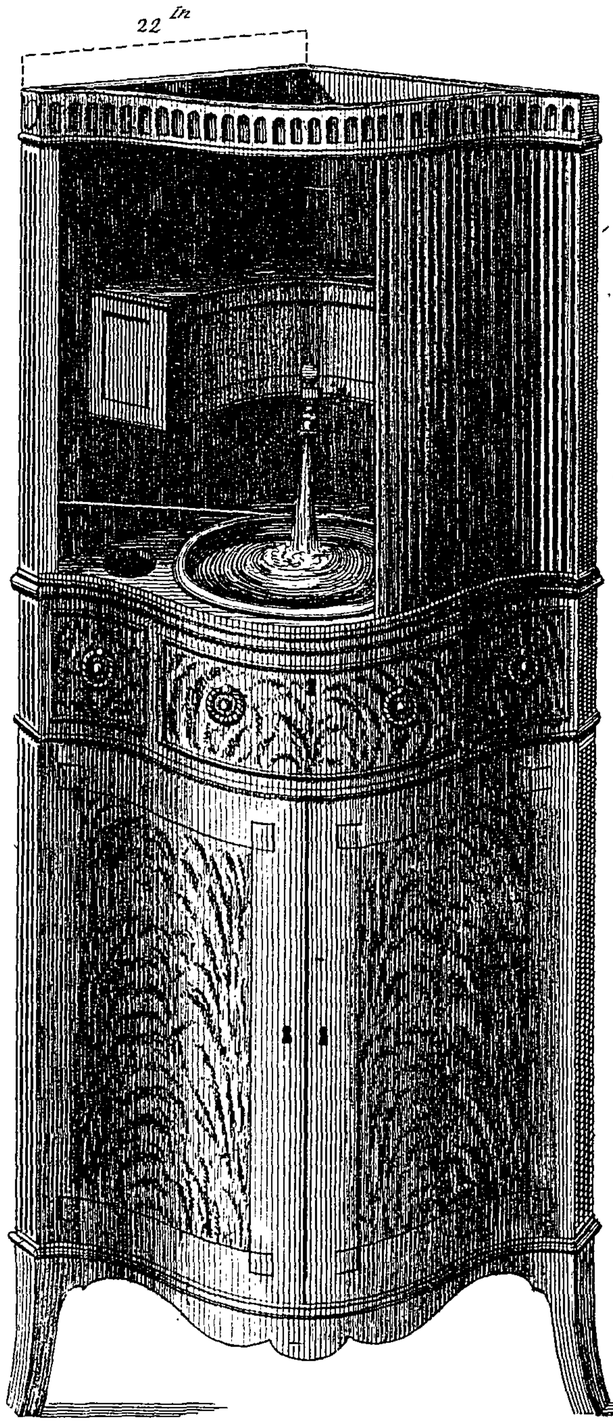
Of the Deſigns in Plate XLIII.

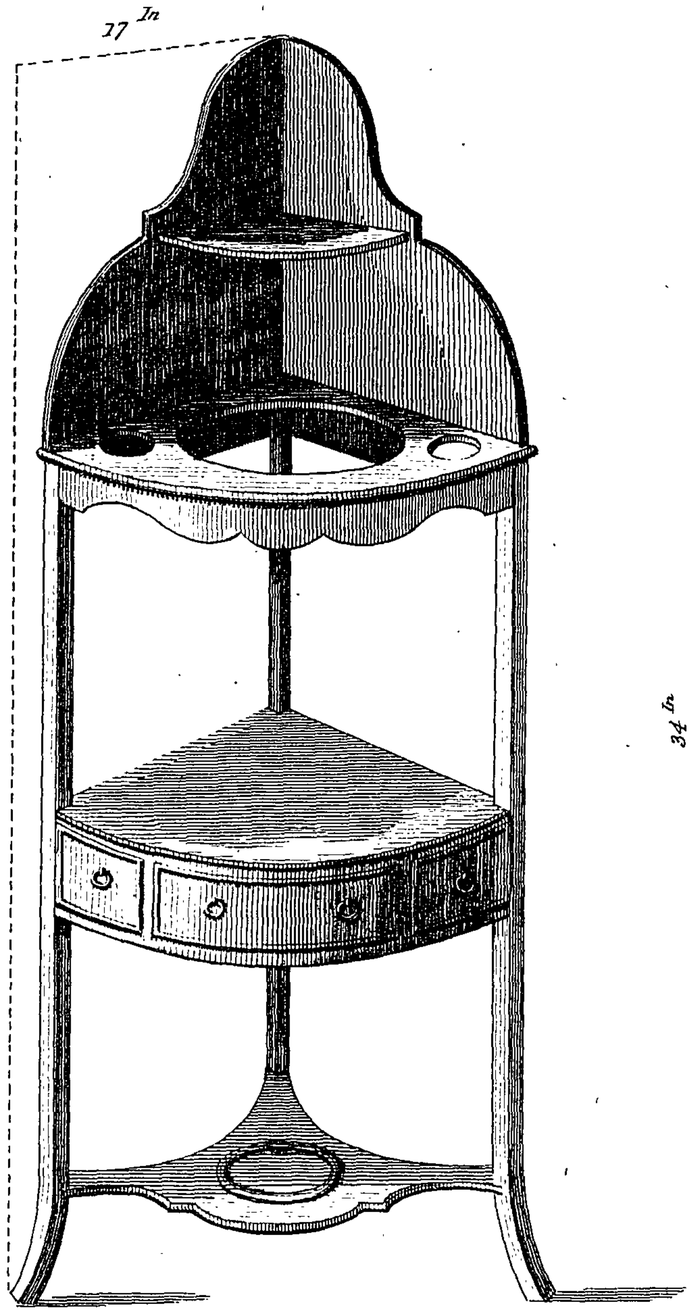
THE drawer in the waſh-hand ſtand is lined with lead, into which the baſon is emptied. The upper part, which contains the ciſtern, takes off occaſionally. Below the drawer is a cupboard. Obſerve, that in the deſign the drawer back is ſuppoſed to be behind the baſon; but before the drawer is wholly taken away, the baſon muſt be taken out.

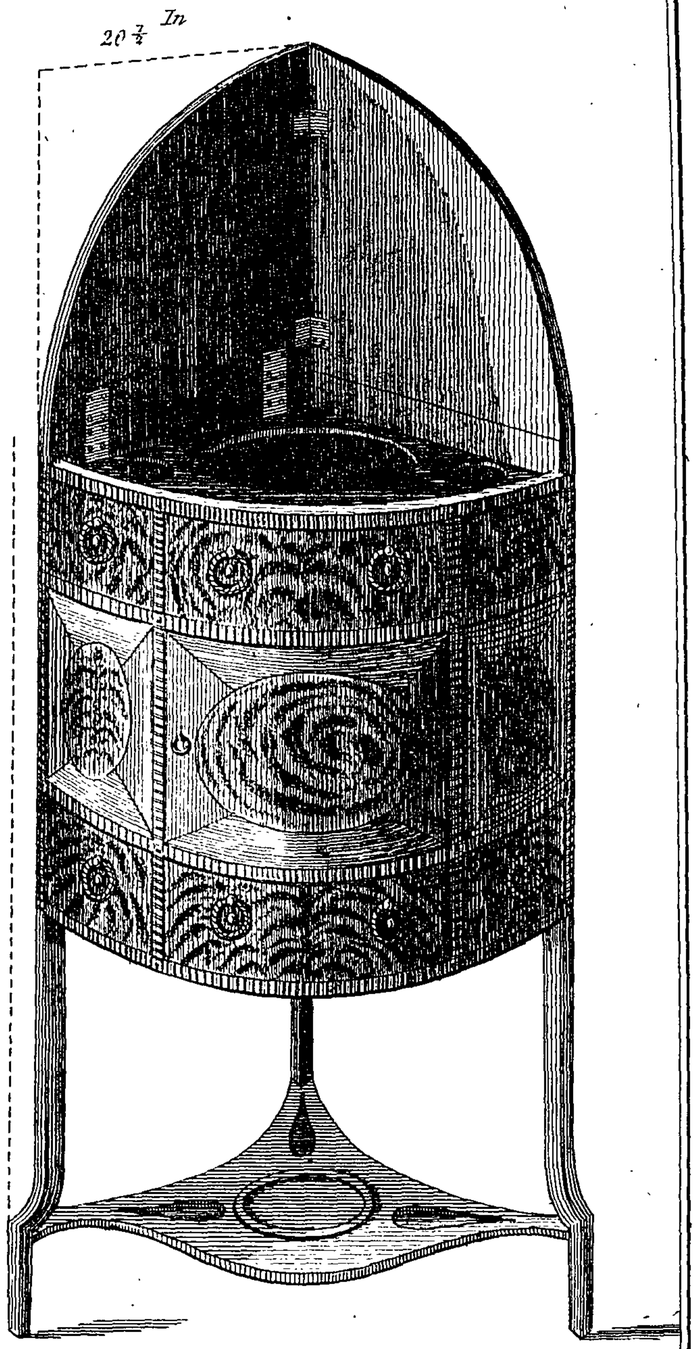
Of the Pot-Cupboard.

THESE are uſed in genteel bed-rooms, and are ſometimes finiſhed in ſatin-wood, and in a ſtyle a little elevated above their uſe. The two drawers below the cupboard are real. The partitions may be croſs-banded, and a ſtring round the corners of the drawer. Theſe feet are turned, but ſometimes they are made ſquare. Sometimes there are folding doors to the cupboard part, and ſometimes a curtain of green ſilk, fixed on a braſs wire at top and bottom; but in this deſign a tambour door is uſed, as preferable. The upper cupboard contains ſhelves, and is intended to keep medicines to be taken in the night, or to hold other little articles which ſervants are not permitted to overlook.

Corner Basin Stands.







T. Sheraton. delin.

J. Barlow. sculp.

Published as the Act directs by T. Sheraton Nov.r 14. 1792.

Of the Lady's Secretary.

THESE are ſometimes finiſhed in black roſe-wood and tulip croſs-banding, together with braſs mouldings, which produce a fine effect. The upper ſhelf is intended to be marble, ſupported with braſs pillars, and a braſs ornamented rim round the top. The lower part may be fitted up in drawers on one ſide, and the other with a ſhelf to hold a lady's hat, or the like.

Of the Screen-Table.

THIS table is intended for a lady to write or work at near the fire; the ſcreen part behind ſecuring her face from its injuries. There is a drawer below the ſlider, and the ſlider is lined with green cloth.

The back feet are grooved out for the ſcreen to ſlide in; in each of which grooves is fixed a ſpring to balance the ſcreen by. The top is firſt croſs-banded all round; then a border is put on, ſo broad as to fall exactly where the joint of the ſcreen will be in the top. Beyond that again is put a narrower croſs-banding. When the ſcreen is down the top appears uniform, without any joint, at leaſt not ſo as to be offenſive to the eye. The ſtraining

frame of the ſcreen is made of thin wainſcot, and framed in four pannels. When the ſaid frame is covered in the manner of any other ſcreen, ſlips are got out and grooved and mitered round, and a part of the top which riſes up with the ſcreen is glued on to the ſlip, and as of courſe the top will project over behind, ſo it affords hold for the hand to raiſe the ſcreen by.

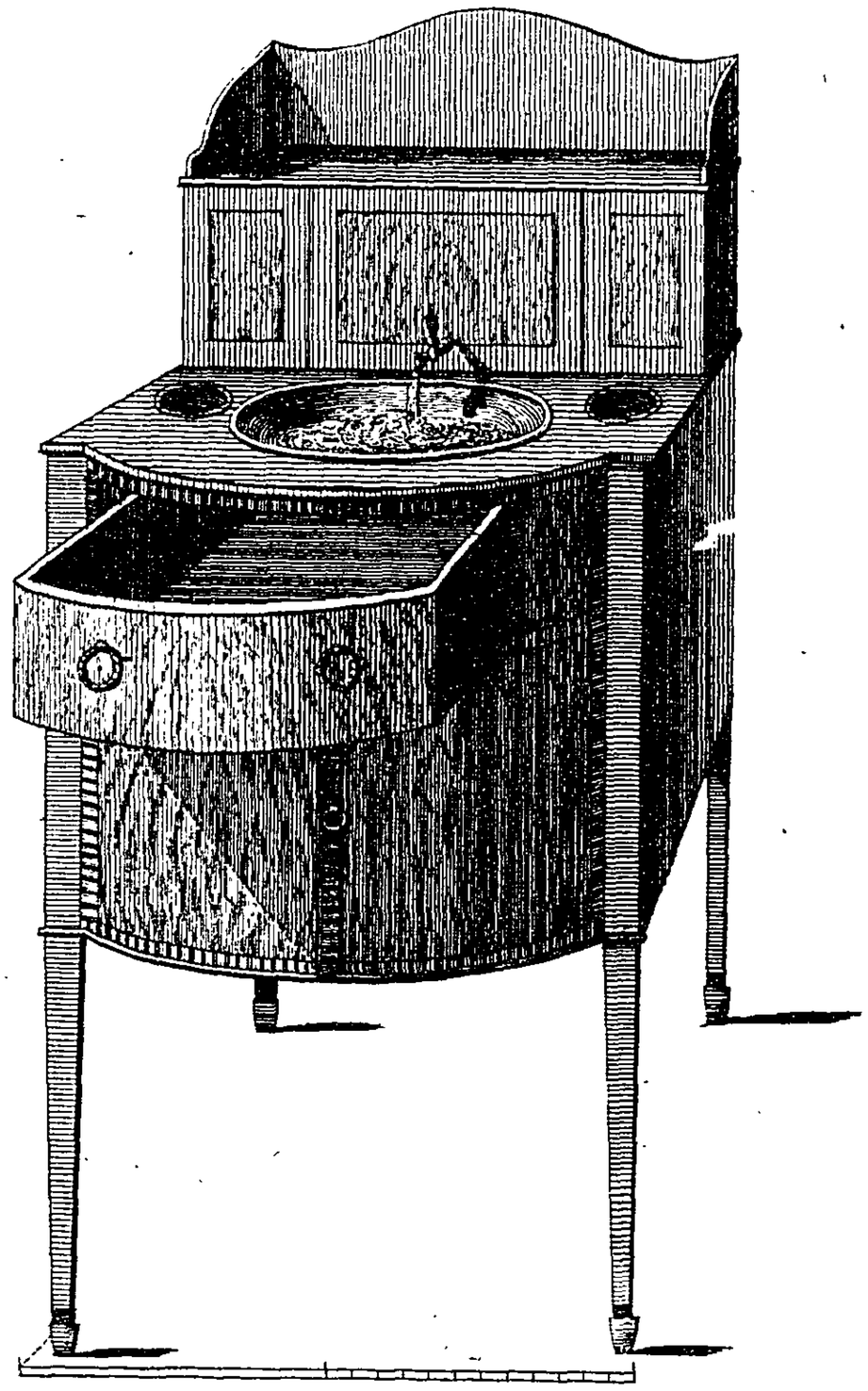
Of the two Tables, Plate XLIV.

THE left-hand table is to write and read at. The top is lined with leather or green cloth, and croſs-banded. To ſtop the book there are two braſs plates let in, with key-holes; and in the moulding, which is to ſtop the book, are two pins, with heads and ſhoulders, by which the moulding is effectually ſecured.

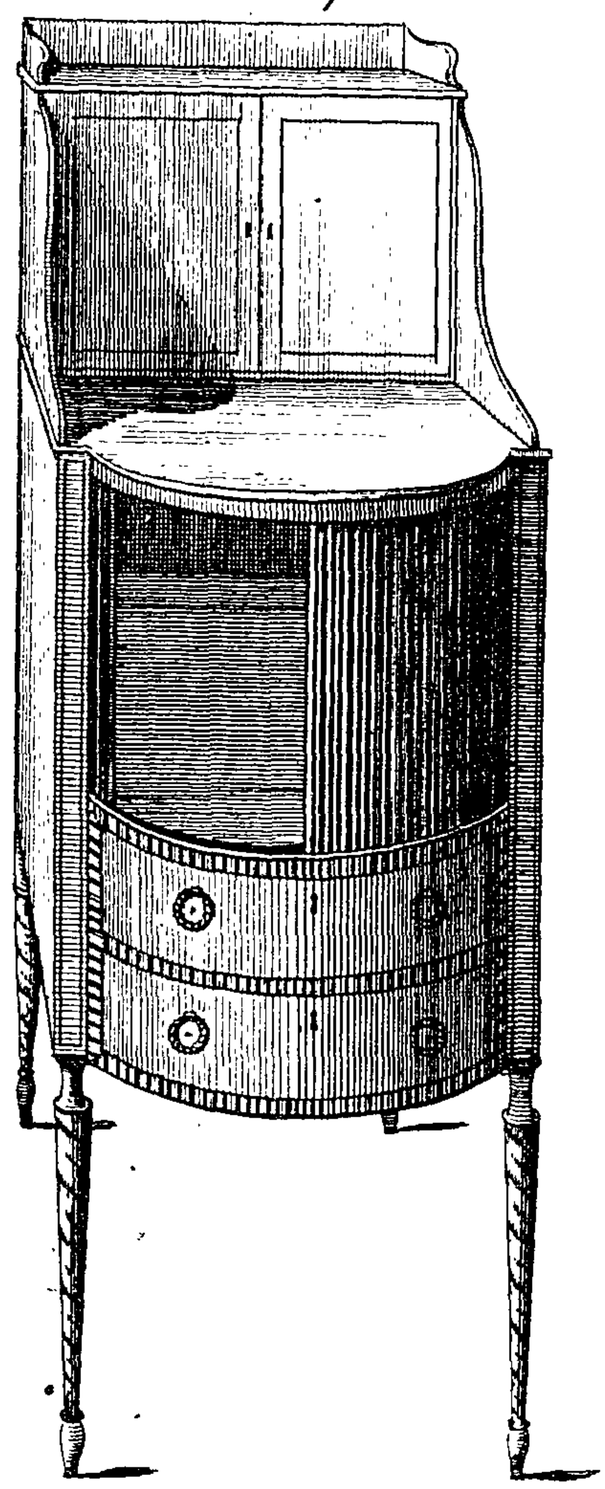
The right-hand table is meant to write at only. The top part takes off from the under part, which, having a bead let in at the back and ends of the top, prevents the top part from moving out of its place. This table being made for the convenience of moving from one room to another, there is a handle fixed on to the upper ſhelf, as the drawing ſhews. In the drawer is a ſlider to write on, and on the right-hand of it ink, ſand, and pens. The ſizes are ſhewn by the ſcales.

Of

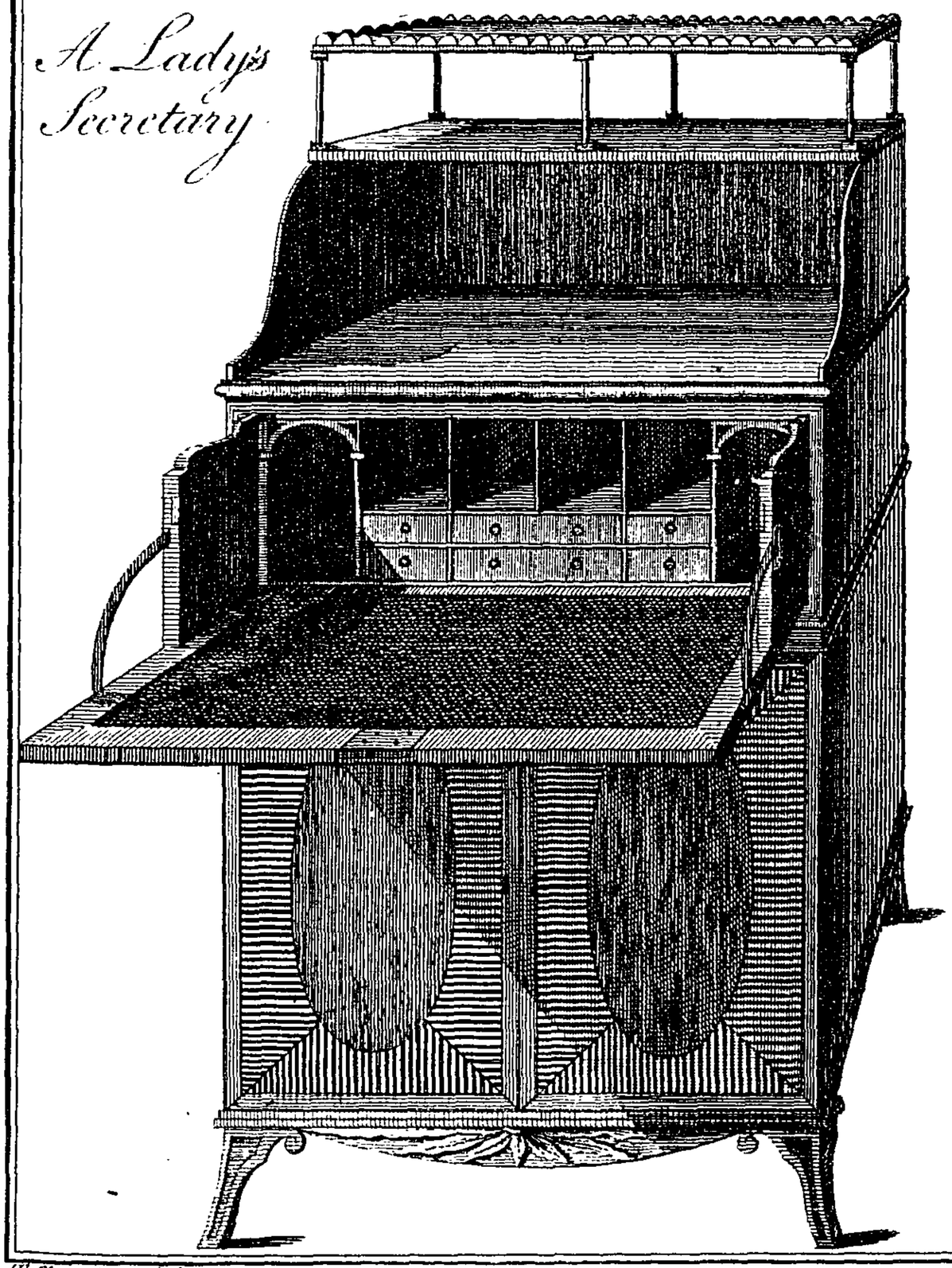
A Wash-hand Stand.



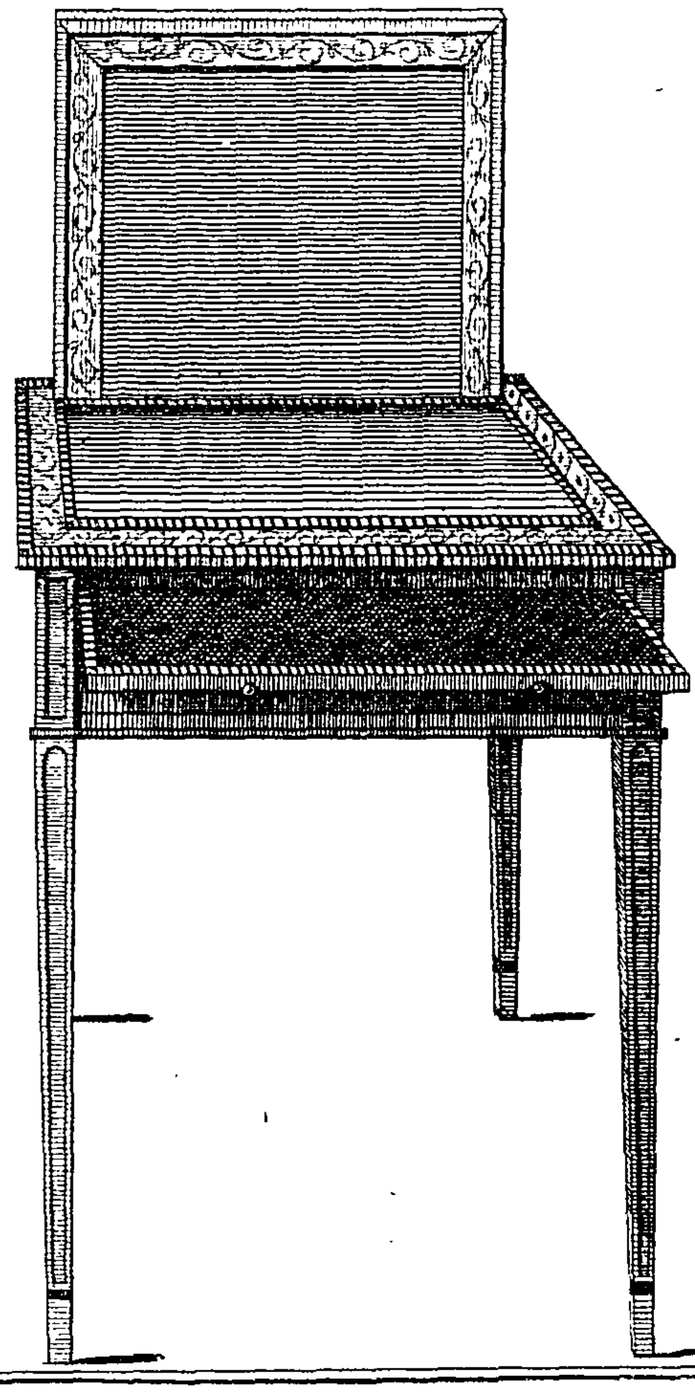
A Pot Cupboard



A Lady's Secretary



A Screen Table

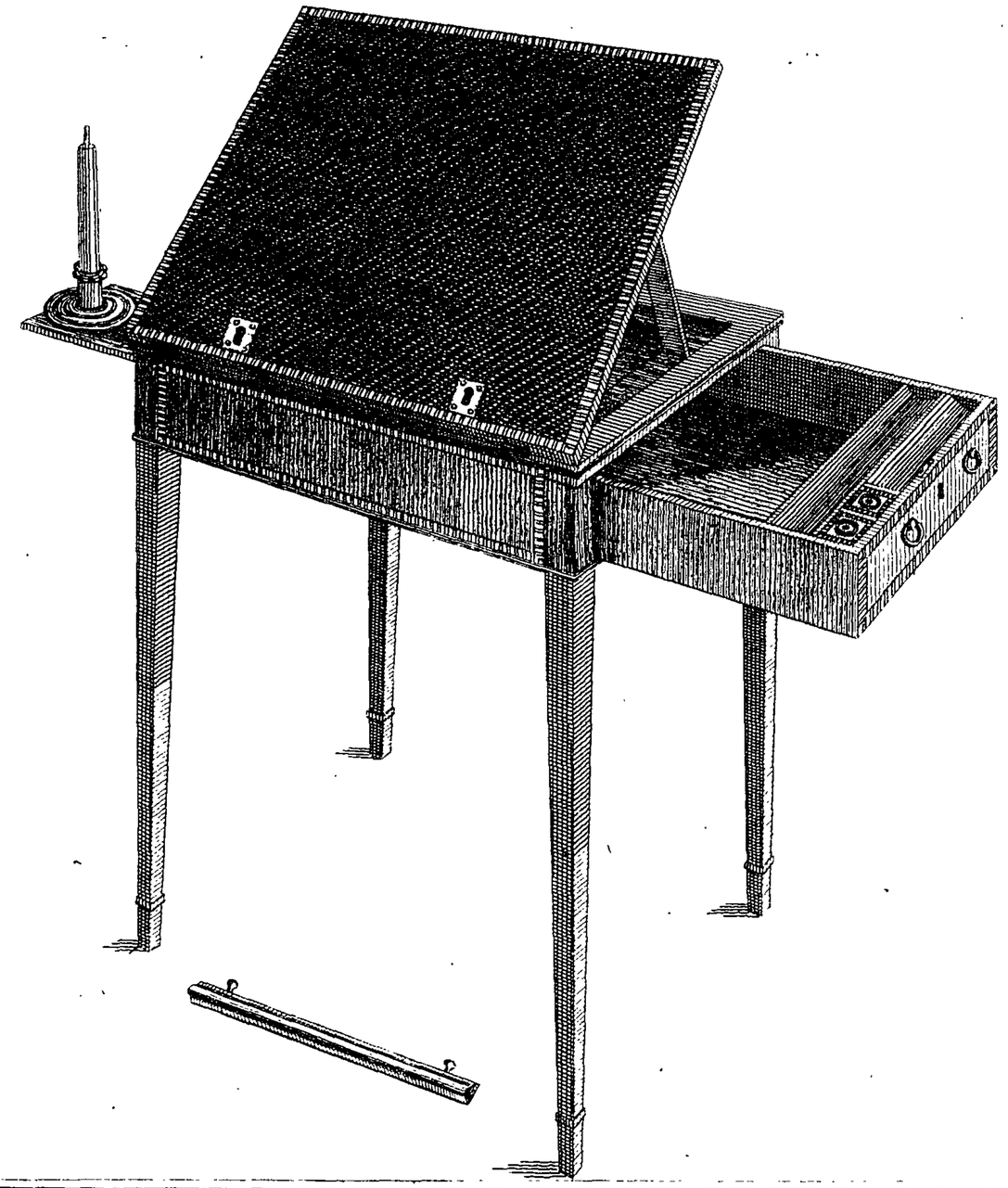


T. Sheraton. del.

Published by T. Sheraton Sept. 27. 1792.

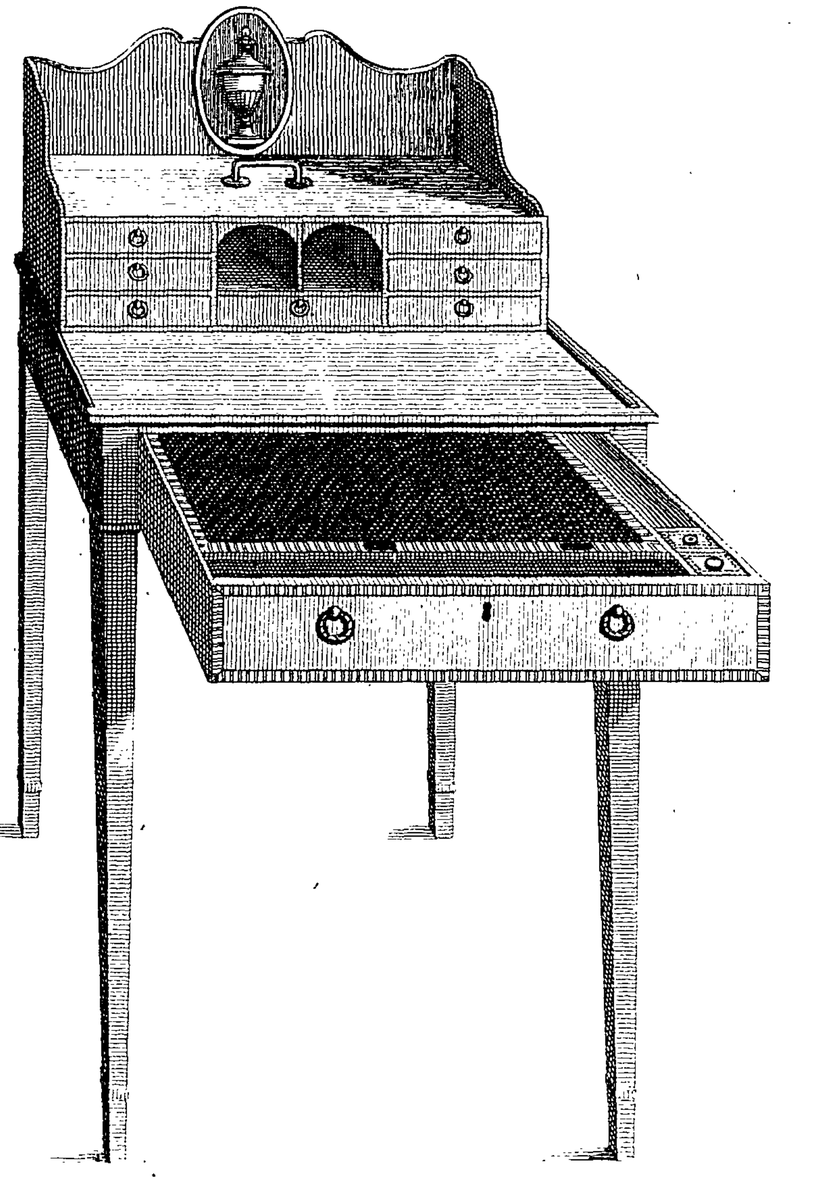
Terry. Sc.

A Reading & Writing Table.



2 Feet 4 Inches

A Writing Table.



1 Foot 9 Inches

1 2

Feet and Inches

T. Sheraton del:

G. Walker sculp.

Published as the Act directs by T. Sheraton July 16, 1792.

Of the Lady's Dreſſing Table. Plate XLVI.

THE ſtyle of finiſhing theſe tables is neat. They are often made of ſatin-wood, and banded; but ſometimes they are made of mahogany. The ſize of this table, which is here three feet, ſhould be increaſed in its length near ſix inches when theſe folding ſide-glaſſes are introduced. The reaſon of this is, that a lady may have more room to ſit between them to dreſs. It ſhould, in this caſe, be made about two inches wider. But, obſerve, the ſize here given is that which is uſed when only the riſing back-glaſs is introduced; and this has been the common way of finiſhing them. Theſe ſide-glaſſes are an addition of my own, which I take to be an improvement; judging that, when they are finiſhed in this manner, they will anſwer the end of a Rudd's table, at a leſs expence.

The glaſs behind riſes up like that of a ſhaving-ſtand. Thoſe on the ſide, fold down paſt each other, being hinged to a ſliding ſtretcher, which is capable of being puſhed backward or forward. If the right-hand glaſs be puſhed to the back it will then fold down, and the other keeping its place will do the ſame. A and B, in the plan, ſhew theſe glaſſes in their place; *e* is the back-glaſs, and *t* is the top, which is hinged to a piece

of

of wood, which runs in a groove at each end, ſo that when the top is drawn fully up, it will fall down on the frame. The other folding top on each ſide have each of them a ſmall tenon near the front, as may be ſeen at the edge of the left-hand one. Theſe tenons being let into the middle part, are the means of ſecuring each ſide-top, when they are folded down, and the middle part is put down upon them, ſo that the lock in the middle ſecures the three tops. The drawer on the right is the depth of two fronts, as is eaſily ſeen; the uſe of which is to put caps in. The left-hand fronts are in two real drawers, for the purpoſe of laying ſmall things in. The cupboard in the knee-hole has its front reeded in the hollow part to imitate tambour, and the circular door in the center is veneered and quartered. This cupboard will take a lady's hat as they wear them now. The other dreſſing conveniences are obvious in the plan.

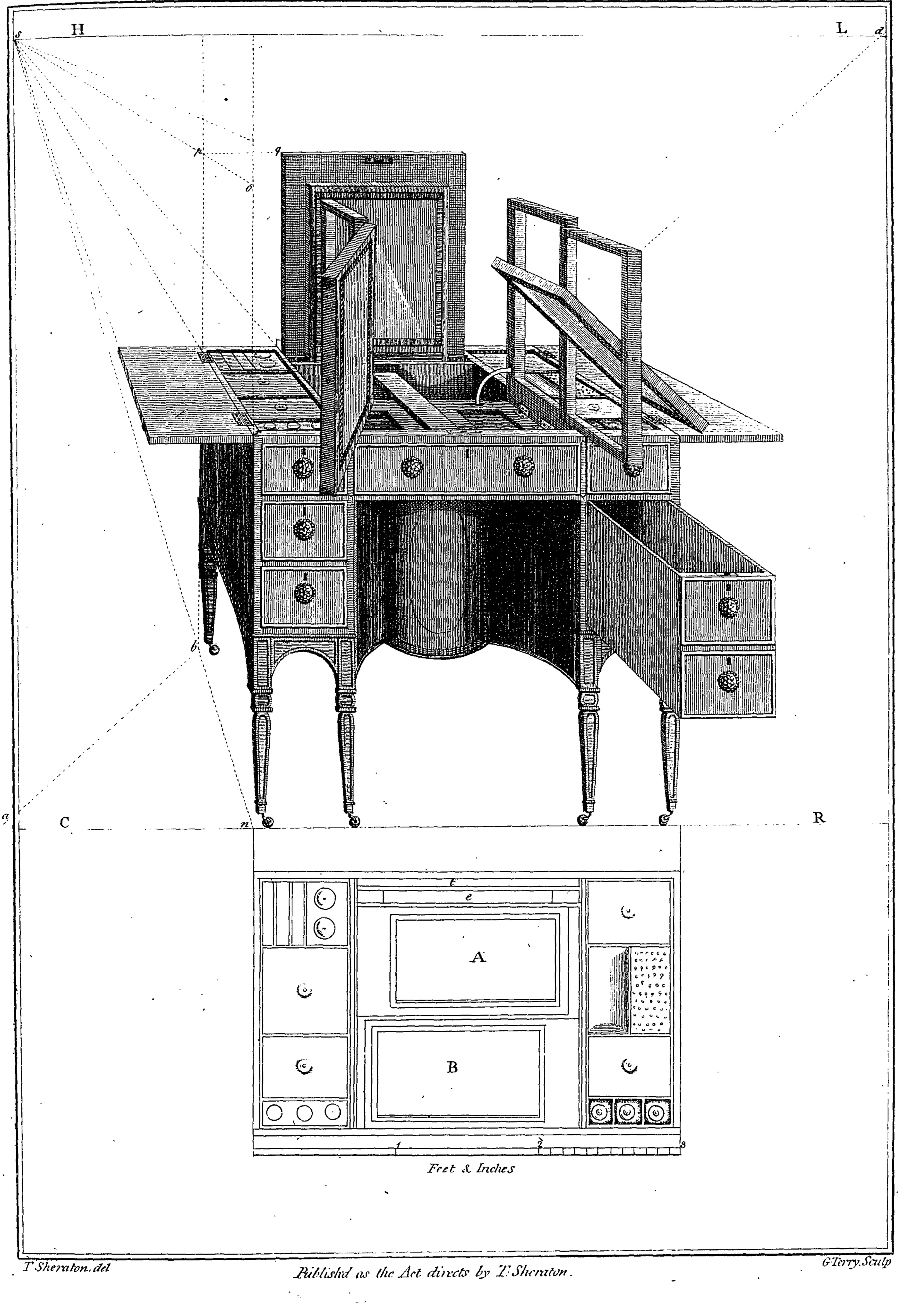
Of the Perſpective Lines.

THESE I only conſider as hints or memorandums to ſuch as have already gone through the regular treatiſe on the ſubject. *a n* is the width of the table; and a line from *a* to *d*, the diſtance, cuts the viſual *n s* in *b*, which gives the apparent width at that diſtance. The front of the table is ſuppoſed to be in the pic-ture, and therefore every meaſurement is purely geometrical; that is, they are taken from the ſcale. From *r* to *o* is the width

of

A Ladys Dreſsing Table

Plate 46



Feet & Inches

T Sheraton. del

Published as the Act directs by T: Sheraton.

G Terry. Sculp

of the top, except the ſlip behind. Therefore by drawing a perpendicular at *p*, and directing a line from *o* to *s*, the center, it will cut at *p*, and give the height of the top, ſuppoſing it to be raiſed quite up, ready for turning down.

Of the Cylinder Deſk and Book-caſe. Plate XLVII.

THE uſe of this piece is plain, both from the title and deſign. The ſtyle of finiſhing them is ſomewhat elegant, being made of ſatin-wood, croſs-banded, and varniſhed. This deſign ſhews green ſilk fluting behind the glaſs, and drapery put on at top before the fluting is tacked to, which has a good look when properly managed. The ſquare figure of the door is much in faſhion now. The ornament in the diamond part is meant to be carved and gilt, laid on to ſome ſort of ſilk ground. The rim round the top is intended to be braſs; it may, however, be done in wood.

Of the manufacturing Part.

THE manufacturing part of this piece is a little intricate to a ſtranger, for which reaſon it will require as particular a deſcription as I can give to make it tolerably well underſtood.

Firſt,

Firſt, obſerve the ſlider is communicated with the cylinder by an iron trammel, as I, ſo that when the former comes forward, the latter riſes up and ſhews the neſt of the ſmall drawers and letter holes, as appears in the deſign. When, therefore, the ſlider is puſhed home even with the front, the cylinder is brought cloſe to it at the ſame time. In this ſtate the lock of the long drawer under the ſlider ſecures both the drawer itſelf and alſo the ſlider at the ſame time, in the following manner:—D is the long drawer under the ſlider, P the partition above it, and S is the ſlider; C is a ſpring-bolt let into the partition. When, therefore, the drawer lock-bolt is out, as it riſes it drives C, the ſpring-bolt, into the ſlider; and when the drawer is unlocked, then C falls down to its place in the partition, and the ſlider can be pulled out. The trammel I, is a piece of iron near a quarter thick, and inch and quarter broad, with grooves cut through, as ſhewn at I. S, in the profile, is the ſlider; and *g*, 12, *b*, the cylinder. The trammel T is fixed to the cylinder at *b* by a ſcrew, not drove tight up, but ſo as the trammel will paſs round eaſy. Again, at the ſlider S a ſcrew is put through the groove in the trammel, which works on the neck of the ſcrew, and its head keeps the trammel in its place; ſo that it muſt be obſerved, that the grooves or ſlits in the iron trammel are not much above a quarter of an inch in width. When the ſlider is puſhed in about half way, the trammel will be at *u*, and its end will be below the ſlider, as the plate ſhews; but when the ſlider is home

home to its place, the trammel will be at T and *g*. The center piece with four holes is a ſquare plate of iron, having a center-pin which works in the upper ſlit of the trammel. It is let into the end of the cylinder, and fixed with four ſcrews. To find the place of this center, lay the trammel upon the end, as T *b*, in the poſition that it will be in when the ſlider is out, and, with a pencil, mark the inſide of the ſlits in the trammel. Again, place the trammel on the end as it will be when the ſlider is in, as at T *g*, and do as before; and where theſe pencil marks interſect each other will be the place of the center-plate. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, ſhew the place of the ſmall drawers. The triangular dotted lines with three holes, is a piece of thin wood ſcrewed on to the end, to which is fixed the neſt of ſmall drawers, forming a vacuity for the trammel to work in. F is a three-eighth piece veneered and croſs-banded, and cut behind to give room for the trammel. This piece both keeps the ſlider to its place, and hides the trammel. The next thing to be obſerved is, that the lower frame, containing two heights of drawers, is put together ſeparate from the upper part, which takes the cylinder. The ends of the cylinder part are tenoned with the ſlip tenons into the lower frame and glued. The ſhaded part at A ſhews the rail cut out to let the trammel work. The back is framed in two pannels, and the back legs are rabbetted out to let the back framing come down to the lower drawer. The ſlider is framed of mahogany, with a broad rail at each end about nine inches, and

one at the front about three and an half. In the inſide of the framing a rabbet is cut to receive a thin bottom. The bottom being fixed in, a ſlip is put at each end to receive the horſe which ſupports the deſk part. The ink and pen drawers at each end of the ſlider have a ſmall moulding mitered round them to keep them faſt, without their being glued on. Obſerve, there is a ſham drawer-front faſtened on to the ſlider, which of courſe goes in with it, and which contains the depth of theſe ink and pen drawers, ſo that they are not required to be taken out when the ſlider goes in. The cylinder is jointed to its ſweep in narrow ſlips of ſtraight-baited hard mahogany, and afterwards veneered. If the veneer be of a pliable kind it may be laid with a hammer, by firſt ſhrinking and tempering the veneer well, which muſt not be by water, but thin glue. If the veneer be very croſs and unpliable, as many curls of mahogany are, it is in vain to attempt the hammer. A caul in this caſe is the ſureſt and beſt method, though it be attended with conſiderable more trouble than the hammer. To prepare for laying it with a caul, proceed as follows.—Take five or ſix pieces of three-inch deal, and ſweep them to fit the inſide of the cylinder. Fix theſe upon a board anſwerable to the length of the cylinder. Then have as many cauls for the outſide of the cylinder, which may be made out of the ſame pieces as thoſe for the inſide. Take then quarter mahogany for a caul to cover the whole veneer, and heat it well. Put the caul ſcrews acroſs the bench, and ſlip in the

board

Cylinder Desk and Bookcase.

H

o

d

L

S

P

D

C

F

Drawer

O

C

4

3

2

1

r

R

F

E

S

S'

u

T

A

I

G

A

B

2

1

Feet and inches

R

T. Sheraton Del.

Published as the Act directs, by G. Terry. August 6th 1792.

Barlow Sculp.

board with the round cauls ſcrewed to it; and proceed, in every other particular, as the nature of the thing will neceſſarily dictate.

Of the Perſpective Lines.

G R is the ground line, and H L the horizon; *s* the center, and *d* the diſtance of the picture. A B, on the ground line, is the breadth of the ends; from which a line is drawn to *d*, cutting the viſual B *s*, for the perſpective breadth of the end. O is the height of the lower part, and the upper part being level with the horizon, appears in one line, and therefore ſhews no breadth at the top.

Of the Cabinet. Plate XLVIII.

THE uſe of this piece is to accommodate a lady with conveniences for writing, reading, and holding her trinkets, and other articles of that kind.

The ſtyle of finiſhing them is elegant, being often richly japanned, and veneered with the fineſt ſatin-wood.

The manufacturing part is not very difficult, but will admit of the following remarks.—The middle drawer over the

knee-hole has a ſlider to write on, and thoſe on each ſide are plain. The doors under them are hung with pin-hinges, and in the inſide there is one ſhelf in each. The cupboard within the knee-hole is fitted up in ſmall drawers, and ſometimes only a ſhelf. The pilaſters or half columns are put on after the carcaſe is made. The corner ones are planed ſquare firſt, and then rabbetted out to receive the angle of the carcaſe, and afterwards deal is glued in a ſlight manner into the rabbet, that it may be eaſily taken out after the column is turned.

The center door of the upper part is ſquare at the top, opening under the aſtragal which finiſhes the cove part. The pilaſters are on the door frame, and the drapery is formed and ſewed to the ſilk, and both are tacked into a rabbet together. Behind the ſilk door are ſliding ſhelves for ſmall books. The wings are fitted up as ſhewn in the deſign on the right, or with more ſmall drawers, having only two or three letter holes at the top.

Of the Perſpective Lines.

GR is the ground line, HL the horizon, and *s d* only half the full diſtance of the picture; wherefore *g a* is only half the original meaſurement of the ends of the cabinet. A perpendicular from *e* determines the front of the upper part, and all

thoſe

thoſe viſuals drawn to *s* are obvious in themſelves. The perpendicular lines *c c*, at the cove, ſhew the centers for drawing it. The right-hand door opens more than ſquare, conſequently it is oblique to the picture; and being oblique, the top and bottom of it tend to ſome vaniſhing point out of the center of the picture, as is denoted by the lines *n n*, *s s*. Theſe two, if produced, would meet in a point on the horizon, and that point is termed the vaniſhing point of all lines parallel to the top and bottom of the door. The door turning on its hinges deſcribes a ſemicircle, as is ſhewn; and, conſequently, every opening of the door muſt come within the circumference of that ſemicircle.

Of the Lady's Cabinet Dreſſing-Table. Plate XLIX.

THIS table contains every requiſite for a lady to dreſs at.

The ſtyle of finiſhing them is neat and ſomewhat elegant.

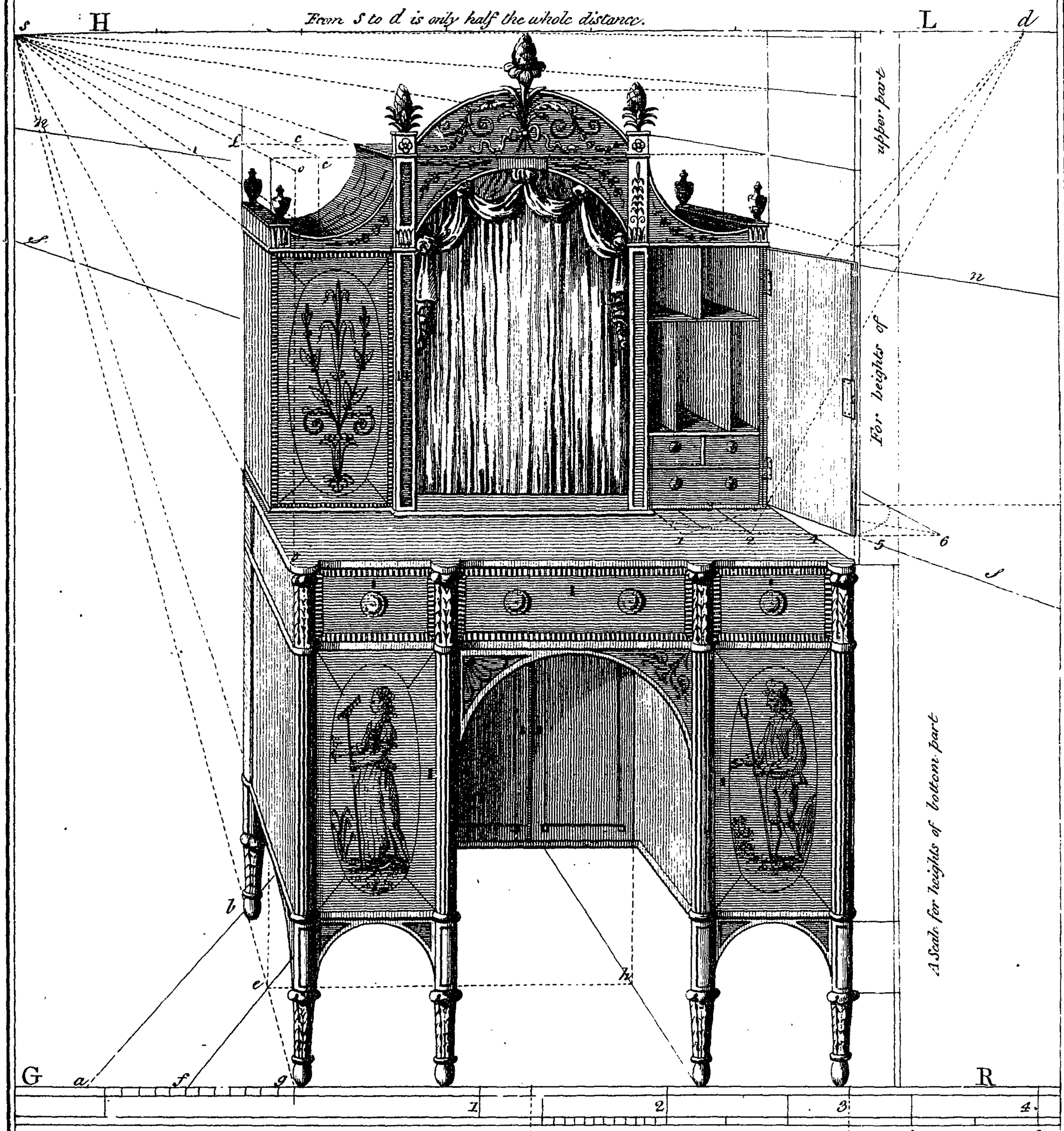
With reſpect to the manufacturing part, and what it contains, theſe may be learned from the deſign itſelf, which here ſhews the parts entirely laid open. I ſhall therefore only mention two or three particulars. When the waſhing-drawer is in, a ſlider which is above it may be drawn out to write on occaſionally. The ink and ſand are in the right-hand drawer under

the center dreſſing-glaſs. Behind the drapery, which is tacked to a rabbet, and fringed or gimped, to cover the nails, is a ſhelf, on which may ſtand any veſſel to receive the dirty water. Above the drapery are tambour cupboards, one at each end, and one in the center under the drawer. Above the tambour at each end are real drawers, which are fitted up to hold every article neceſſary in dreſſing. The drawers in the cabinet part are intended to hold all the ornaments of dreſs, as rings, drops, &c. Behind the center glaſs is drapery; it may be real to ſuit that below, or it may only be painted in imitation of it. The glaſs ſwings to any poſition, on center pins fixed on the ſhelf above the candle-branches. The ſide-glaſſes fold in behind the doors, and the doors themſelves, when ſhut, appear ſolid, with ovals in the pannels, and ornamented to ſuit the other parts. Obſerve, the whole plan of the top is not in the plate, it being required to be two feet over.

The perſpective lines ſhewn at the circular end, are as follows.—When the plan is made, divide the curve into parts, as ſhewn; and from theſe diviſions on the ground line, draw lines to the center *s*. Then turn up the ordinates to the ground line; and from the points where they cut on that line, draw lines to the diſtance, as ſhewn, which will cut the viſuals at 6, 7, 8, 9, and ſo on, finding points to direct the curve by.

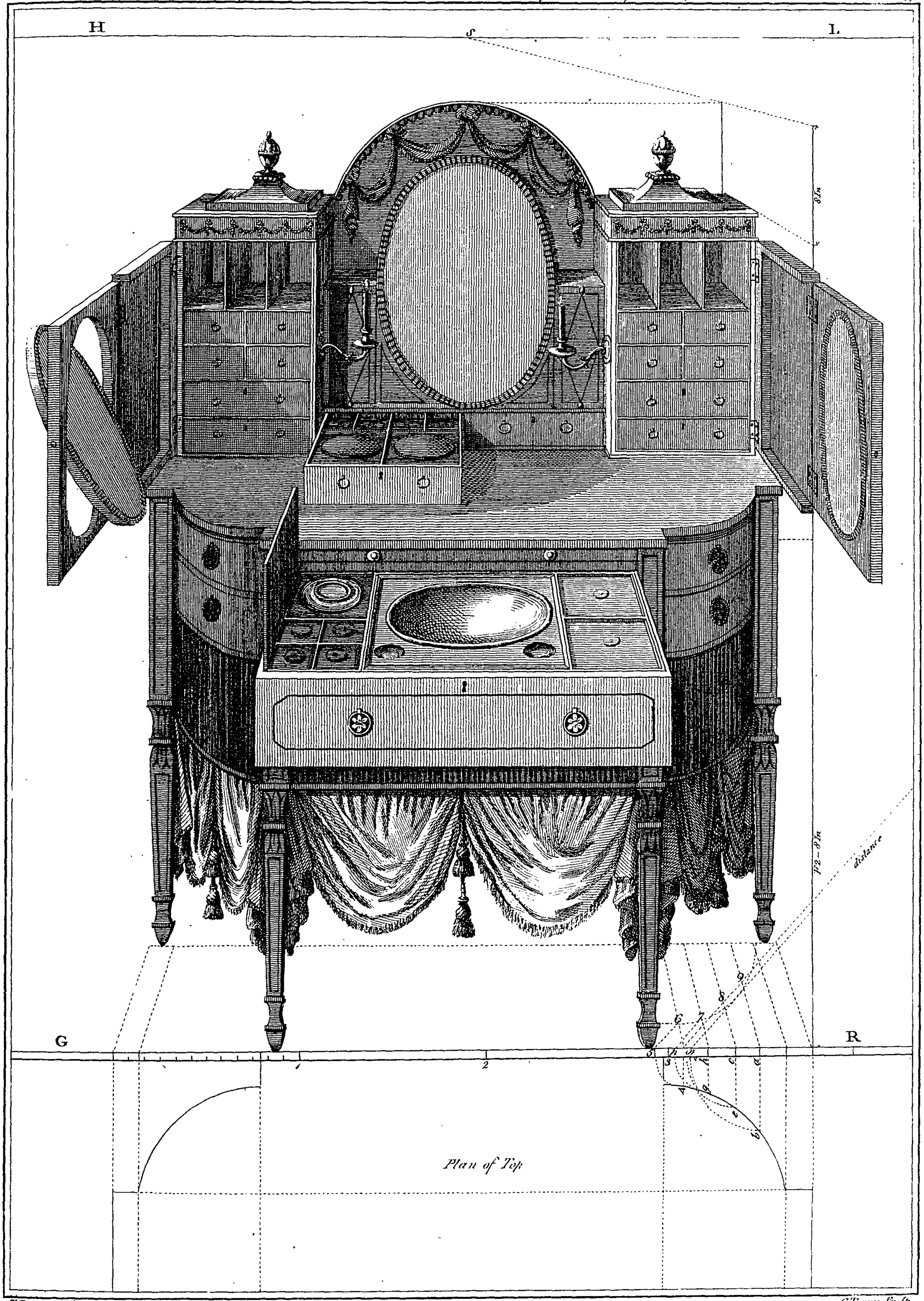
A Cabinet.

From S to d is only half the whole distance.



A Lady's Cabinet Dressing Table

Plate. 49.



T. Sheraton. del.

Published as the Act directs. by T: Sheraton, May. 3. 1792.

G. Terry. Sculp

Of the Lady's Cabinet and Writing-Table. Plates L.

THIS table is intended for writing on, and to hold a few ſmall books in the back of the upper part. Within the door at each end, under the domes, are formed ſmall cabinets of drawers, &c. The front of the upper part, which incloſes the neſt of drawers and letter holes, ſlides in under the top, and when drawn ſufficiently out falls down in the curve *f g*, and locks into the folding top.

The method of hinging this front is thus:—Suppoſe B D to ſhew it up, as it is in the deſign, ready for putting home. Then obſerve, D *d* is a ſlip which runs in a groove cut at each end. The front B is raobetted out, and alſo the ſlip D. Theſe are hinged together, and are both of one thickneſs, ſo that when B is drawn out, the ſlip having a tenon at *d*, ſtops it from coming entirely out. The other figure ſhews the front when it is let down, which cannot fail of making it underſtood. The dotted curve line *o* P ſhews that the under ſide of the top muſt be hollowed out ſo that the angle of the falling front may clear itſelf as it turns.

Obſerve,

Obſerve, the writing part folds over like a card-table, and when it is open, is ſupported by the drawer in the frame. Every other part muſt be plain to the workman.

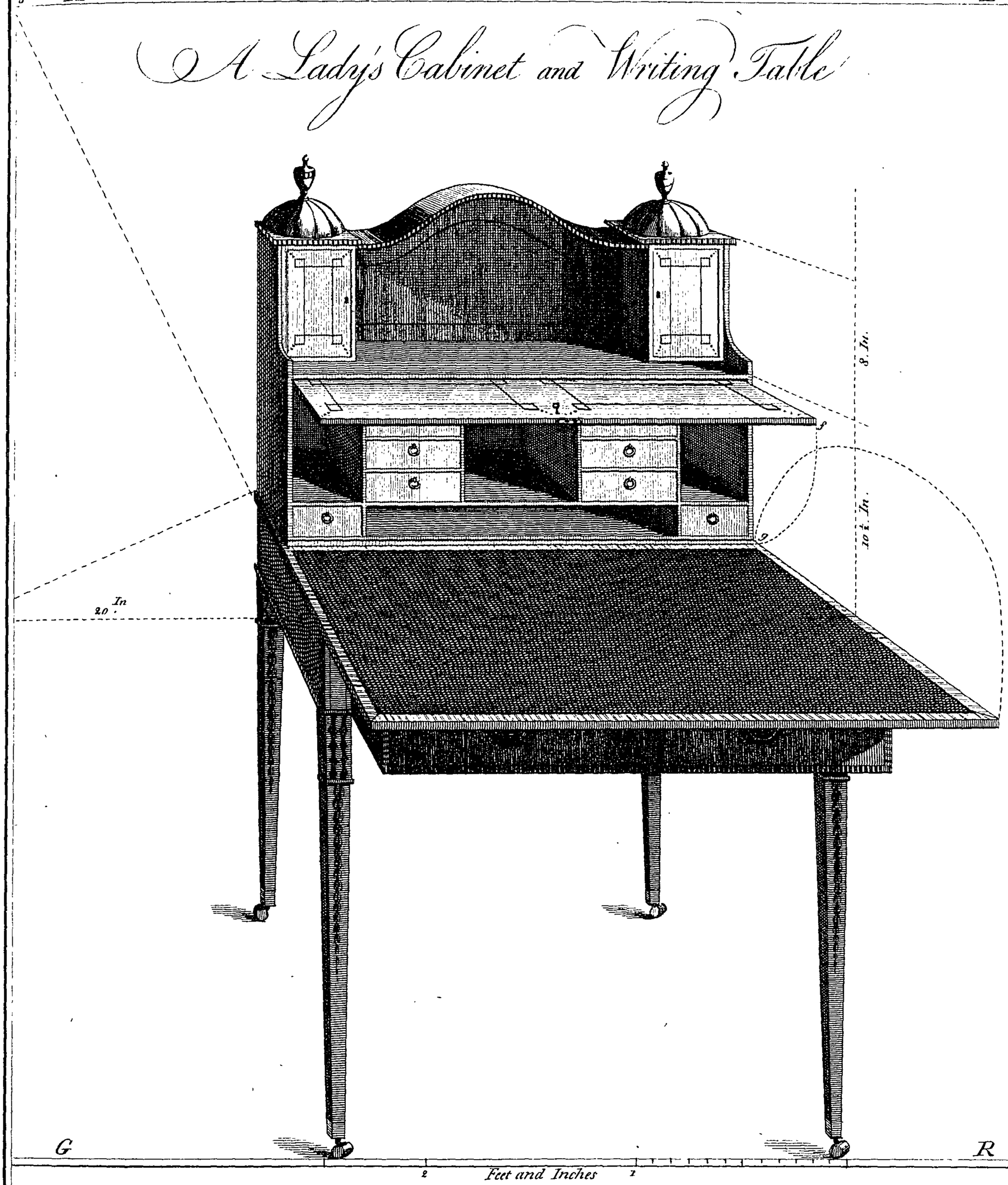
N. B. Upon the ſame principles the top of the dreſſing-table, Plate XLVI. is managed.

Of the Drapery. Plate LI.

LITTLE can be ſaid of this, as every part explains itſelf, as repreſented in the drawing. It is, however, neceſſary to obſerve, that the French ſtrapping and taſſels in the right-hand deſign is no part of the cornice, as ſome cabinet-makers have already miſtaken it to be. It is the upholſterer's work, and is ſewed on within the valance or ground of the drapery.

Theſe curtains are drawn on French rods. When the cords are drawn the curtains meet in the center at the ſame time, but are no way raiſed from the floor. When the ſame cord is drawn the reverſe way, each curtain flies open, and comes to their place on each ſide, as they are now repreſented. The cord paſſes on a ſide pulley fixed on the right-hand.

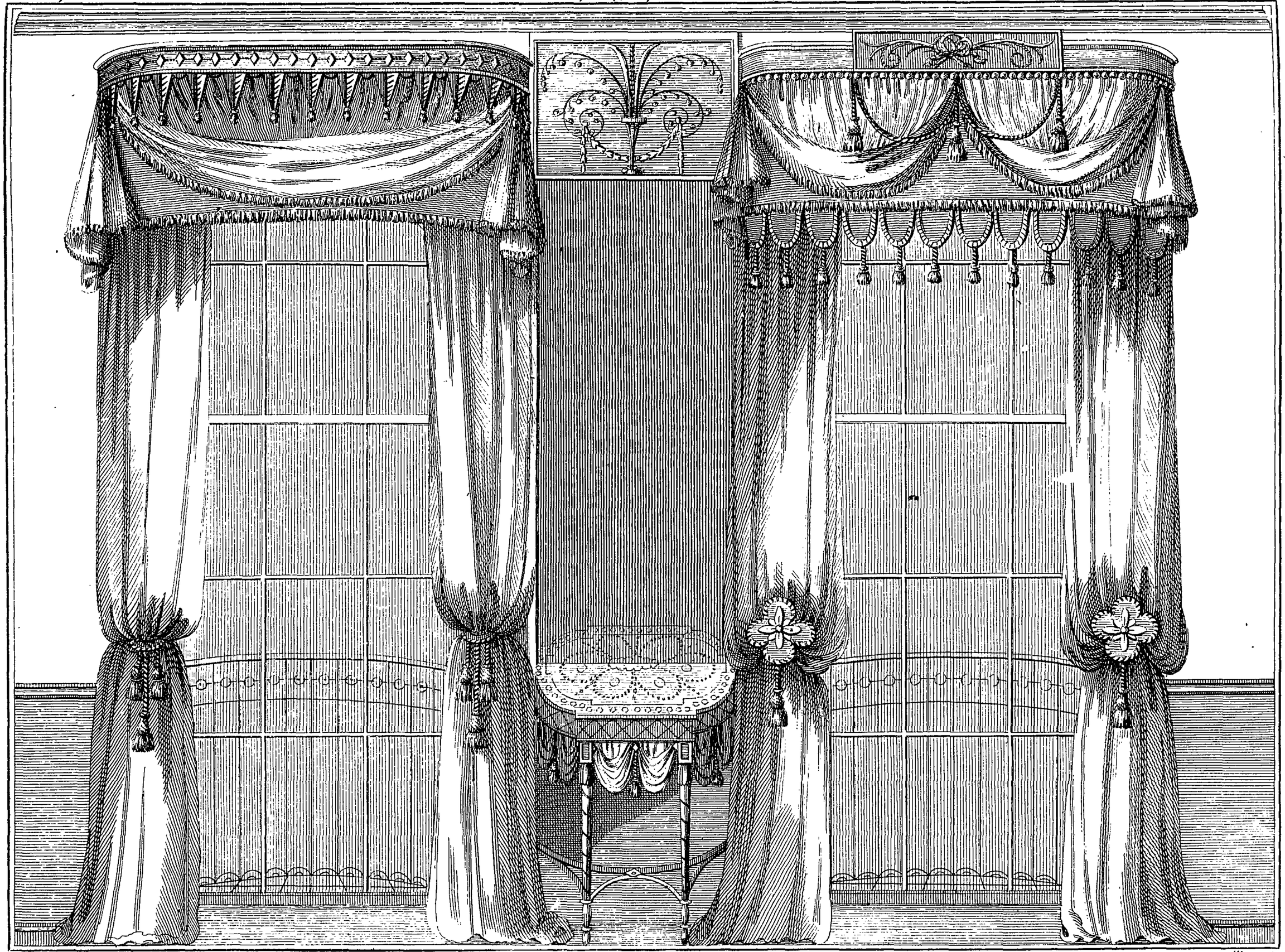
A Lady's Cabinet and Writing Table



T. Sheraton Del. Barlow Sculp.

Published as the Act directs by T. Sheraton April 10th 1792.

Cornices, Curtains & Drapery for Drawing Room Windows.



T Sheraton del

Terry Sc

Published as the Act directs by T Sheraton June 11. 1792

To effect this, the rod is made in a particular manner, having two pulleys at one end, and a ſingle one at the other, which cannot well be deſcribed in words without a drawing of it.

Of the Gentleman's Secretary. Plate LII.

THIS piece is intended for a gentleman to write at, to keep his own accounts, and ſerve as a library. The ſtyle of finiſhing it is neat, and ſometimes approaching to elegance, being at times made of ſatin-wood, with japanned ornaments.

Of the manufacturing Part.

THE great thing to be obſerved in this, is the management of the fall A, or writing part, which is lined with green cloth. This fall is hung by an iron balance-hinge B, ſo that when the fall is raiſed up by the hand a little above an angle of forty-five degrees, or in the poſition it is ſhewn at A, it falls to of itſelf by the balancing power of B.

When A is in a horizontal poſition, B is at F, the inſide of the pilaſter, on which is glued a piece of cloth to prevent the

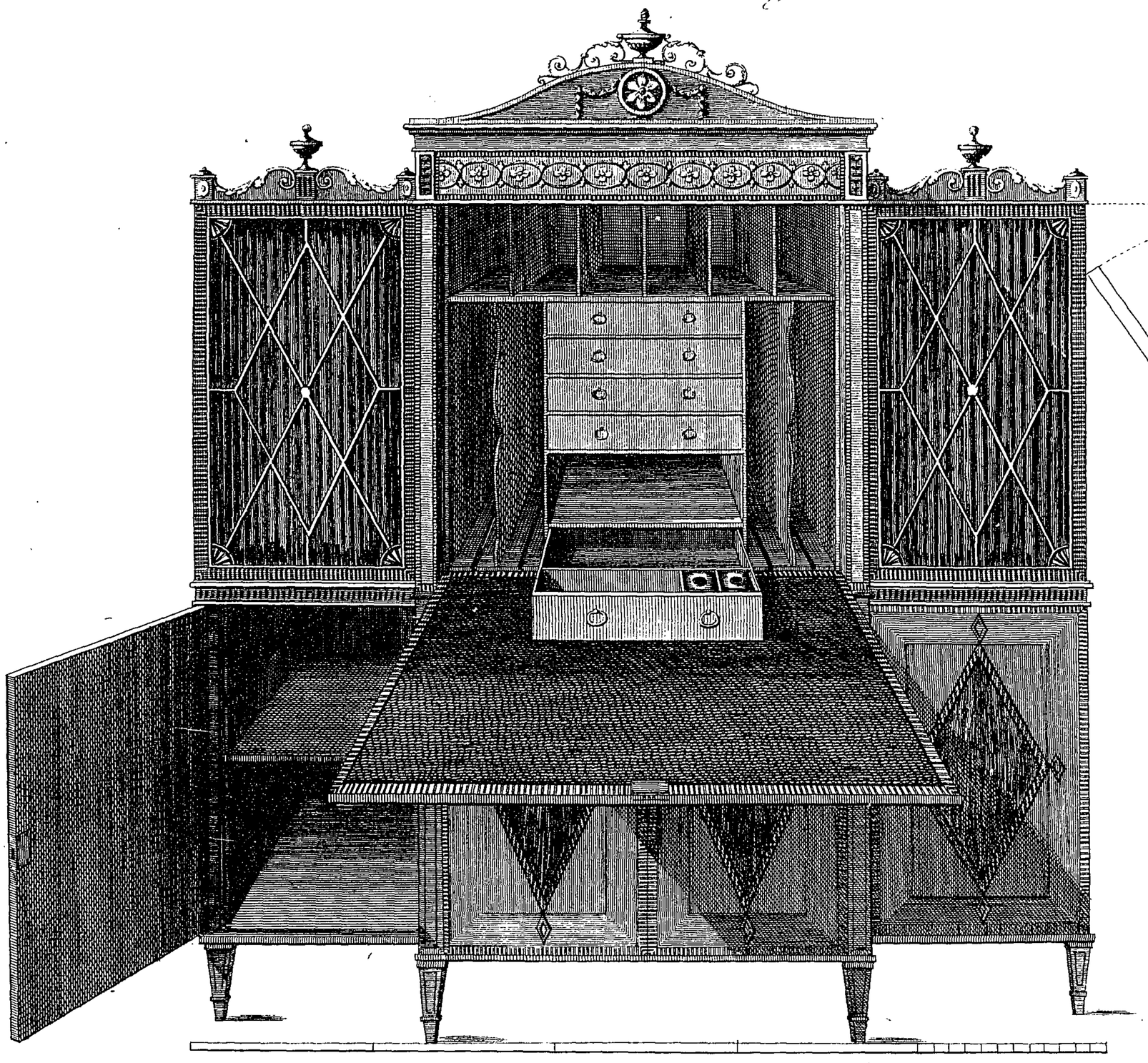
iron from rattling. B ſtopping at F it is evident how firmly the fall is ſupported by that means; for the hinge is made very ſtrong, about three quarters thick at the dove-tail end, and tapered off to about a quarter thick at the joint, and where it is ſcrewed to the fall. The hinge is made in two parts, as D and *b*. D has a center pin, and is ſcrewed on to the inſide of the pilaſter, as at *d*; *b* is all in one piece, and is ſcrewed on to the fall, having a center hole to receive the abovementioned pin in the other part of the hinge.

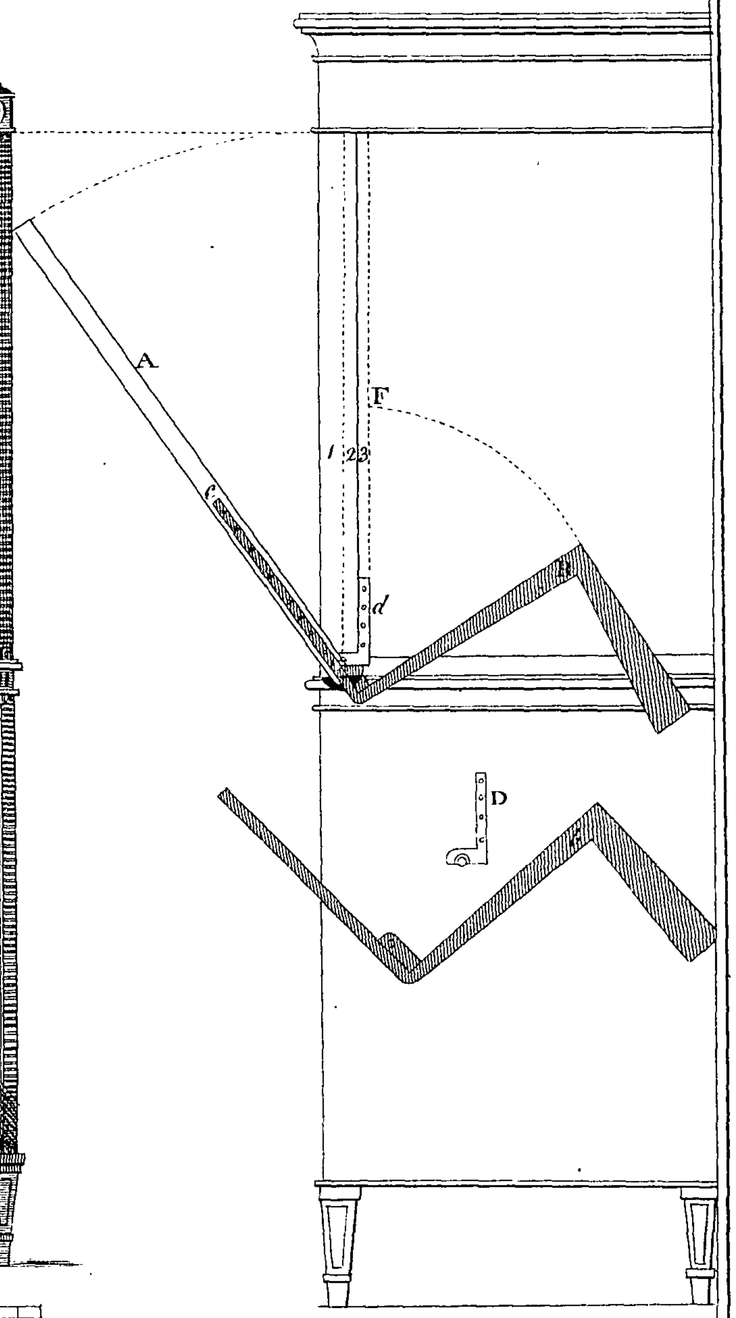
It is neceſſary to obſerve, that there is a vacuity behind both the upper and lower pilaſters in which the iron balance operates, ſo that nothing is ſeen but the mere joint of the hinge.

Again, it is requiſite to obſerve, that a hollow muſt be worked on the upper ſide of the under carcaſs, to give place to the circular motion of the under angle of the fall, as it turns upon its hinge from a perpendicular to a horizontal form. This hollow may be obſerved in the plate. The ſpace 1 contains the fall when it is up; 2 is an open ſpace, which affords room for the rings on the ſmall drawers; and 3 is the pilaſter. The ornamented freeze under the cornice is, in reality, a drawer, which ſprings out when the bolt of the fall-lock is relieved. This is done by a ſpring-bolt let into the partition under the

drawer,

A Gentlemans Secretary.





T. Sheraton del

Terry Sc

Published by T. Sheraton. Sept. 11. 1792.

drawer, which is forced up by the bolt of the fall-lock into the under edge of the drawer; and when the fall is unlocked this ſpring-bolt returns to its place in the partition, and a common ſpring ſcrewed on to the drawer-back ſends it forward, ſo that it may be drawn out independent of a ring or handle.

When the fall is up, there appear two pannels in the form of thoſe below. As for any other particular, it muſt be underſtood by a workman.

Obſerve, the dimenſions of every part may be accurately taken from the profile by the ſcale.

Of the Cylinder Waſh-hand Table. Plate LIII.

THESE are always made of mahogany, and having a cylinder to riſe up to hide the waſhing apparatus, they look neat in any genteel dreſſing-room.

They alſo contain a bidet on the right near the front, and D, a water-drawer on the left near the back, ſo that when the two are puſhed home they paſs by each other. The drawer on the front, which appears partly out, runs above the bidet and the water-drawer. The two heights of ſham drawers above contain the cylinder, and the two heights of ſham drawers be-

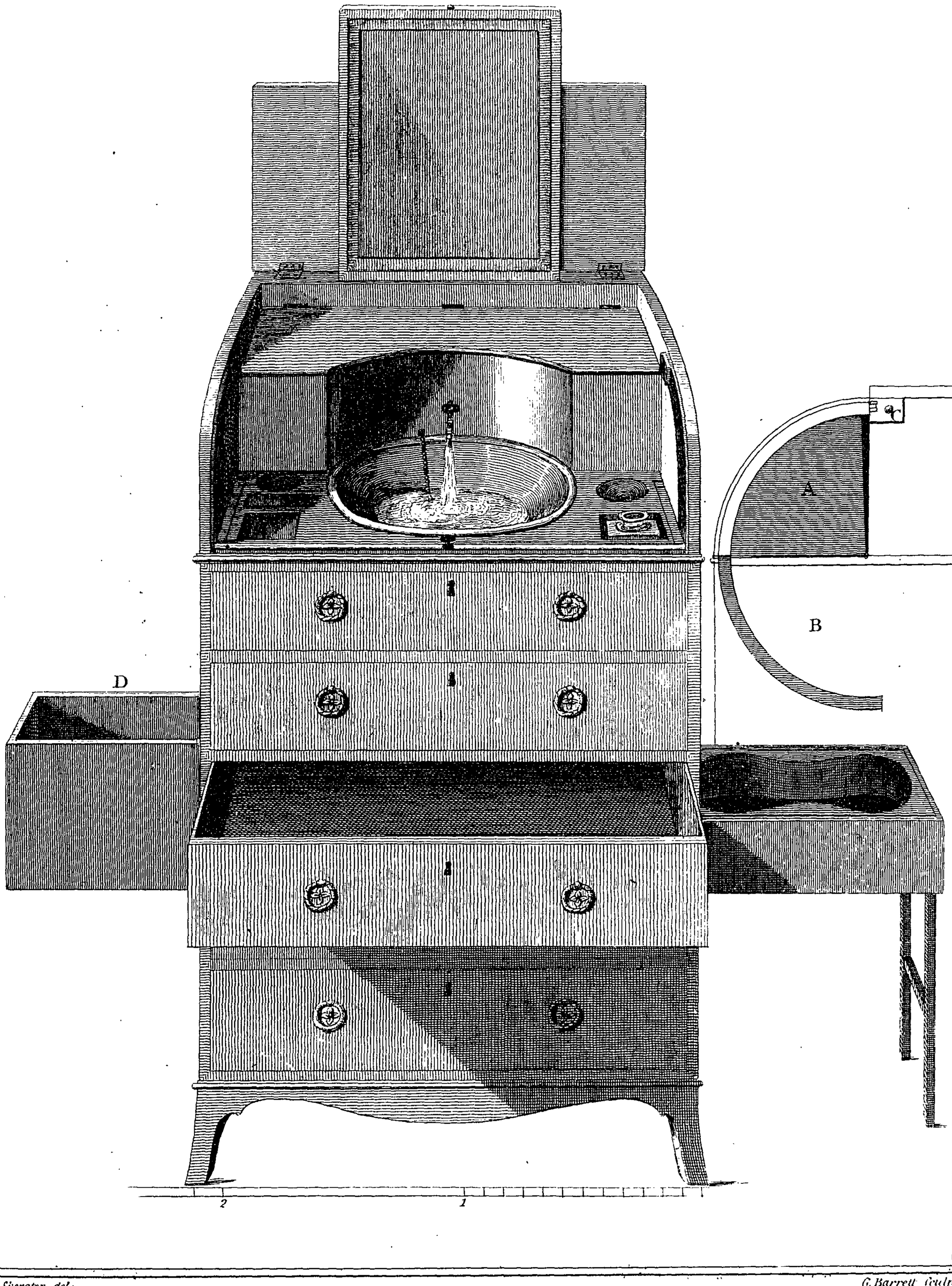
low contain the bidet and water-drawer. The baſon has a plug-hole at the bottom, by which the water is conveyed off into the drawer D, which is lined with lead. The top of the ciſtern is hinged, and can be turned up at any time to fill it with freſh water. The glaſs riſes up behind, in the ſame manner as that of a ſhaving-ſtand. And when the glaſs is down, the top can be turned down alſo; and the cylinder being raiſed to meet it, the whole is encloſed. The motion of the cylinder is guided by two quadrant pieces, one at each end of it, which are hinged to the top in which the baſon hangs. This is ſhewn by A in the profile; which, when the cylinder is let fall to its place, will be at B. When the cylinder is raiſed up to A, it catches at C, which is a ſpring of the ſame kind as thoſe put on to ſecretary drawers. The bidet-drawer is ſometimes made to take quite out, having four legs to reſt on. The end of the piece of work is cut out ſo as the feet can go in without being folded up. This, in the deſign, is ſtopped from coming quite out, and the framed legs, which appear, fold under the drawer and ſlip in along with it.

Of the Pembroke Table and French Work Table. Plate LIV.

THE uſe of this piece is for a gentleman or lady to breakfaſt on.

The

A Cylinder Wash-Hand Table



T Sheraton del.

G. Barrett Sculp.

Publish'd as the Act directs by T. Sheraton, June 28. 1792.

The ſtyle of finiſhing theſe tables is very neat, ſometimes bordering upon elegance, being at times made of ſatin-wood, and having richly japanned borders round their tops, with ornamented drawer-fronts.

The manufacturing part of this table differs but very little from thoſe in common uſe.

The fly brackets which ſupport the flaps are made and fixed in the ſame manner as any other, only I apprehend it beſt to make a dove-tail groove in the front for the drawer ſides, at a diſtance from each end of the drawer-front equal to the thickneſs of the bracket and the inner lining; ſo that the front laps over and covers the whole, as appears in the deſign. In this caſe the lock-bolt ſhoots up into the top of the table. The top and frame may be connected to the pillar and claws, either by a ſquare block glued up, or by a couple of pieces, about four inches broad, half-lapped into each other at right-angles, and double tenoned into the pillar, and ſcrewed to the bottom of the frame, as the profile of the pillar and claw is intended to ſuggeſt.

The workman is deſired to obſerve, that the top of the table, as ſhewn in the deſign, is not meant to repreſent a regular ellipſis, as they are generally made a little fuller out at each corner

corner of the bed. The reaſon of this is, that the flaps, when turned down, may better hide the joint rail.

Of the French Work Table, Plate LIV.

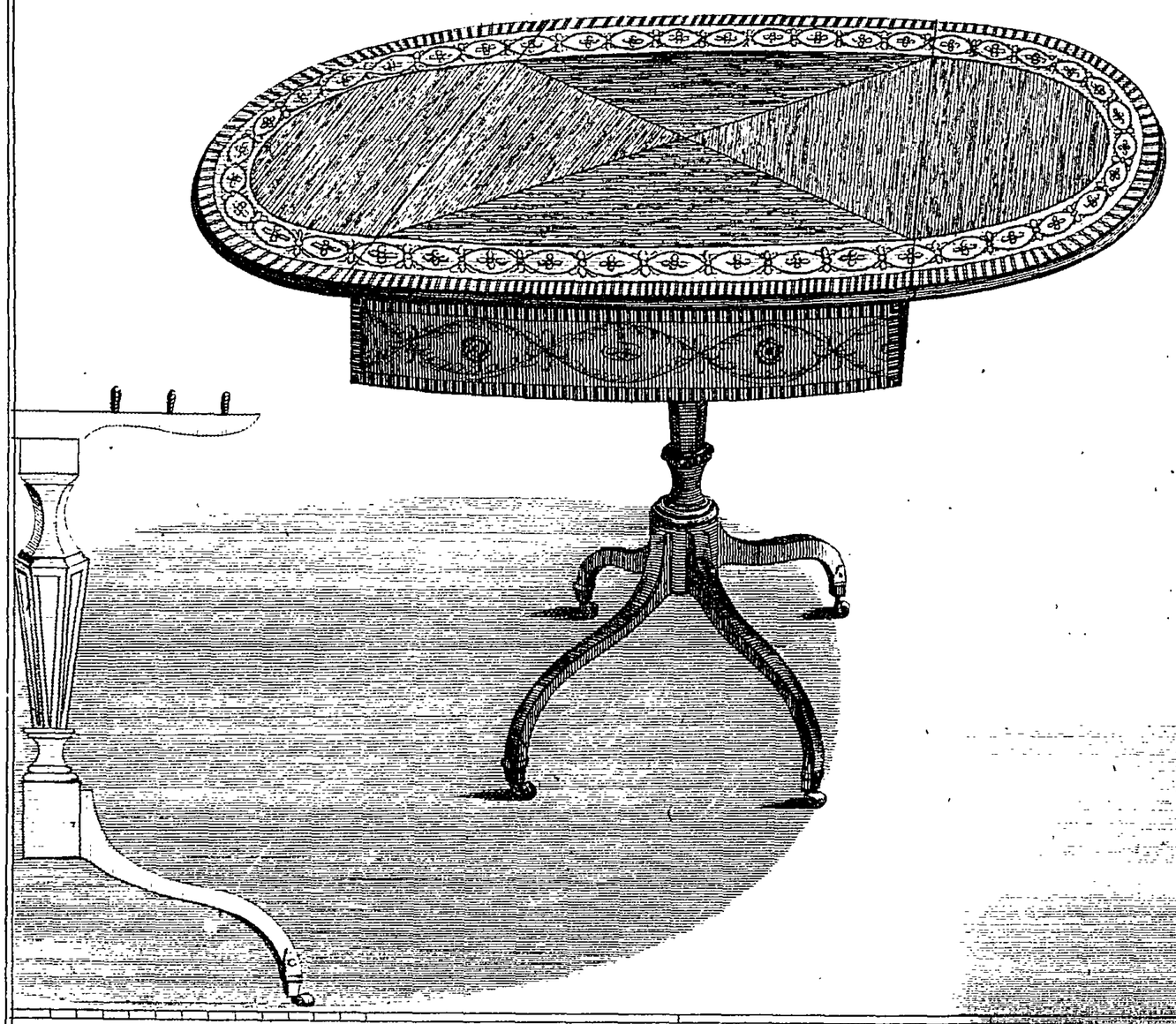
THE title of this table ſufficiently indicates its uſe. The ſtyle of finiſhing them is neat, being commonly made of ſatin-wood, with a braſs moulding round the edge of the rim.

The front part of the rim is hinged to the top, in the ſame way as the front of a ſecretary or deſk-drawer; ſo that when it is turned up, it faſtens by two thumb-ſprings as they do. The braſs moulding is mitered upon the edge of the rim when the front is up, and after it is hinged; which being cut through with a thin ſaw, the moulding, on the return of the front, will be fair with that on the end.

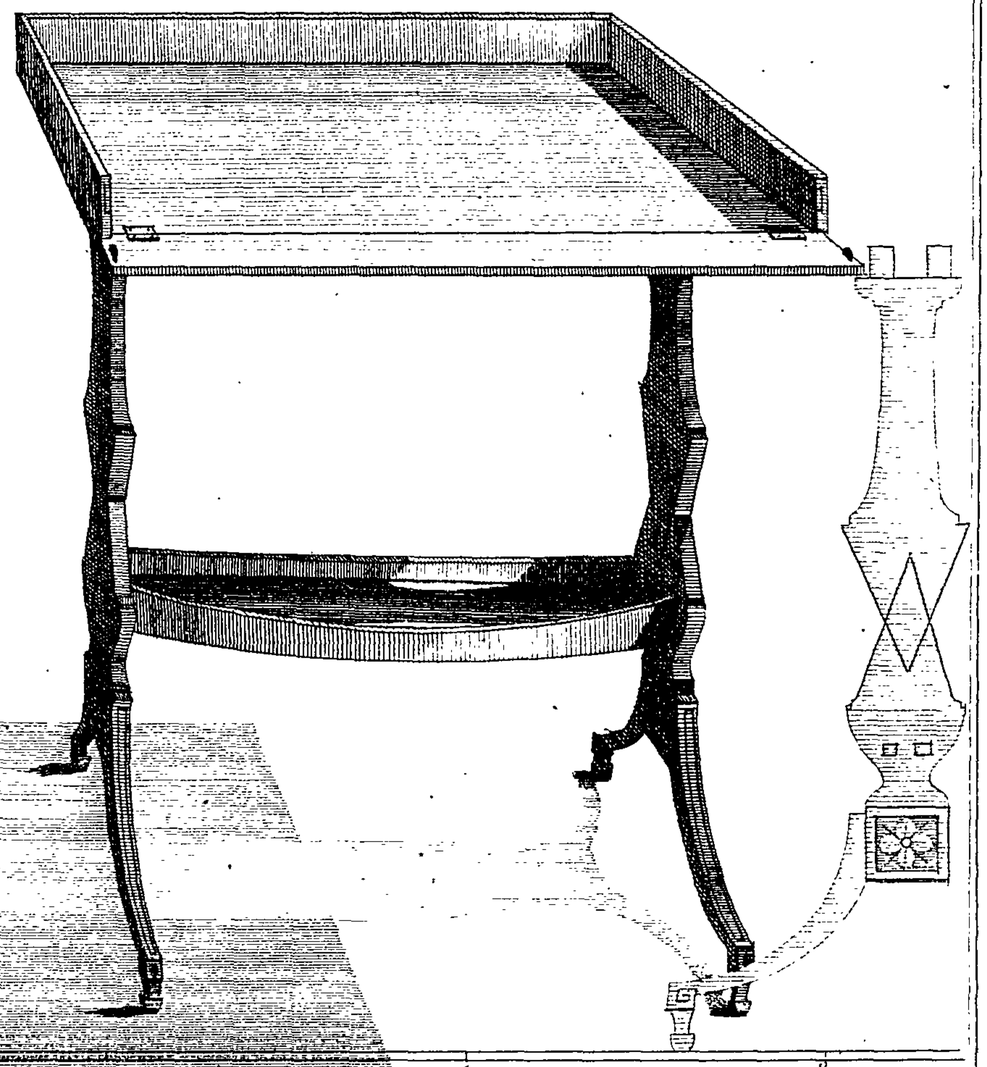
The ſhelf below is ſhaped ſomething like a boat. The bottom of it is made of inch ſtuff, and double tenonned into the ſtandards, as the profile plainly ſhews. The top of each ſtandard has alſo double tenons, to which croſs-bars are morticed and ſcrewed to the under-ſide of the top.

The ſcale ſhews the proportions of the ſtandard, and the height of the table; its breadth is fourteen or fifteen inches.

A Pembroke Table.



A Lady's Work Table.



T. Sheraton del.

Published as the Act directs by T Sheraton Nov. 5. 1792.

C. Tomkins Sc.

The boat part, which ſerves as a convenience for ſewing implements, is ſix inches over the middle, and three at each end.

I have, in theſe two deſigns, introduced ſtrict ſhadowing, that the learner may better judge of its effects in ſuch caſes.—But I muſt obſerve the ſhadows here are rather too faint, becauſe I was afraid to make the plate look heavy. The ſun's rays are here conſidered parallel to the picture, which is fully illuſtrated, by different caſes, in the Treatiſe on Shadowing, ſee page 328. And, therefore, I ſhall only obſerve here to the learner, that, in making out the ſhadows of objects, a harſh outline ought carefully to be avoided. In fact, there ought to be no outline at all, except thoſe firſt drawn by a pencil to determine the boundaries of the ſhadow; after which a large hair pencil ſhould be uſed to fill up the ſhadow. We may likewiſe remark, that if Nature be obſerved duly, ſhe teaches us that the ſhadows of objects are ſtronger neareſt the foot or place where they reſt, and grow fainter the further they recede from the foot of the object. The reaſon of this is: becauſe if ſhadows are very long, as from a houſe, there is a ſtrong reflection of light towards the boundaries, which mixes with the ſhadow, and conſequently weakens it. It is ſomewhat ſimilar to what aſtronomers term a penumbra, or imperfect ſhadow accompanying a total one.

Laſtly,

Laſtly, it may alſo be obſerved, that when an object is totally immerſed in the ſhadow of another, as the table claws are in the ſhadow of the top, there is a ſort of additional ſhadow, occaſioned partly by reflection, and partly by the contact of the two ſurfaces, but theſe are ſhort and imperfect in their boundaries.

Of the Tripod Candle-Stand. Plate LV.

THESE are uſed in drawing-rooms, for the convenience of affording additional light to ſuch parts of the room where it would neither be ornamental nor eaſy to introduce any other kind.

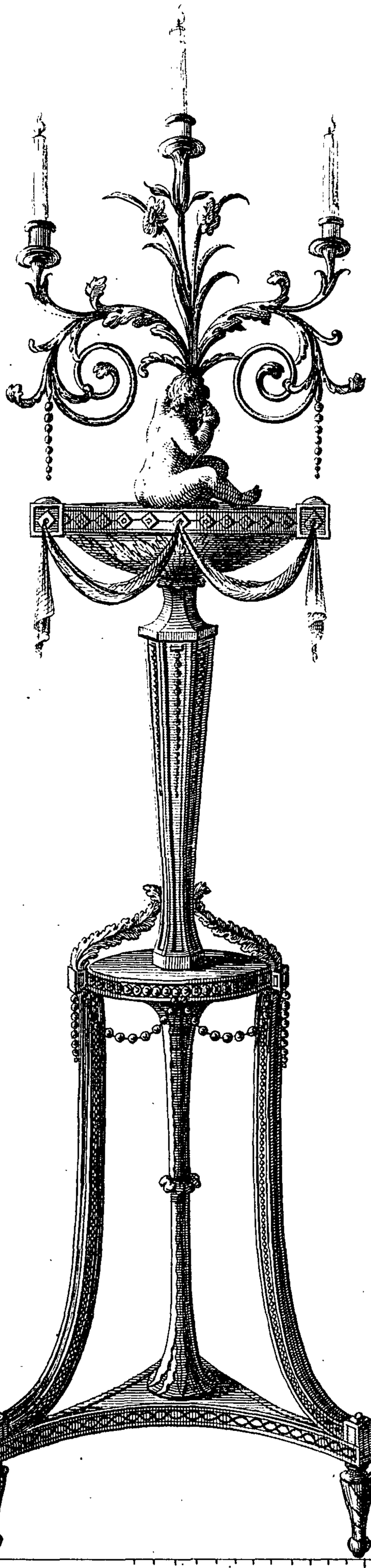
The ſtyle of finiſhing theſe for noblemen's drawing-rooms is exceeding rich. Sometimes they are finiſhed in white and gold, and ſometimes all gold, to ſuit the other furniture. In inferior drawing-rooms they are japanned anſwerable to the furniture.

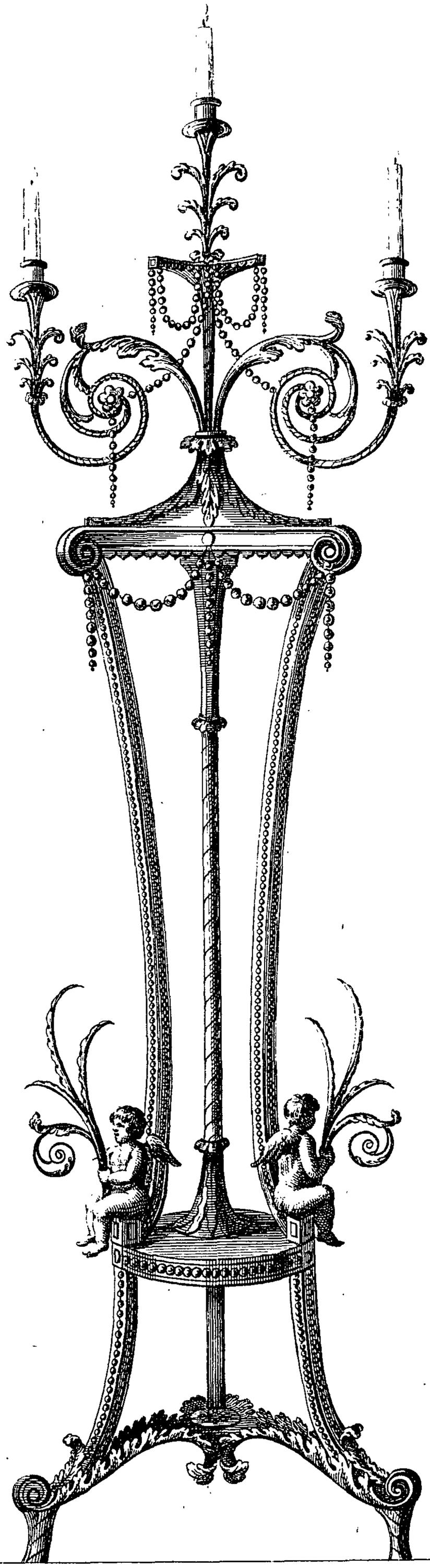
Perſons unacquainted with the manufacturing part of theſe ſtands may apprehend them to be ſlight and eaſily broken; but this objection vaniſhes, when it is conſidered that the ſcrolls are made of ſtrong wire, and the ornaments cemented to them.

I could

Tripod Candle Stands.

Plate. 55.





Feet & Inches

T. Sheraton Del. Barlow Sculp.

Published as the Act directs. by T. Sheraton. July. 24th 1792.

I could not ſhew to advantage more than three lights, but, in reality, there are four; one at the center, and one at each angle. The top of the left ſtand is a round vaſe, which can be turned and have the ſquare handles put on afterwards. The handles ſhould be placed parallel to two of the feet. The top of the right one is a concave ſpherical triangle, having all its ſides equal.

As to any other part, the workman's own notions will ſuggeſt every thing neceſſary in their manufacture.

Of the Harlequin Pembroke Table. Plate LVI.

This piece ſerves not only as a breakfaſt, but alſo as a writing table, very ſuitable for a lady. It is termed a Harlequin Table, for no other reaſon but becauſe, in exhibitions of that ſort, there is generally a great deal of machinery introduced in the ſcenery.

Tables like this have already been made, but not according to the improved plan of the machinery here propoſed.

In this, however, I aſſume very little originality or merit to myſelf, except what is due to the manner of ſhewing and

deſcribing the mechaniſm of it: the reſt is due to a friend, from whom I received my firſt ideas of it.

The particular advantages ariſing from the machinery are as follows:

Firſt, the neſt of drawers, or till, ſhewn in the deſign, can be raiſed to any height, gradually, until at length the whole is out.

Second, when the whole is out, as repreſented in the deſign, it cannot be taken away, becauſe of three ſtops which keep it in; two at one end, and one at the other, according to the grooves in No. 1.

Thirdly, but if neceſſity require that the till ſhould be taken quite away from the reſt of the table, in order to come at the machinery, then one of theſe ſtops at one end is ſo conſtructed that it can be ſlipped back, and, the till being raiſed up at the ſame end where the ſtop is ſlipped back, the two at the other end of courſe will relieve themſelves, ſo that the till can be taken quite away.

Fourthly, when the till is replaced, the ſtop can be puſhed into the groove again by the finger, which returns again into the groove by the force of a ſmall ſpring.

Fifthly,

Fifthly, The till being let down again until it is perfectly even with the reſt of the table-top, it can then be ſecured in its place by means of another ſtop at the bottom, ſo that if the whole table were turned upſide down the till would ſtill keep its place.

Sixthly, although the till be raiſed and lowered by turning the fly-bracket which ſupports the flap, yet the bracket is made to loſe this effect or power by the turn of a key, and the bracket may then be drawn out to ſupport the flap without raiſing the till, and the table can then be uſed, as in common, to breakfaſt upon.

Theſe are all the advantages that are neceſſary, or that can be looked for, in tables of this ſort, to render them complete, and to obtain the approbation of the ingenious.

But it will now be requiſite to ſhew in what manner the machinery operates ſo as to effect theſe; and, likewiſe, to give ſome deſcription of its parts, that the workman may be able to form a proper idea of the whole.

The firſt and great thing to be attended to is, to ſhew the manner of raiſing the till by turning the fly-bracket. To ac-

compliſh this, I have given a perſpective view of the whole machinery at No. 1. Suppoſing the till to be taken out, and the fly-brackets and inner lining away from the framing; *a b* is an upright iron axis, made in two parts, and connected together by a round pin at the joint *b*; of courſe, if the winch *c* be turned round, the axis *a* will turn round with it by the above pin, without moving the lower part of the axis *b*. Whence it is evident, that if the winch *c* be ſcrewed to the under edge of the fly-bracket, which bracket is ſhewn in the deſign, it will turn round without affecting any part of the machinery. This is the cauſe why the flap of the top can be up whilſt the till is down. But if the ſquare ſocket *a* be preſſed down paſt the joint *b*, the two parts of the axis will then be confined together, and therefore if the winch *c* be moved this way, it is evident that the machinery will inſtantly be put in motion in the following manner:

The winch *c* being ſcrewed to the fly-bracket, and turned ſquare out, it deſcribes by its paſſage a quadrant of a circle; and the arm *s* of the crank-rod being fixed faſt into the ſame axis *a b*, conſequently it will deſcribe the ſame curve as the bracket: and as the crank-rod R is jointed into its arm at *s* and at *t*, in moving the arm the rod R is puſhed forward to *j*, and the horizontal cog-wheel H of courſe turns to the left-hand on the center C. It being then turned to the left, as expreſſed by the dotted

dotted line at *q*, it follows that the upright cog wheel N muſt be turned to the right-hand; and if this be turned to the right-hand, then muſt alſo the quadrant cog-wheel Q on the left turn to the right with it: and, becauſe the axis A is fixed faſt in the wheel Q, and the crooked levers *e e* into A, conſequently the rollers L L, fixed by the rod *o* to theſe levers, will deſcribe a quadrant of a circle, as denoted by the dotted line and the roller 9; becauſe the connecting cog-rod 5 makes Q move in the ſame curve as N does. Again, if N, the upper part of the upright cog-wheel, move to the right, then muſt M, the lower part of it, move to the left; and, being connected with the cog-rod 6, and it again to the right-hand quadrant cog-wheel Q, it follows, as before, that the levers *f f*, and the roller L, will deſcribe a quadrant of a circle to the left-hand, as at 8. The reader muſt eaſily ſee now, that when the winch *c* is turned by the fly-bracket, that every part of the machinery will be put in motion, and that the levers and rollers, in approaching gradually to 8 and 9, muſt neceſſarily raiſe up the till. But it muſt alſo be obſerved, that the motion of the levers *f f* and *e e* is greatly promoted by the power of the common ſteel-ſprings S S; for, when the till is down, theſe are always charged; that is, the ſides of the ſprings are nearly cloſe to each other, and theſe being connected with what may be termed the auxiliary, or aſſiſtant cog-rods, 4 and 7, and conſequently preſſing againſt their ends, the quadrant cog-wheels Q Q are thereby made to revolve, and the levers and rollers are raiſed almoſt

as

as much by this means as by the other machinery. It muſt alſo be noticed, that as theſe ſprings and auxiliary rods greatly aſſiſt the other power in raiſing the till, ſo do they alſo check the ſudden fall of it, by a conſtant reſiſtance againſt the preſſure of it, ſo that the paſſage of the till downwards is made by this mean ſmooth and eaſy.

Obſerve, *p*, *p*, *p*, *p*, are braſs pulleys fixed to keep the cog-rods in their place, and *w w* are pieces of wood to keep the ſprings firm to their center.

The reaſon why there are but three rollers, and two of them at one end, is obvious; becauſe the till muſt reſt truer on three points than on four. It cannot totter on this account when it is fully raiſed, becauſe there are two ſtops at that end where there is only one roller, which run in the grooves G G; and if the ſtops chuck up to the end of the grooves when the till is up, it is impoſſible that it can totter, conſidering that the other end is upon two rollers. And here let it be noted, that if the work-man find any inconvenience owing to the double roller *o* being at the ſame end with the axis *b b*, it can be removed by putting the double roller where the ſingle one is, which makes no dif-ference with any other part of the machinery. And obſerve, that when the rollers are nearly perpendicular to their axis A A, they enter upon an inclined plane, or on thin pieces of wood

planed

planed off like a wedge, of the width of the rollers, and whoſe thin end is glued to meet the rollers as they riſe, ſo that the till can thereby be raiſed as high as we pleaſe. Theſe wedges being glued on the under ſide of the till to ſuit exactly the place of the rollers, the projection of the wedges below the till makes it neceſſary that there ſhould be a vacuity in the axis A A, for them to fall into when the till is down; becauſe, in this ſituation, the till reſts on the three rollers, which are nearly on a level with the axis A A. And as the wedges above mentioned muſt lie acroſs the axis A A when the till is down, every workman muſt ſee the neceſſity of a vacuity, or otherwiſe the till would not ſettle to its place.

The next thing in order is to ſhew how one of the ſtops can be relieved, or ſlipped back, ſo that the till may be taken quite away. The conſtruction of this ſtop is ſhewn by No. 4, which ſuppoſes that we ſee the under-ſide of the till. A is a hole cut through the till, which hole is drawn by a compaſs, having one foot at C the center. P is a round pin, which comes through to the inſide of the bottom of the till. K is a tin key which hooks this pin. In applying this key to the pin, the writing ſlider, ſhewn in the deſign, muſt be puſhed in, and the front-part which covers the letter holes turned up to its place; and there being a groove acroſs the under ſide of the ſlider, exactly

where the pin comes, and the ſlider giving a little way for the thickneſs of the aforeſaid key, the groove juſt mentioned admits the key over the head of the pin P; then, when the key is drawn back again, P moves toward A by the center C; and S, the ſtop which projects beyond the till, is by this mean drawn within. B is a plate ſcrewed on to the till to keep the ſtop firm. Again, when the till is down to its place, it is neceſſary that it ſhould be ſtopped there alſo, as has been already ſaid. The apparatus for this is ſhewn at No. 3, which is a different view of the ſame lock as at No. 2. 1, 2, 3, 4, is ſuppoſed to be a part of the bottom, not of the till, but that whereon the machinery is placed at No. 1. *t s* is a kind of trammel with ſlits in it, moving on a center at *s*. A pin is fixed to the bolt of the lock, and there being a paſſage for the pin cut out of the lock-plate, as ſhewn in the deſign, this pin moves up and down, according as the key is turned. *a* is a kind of lever, with two arms, moving at the center *a*. *c c* are ſtaples which are faſtened to the under-ſide of the till, and as the bolt of the lock ſhoots downwards, the trammel *t s* throws the arms of the lever out of the ſtaples which are fixed to the underſide of the till; by which means the till is relieved, and can then be raiſed by drawing out the fly-bracket. And here the workman muſt be careful to obſerve, that when the bolt *b*, No. 1, is ſhot, as it now appears, the till is always relieved, and the bracket at the ſame time has

power

power to raiſe the till; becauſe the fork D works in the groove *d* of the axis *a b* at No. 1, and thereby preſſes the ſocket *a* to *b*, and gives the winch *c* power over the machinery. And obſerve further, that when the bolt *b* at No. 2 is up, as it is ſhewn at No. 3, then it is evident that the arms of the ſtop-lever will paſs through the beforementioned ſtaples at the underſide of the till and ſecure it, while, at the ſame time, the bracket will loſe its power over the machinery; becauſe the ſocket *a*, at No. 1, is thereby raiſed above *b*, and of courſe as *b* turns on a pin, the winch *c* cannot affect the crank-rod *s* R, and therefore no part of the machinery is moved. Thus it is, I think, ſufficiently clear that the till can be ſtopped and relieved when it is either up or down, and alſo that the bracket can be drawn out to ſupport the flap, while, at the ſame time, the till is both down and ſtopped, ſo that the whole may be uſed as a common breakfaſt table.

It remains now to give ſome hints reſpecting the manufacturing part.

Of the Table Top.

THE ſize of the table when opened is four feet, and two feet ſeven inches long; and the rails eight and a quarter deep.

The whole top is divided into four compartments, to anſwer the opening for the till. Round theſe compartments is a japanned border, to fill up the ſpace which lies between the end of the table and the end of the till. This border muſt be continued all round alike, to make the pannels appear uniform and of equal ſize. The bed of the top ſhould be framed in two pannels of three-quarters mahogany well ſeaſoned, and the breadth of the ſtiles to ſuit the opening of the till. A pannel of half-inch ſtuff ſhould be tongued into the other part of the bed where the till does not riſe. Then, for the ſake of the aſtragal which is to be worked on the edge of the top all round, a piece ſhould be tongued in, the long way of the grain, into each end of the bed. And obſerve, that as the bed of the table will frequently have to be taken off in the courſe of the work, it is beſt to put ſmall tenons into the under ſide of it, and mortices into the rails all round; by which means the bed will be kept to a certain place, and taken eaſy off at any time. A black ſtring is put next the till, all round the inſide of the border, to hide the joint. In putting this black ſtring on at the opening of the till, the inſide of the mahogany frame ſhould be rabbetted out to take a ſlip of black veneer about three-eighths wide; and it being left to ſtand above the framing the thickneſs of the veneer, this black ſlip can be ſhot by a rabbet-plain to the thickneſs of a neat ſtring, and the veneer muſt be jumped to it. The uſe of this is, that when the till riſes it may not take any part of the ſtring away

with it, which it certainly would do if it were put on merely as a corner ſtring.

Of the Till.

THE carcaſs of the till is made of half-inch mahogany; the partitions and letter-holes of thin quarter ſtuff, and black beads put on their edges, all of which muſt be kept back about half an inch from the edge of the carcaſs, to give place to the writing-ſlider; part of which turns up as a front to the inſide of the till, and part of it remains in it: and, as a part of the writing-ſlider remains in the bottom of the till below the drawers, conſequently there muſt be a joint in the ſlider to anſwer it; which joint is hinged at each end, before the croſs-band is put on for the green cloth. The workman may make the hinges himſelf to ſuit that purpoſe. They may be made as common deſk-fall hinges, only the knuckles of the hinge are made a little higher than common to receive a thin veneer; which, when ſcrewed on, the veneer for the band of the cloth lies upon and covers the ſtraps, ſo that a part of the knuckle is only ſeen: but obſerve, that the ends of the veneer, each meeting at the knuckle, muſt be cut in a ſloping direction, ſo that they and the braſs knuckle between them will be exactly in the form, and of the ſame nature, as the rule-joint of a fly-bracket for a Pembroke

table; and therefore it muſt be evident to every workman that the front will turn up ſquare. The ſlider is ſtopped into the till by a couple of pins which run in grooves; and when it is puſhed home, before it can turn up, a hollow muſt be worked in the bottom of the till, to give room for the angle of the riſing part of the ſlider to turn in. When the ſlider is turned up, it is kept in its place by a ſpring-catch, which ſtrikes into a plate put on at the under ſide of the top of the till. And obſerve, that when the front is up, it ſhould be rather within the carcaſs of the till, both for the purpoſe of letting the till go eaſy down, and to admit of a ſlip of thin green cloth at each end, ſo that when the front is turned upon the top of the Pembroke table it may not ſcratch it.

Another method may, however, be propoſed, and which will be attended with leſs trouble; only with this diſadvantage, that it takes off a little of the height of the drawers.

The ſlider, being made in two parts, may be hinged in the manner of a card-table top, which, when it is folded over, can be puſhed to its place. But obſerve, that the under top muſt be made ſo much broader than the upper one, as will admit of its being ſtopped in after the manner of the other; ſo that when it is drawn out, the upper top will riſe and clear the drawer fronts. If the ſlider be made in this manner, the drawers can

then

then be brought within a little of the front edge and what remains ſerves to give place to a couple of thumb-nail holes to draw out the ſlider by.

N. B. The proſpect door is made to run in at the top like a drawer, upon the ſame principles as the front of the cabinet in Plate L.

Of the Frame of the Table.

THE legs are made a little ſtronger than uſual, becauſe the table is pretty heavy altogether.

Both the end rails are divided into four drawers each, in appearance; but, in reality, there are but two in the whole: for obſerve, that, for the ſake of ſtrength in the frame, the lower drawer of the left hand is made real, and that above it is a ſham; but at the other end, which is not ſeen in the deſign, the upper drawer is real, and the under one a ſham. A middle rail is tenonned, of inch ſtuff, into each end rail. Againſt this rail the upright part of the machinery is fixed, as ſhewn at No. 1; and as this rail ſtands within the edge of the top-framing about an inch, it contains the whole projection of every part of the machinery, ſo that the till paſſes without obſtruction.

The

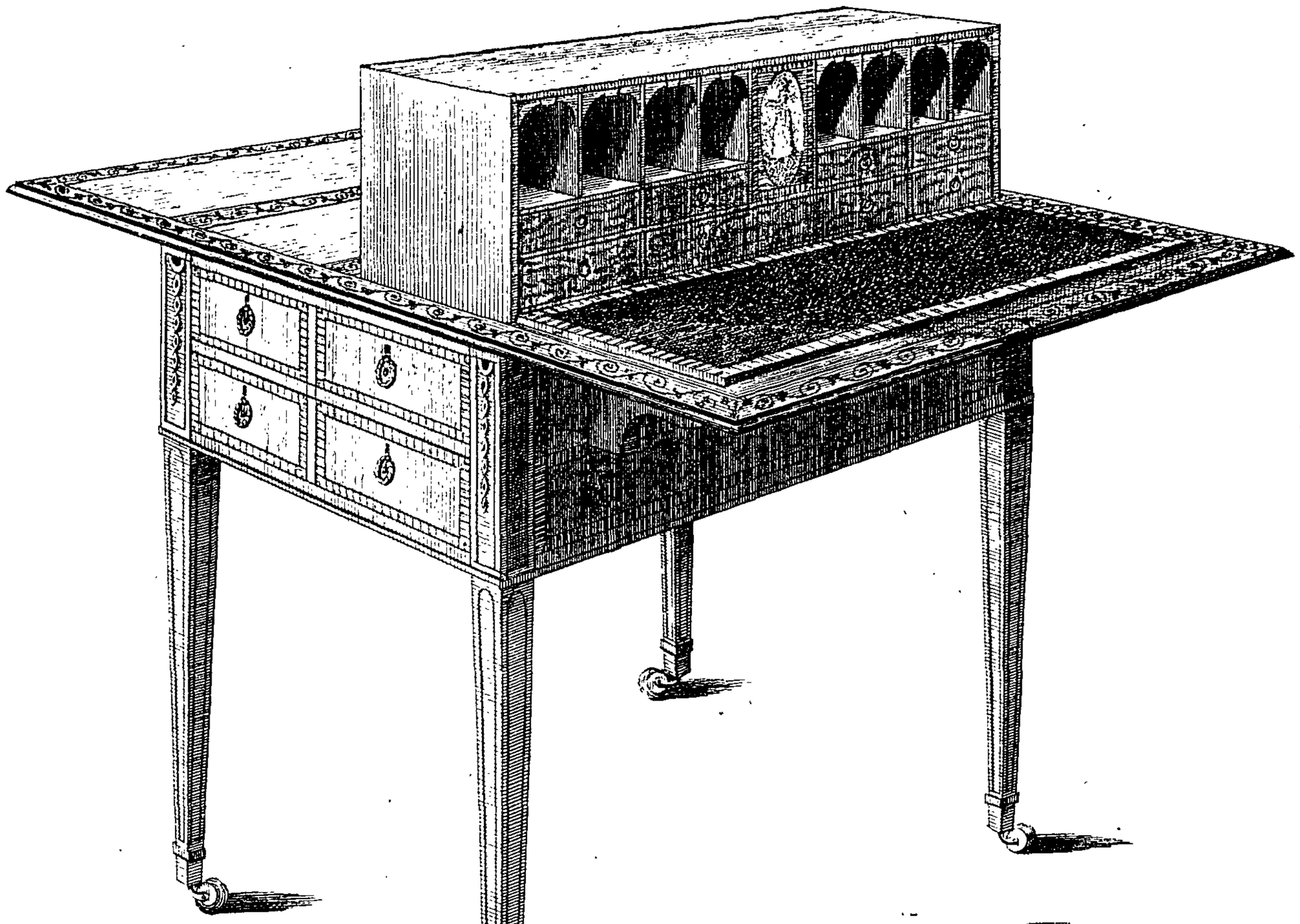
The inner lining for the fly-brackets to fall againſt, is not leſs than three quarters thick when planed; and it muſt be the whole breadth of the end rails, i. e. eight and a quarter. The fly-bracket makes up the remaining thickneſs of the foot, and comes down low enough to anſwer the height of the upper croſs-band of the lower drawer. The part remaining below the bracket is veneered the whole length with ſatin-wood, and croſs-banded, to match the drawer fronts. The workman, in making the fly-bracket to which the winch *c* is ſcrewed, muſt obſerve to make a ſhoulder pin on the turning part of it at the under edge: and this ſhoulder will require to be double the uſual thickneſs, that the iron winch *c* may be let into the bracket without injuring the rule-joint, or interfering with the wire of its center.

The lock, at No. 2 or 3, is put on at the inſide of the inner lining, ſo near to the axis *a b*, at No. 1, as that the fork D of the lock ſhall extend to the groove *d* in the ſocket of the axis *a b*, which then will determine the place of the key-hole, as ſhewn in the deſign.

Of

A HARLEQUIN PEMBROKE TABLE.

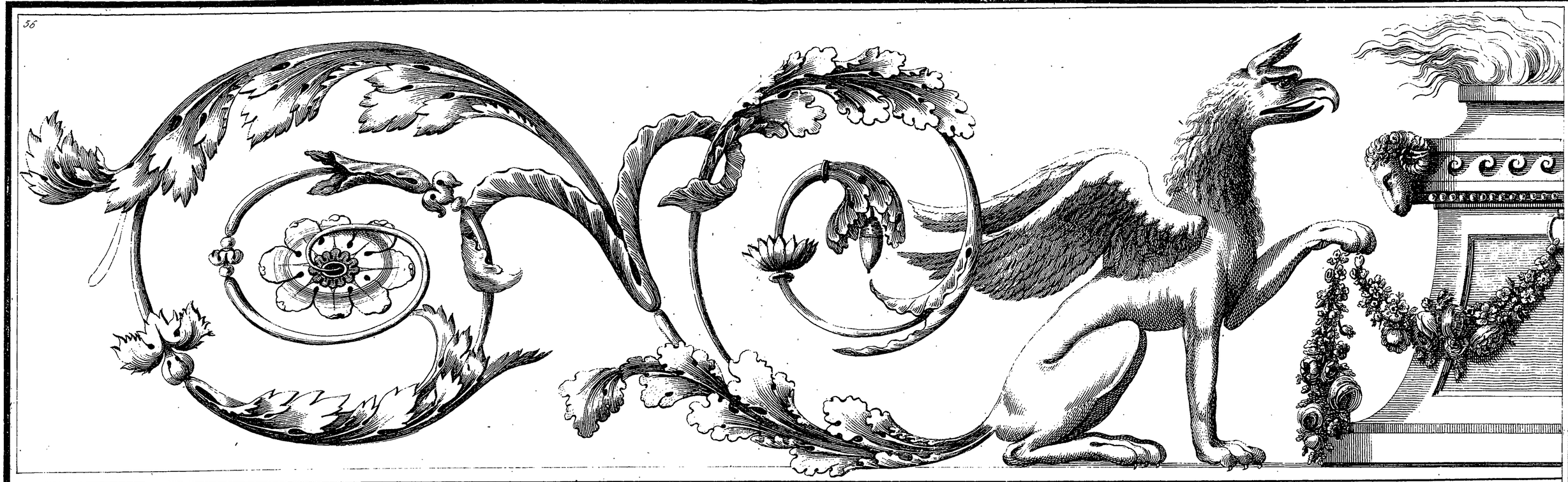
pl. 56

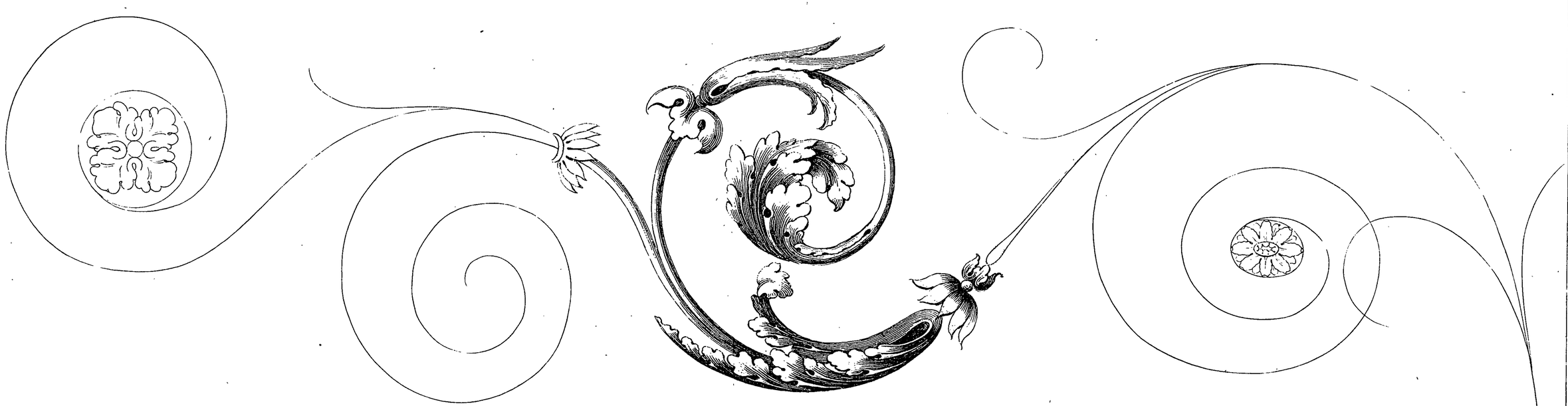


Ornament for a Frieze or Table &c.

No3. pl.1.

56





T.Sheraton delin.

Published as the Act directs. Oct.r 18. 1791. by T.Sheraton.

G.Terry sculp.

Of the Pediments. Plate LVII.

WITH reſpect to theſe pediments little can be ſaid, as the deſigns themſelves ſhew in what manner they ſhould be executed.

No. 1. Should have the facia, or ground board, glued up in three thickneſſes, having the middle piece with the grain right up and down. The foliage ornaments are cut out along with the aſtragal, and planted on; and the whole may eaſily be made to take off from the cornice, by having a tenon at each end and one in the center.

No. 2. The tablet part is intended to have a croſs-band round it, and the drapery may be japanned. The aſtragal on the top of it is meant to return over the ogee. The ſquare of the ogee may come forward, level with the tablet, to prevent too great a projection.

No. 3. In the center there are two pilaſters to project a little from the ground, which are fluted. The pannels at each end are intended to be fanned the reverſe way, or with the rounds out.

No. 4.

No. 4. The ſcrolls are continued in one piece from the foliage, and planted on.

No. 5. The center is intended to be veneered and croſs-banded, with an oval let in, and japanned. The pedeſtal above is intended to be thrown back in a hollow carved in leaves. The foliage on the ſcrolls is meant to lap on the aſtragal, and to finiſh off at the patera. The ground of the facia is fanned out.

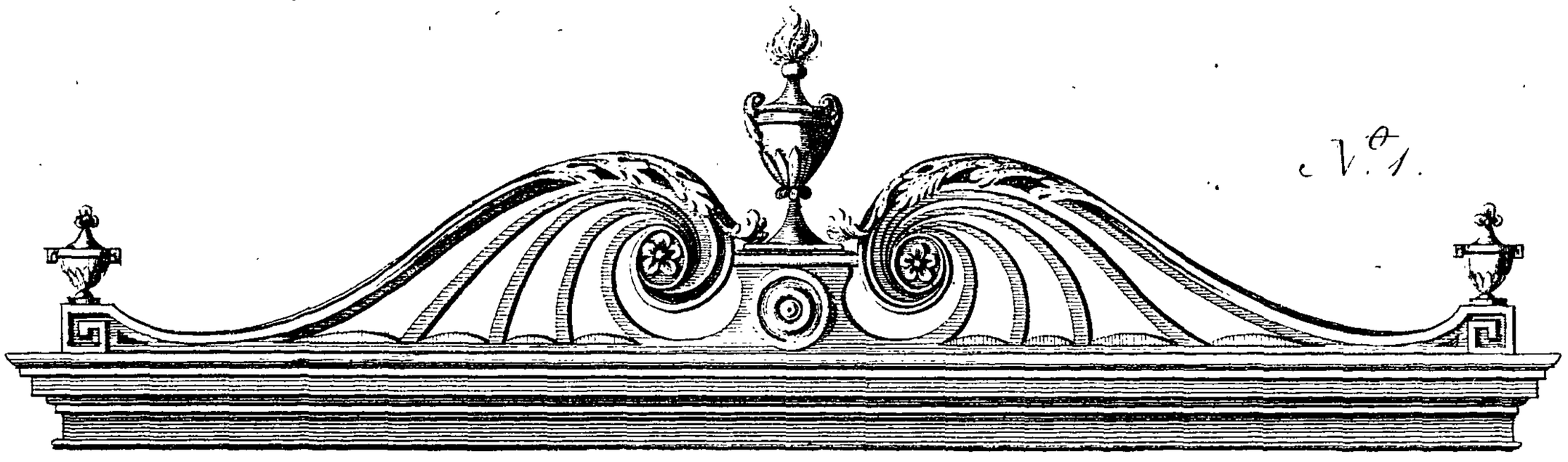
Of the Cornices. Plate LIX.

In theſe cornices the ſpring is ſhewn, and the proper gaging is pointed out. The width and thickneſs alſo of the mahogany is ſhewn. The aſtragal, in No. 3 and 5, can be worked ſeparate, and glued on afterwards. The pateras, in No. 6, are turned and planted on.

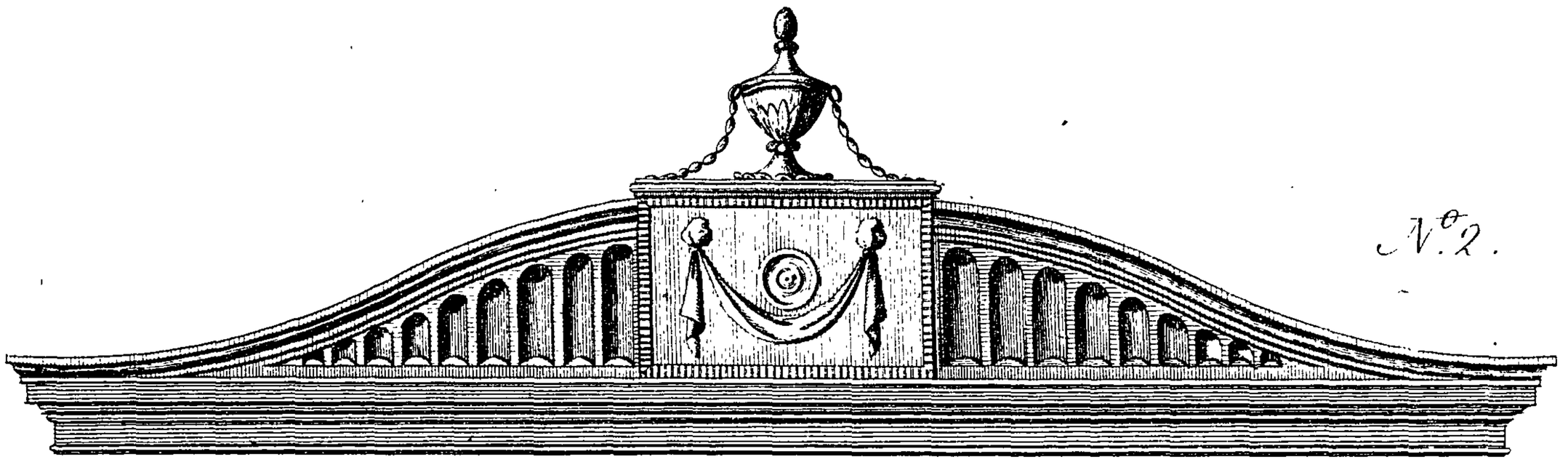
Of the Method of gaging and working Cornices.

The explanation of this may be thought, by ſome, an unneceſſary buſineſs; but from the bungling manner in which I have ſeen many workmen proceed to ſtick cornices, I am certain

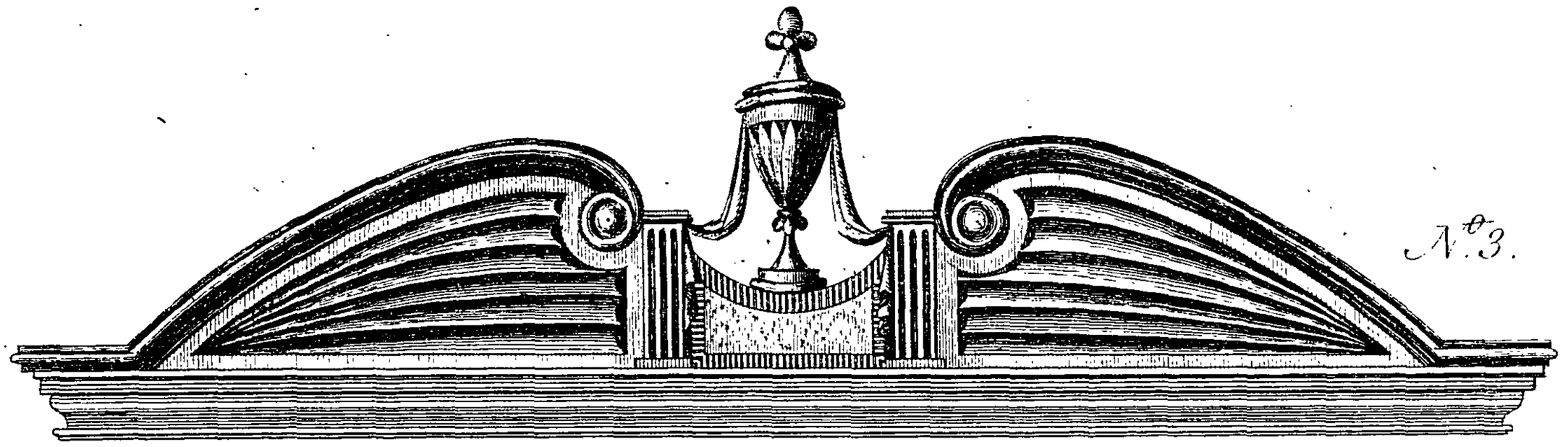
PEDIMENTS for BOOKCASES



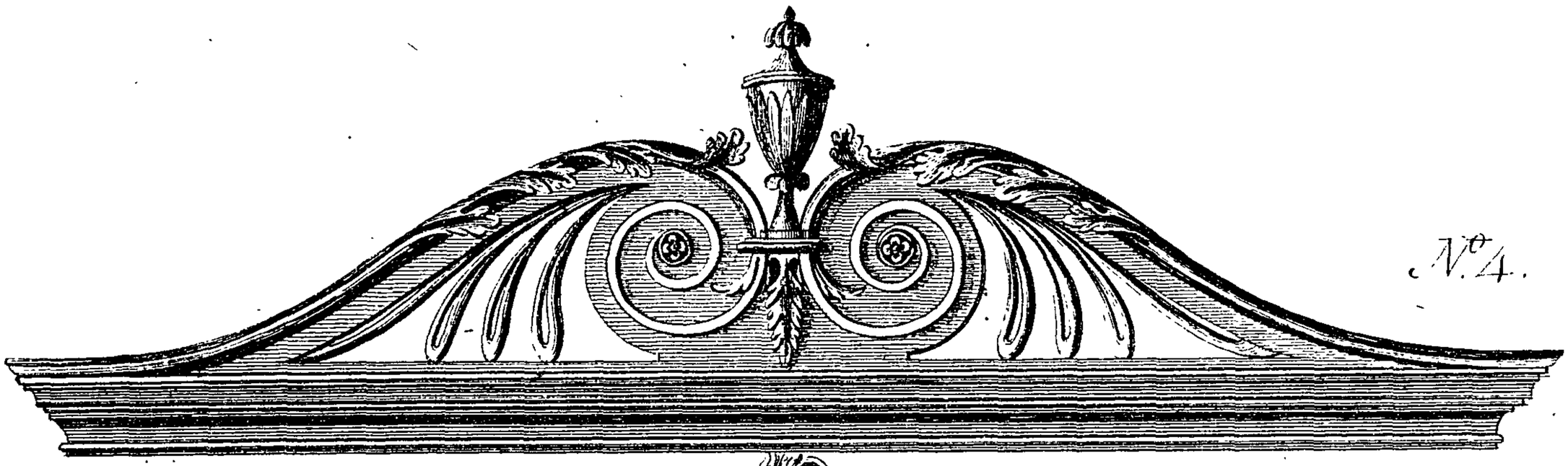
N.o 1.



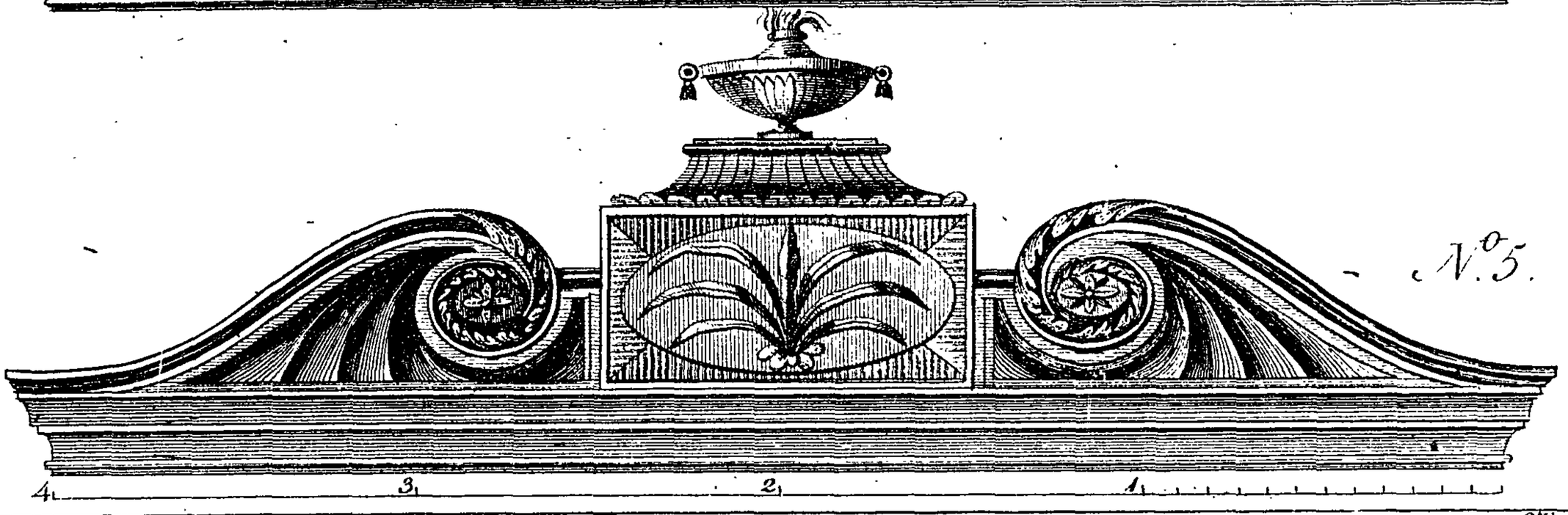
N.o 2.



N.o 3.



N.o 4.



N.o 5.

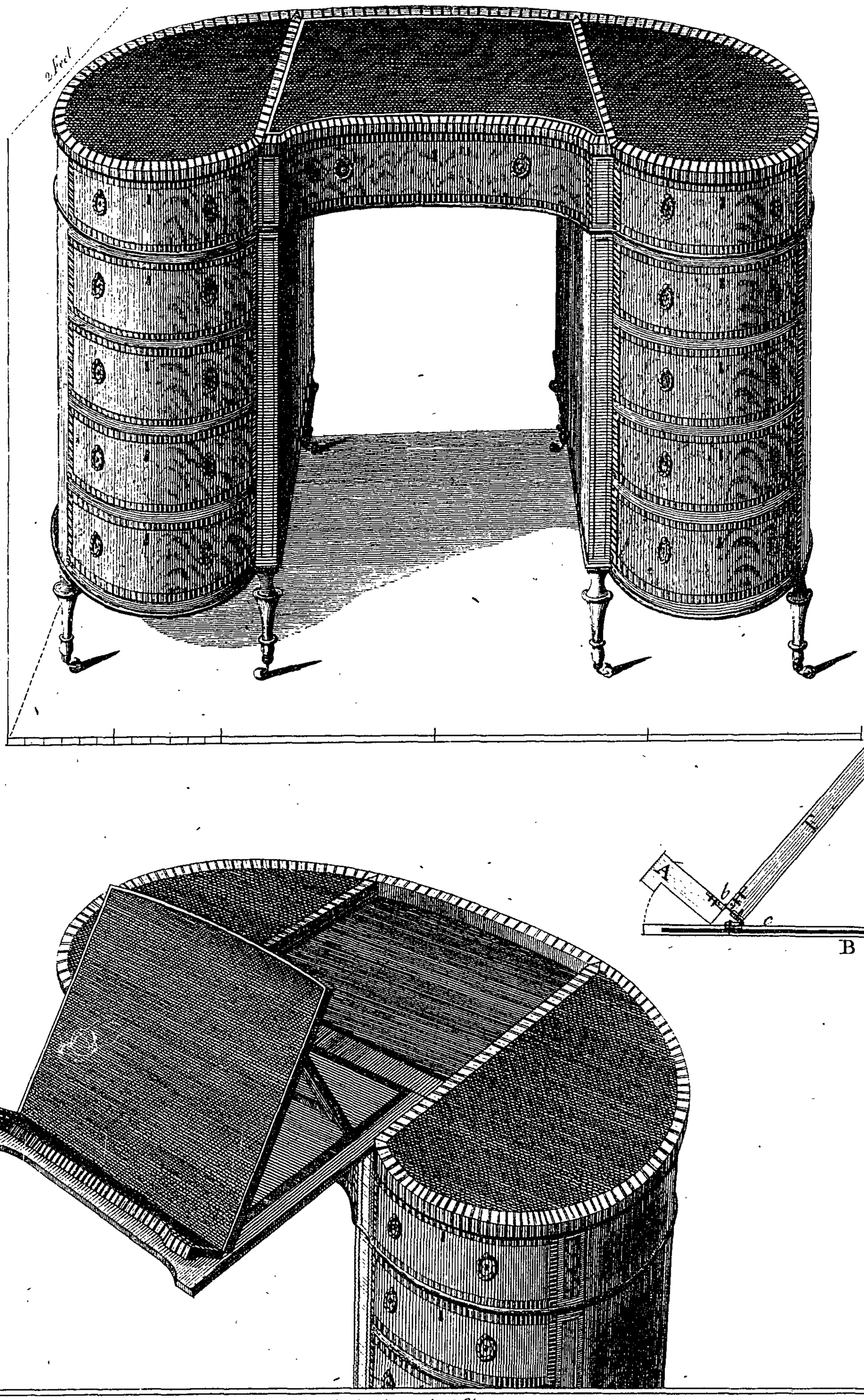
4 3 2 1

T Sheraton. del

G Terry Sculp

Published by T. Sheraton. Dec.r 24 1792.

A KIDNEY TABLE.



T. Sheraton .del .

Published as the Act directs. by T. Sheraton. Oct. 11. 1792.

Terry. Sc.

tain that a few hints will be of ſervice, eſpecially to the inexperienced. For this purpoſe I have, in No. 1, lettered each gage-point, and I ſhall proceed as ſuppoſing that it is neceſſary that the whole ſhould be taught.

When the pattern of any cornice is given to be worked, take the drawing and ſtrike a line *a n* to touch as near as may be each member. From this front line ſtrike one at each end ſquare from it, ſo as to take in the whole extent of the cornice. Then draw another line parallel to that on the front, to ſhew the neceſſary thickneſs of the mahogany, and proceed as follows:

Let the ſtuff be ſawn out broad enough to plane to *b o*; after which, plane it true on both ſides, and glue on deal of the breadth of *e p*, and thick enough to make out the whole ſpring of the cornice. After the glue is dry, plane the mahogany to the exact breadth of *b o*. After ſtriking a ſquare line acroſs the mahogany, extend the compaſſes from *a* to *a*, and to *c*, *f*, *g*, &c. and lay all theſe points on the ſquare line, and run a gage thro' each of them. Run then a gage from *a* to *b*, and from *n* to *o*; and taking a bevel, fix the handle of it exactly by the front line, and let the inſide of the blade of it correſpond with *o p*. With the bevel thus fixed, plane down the wood behind till it fit the bevel in every place, and be brought down to *o*. Take

then a ſquare, and plane down the wood at *b* and *e* till the ſquare fit in every place, and the wood is brought down to *b*. After this lay the cornice on the ſide *o p*, and ſhoot off the wood *a*, *a*, *b*; then lay it on the ſide *b e*, and ſhoot off the wood at *n o* to *m*. The cornice being thus properly ſprung, faſten it down on the ſide *a p*, and proceed to rabbet out the ſeveral ſquares. Begin at *c* and rabbet down to *f*; at *h* run on a ſide gage, and, entering in by a ſnipe's-bill, work down to *i*, the fluting being laid on afterwards; at *q* run on a ſide gage each way for the ſquare of the ovalo. From *i* rabbet down to *k*, and at *l* down to *m*; and thus it is evident that the whole cornice, of whatever kind, cannot fail of being correctly worked.

Of the Method of contracting and enlarging Cornices.

SUPPOSE A to be a cornice already drawn or worked, and it be required to draw and work one a third, fourth, or any other proportion narrower than A, and, at the ſame time, to contract its projection in proportion to its height:

Take the compaſſes and extend them to *a o*, the whole height of the cornice A, and with this opening ſweep an arch each way, and where they interſect, to that point draw right-lines from *o* and *a*, forming an equilateral triangle. In the ſame

manner

manner proceed with the projection of A, as ſhewn in the figure. To the ſummits of thoſe triangles draw lines from the ſeveral heights and projections of each member. If the cornice to be drawn is to be one third leſs, then divide any one ſide of the triangles into three equal parts, and take one part from *o* to *p*, and let fall a perpendicular from *p*; and from where this perpendicular cuts each line draw parallels, which will give the height of each member in exact proportion. For the projections: *o q* is one third of the ſide of the triangle, as before; draw a parallel line at *q*, which will give the ſeveral projections ſought. Take *q t*, and transfer this to *p r*, and ſo of the reſt, till you have laid on each projection; after which let fall perpendiculars, as ſhewn at No. 7, and proceed to draw the outlines of each member within their proper ſquares, and the cornice will be contracted in the moſt accurate manner.

Of enlarging Cornices.

SUPPOSE now the cornice A is required to be higher than what it is at preſent. Draw parallel lines from each member, and having fixed the compaſſes to the height propoſed, fix one foot at *o*, and move the other till it touch any where on the line *a k*, as at *k*; draw a line from *c* to *k*, and where this line interſects with each parallel before drawn, will be the ſeveral heights

of the mouldings as required. To find the projection, proceed thus:—ſweep the arch *a c*, cutting *o k* at *b*; take *a b* and place it from *c* to *d*, and from *d* draw a line to *o*, and *o m* will then be the whole projection of the cornice proportionable to the height *o k*; conſequently where the line *o m* interſects, each perpendicular raiſed from the ſeveral projections of A, will be the ſeveral projections ſought. *o m* is then a ſcale line for the projections, and *o k* for the heights of each member; and having theſe, the cornice can then be drawn on a ſeparate paper, in the ſame manner as A was drawn at firſt.

By continuing the parallel lines of A to the right, as ſhewn in the plate, and by letting fall its perpendiculars to any length, it is evident that A may be enlarged as much as we pleaſe, by drawing the line *o k* more oblique, as at *e*, which then makes it rather more than one third higher. Then, by extending the compaſſes from *a* to where *o e* cuts the arch, and by replacing this opening from *c* to *g*, and ſtriking a line from *o* to *g* through to *f*, *o f* will be its projection as before; on which principles *o f* will be in a ratio with *o e*. This the workman can prove, for by comparing *o f* with the length of the projection of A, he will find it rather more than one third longer; and by compairing *o e* with *o a*, he will find it rather more than one third longer alſo.

CORNICES & SURBASES.

N.o 1.

N.o 2.

N.o 3.

N.o 4.

N.o 5.

N.o 6.

N.o 7.

N.o 1.

N.o 2.

N.o 3.

A

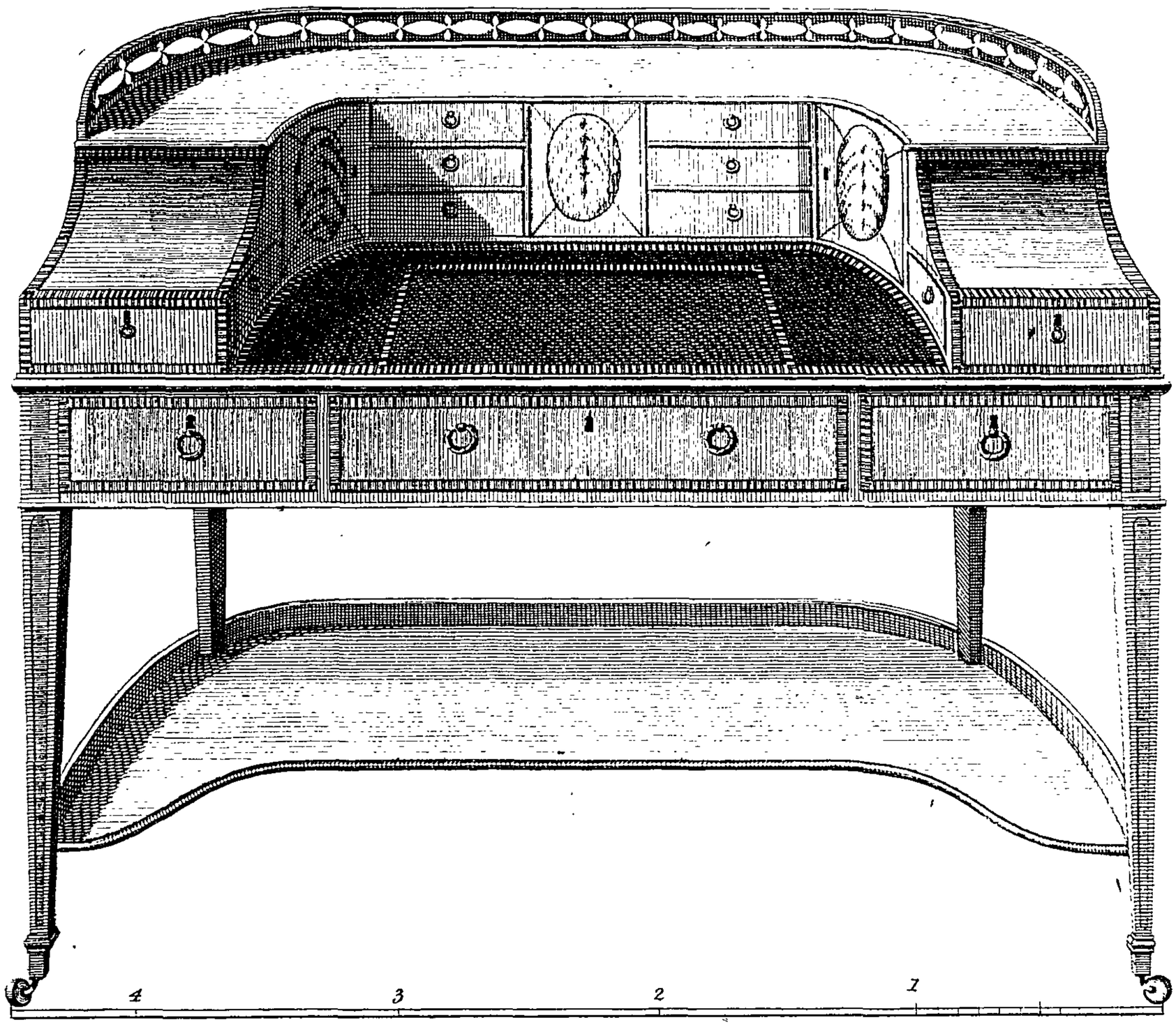
The contraction & Enlargement of Cornices or any other Moulding.

T. Sheraton. del

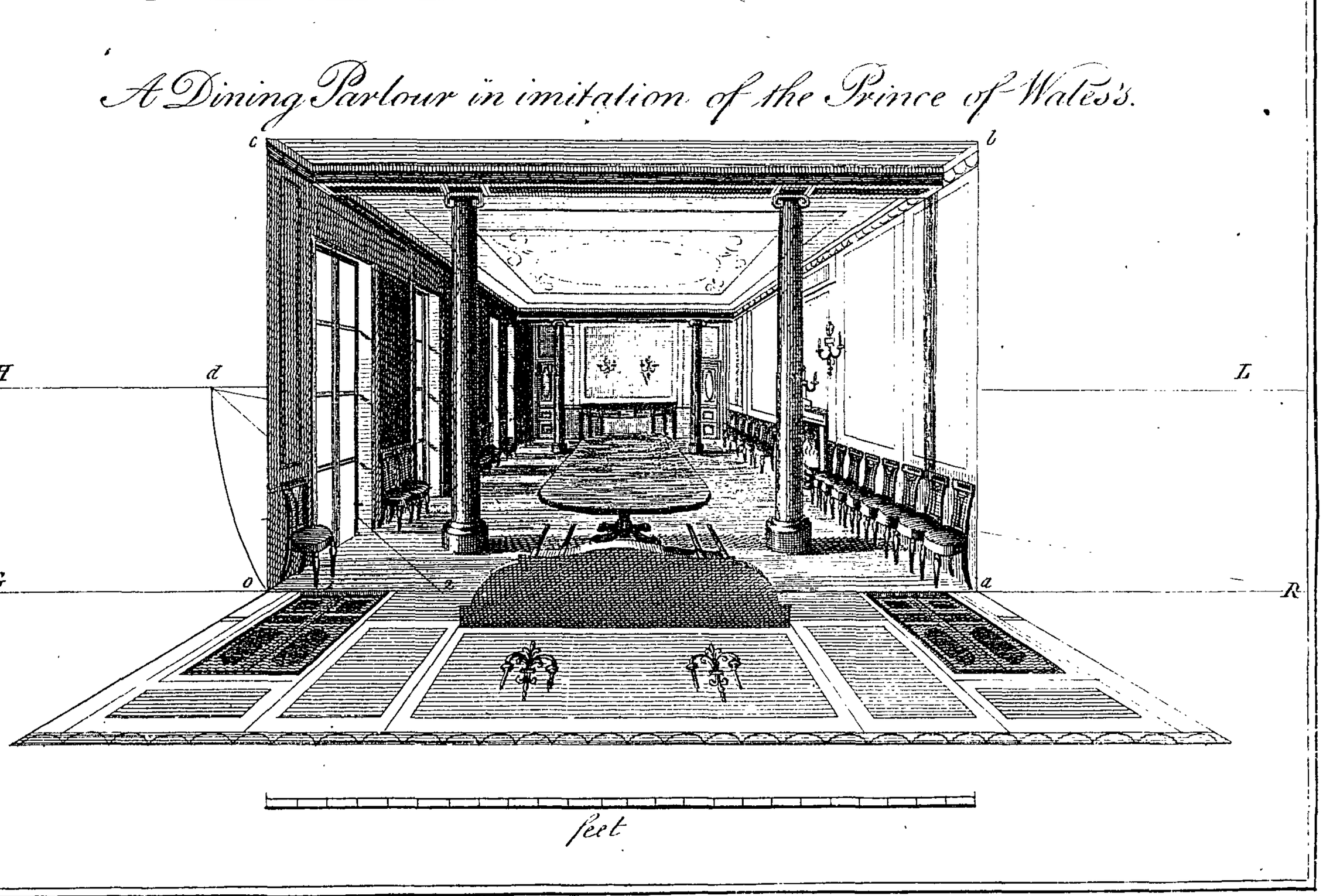
Publishid as the Act directs. by T. Sheraton. Oct. 26. 1792.

G. Terry. Sculp.

A Ladys Drawing and Writing Table.



A Dining Parlour in imitation of the Prince of Wales's.



T. Sheraton Del.

Barlow Sculp.

Published as the Act directs, by T. Sheraton, Jan.y 16, 1793.

Thus it is evident that any cornice or moulding whatever, and however complex, may be contracted and enlarged as we pleaſe, and that with the greateſt mathematical nicety.

Of the Lady's Drawing and Writing Table. Plate LX.

THESE tables are finiſhed neat, either in mahogany or ſatin-wood, with a braſs rim round the top part. The upper part is made ſeparate from the under part, and fixes on to it by pins.

The riſing deſk in the middle may be made to ſlide forward*, which will then ſerve to draw upon; and the ſmall drawers below the coves at each end, will be found convenient for colours.

The drawer in the middle of the front ſerves to put the drawings in.

The top is lined with green leather or cloth.

The ſcale ſhews the ſize of every part in the front, and the breadth is two feet three inches.

The height of the upper part is eight inches.

* See the directions given for the Kidney Table.

Of

Of the Dining Parlour. Plate LX.

This method of repreſenting a dining or drawing-room has its advantages; though the moſt general method is by a plan and ſection, as the drawing-room in Plate LXI. In this method the end wall neareſt the eye is ſuppoſed to be laid level with the floor, without which the inſide of the room could not be ſeen. The advantage of this is, that the walls, furniture, and every particular, are ſhewn in their natural poſition, except the firſt end, ſo that the effect of the whole may be better judged of than in the other method.

The advantage of the method in Plate LXI. is, that the ſides and ends of the room being turned down, from a geometrical plan, every thing on the walls is ſhewn geometrically, and therefore the parts are more diſtinct; but with this diſadvantage, that it muſt be viewed at four different times, by turning each end and ſide to the eye; whereas, in the other way, the whole is ſeen at one view.

In proceeding to draw after the method of Plate LX, make a ſcale of feet as there ſhewn, and draw G R for a ground line, and H L for the horizon. Let the center of the picture be in the

the middle of the end; and, as theſe are views of a ſhort diſtance, extend the compaſſes from the center to *o*, and turn it up to *d*, which will be the ſhorteſt diſtance that can be applied. Draw viſuals from *o*, *c*, *b*, *a*, to the center. From *o* to 1 lay on the ſize of the firſt pier, and draw a line to *d*, which, cutting the viſual drawn from *o* to the center, gives the perſpective of it. Then lay from 1 to 2, the breadth of the window, and draw a line to *d*; and in like manner find the appearance of all the piers and windows. Obſerve, that a line from R to *d* finds the whole length of the room. How every other part muſt be drawn will be obvious to every one who underſtands perſpective, and no other with any propriety can attempt it.

This dining-parlour gives a general idea of the Prince of Wales's in Carlton Houſe; but in ſome particulars it will be a little varied, as I had but a very tranſient view of it.

The Prince's has five windows facing St. James's Park. This alſo has five, one of which is hid by the left column. His windows are made to come down to the floor, which open in two parts as a double door, leading to a large graſs plat to walk in. If I remember right, there are pilaſters between each window; but this is intended to have glaſs. In his is a large glaſs over the chimney-piece, as this has. To theſe glaſs frames are fixed candle-branches. At each end of his is a large ſideboard, nearly

twelve

twelve feet in length, ſtanding between a couple of Ionic columns, worked in compoſition to imitate fine variegated marble, which have a moſt beautiful and magnificent effect. In the middle are placed a large range of dining-tables, ſtanding on pillars with four claws each, which is now the faſhionable way of making theſe tables. The chairs are of mahogany, made in the ſtyle of the French, with broad top-rails hanging over each back foot; the legs are turned, and the ſeats covered with red leather.

I could not ſhew the curtains of each window without confuſion, but they are of the French kind.

Many dining-rooms of the firſt nobility have, however, only two columns and one ſideboard; and thoſe of leſs note have no columns.

The general ſtyle of furniſhing a dining-parlour ſhould be in ſubſtantial and uſeful things, avoiding trifling ornaments and unneceſſary decorations. The pillars are emblematic of the uſe we make of theſe rooms, in which we eat the principal meal for nature's ſupport. The furniture, without exception, is of mahogany, as being the moſt ſuitable for ſuch apartments.

Of

Of the Drawing Room. Plate LXI.

In drawing a room of this kind very little perſpective is wanted. All that is required is a horizontal line on each wall. And I would not adviſe drawing every object on each wall to one point of ſight, as thoſe at the extremities will thereby become exceedingly diſtorted and unnatural. For, upon ſuppoſition that the ſpectator moves along to different ſtations as he views any one ſide of the room, perſpective will admit that the deſigner have as many points to draw to as the ſpectator had ſtations to view from. If a room of this ſort be narrow, fewer points may do for the furniture at each end, with a little management; but the furniture on the ſide walls ſhould have almoſt as many points as pieces of furniture. The line that marks out the boundaries of the floor, ſerves as the proper ground line to each horizon, and the geometrical meaſurement of each piece being taken from the ſcale and laid down on the wall, the perſpective is drawn from each point backwards, or into the room.

A drawing-room is of that ſort which admits of the higheſt taſte and elegance; in furniſhing of which, workmen in every nation exert the utmoſt efforts of their genius.

To aſſiſt me in what I have here ſhewn, I had the opportunity of ſeeing the Prince of Wales's, the Duke of York's, and other noblemen's drawing-rooms. I have not, however, followed any one in particular, but have furniſhed my ideas from the whole, with ſuch particulars as I thought beſt ſuited to give a diſplay of the preſent taſte in fitting up ſuch rooms.

It may not be amiſs to mention ſome particulars reſpecting the Prince's room, that the reader may form ſome idea of its taſte and magnificence.

Its proportions are as follows:—forty-eight feet ſix inches long, thirty-four broad, and between eighteen and nineteen feet high, including the cove of the ceiling.

It has five windows in length, a fire-place at each end, and five doors. Two doors are at each end, one of which is ſham; and a large arched double door nearly in the center oppoſite the windows.

Oppoſite each window is a large glaſs, with a circular top, to ſuit the arches above the windows; and over each fire-place there is alſo a glaſs. In the piers between each window there are no glaſſes, but a couple of richly finiſhed Corinthian pilaſters, with their architrave and impoſts to ſuit the tops of each

window. On the ſide oppoſite to the windows the ſame pilaſters are employed; for, as the before-mentioned glaſſes each occupy a ſpace equal to the width of a window, and are directly oppoſite to them, this preſerves a regularity in the pilaſters on both ſides. In like manner each end of the room has its pilaſters of the ſame order, one on each ſide of the fire-place, and of the doors. The cove and ceiling are richly ornamented in paintings and gold.

A room of this deſcription is not, however, a proper precedent for drawing-rooms in general, as it partakes principally of the character and ordinance of a ſtate ſaloon-room, in which are entertained ambaſſadors, courtiers, and other perſonages of the higheſt ſtations.

In the drawing-room which is here ſhewn, every thing will appear eaſily underſtood to a workman in town, who is accuſtomed to ſee ſuch apartments; but for a ſtranger, and thoſe workmen who reſide in the country, it will be proper to point out a few particulars.

The pier tables have marble tops and gold frames, or white and gold. The glaſſes are often made to appear to come down to the ſtretcher of the table; that is, a piece of glaſs is fixed in behind the pier table, ſeparate from the upper glaſs, which

then appears to be the continuation of the ſame glaſs, and, by reflection, makes the table to appear double. This ſmall piece of glaſs may be fixed either in the dado of the room, or in the frame of the table.

The arches above the windows are merely artificial, being only wooden frames put up, ſtrained with canvas; after which the ſame kind of ſtuff which the curtains are made of is formed to appear like a fan, and drapery tacked on to it.

The pannelling on the walls are done in paper, with ornamented borders of various colours.

The figures above the glaſſes are paintings, in clare-obſcure. The ſofas are bordered off in three compartments, and covered with figured ſilk or ſatin. The ovals may be printed ſeparately, and ſewed on. Theſe ſofas may have cuſhions to fill their backs, together with bolſters at each end. In France, where their drawing-rooms are fitted up in the moſt ſplendid manner, they uſe a ſett of ſmall and plainer chairs, reſerving the others merely for ornament.

The commode oppoſite the fire-place has four doors; its legs are intended to ſtand a little clear of the wings; and the top is marble, to match the pier tables. In the freeze part of the commode is a tablet in the center, made of an exquiſite compoſition

A Plan & Section of a Drawing Room pl.61.

Publish'd as the Act directs. by T. Sheraton. Feb.y 1. 1793.

T. Sheraton. del.

G. Terry. Sculp.

poſition in imitation of ſtatuary marble. Theſe are to be had, of any figure, or on any ſubject, at Mr. Wedgewood's, near Soho-ſquare. They are let into the wood, and project a little forward. The commode ſhould be painted to ſuit the furniture, and the legs and other parts in gold to harmonize with the ſofas, tables, and chairs.

To ſupply the Defect of Figure 32, *Plate* V.

It is there ſhewn how to find the miter of the ſides of a comb-tray at any pitch, and of any given projection; but it was omitted to ſhew how the miter is obtained in the thickneſs of the ſtuff, as it riſes to any pitch.

Having found the breadth of the ſides *b c*, Fig. 32, Plate V, with this opening of the compaſſes deſcribe a ſemicircle, ſee Plate XXII, and make *a e* equal to the perpendicular height of the ſide of the tray. Draw a line from *e* to the center; and parallel to this, ſet off a line for the thickneſs of the tray ſides, and the bevel of the under edge will be at 4. Draw a ſquare at the center, the length of whoſe ſides ſhall be equal to the thickneſs of the tray ſides, as 3, 1, 2. Next draw the line B, A, E, parallel to the diameter; and take *a e*, the ſine of the angle of the tray ſides, and transfer it to E A. From A draw a line to the center, cutting the ſmall ſquare at 1, and the ſpace 1—2 will be the miter ſought for; that is, when the ſides are mitered in

their

their breadth, according to Fig. 32, Plate V, ſet a gage to 1—2, and run the gage along the miter, and plane it off to the gage from the outſide, and the miters will all come exactly together. If the tray ſides were raiſed to *b*, *b i* would then be the ſine of their angle; and which being transferred to B, a line from B to the center cuts the ſquare at 3; then is the ſpace 3—2 the length of the miter ſought. And thus it is evident, that as *b* advances to E the perpendicular, ſo will the miter point B approach to D, the full miter. It is alſo evident, that by this figure the miter of any thing not exceeding the diameter E of the ſemicircle may be found. For inſtance, if the ſides of any tray be half an inch thick, and it is required to be mitered and keyed together, draw a ſquare of that dimenſion, as the ſecond ſhewn in the figure; and if the ſides bevel in an angle equal to the line *e*, then 1—2 of the ſecond ſquare will be the length of the miter. I proved the truth of this theory by practice, and therefore the workman may depend on its infallibility; but he may eaſily make the ſame experiment himſelf.

THE END.

ERRATA.

Page 23, line 14, for *b s*, read *b* S.
—— 28, —— 13, *read it thus:*—if you want five tenths of a foot, and five of the hundredth parts of a foot, place your compaſs foot—
—— ib. —— 19, *for* any tenth part of an inch, *read* any one hundredth part of a foot.
—— 57, —— 16, *for* 9, 5, *read q*—5.
—— ib. —— 18, *for* 9, 5, *read q*—5.
—— 61, —— 11, for *a* to *n*, read *d* to *n*.
—— 70, —— 9, *for* the extreme line P E and P 1, *read* P E and I I.
——137, —— 4, *for* abacuo, *read* abacus.
——152, Plate VIII, *for* 7 diameters, *read* 8 diameters.
——162, line 22, Plate XII, *for* take *m o*, *read* take twice *m a* in the compaſſes, and with this opening find the center of the curve for the abacus as at *p* on Fig. B.
——206, —— 10, *for* from *a* to *a*, *read* from *d* to *a*.
——211, —— 11, *for* Plate XV. *read* Plate XIV.
——273, —— 15, *for* Fig. 23, *read* Fig. 21.

APPENDIX

TO THE

CABINET-MAKER AND UPHOLSTERER'S

DRAWING-BOOK.

CONTAINING

A VARIETY OF ORIGINAL DESIGNS FOR HOUSEHOLD FURNITURE, IN THE NEWEST AND MOST ELEGANT STYLE;

ALSO,

A NUMBER OF PLAIN AND USEFUL PIECES, SUITABLE EITHER FOR TOWN OR COUNTRY;

TOGETHER WITH A DESCRIPTION AND EXPLANATION TO EACH PIECE.

By THOMAS SHERATON,
CABINET-MAKER.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR THE AUTHOR, BY T. BENSLEY;

AND SOLD BY J. MATHEWS, N° 18, STRAND; G. TERRY, N° 54, PATERNOSTER-ROW;
J. S. JORDAN, N° 166, FLEET-STREET; AND BY THE AUTHOR,
N° 98, WARDOUR-STREET, SOHO.

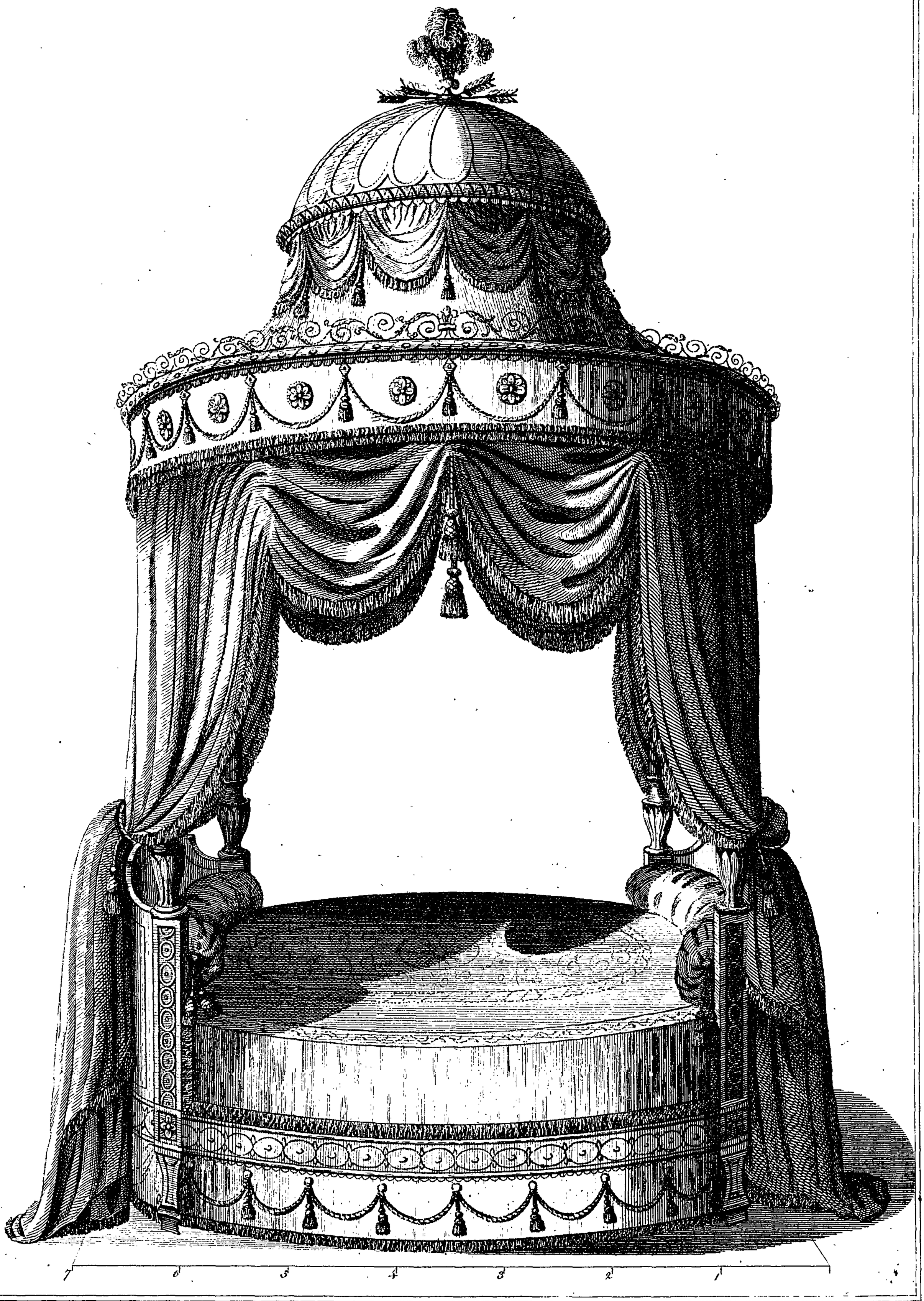
1796.

[Entered at Stationers Hall.]

NK2542
.S5A32
Rosenthal

1041 B2
022 #2

An Eliptic Bed for a Single Lady



T. Sheraton. del.

G. Terry. Sculp.

Publish'd as the Act directs by Gar.t Terry, Mar.t 1. 1793.

APPENDIX.

Of the Elliptic Bed. Plate I. of the Appendix.

As fancifulneſs ſeems moſt peculiar to the taſte of females, I have therefore aſſigned the uſe of this bed for a ſingle lady, though it will equally accommodate a ſingle gentleman.

The elliptic ſhape of the frame of this bed contracts its width at each end conſiderably, on which account it will not admit of more than one perſon.

On the manufacturing part of it I would offer a few hints to aſſiſt the workman.—The frame of the bedſtead ſhould be glued up in wainſcot three or four thickneſſes, with the jump-joints croſſing each other, as in the method of gluing the frames of circular card-tables, which ſome uſe. For which purpoſe, draw the full ſize of the ellipſis upon a board, and make the diameters each way, by which one quarter will be

found. A thin mould muſt then be made to agree with the quarter of the ellipſis, which will ſerve for cutting out the whole by, when different portions of it are ſo taken as to form croſſing-joints. The frame being thus made an entire ellipſis, as Fig. A. in Plate XXX. it is propoſed to half-lap the pillars into the frame, and to have a ſtretching rail at each end to tenon in oppoſite to each pillar; into which ſtretcher the ſcrews are to work which fix the pillars to the frame, as ſhewn at *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, in Fig. A. The workman will eaſily ſee that the frame made in this manner will not be defective in ſtrength, nor inconvenient to move from one room to another.

The ſtuffed head-boards at each end are framed ſeparate, and grooved into the pillars, with a tenon in their center to ſlip into the bed-frame, which can be eaſily done when the pillars are ſcrewing to.

The firſt teſter which fixes on the pillars, ſhould form an entire ellipſis to ſuit the bed frame, and muſt be glued up in two thickneſſes of good deal or wainſcot; to the edge of which ſhould be glued two thickneſſes of clean ſoft mahogany, of which to work the cornice, as expreſſed by figure B, in Plate XXX.

The

The ſecond, or falſe teſter, is that to which the ribs of the dome part are fixed, as *e* in Fig. B; and *f* is an architrave which is bent round the inſide of the firſt teſter, and riſes ſo high above it as to receive nearly the thickneſs of the falſe teſter; ſo that the architrave is a guide to the whole dome, and is ſufficient of itſelf to keep it firm in its place.

With reſpect to the dome, it will be beſt to make it in two parts. The cove part ſeparate, and the round or ſpherical part ſeparate. This can eaſily be done, by repeating the ſame operations as were neceſſary for fixing and managing the cove part; for it muſt be obſerved, that there is a light cornice or moulding where the circular part of the top begins, and which fixes on a teſter in the ſame manner as the other. To the under ſide of this cornice is the drapery, which hangs in the cove, tacked all round, as is the valence to the under cornice. The curtains are drawn up by pullies fixed in the under teſter, and thus forms a drapery, by being tied to the pillars with cords.

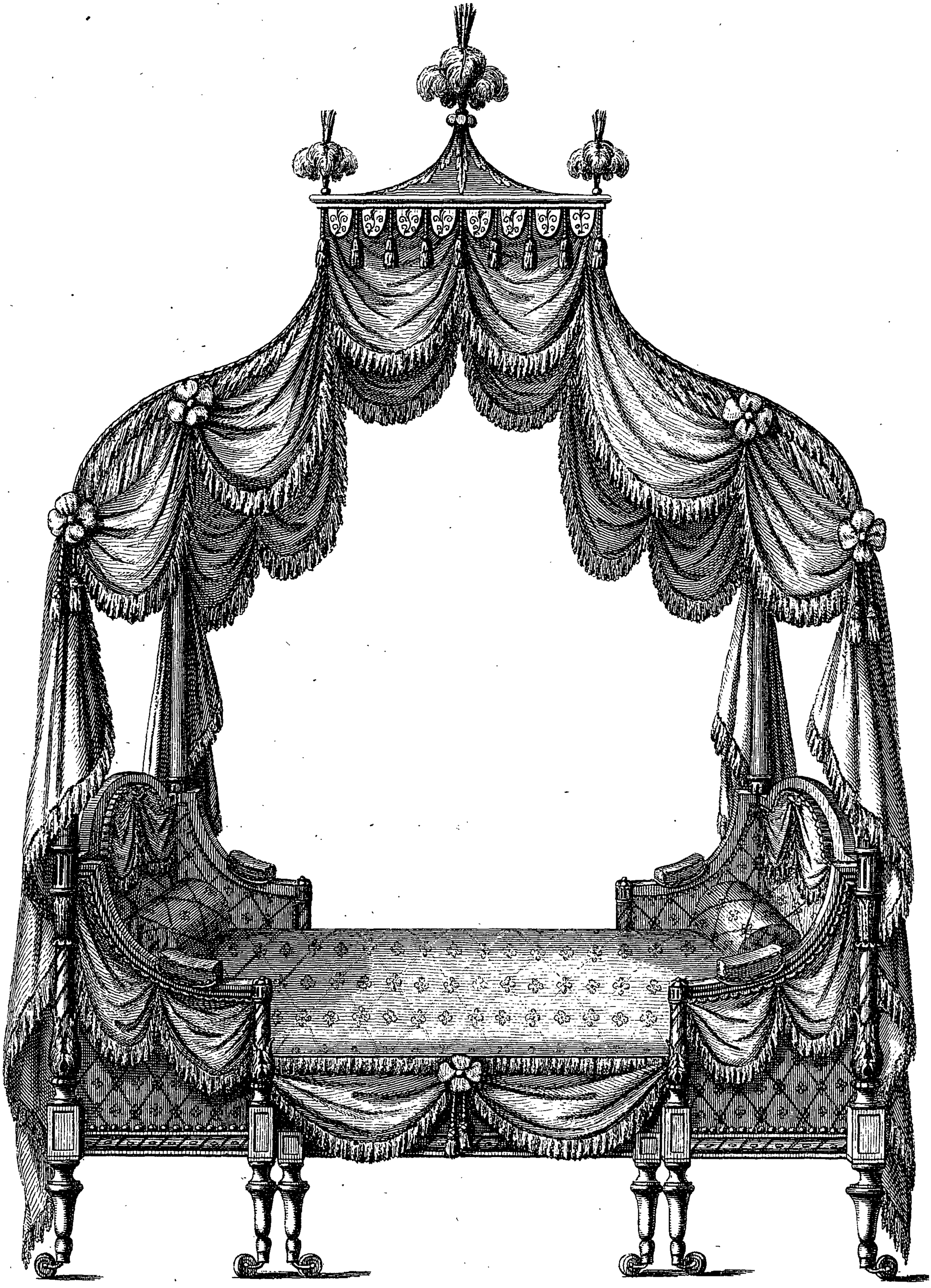
The circular part of the top is intended to be pannelled out in gilt mouldings, which cannot fail of producing a fine effect, particularly ſo if the furniture and covering of the dome be light blue. The foliage ornament which runs round the under cornice, may be made either of compoſition metal, or it may be cut in

wood, and fixed on wire, in the ſame manner as the tops of ornamented glaſſes are managed.

Of the Ducheſſe.

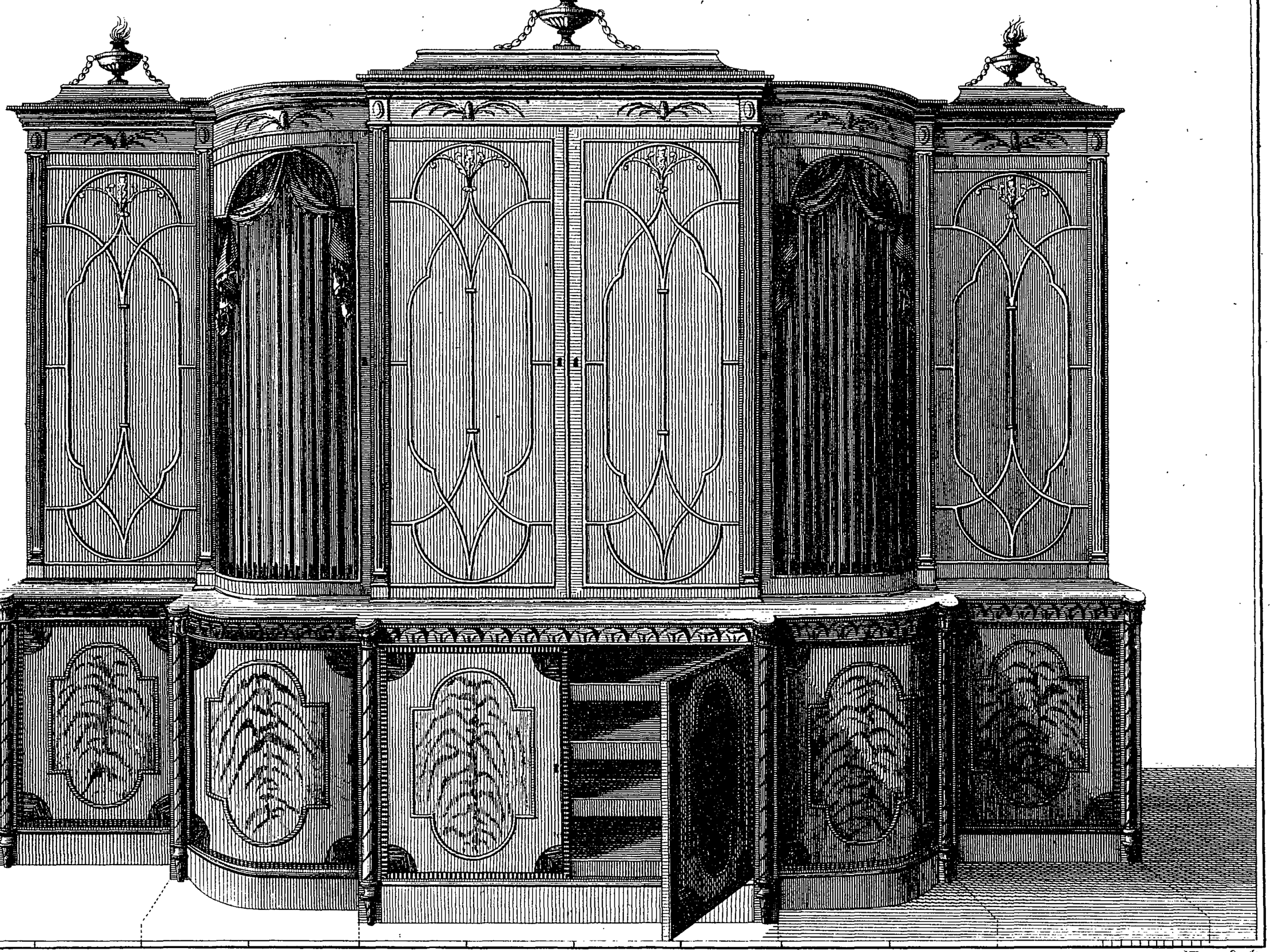
THE French have what they term ducheſſe beds, whence I ſuppoſe we have derived our ideas of a ducheſſe. What is ſometimes named a ducheſſe amongſt us, is merely two barjier chairs faſtened to a ſtool in the middle; ſometimes, indeed, we add a ſlight teſter and covering, but even this is very different from theirs. The French ducheſſe beds are more ſtately. The teſter is full and fixed to the wall, with drapery hanging down to the bedding and floor. The head part is formed ſomething like the back of a chair; at the foot there are ſhort ſtump pillars; and the whole frame of the bed being detached from the teſter, may be moved to any part to loll upon. The ducheſſe which is here given, is intended to anſwer three different purpoſes. The ends, when detached from the middle ſtool, may ſerve as ſmall ſofas. When they are connected together without the teſter, and a ſquab or cuſhion made to fit over the whole, it will then ſerve to reſt or loll upon. When it is uſed as a bed, four ſhort pillars are ſcrewed to each back foot, and a ſtraight lath extends acroſs from pillar to pillar at each end. From theſe pillars are fixed the ſweep iron rods which form the teſter, and which ſupport

the



T. Sheraton Del. Published by T. Sheraton March 1. 1793. J. Caldwall Sculp.

A LIBRARY & CASE



T.Sheraton. del

Published as the Act directs by Gar: Terry March 9. 1793.

G.Terry. Sculp.

the drapery and covering which is thrown over the whole. The little dome or top is made ſeparate and entire of itſelf, with the cornice mitered round, and the taſſels fixed to it as ſhewn in the deſign, and the whole is placed looſe on without any faſtenings.

They are made narrow, between two and three feet wide, and ſeldom above it. Every thing is made exceeding light about the teſter. The ſtool is fixed to each chair with ſtraps and buttons, and the whole thus finiſhed produces a pleaſing appearance.

Of the Library Caſe. Plate III. of the Appendix.

THE elliptic breaks of this bookcaſe will produce a good effect in the whole.

The doors in the upper part are intended to have fluted green ſilk behind, and a drapery at top.

The pilaſters are ſuppoſed to be glued to the ſtile of the door, and are hinged as in common.

The lower middle part contains clothes-preſs ſhelves, and every other part may be fitted up for books; or the lower elliptic

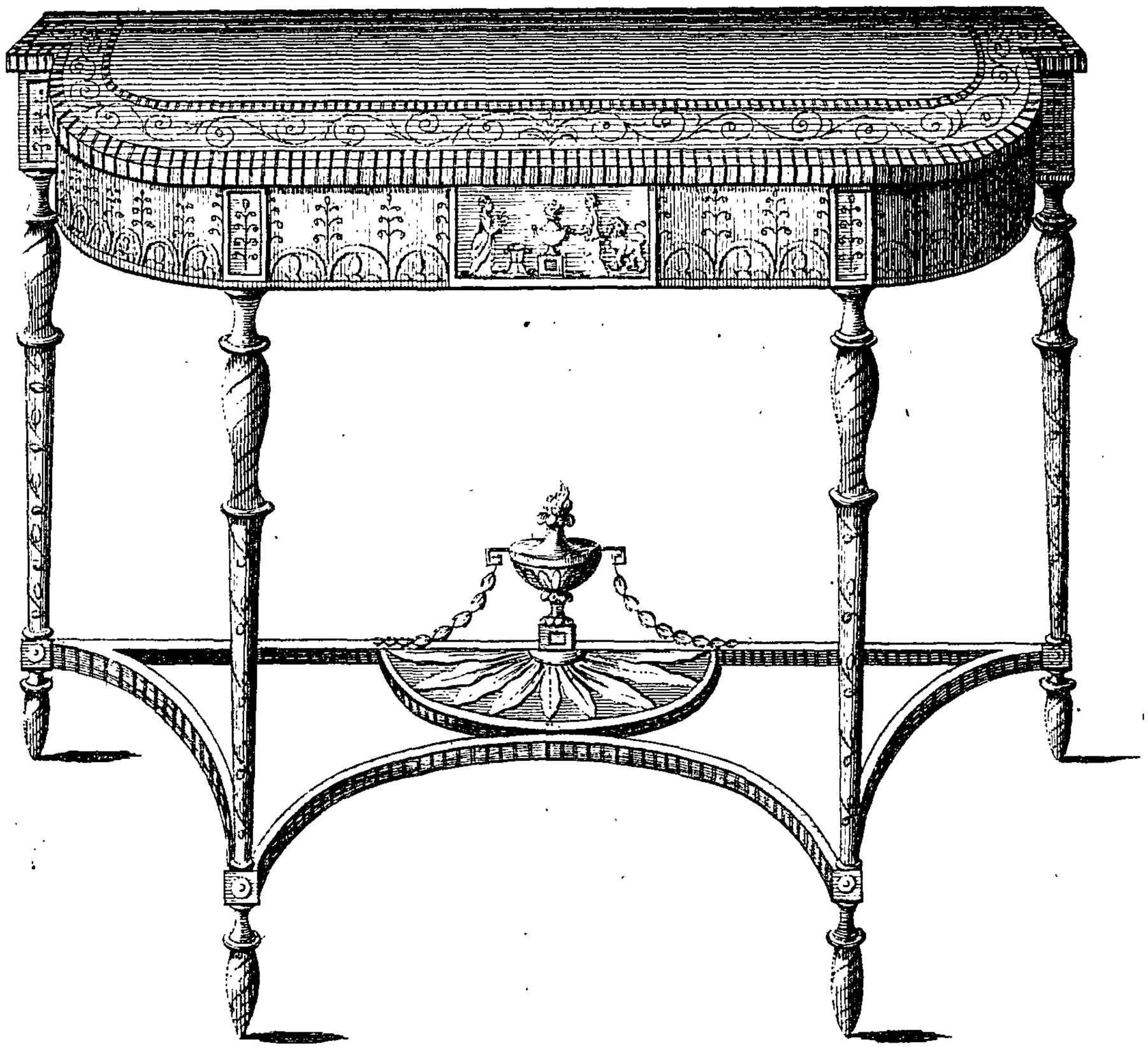
tic breaks may be formed into a neſt of drawers, as there is depth enough.

The half columns on the lower doors are glued to the ſtile, and the doors hinged as in common; but for the ſake of ſhewing the deſign to advantage, the open door is drawn as if the columns were ſeparate.

The young workman ſhould obſerve, that the whole is to be made in ſix carcaſes, and ſcrewed together, and then the plinth ſhould be made to fit it, of one entire frame, and ſcrewed down on to the carcaſes; as as alſo is the cornice and its freeze.

Of the Pier Tables. Plate IV.

As pier tables are merely for ornament under a glaſs, they are generally made very light, and the ſtyle of finiſhing them is rich and elegant. Sometimes the tops are ſolid marble, but moſt commonly veneered in rich ſatin, or other valuable wood, with a croſs-band on the outſide, a border about two inches richly japanned, and a narrow croſs-band beyond it, to go all round. The frames are commonly gold, or white and burniſhed gold. Stretching-rails have of late been introduced to theſe

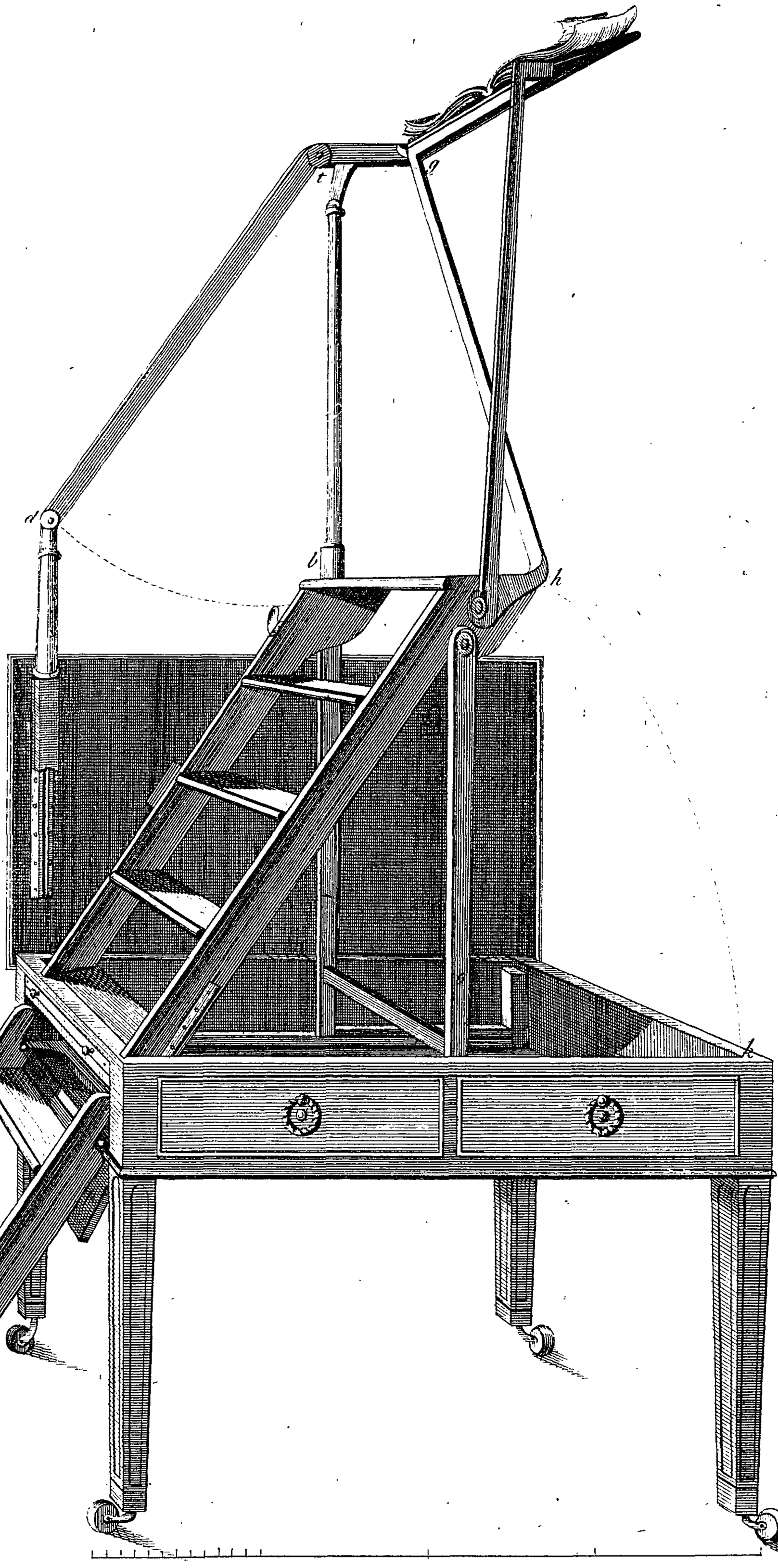


Feet

I. Sheraton. del.

G. Terry. S.

Published by G. Terry, March 27. 1793.



T.Sheraton del.

G.Terry Sculp.

Published by G. Terry, Apl 1 1793.

tables, and it muſt be owned that it is with good effect, as they take off the long appearance of the legs, and make the under part appear more furniſhed; beſides they afford an opportunity of fixing a vaſe or baſket of flowers, which, with their reflection when there is a glaſs behind, produce a brilliant appearance.

Some, in place of a ſtretcher, have a thin marble ſhelf, with a braſs rim round it, ſupported by a light frame; in which caſe the top ought to be of marble alſo.

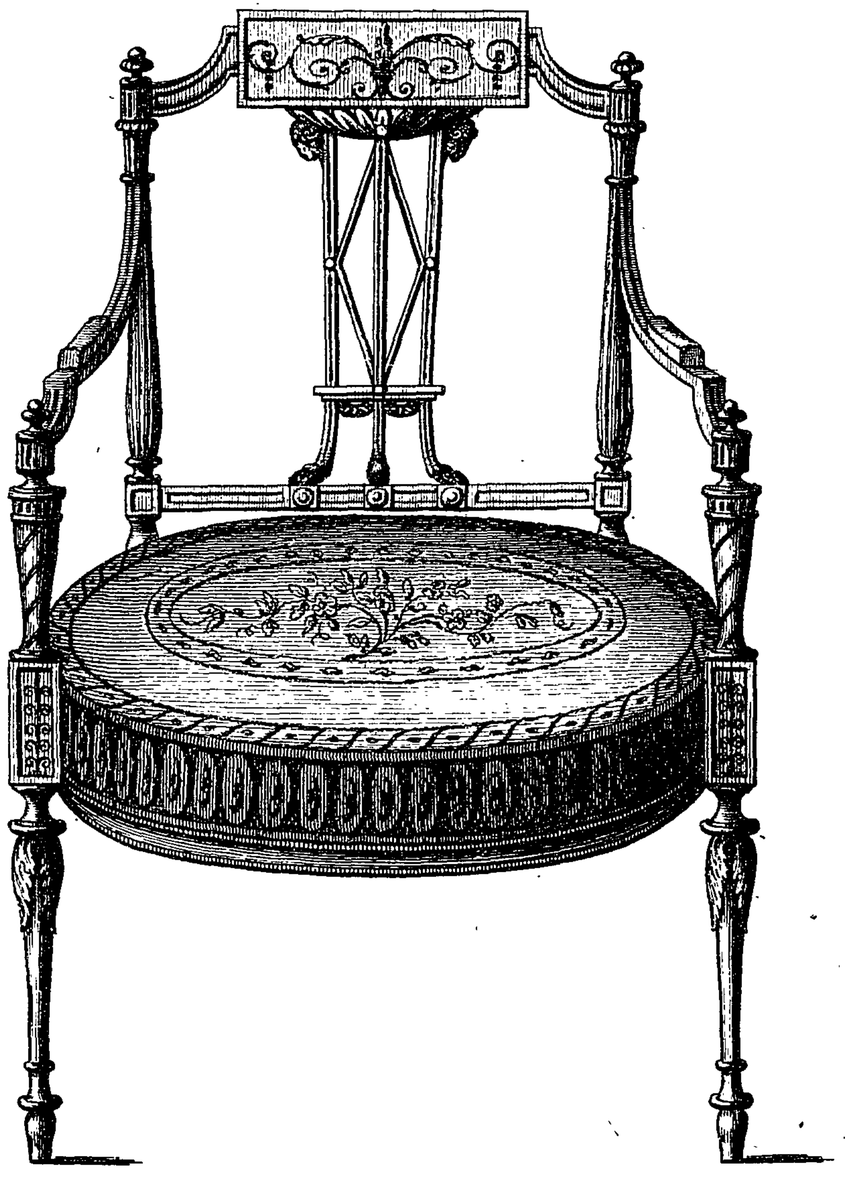
Of the Library Steps and Table. Plate V.

THIS deſign was taken from ſteps that have been made by Mr. Campbell, Upholſterer to the Prince of Wales. They were firſt made for the King, and highly approved of by him, as every way anſwering the intended purpoſe. There are other kinds of library ſteps which I have ſeen, made by other perſons, but, in my opinion, theſe muſt have the decided preference, both as to ſimplicity and firmneſs when they are ſet up. The ſteps may be put up in half a minute, and the whole may be taken down and encloſed within the table frame in about the ſame time. The table, when encloſed, ſerves as a library table, and has a riſing flap, ſupported by a horſe, to write on. The

ſize of the table is three feet ten inches long, thirty-three inches high, and two feet one inch in width. When the ſteps are out they riſe thirty-three inches perpendicular from the top of the table frame, and the whole height of the laſt ſtep is five feet five perpendicular from the ground. The perpendicular height of the hand-rail is three feet one inch above the laſt ſtep; and obſerve, that on *g*, which is iron, is fixed a ſmall flap on which a book may reſt, ſo that a gentleman, when he is looking at any book in his library, may note down a paſſage from it without the trouble of going down again. The method of folding the whole up is as follows:

The triangular iron bracket *g* is unlocked by a catch which keeps it firm to the hand-rail, and the deſk-flap fixed to it being turned over to the inſide, the whole comes forward, and lies level upon the upper ſteps. The ſtandard *b* may then be raiſed out of its ſocket, and, having a joint at the top, it turns up to *d*, as ſhewn by the dotted curve line. The ſhort ſtandard *d e* is then, by relieving a ſpring, preſſed down below the edge of the table-top; and the hand-rail and ſtandard *b* having been folded together, as mentioned before, they both reſt on the iron ſocket faſtened to the front edge of the upper ſteps. The horſe *o* is folded by the ſide of the upper ſteps, and then both they and the horſe fall down within the table frame; and it muſt be obſerved, that in folding

Drawing Room Chairs





Inches

T. Sheraton Del.

Published as the Act Directs by G. Terry.

I. Caldwall Sculp.

ing down the ſteps, the hand-rail and ſtandard, which reſted for a while on the ſocket faſtened to the front of the ſteps, fall into another ſocket of the ſame kind faſtened to the under ſide of the table top, where they remain, and fall within the table frame when the top is folded down. Laſtly, the lower ſteps *a* are turned up to a horizontal poſition, and being hinged to a ſlider which runs in a groove, the whole ſlips in as a drawer, and is encloſed by the flap *b*, which turns up and appears as the front of a drawer.

Of the Drawing-room Chairs. Plate VI.

THE frame of the right-hand chair is intended to be finiſhed in burniſhed gold, and the ſeat and back covered with printed ſilk.

In the front rail is a tablet, with a little carving in its pannel. The legs and ſtumps have twiſted flutes and fillets, done in the turning, which produce a good effect in the gold.

The chair on the left may be finiſhed in japan painting, interſperſed with a little gilding in different parts of the baniſter, which has a lively effect. The covering of the ſeat is of printed

chintz, which may now be had of various patterns on purpoſe for chair-ſeats, together with borders to ſuit them.

Of the Bidet Dreſſing-Table, and Night-Table Baſon-Stand.
Plate VII.

THE dreſſing-table has a real drawer under the cupboard part, and the reſt are ſham.

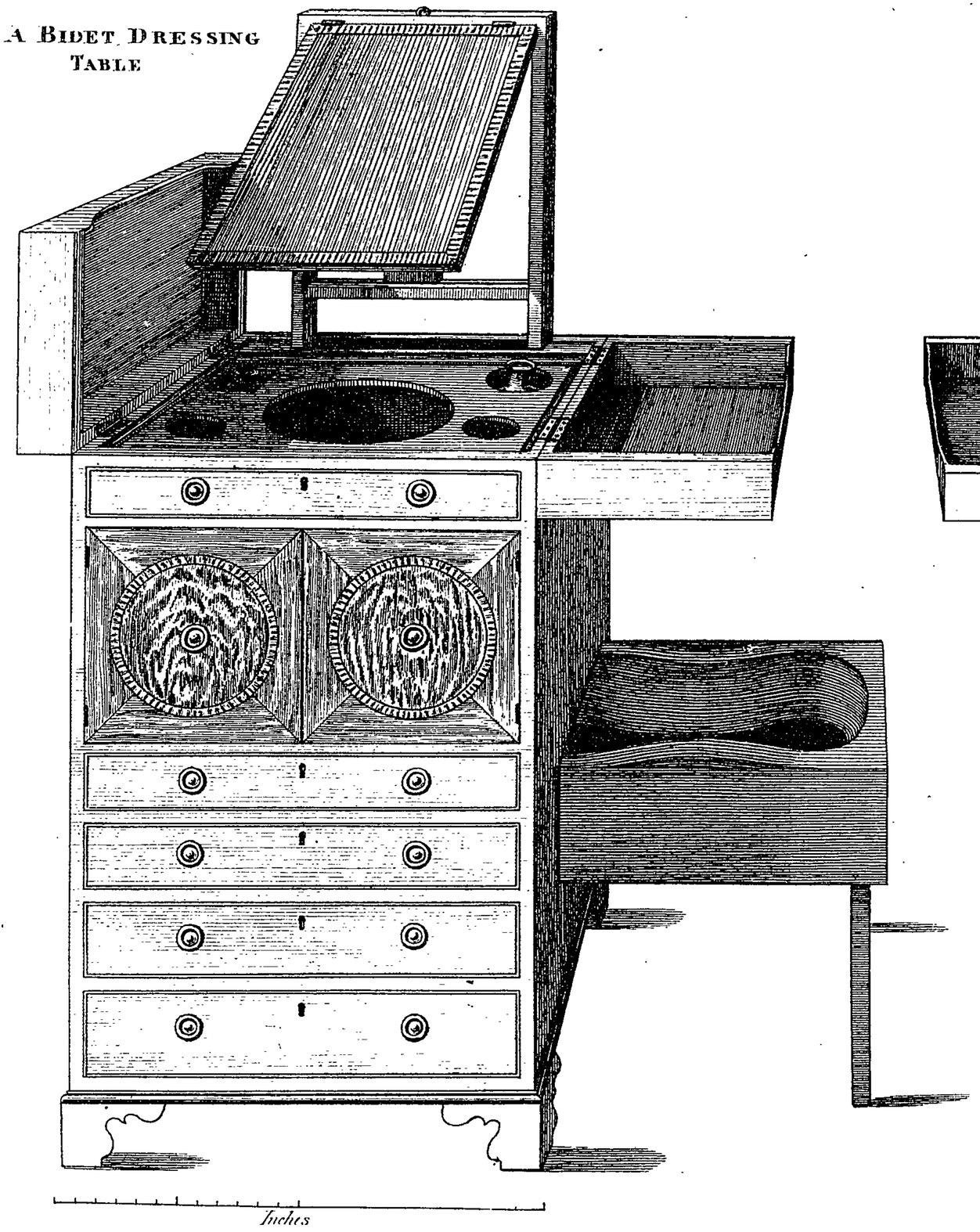
The right-hand cupboard door opens by a ſpring-catch communicated to the patera handle in the center. The water-bottle is ſupported by a round box, made of very thin wood, glued and canvaſſed over to ſtrengthen it, and fixed to the top.

The bidet legs turn up with a joint. The deſign ſhews only legs at one end, but the other legs are ſuppoſed to be folded up till the whole is taken out; and when uſed, the legs are kept to their place by iron hooks and eyes.

The ſcale ſhews the ſize of the front, and its depth from front to back is ſixteen inches and a half. The frame, to which the glaſs is hinged, is fourteen inches in width.

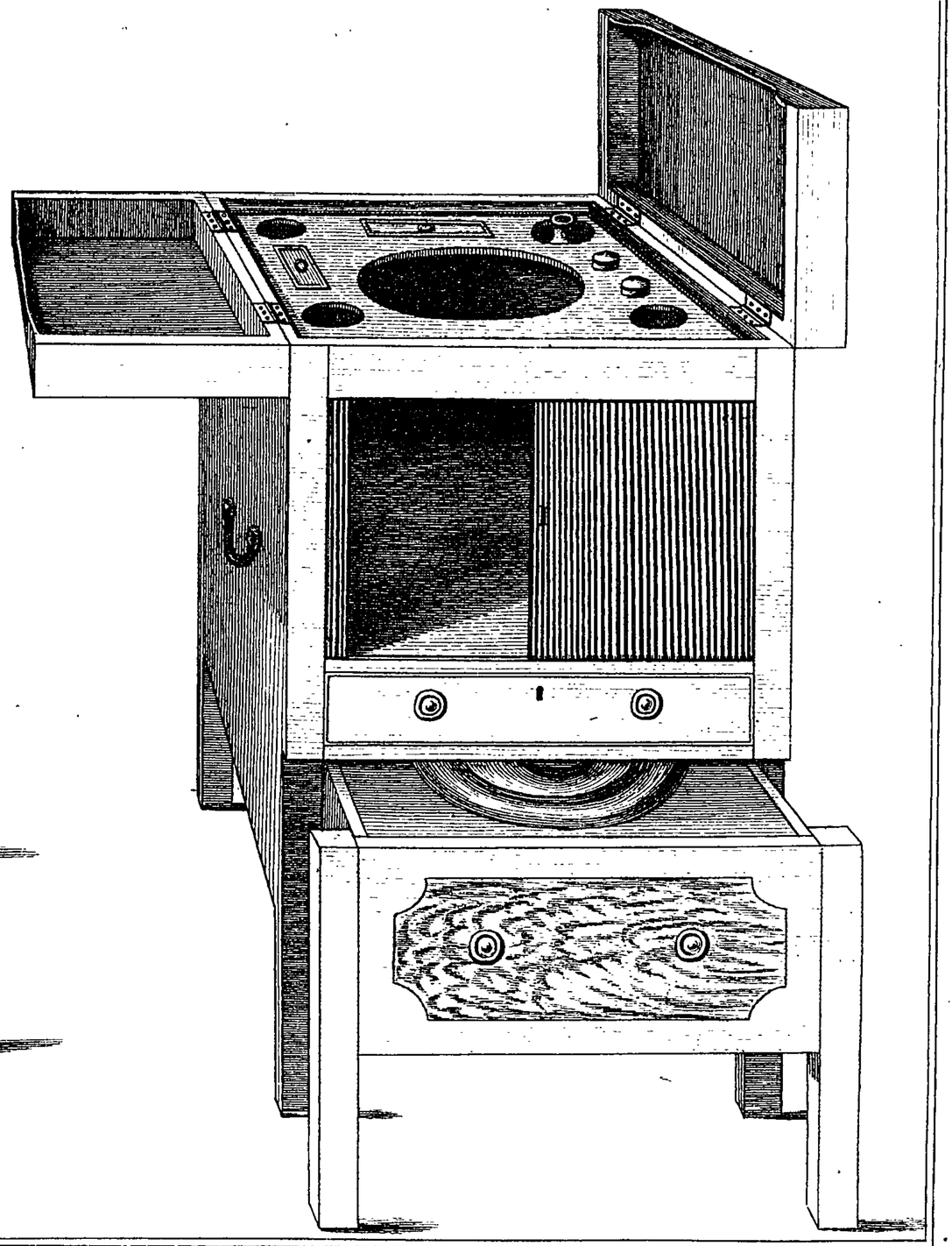
The night-table requires no explanation, and I ſhall only obſerve, that the covers with rings on them are meant for a tooth-

A Bidet Dressing Table



Inches

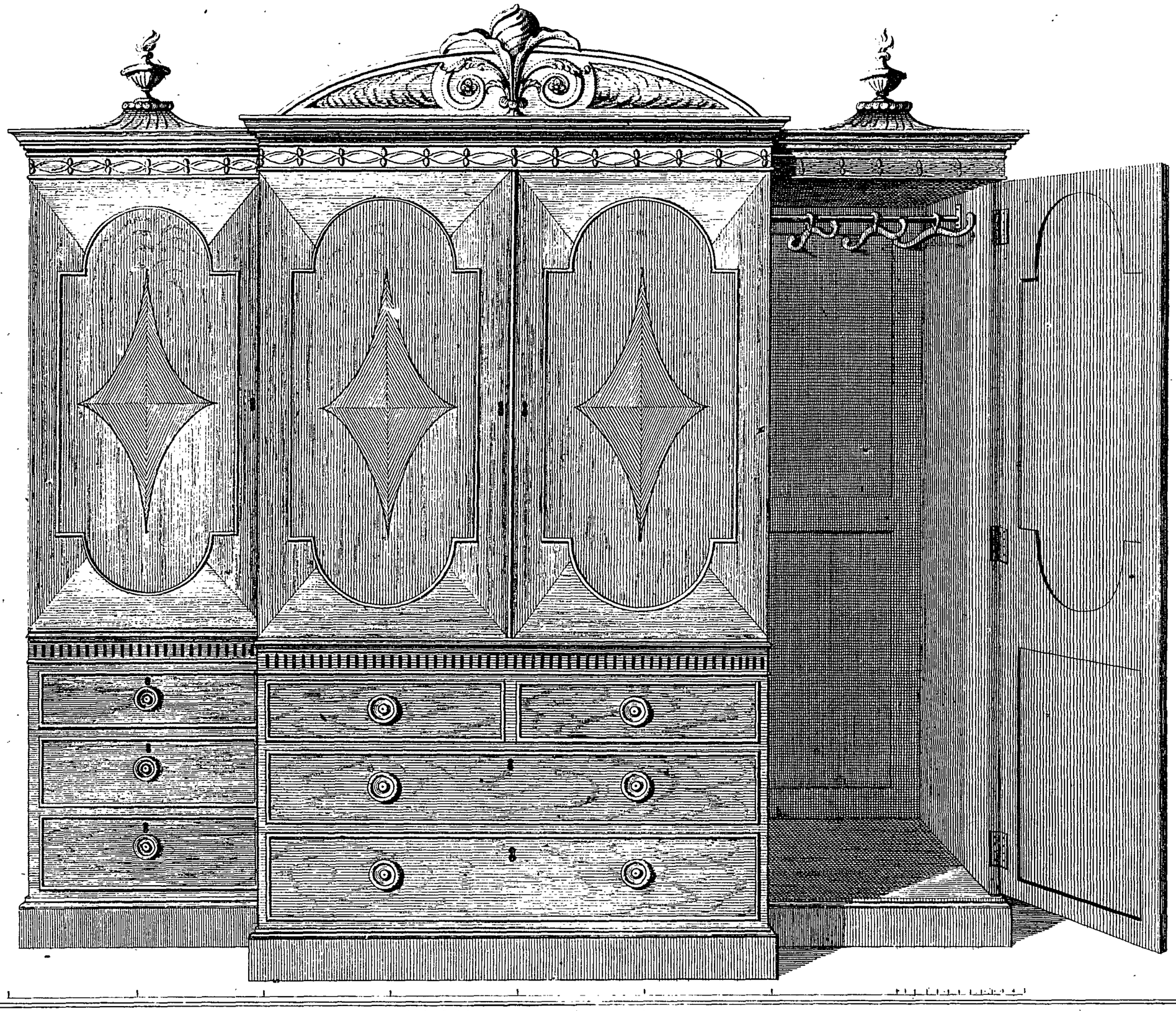
A Night-Table Bason-Stand



T. Sheraton Del.

Published as the Act Directs by G. Terry -- April 1. 1793

J. Caldwall Sculp.



G.Terry. Sculp. Publisht by G. Terry — Ap. 14. 1703. T.Sheraton del.

a tooth-brush, and the ivory boxes on the right for tooth-powder.

The scale for the dressing-table shews the size of the night-table, applied to the front, and its depth from front to back is eighteen inches.

Of the Wardrobe. Plate VIII.

The upper middle part contains six or seven clothes press shelves, generally made about six, or six inches and an half deep, with green baize tacked to the inside of the front to cover the clothes with. The lower part consists of real drawers. The wings have each of them arms, to hang clothes on, made of beech, with a swivel in their center, which slips on to an iron rod fixed by plates screwed on to each side of the wings, as expressed in the design.

The whole is made in four separate carcases. The wings by themselves, and the upper and lower middle parts separate.

The plinth is made all in one frame, and likewise the cornice with its freeze, and being screwed to each carcas, the whole is kept firm.

Obſerve, that in the wings a bead is put up for the doors to fall againſt when they are ſhut to; by which means are cleared the knuckles of the hinges on the doors of the middle part.

It ſhould alſo be obſerved, that as the ſurbaſe cannot go round the out ends of each wing on account of opening the doors, the moulding is returned againſt the front of each door.

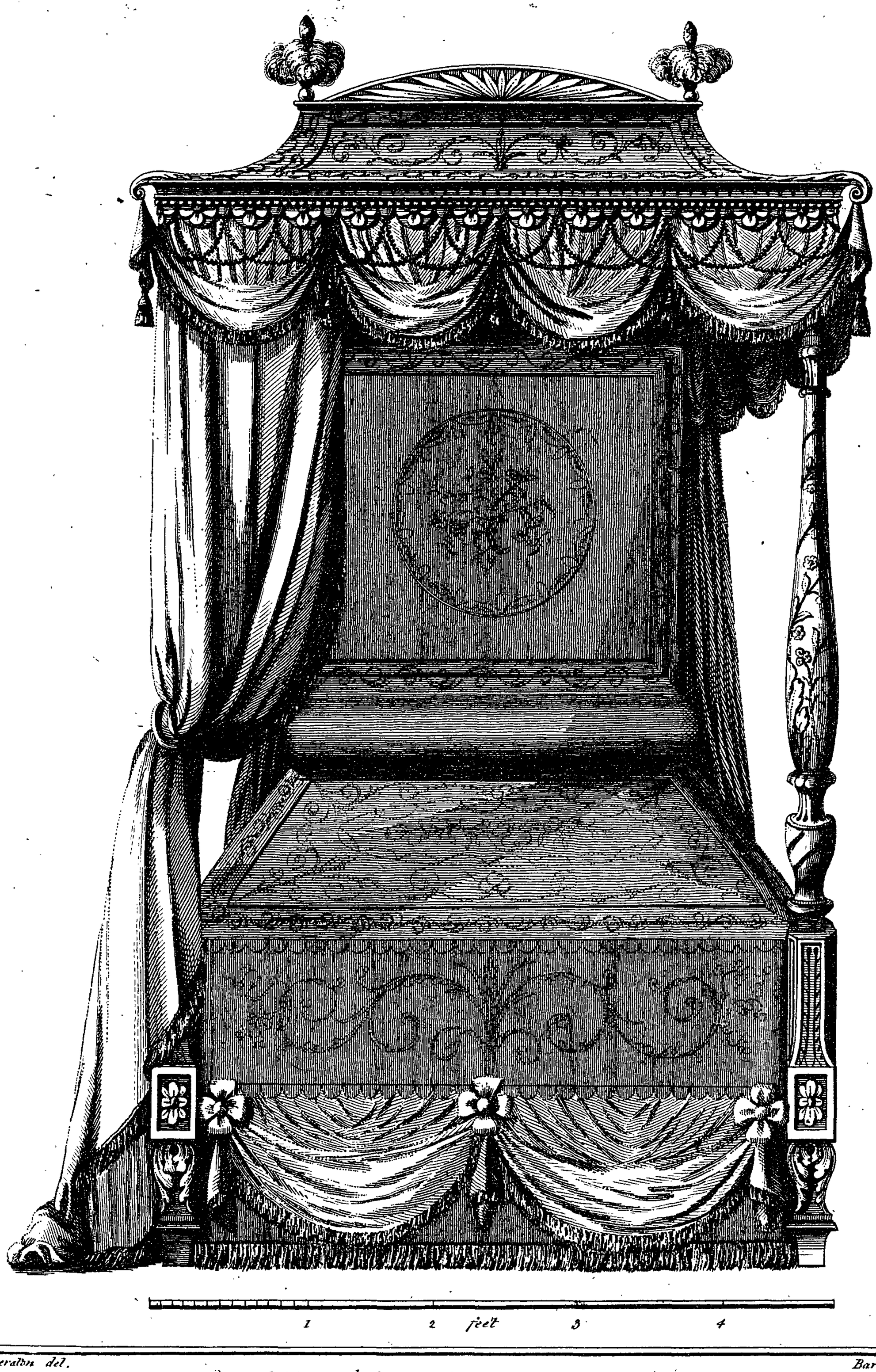
The ſurbaſe on the middle part returns, and ſtops againſt the inner end of the wing; and the edge of the door of each wing, with the ſurbaſe which is on them, are ſcribed on to the aforeſaid return, which then appears as an internal miter, and gives place to the opening of the door.

The ſcale, applied to the middle part, gives its height and length. The wings are two feet, and ſixteen or ſeventeen inches deep; and the depth of the middle part about twenty-three inches.

Of the Bed. Plate IX.

This deſign requires no explanation, except that which relates to the teſter. The cove of the teſter is to be formed by

A DESIGN for A BED.



1 2 feet 3 4

T. Sheraton del.

Barlow sculp.

Published as the Act directs by G. Terry — April 16. 1793.

ribs; one at each miter, and other ſhort ones joined to them, with the reſt about five inches apart from each other. At the upper part of the cove is a ſquare teſter into which the ribs are fixed. On the edge of this teſter, which is made very light, is fixed a ſmall moulding mitered all round. The cove being formed, the ribs may be covered with ſtrong board-paper, both inſide and out, which may either be japanned to match the furniture, or it may be covered with the furniture itſelf. The circular part about the cove is nothing more than a ſtraight board fixed on to the upper teſter. For the ſake of eaſy conveyance, the cove may be made in four parts, mitering at each corner, and the ornament intended to be at each miter on the outſide running entirely up to the feathers, will hide the joint.

The ſwags of ſilk line that appear on the drapery ſhould be faſtened to the back part of the cornice, in order that they may hang eaſy. The pillars are to be japanned. The pannel that hides the ſcrews is made to ſlip into a groove at the bottom, and being bevelled off behind at the top, when raiſed up a little from their place, by preſſing the finger on the front, can eaſily be taken away to come at the ſcrews. The valence and drapery both together ſlip on to a lath as in common.

of

Of the Sofa and Converſation Chairs. Plate X.

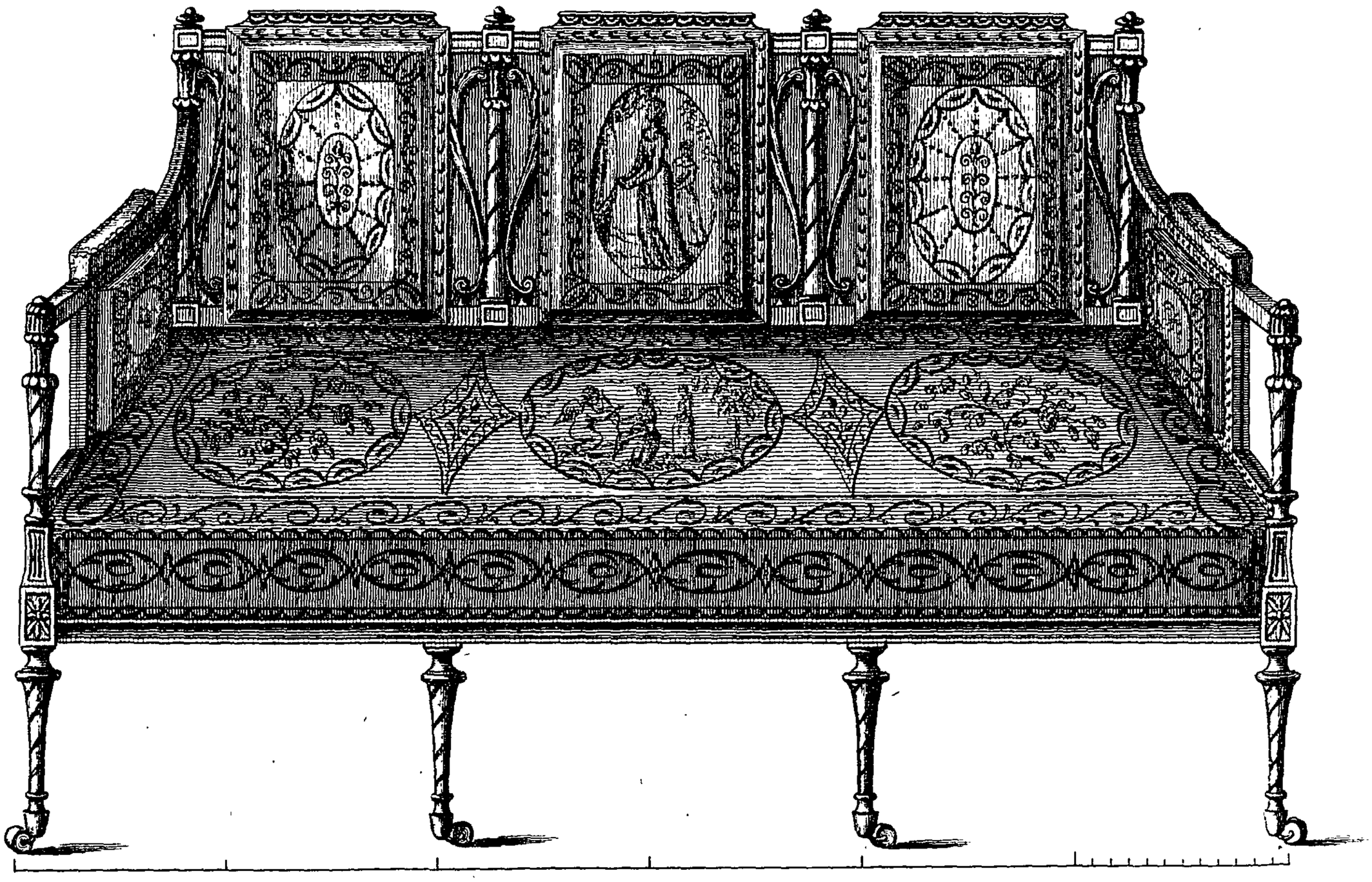
WITH reſpect to this ſofa, all that is neceſſary to be obſerved is, that in the ſpace between the diviſions of the back part, it is meant that there ſhould be a ground-work covered with ſilk, to ſuit the reſt of the ſofa. Againſt this ground the two columns and the ornament are ſuppoſed to reſt.

The converſation chairs are uſed in library or drawing-rooms. The parties who converſe with each other ſit with their legs acroſs the ſeat, and reſt their arms on the top rail, which, for this purpoſe, is made about three inches and an half wide, ſtuffed and covered.

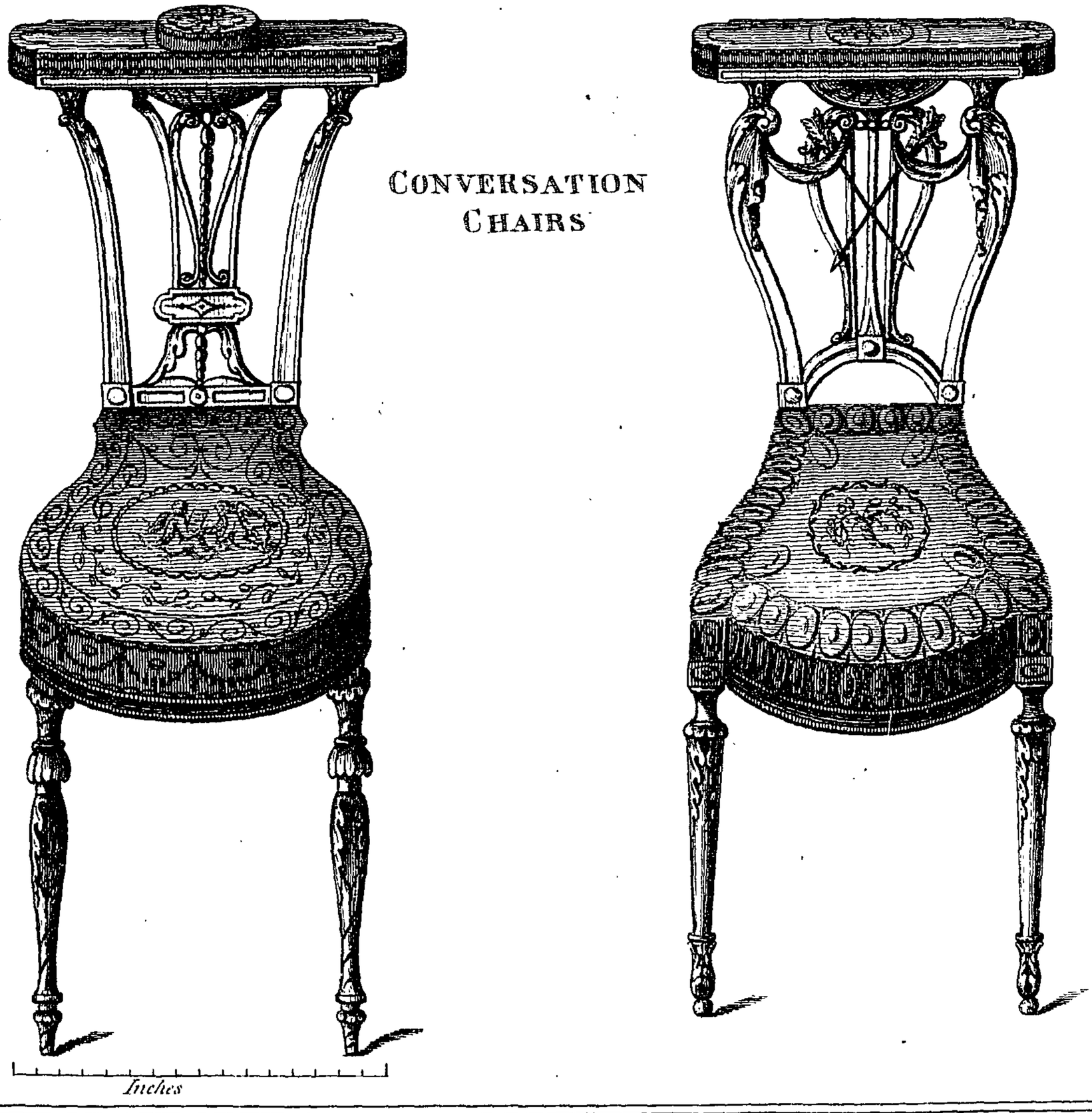
For the convenience of ſitting in the manner juſt mentioned, the chair is made long between front and back, and very narrow at the back and front in proportion. The height of the chair to the ſtuffing is three feet; at the back ten inches, ſpreading out in width to the top rail, which is twenty inches in length. The front is ſixteen inches, and the height of the ſeat as in common.

Of

A SOFA



CONVERSATION CHAIRS

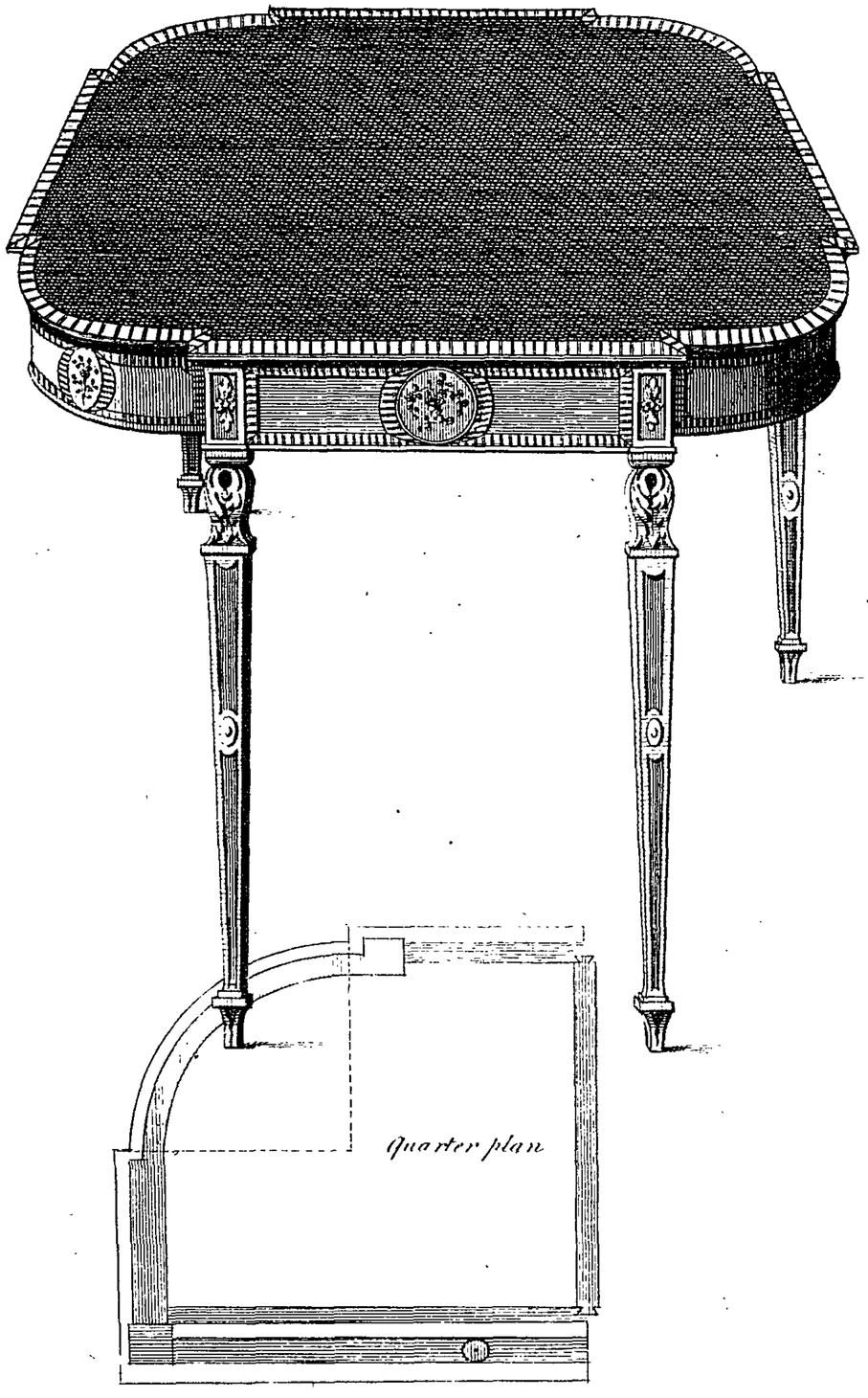


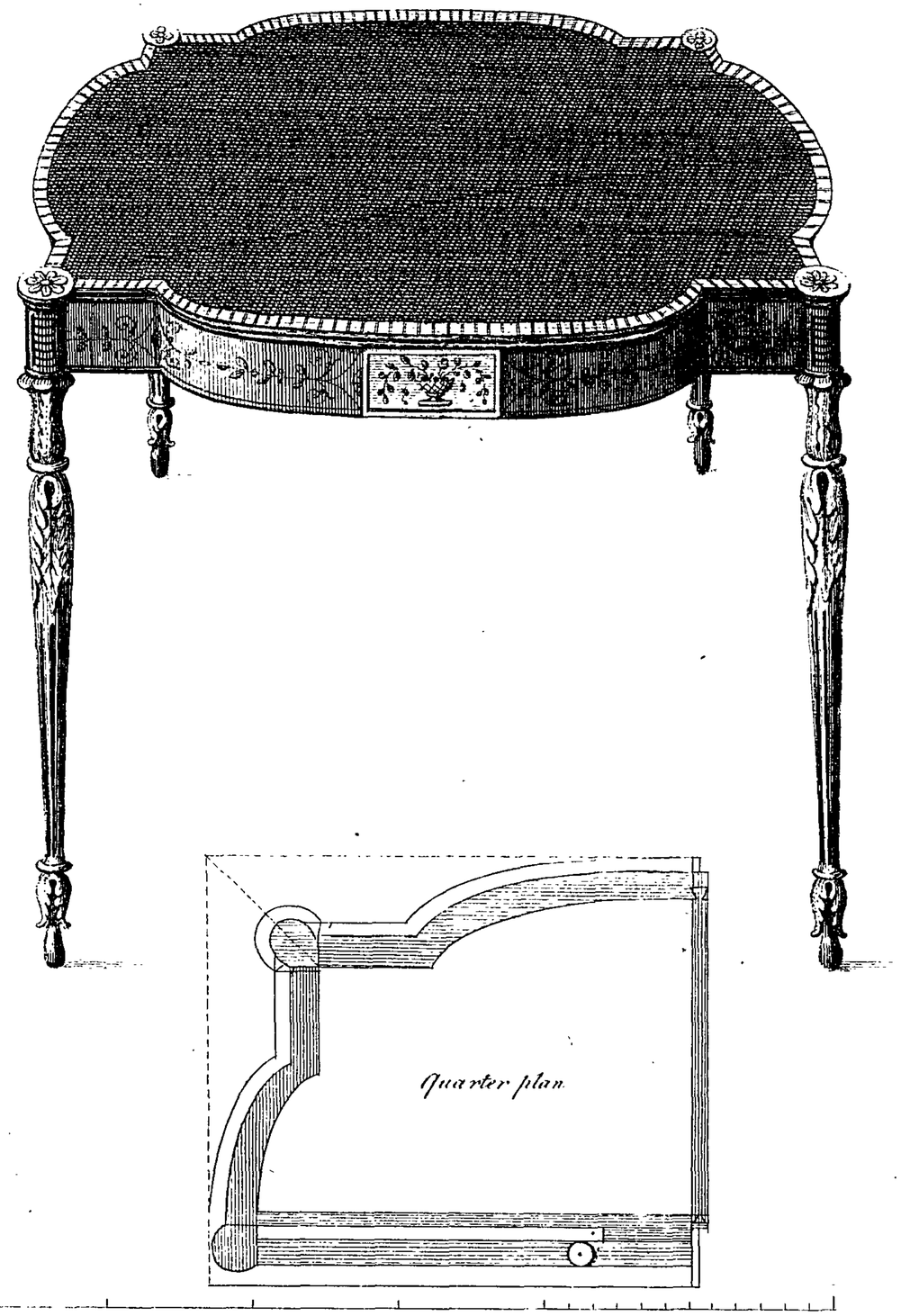
T. Sheraton Del.

Published as the Act Directs by G. Terry -- April 20 1793.

J. Caldwall Direx.

CARD TABLES





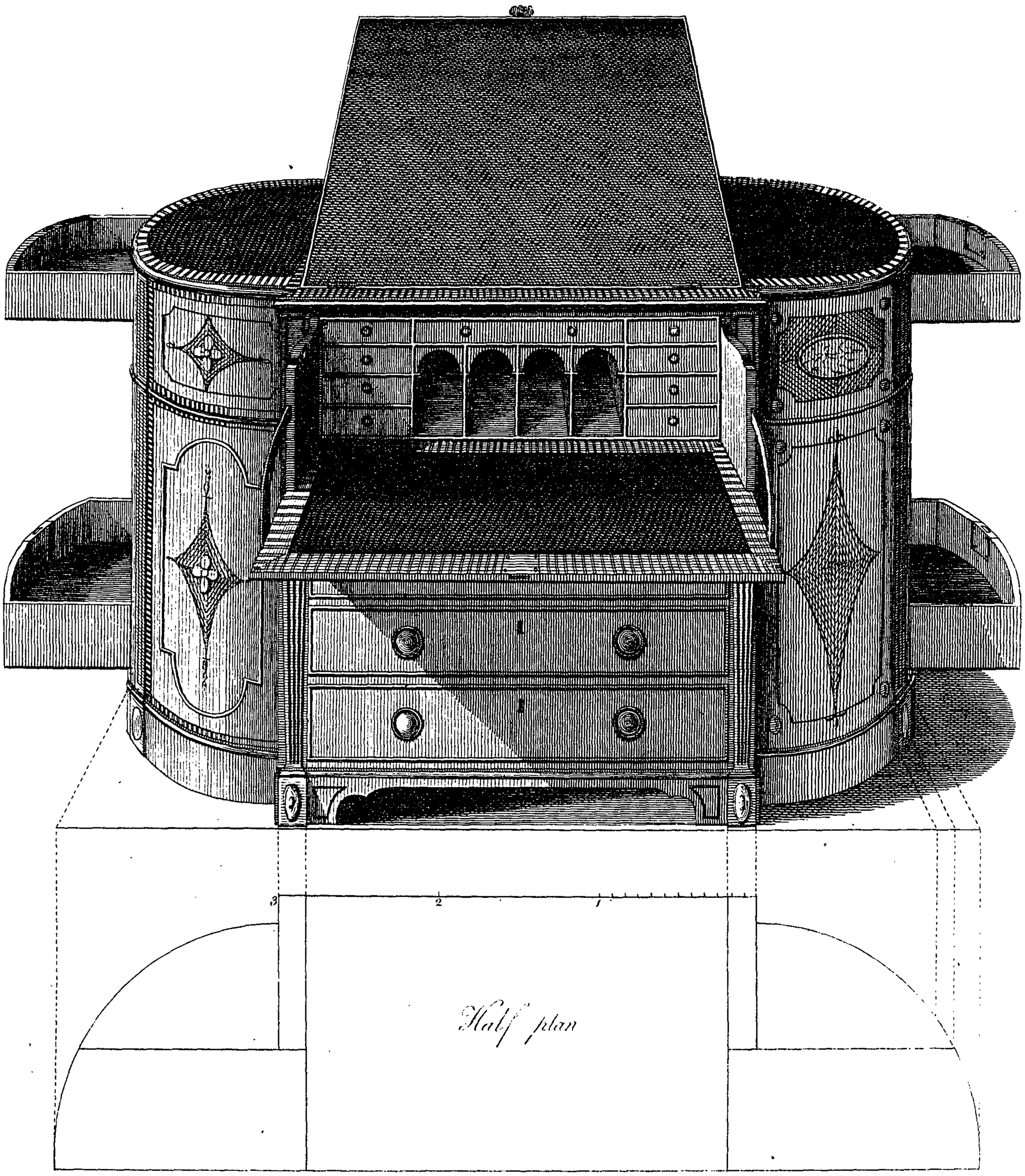
T Sheraton.

Published by G Terry – April 30th 1793.

G Terry. Sculp

pl. 12.

A Library Table with Secretary Drawer.



Half plan

T. Sheraton, del. *Published by G. Terry, May 1st 1793.* *Wm. Sculp.*

Of the Card Tables. Plate XI.

ON theſe tables it is ſcarcely neceſſary to ſay any thing, eſpecially as the quarter plans ſhew how they muſt be framed; and therefore I ſhall only obſerve, that the ornaments may be japanned on the frames and carved in the legs. As to the method of managing the tops, I take it to be the beſt to rip up dry deal, or faulty mahogany, into four inch widths, and joint them up. It matters not whether the pieces are whole lengths provided the jump-joints be croſſed. Some tongue the jump-joints for ſtrength.

After the tops are dry, hard mahogany is tongued into the ends of the deal, then ſlips are glued on the front and back, that the whole may appear ſolid mahogany, if a moulding is to be worked on the edge; but if the edge be croſs-banded, there is in this caſe no need for tonguing in mahogany.

Of the Library Table with a Writing Drawer. Plate XII.

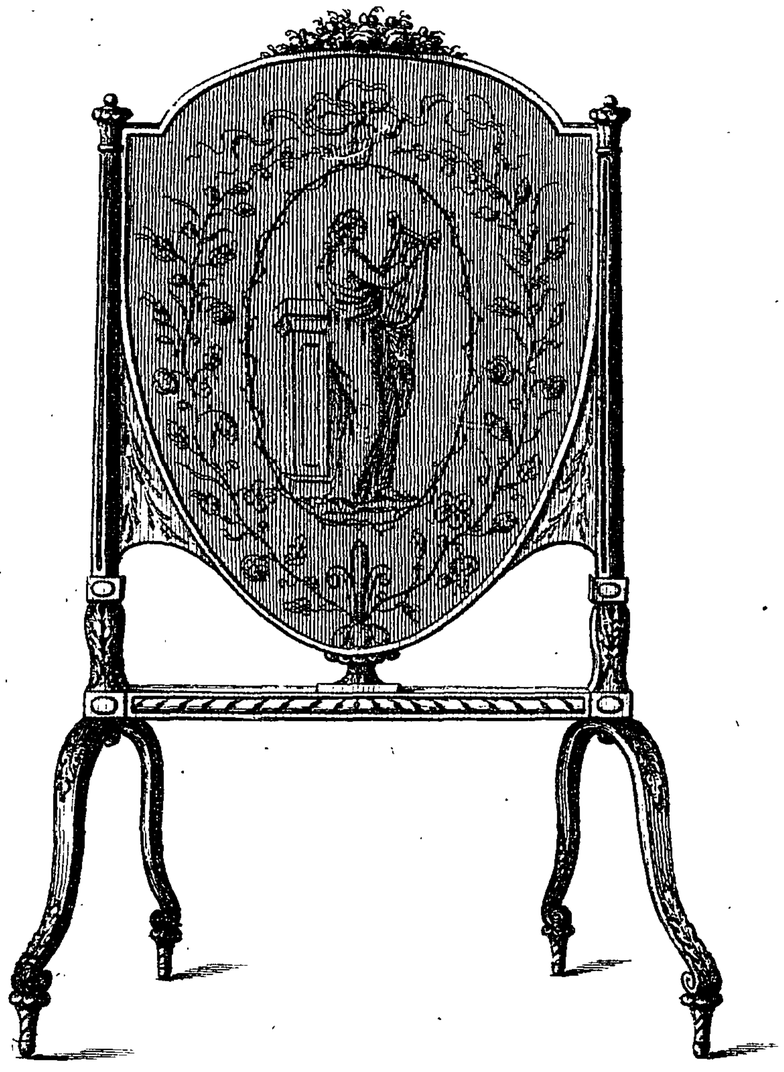
THIS table is intended either to ſit or ſtand and write at. The height of the ſecretary drawer is adjuſted for ſitting, and

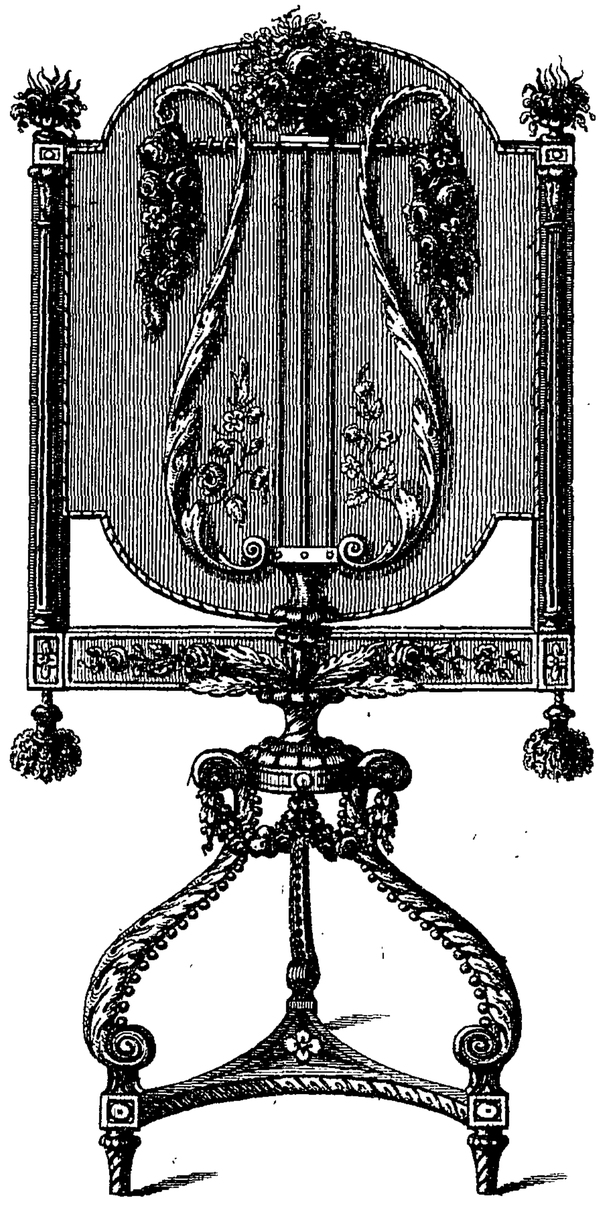
the top of the table is high enough to ſtand and write on, eſpecially if the middle top be raiſed by a horſe, as ſhewn in the deſign. This table will alſo prove very uſeful to draw on; for when the middle part is up for drawing upon, there remains ſufficient room at each end of the table on which to place the neceſſary implements for drawing; beſides, the drawers at each end may be fitted up to hold colours of various kinds; I mean the two upper ones, for there are drawers quite down to the plinth. The drawers under the ſecretary will hold the large ſheets of drawing paper, together with the tee ſquares; and as it will not be neceſſary to make the drawers under the ſecretary the entire width of the table, the oppoſite front being made ſham to have the ſame appearance, the whole of it may be hinged at bottom and locked at the top, and the inſide will allow depth for books. This ſham front being a conſiderable width, it would hazard the hinges to let it reſt wholly on them when turned down, and therefore there ſhould be iron rule-joints at each end as ſtays.

To theſe conveniences there are alſo four cupboards encloſed with doors, as ſhewn in the deſign; and the whole finiſhed in this manner, I venture to affirm, will prove as uſeful a table as has ever been deviſed or publiſhed.

In

HORSE FIER SCREENS





T. Sheraton Del

Published as the Act directs by G. Terry.

J. Sabbage & Co. Sculp.

In reſpect to the manufacturing part, it will be beſt to make it in two parts. The upper part containing the ſecretary, and two drawers at each end; and the lower part, four drawers under the ſecretary, a book-caſe behind, and four drawers at each end, the lowermoſt of which is ſhewn in the deſign. The top ſhould be framed of inch and quarter wainſcot (as deſcribed in page 373), containing a well for the deſk part, which may be made to riſe on the front as well as at the back, by forming a double horſe; but in this deſign it is only intended to riſe at the back by a ſingle horſe, and hinged to the croſs-band at the front.

The cupboard doors may either be framed and pannelled, or glued up to their ſweep in narrow ſlips of inch mahogany, and clamped; not by tonguing, but by a ſquare joint, and pins driven through the clamps.

The management of the circular baſe-moulding and plinth may be learned in page 375.

Of the Fire Screens. Plate XIII.

THE lyre ſcreen is conſtructed upon an entire new plan, it being deſigned to turn upon a ſwivel, which fixes to the vaſe and

and paſſes through the bottom rail, ſo that the ſkreen may be turned to any poſition without moving the ſtand.

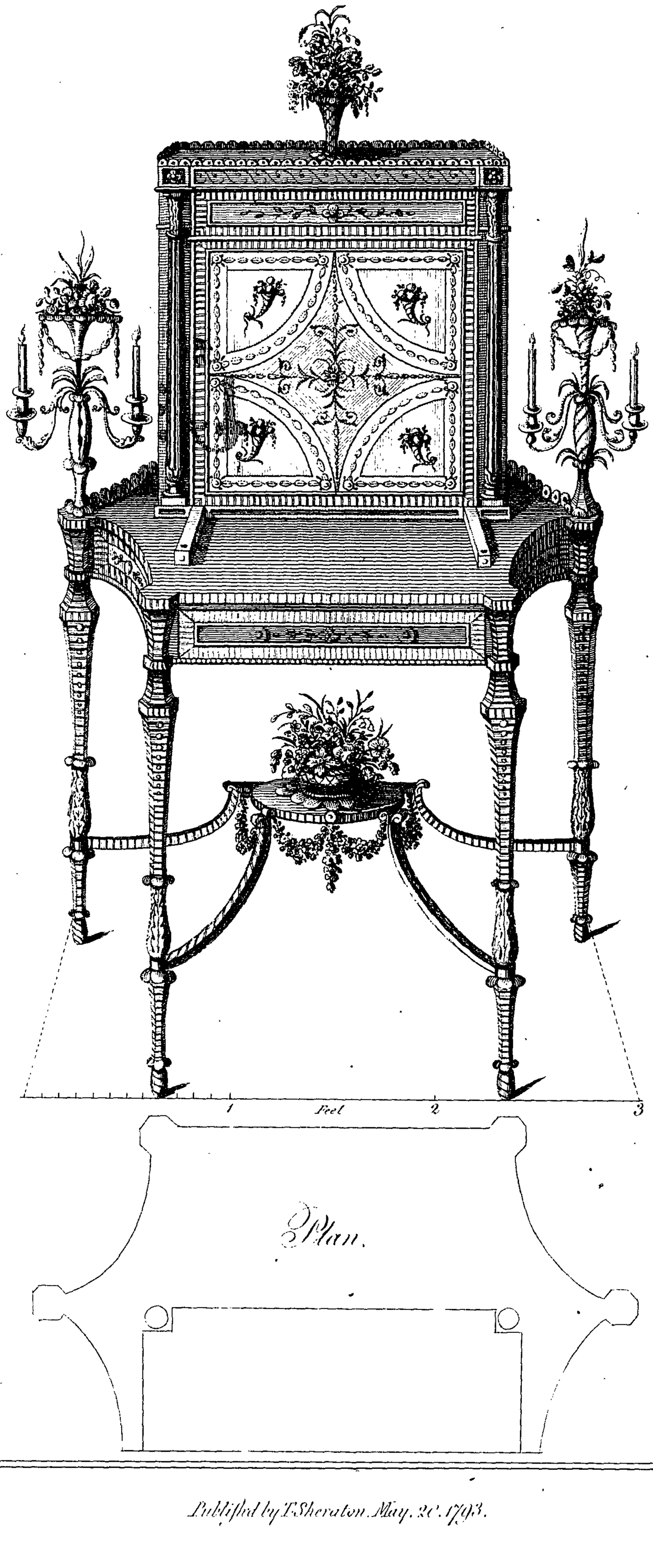
The ſcreen part, which riſes between the ſtandards or pillars, is ſuſpended by a weight in the taſſels, which are communicated to the ſcreen by a line paſſing through the pillars and over a pulley fixed to their top.

There muſt be a dovetail groove in each ſtandard, and the ſcreen made to fit into theſe; ſo that the ſtandards may keep their proper place, and not fly open at the top.

Obſerve, that the ornament on the tops of the pillars or ſtandards riſe up with the ſcreen, being fixed to it, and detached from the pillars.

It is intended that the lyre ornament be carved in bas relief, gilt and burniſhed; which, when planted on to a blue ſilk or ſatin ground, cannot fail to produce a fine effect.

The other ſcreen being common, needs no explanation, only that it is ſuſpended by little ſprings fixed in the dovetail grooves of the ſtandards.



Plan.

T. Sheraton del.
G. Terry. Sculp.

Published by T. Sheraton. May. 20. 1793.

In reſpect to the general ſize of horſe fire-ſcreens, about eighteen inches or nineteen may be allowed for the breadth, and three feet ſix or ſeven inches for their height.

Of the Cabinet. Plate XIV.

THIS cabinet, I preſume, is as new as the fire-ſcreen, and will have a better effect in the execution than in the deſign.

The front of the cabinet is hinged to a ſliding piece which runs in a groove, upon the ſame principle as the writing-table page 408. The front being turned down to a horizontal poſition, it may then be ſlipped in till it ſtops. To ſupport the front thus turned down, there are two ſliders which come out of the plinth on which the cabinet reſts. Theſe ſliders come out by relieving a ſpring which is fixed in their ſide, and having a common ſpring behind, they are forced out ſo that the fingers may lay hold to draw them quite out. They are lined with green cloth both at top and bottom to prevent them from ſcratching both the front and top of the cabinet. The inſide of the front is alſo lined with green cloth to write on. The inſide of the cabinet is fitted up in the manner ſhewn in the cabinet, Plate XVI.

Above the falling front is a drawer, to the under ſide of which the front locks, ſo that the drawer and front are either locked or opened at one time.

Above the drawer is an ornamented freeze, japanned; and round the top, which is marble, is a braſs edging.

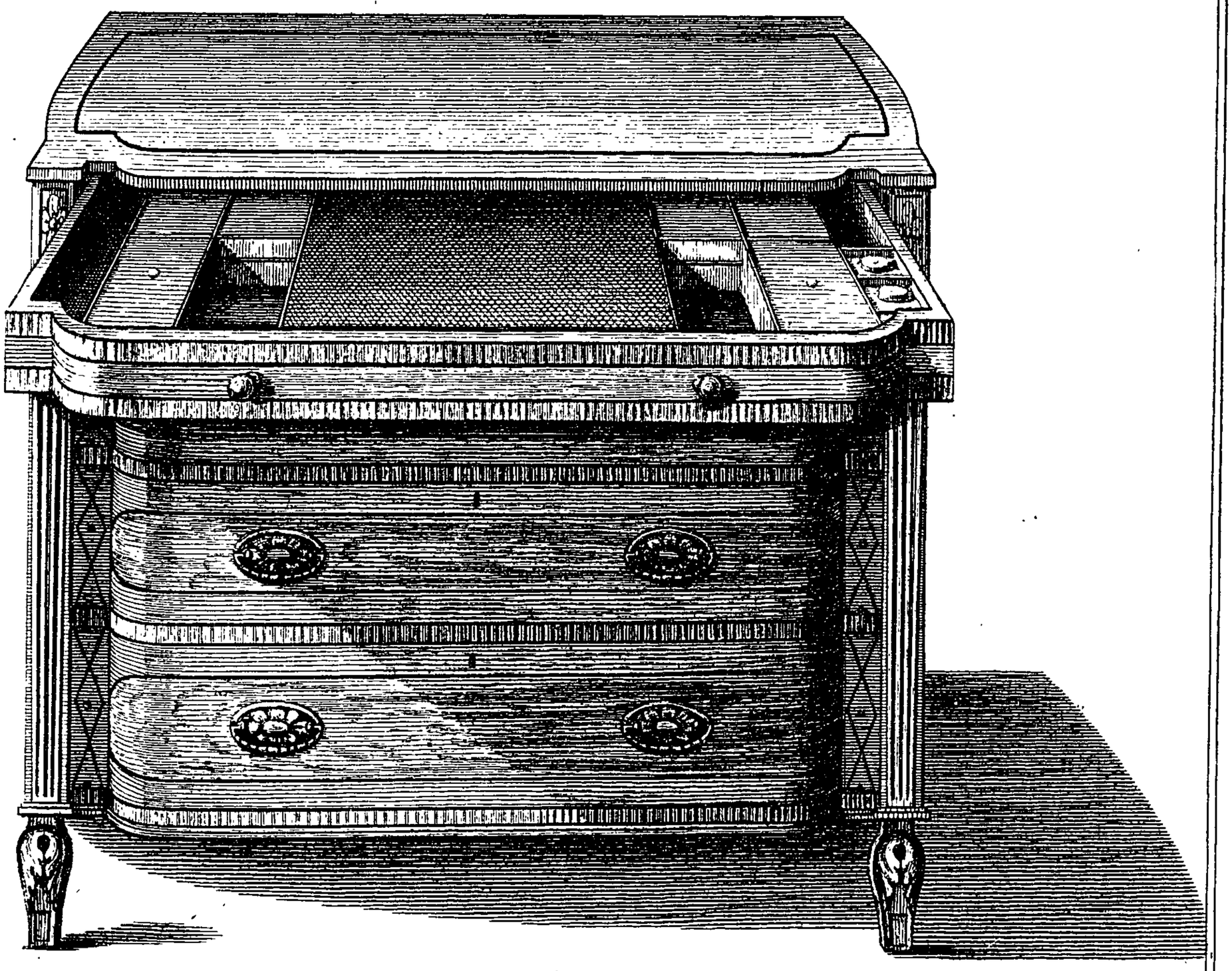
The flower-pot at the top and that on the ſtretcher are ſuppoſed to be real, not carved.

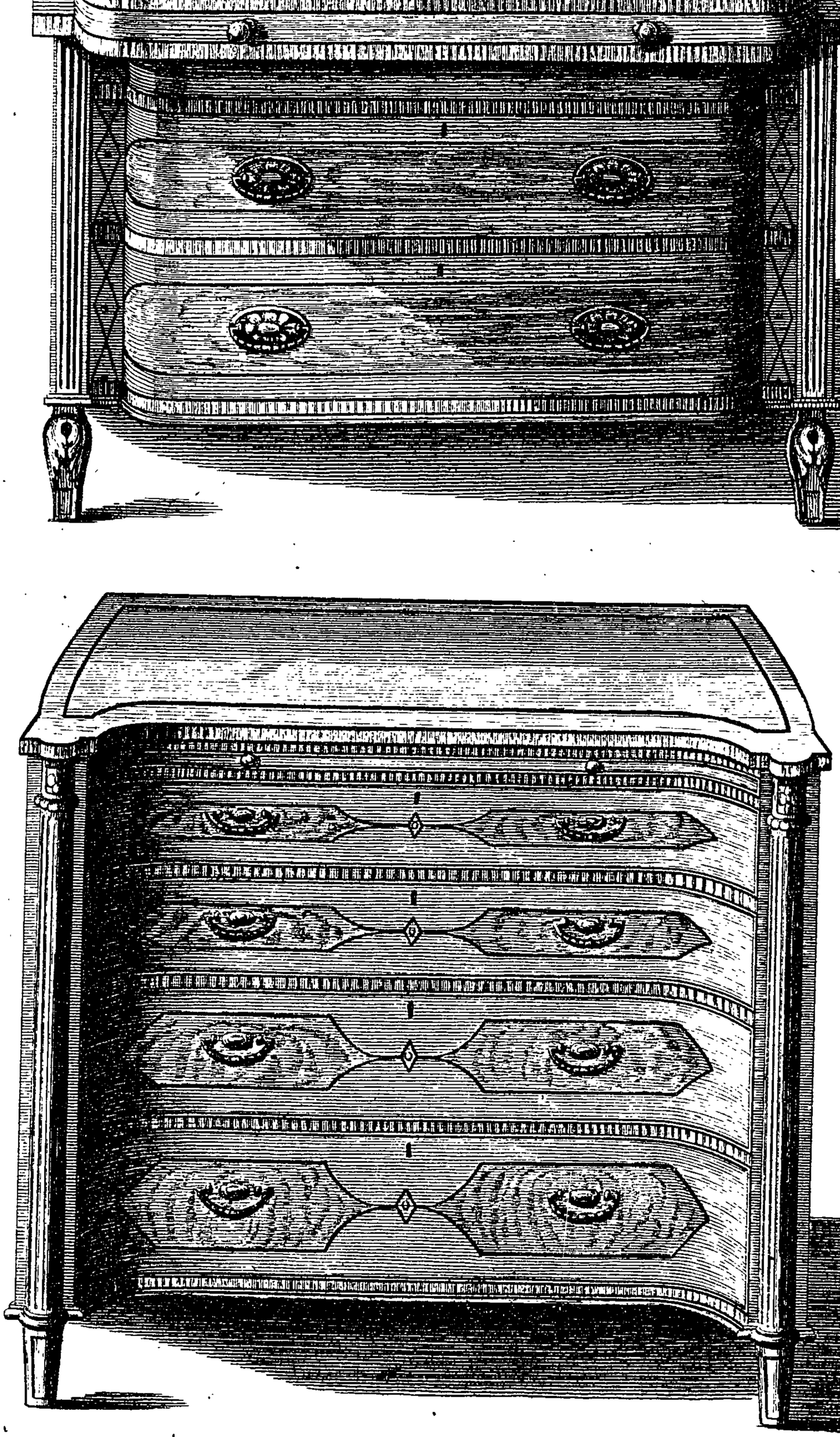
The columns ſtand clear, as ſhewn by the plan; and they are intended to have braſs baſes and capitals, with wooden ſhafts fluted.

The candle branches turn to any form in a ſocket, and the whole may be taken away, as they are only ſcrewed into a nut fixed into the legs of the table.

There is a braſs fret fixed at each end, which finiſhes at the ſtandards of the candle-branches. The lower frame contains a drawer in front, and the legs being octagon, are intended to be veneered croſſways as far as to the carving, which may be gilt to ſuit the baſes and caps of the columns.

Dressing Chests



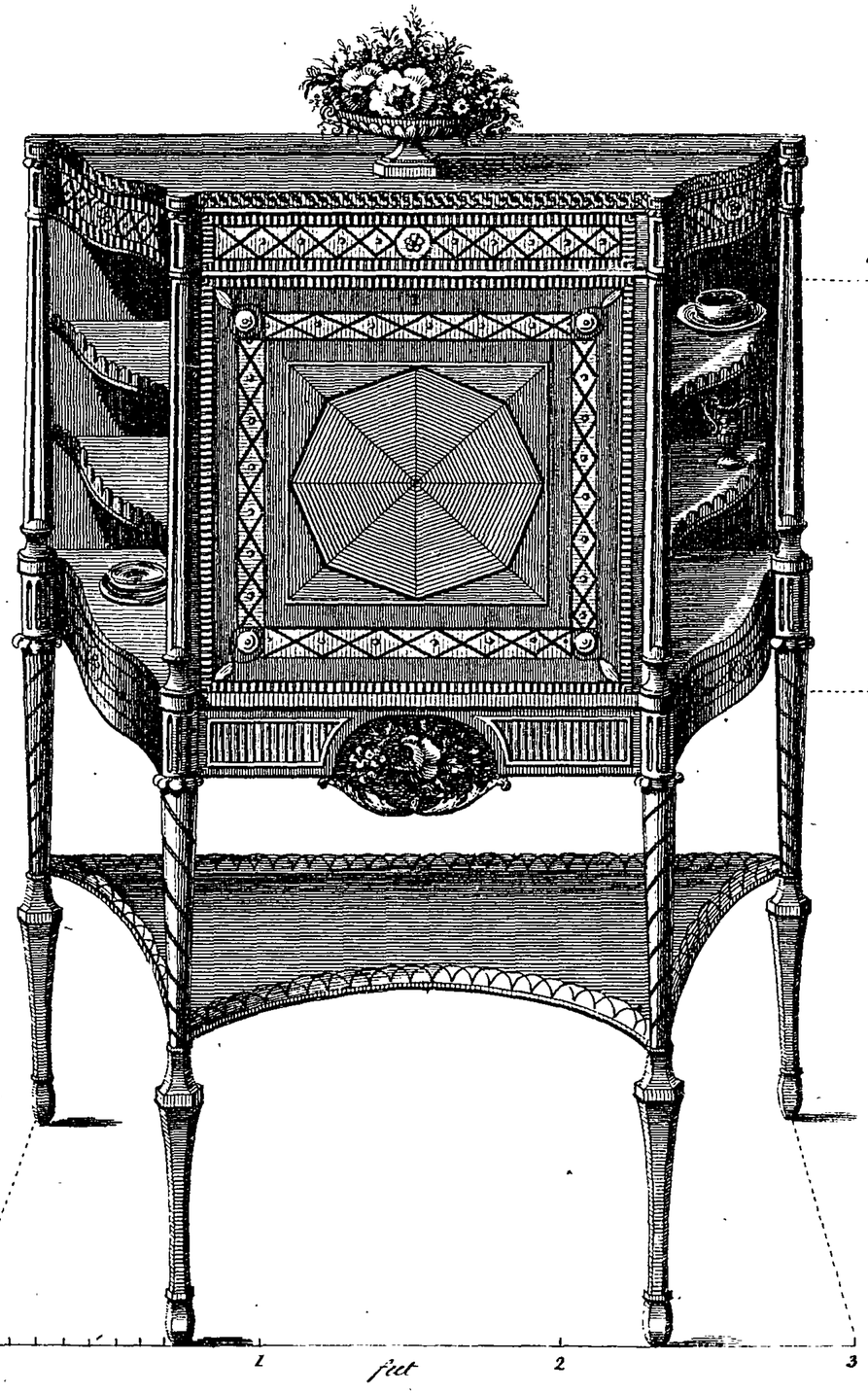


T. Sheraton Del

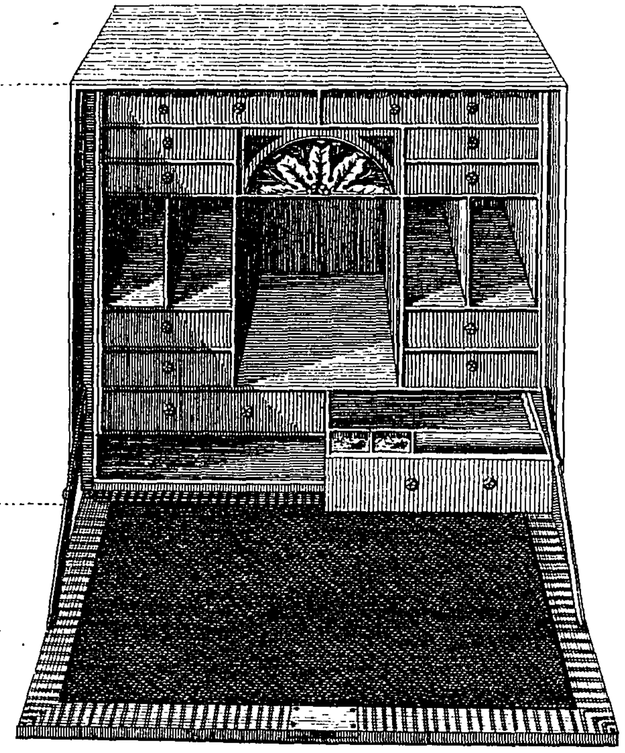
Published as the Act Directs by G. Terry.

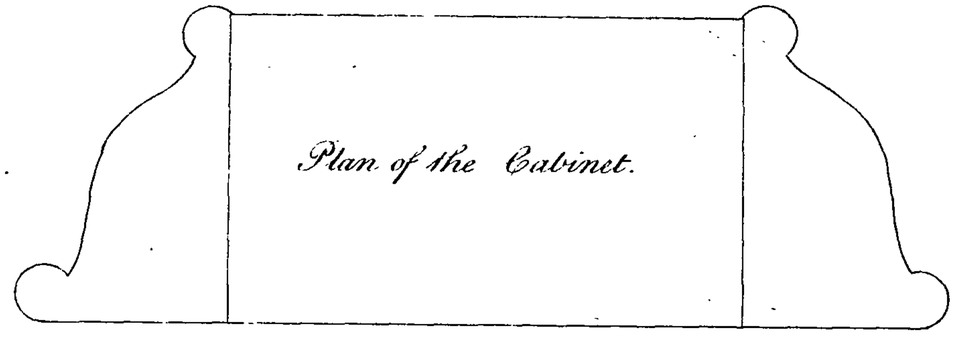
J. Caldwall Direxit

A LADYS CABINET.



Inside of the Cabinet.





T. Sheraton delin.

Published as the Act directs, by G. Terry. — May 27.th 1793.

I Barlow sculp

Of the Dreſſing Cheſts. Plate XV.

THESE cheſts are alſo on a new plan, particularly as the common ſlider generally uſed for merely writing on is turned into a ſhallow drawer, which contains a little writing flap which riſes behind by a horſe, and places for ink, ſand, and pens, and alſo dreſſing-boxes. When the drawer is in, it appears like a common ſlider, with a partition above and below, as that with the convex front. There is therefore no ſlip under the top, as the drawer ſides muſt run cloſe up to it. The drawer below of courſe muſt lock up into the under edge of the dreſſing-drawer, and the dreſſing-drawer into the top, which is done at one time, by the bolt of the under lock forcing up that of the upper one.

The height of theſe cheſts are always governed by the ſlider, which runs thirty-two or thirty-three inches from the floor. The ſcale ſhews their length, and their breadth is twenty-two or twenty-three inches.

Of the Lady's Cabinet. Plate XVI.

THE cabinet in Plate XIV. is made in two parts, but this is entirely in one. The legs and columns are therefore all in one piece.

piece. The inſide of the cabinet is made ſeparate, and ſlips in between the legs, and a piece of narrow wood, as a band, is fitted to fill the ſpace up to the column, as the deſign ſhews.

The marble ſhelves, with frets at each end, are for a tea equipage. Above and below theſe ſhelves are drawers which turn out by a hinge. Above and below the front are alſo drawers. The drawer below may be made to ſupport the front when turned down to write on, or it may be ſupported by braſs joints, as ſhewn in the deſign for the inſide of the cabinet.

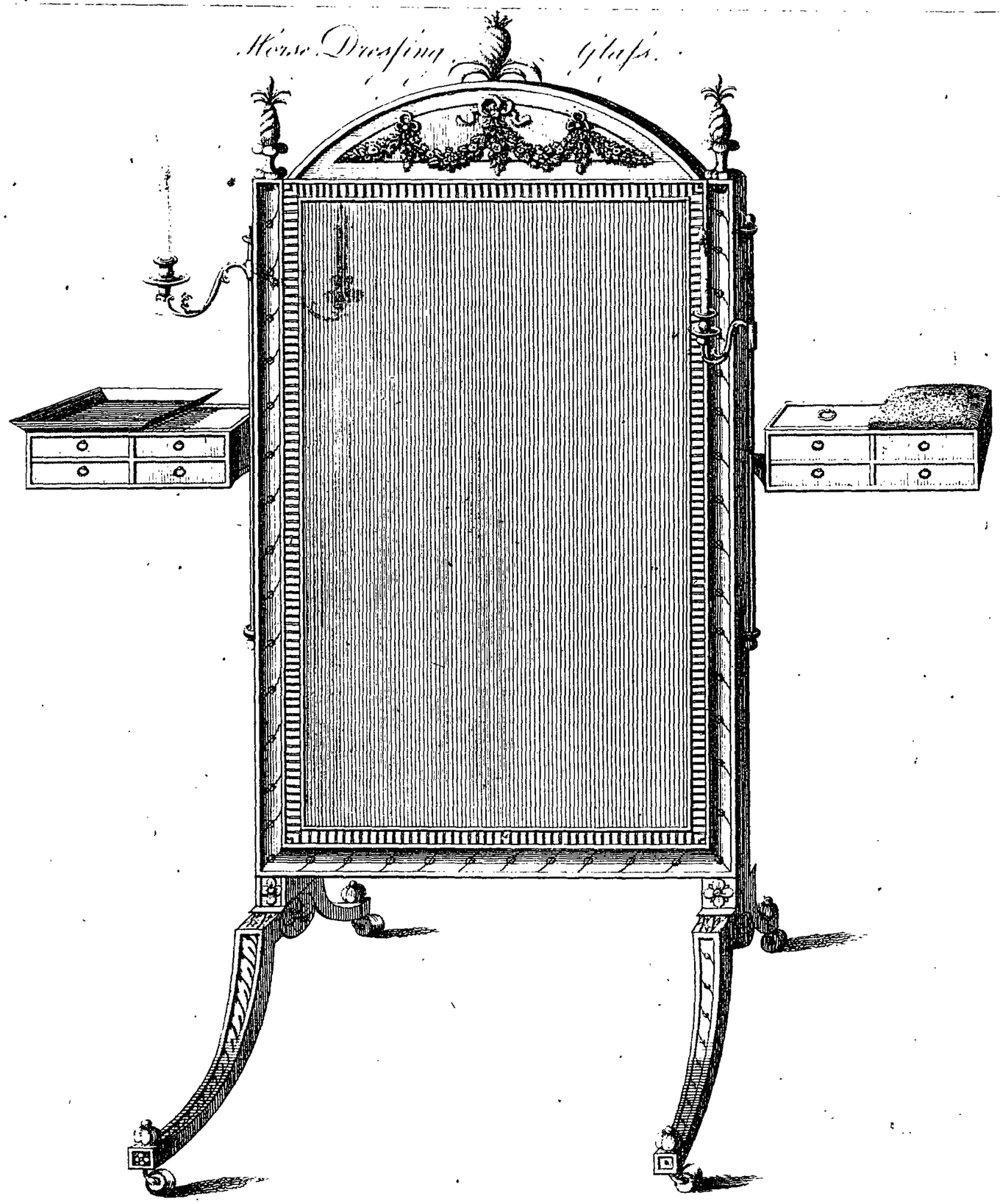
The ſcales and plans of each cabinet ſhew their length and breadth; it remains only to mention their height, which is four feet, and four feet two.

Of the Horſe Dreſſing Glaſſes. Plate XVII.

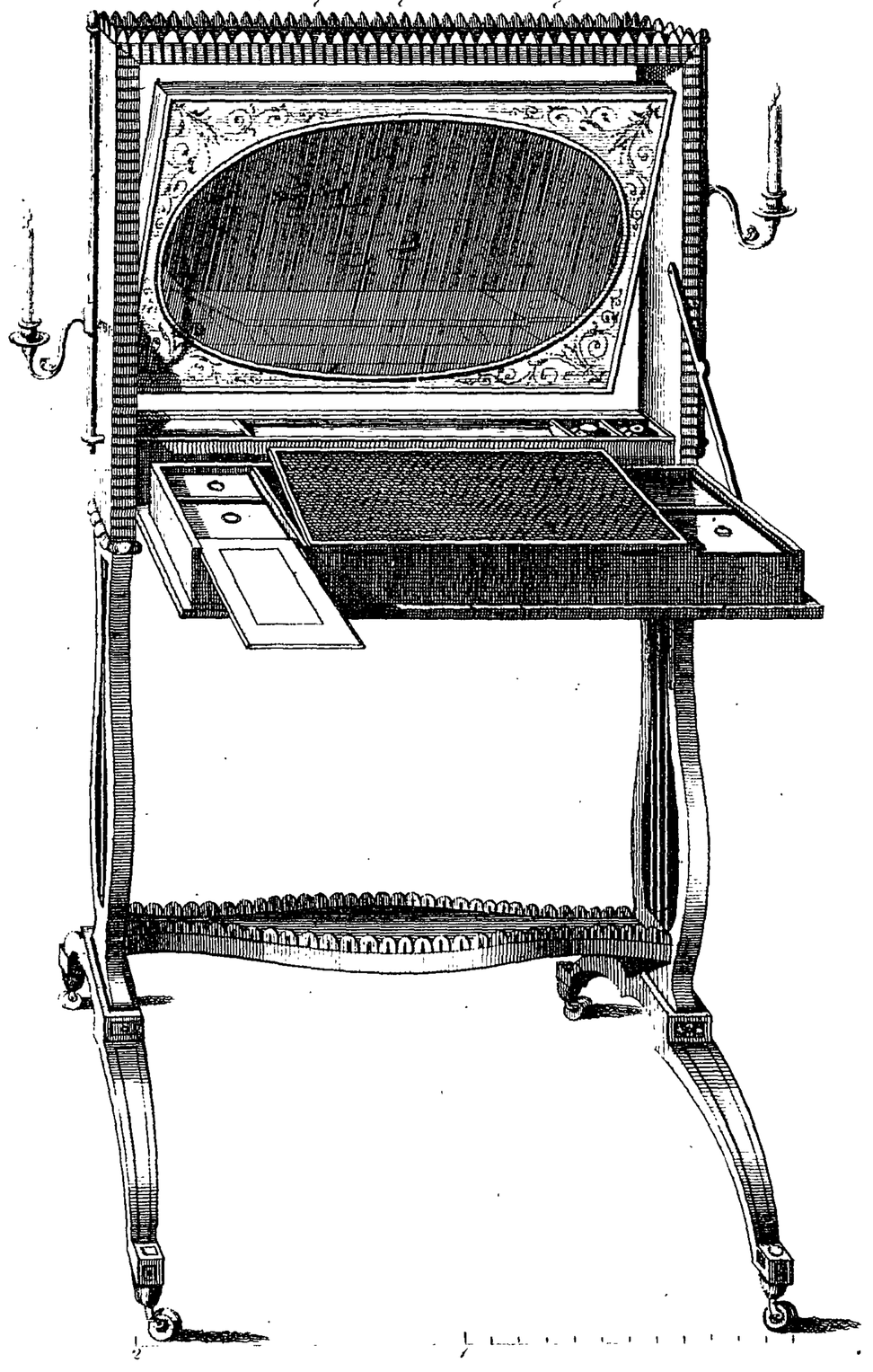
THE dreſſing-glaſs on the left riſes to any height, by leaden weights incloſed in the ſtandards. The weights are ſuſpended ſometimes to tambour glued on to webbing, which paſſes over a braſs roller at the top, and fixes to a piece of thin wood, tamboured to match it. Through this piece of thin wood is put an iron pin, with a thin plate to it to ſcrew it faſt; which pin goes through the ſide of the glaſs, and faſtens by a nut at the inſide,

ſo

Horse Dressing Glass.



Horse Dressing Glass & Writing Table.



T. Sheraton del. Published by G. Terry, — June 1st 1793. G. Terry Sculp.

ſo that when the glaſs is raiſed, it may be turned to any direction. But ſome uſe a kind of coloured ſtrong webbing, without the tambour, which makes it leſs troubleſome, and leſs liable to injury, though it does not look ſo neat. Thoſe unacquainted with the manner of gluing up the ſtandards, may ſee a ſection of them in Plate XXX. Fig. C.

There is a braſs handle behind the ornamented top to raiſe the glaſs by.

The boxes on each ſide are intended to hold conveniences for dreſſing. On theſe, there is a comb-tray on the left ſide, and a pin-cuſhion on the right. When the dreſſing-boxes are not in uſe, they are intended to turn behind the glaſs. For this purpoſe they are fixed to a braſs ſocket, which turns upon a ſhort braſs rod, and by a ſcrew they may be raiſed up or lowered at pleaſure. See Fig. D. Plate XXX.

The other dreſſing-glaſs has a convenience for writing as well as for dreſſing, which convenience riſes by a little horſe. The dreſſing-boxes are made with cloſe covers, and a ſlider incloſes the whole, ſo that when the whole is turned up nothing can come out of its place. The glaſs does not riſe as the other, but fixes in centers, ſo as to move in any poſition either back or forward.

And obſerve, that when the dreſſing-flap is turned up it locks into the top rail, and the glaſs of courſe falls to its own place. The under ſide of the flap being the front when turned up, it may be japanned and banded. The lower parts of the ſtandards are ſhaped like a lyre; and to form the ſtrings, braſs wire is let in, which has a pretty effect.

Of the Chaiſe Longus. Plate XVIII.

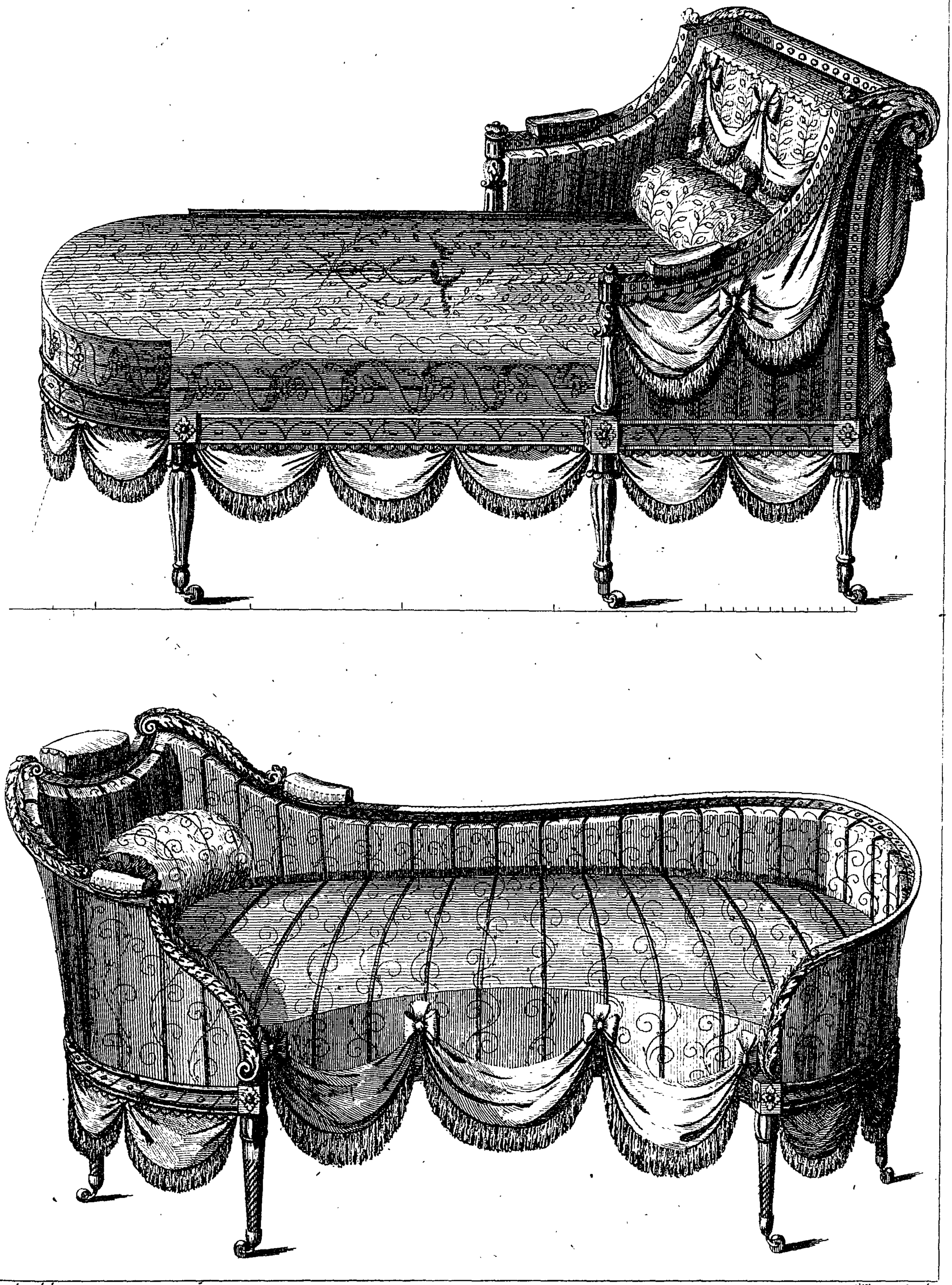
THESE have their name from the French, which imports a long chair. Their uſe is to reſt or loll upon after dinner, and in ſome caſes the lower one will ſerve for a ſofa. The drapery under the rail is tacked to a rabbet left on purpoſe. The upper one is framed firſt in two parts. The end, or chair part, is made to receive the ſtool part within its ſides; and the ſides of the ſtool part ſcrew in againſt the inſide of the chair. As to any other particular, the deſigns themſelves are ſufficient to point them out.

Of the Engliſh State Bed. Plate XIX.

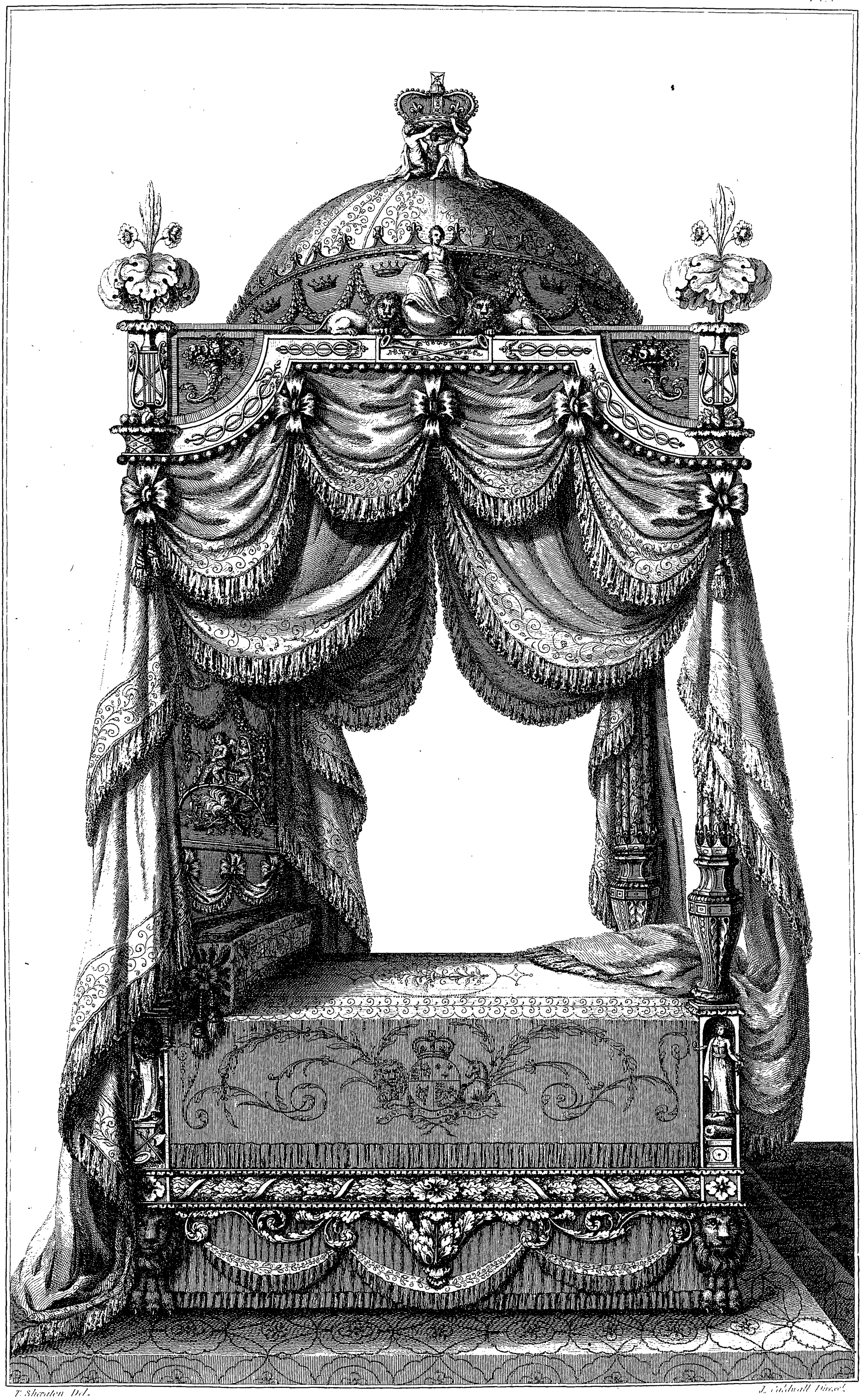
IN giving a deſign for an Engliſh ſtate-bed, or ſuch an one as is ſuitable to the dignity of a prince, and worthy the notice of a king, I conceived it neceſſary to cultivate as much as I could

the

Chaise Loncues



Sheraton del. Published by G. Terry – June 25. 1793. G. Terry Sculp.



T. Sheraton Del.

J. Caldwall Direxit.

Published as the Act Directs by T. Sheraton Augst 24. 1793.

the moſt exalted ideas, unfettered and unreſtrained with the thoughts of expenſiveneſs, which naturally produces meanneſs of compoſition, and in many caſes injures the ingenious in their deſigns.

For ornament to a bed of this kind, it ſtruck me that nothing could be more ſuitable and characteriſtic than ſuch as expreſſed ſymbolically the different parts of our government, together with thoſe virtues and principles which ought to be the ſupport of regal authority, and the ruling maxims of every good government of whatever kind, whether monarchical, ariſtocratical, or democratical. Emblems of war have been avoided as much as poſſible, being inconſiſtent ornaments for a bed, and becauſe good kings ought not to delight in war, but in peace, unity, and the love of men and their ſubjects.

As our government is compoſed of three diſtinct branches, the figure on the right hand bed-pillar is intended to repreſent the democratic part of it, or the power of the people inveſted in their repreſentatives in parliament.

In iconology*, democracy† is repreſented by the figure of

* Iconology, from εικον, *eikon*, an image; and λεγω, *lego*, I ſpeak. The interpretation of ancient images, monuments, and emblems.

† Democracy, from δημος, *demos*, people; and κρατειν, *kratein*, to command or govern; is when the ſovereign power is lodged in the body of the people.

a woman,

a woman dreſſed in a homely garment, and crowned with vine leaves. In her right hand ſhe holds a pomegranate, which denotes aſſemblies of the people on matters of importance. In her left hand is a cluſter of ſerpents, which expreſſes the winding and ſlow progreſſion of democratic ſtates, owing to the inability of the common people to govern. Her ſtanding on the two ſacks of corn which reſt on the pedeſtal, ſignifies that democratic government is more attentive to the obtaining of neceſſary proviſions, than the increaſe of fame, or the acquiſition of honours. If this be a juſt repreſentation, and founded on fact, the reader will, no doubt, conſider the democratic branch a very important one, and for which reaſon it is here placed near the groundwork.

The figure, oppoſite, on the left pillar, repreſents the ariſtocratic branch. Ariſtocracy* is deſcribed by the figure of an elderly lady, in a ſumptuous dreſs, with a crown of gold upon her head. Painters repreſent her ſitting on a throne; which is a poſition conſonant to lawgivers, but which I could not make ſuitable to this ſituation. In her right hand ſhe holds the conſular faſces, that is, a number of elm rods tied in a bundle, with a hatchet in the middle, which, originally, were the enſigns of

* Ariſtocracy, from αριστος, *ariſtos*, the beſt; and κρατιω, *kratio*, I command or govern; is when the ſupreme power is lodged in a ſenate, compoſed of the principal perſons of a ſtate, either for their nobility, capacity, or probity.

ſovereign dignity, but in after times the hatchet was taken out, and they were carried before the conſuls or magiſtrates of Rome, to denote their authority. Theſe rods are entwined with a crown of laurels, a ſymbol of reward due to thoſe who have maintained the public welfare, and have performed great actions for the good of the ſtate. In her left hand is a ſteel cap, at her feet a hatchet, a plate, and purſe with money, all which denote that arms and finances are neceſſary ſupports of ſtates. And I would here obſerve, that it is not abſolutely neceſſary to conſider the ſteel cap and hatchet as ſymbols of war, but of the executive power requiſite in all governments for the maintenance of peace, and the puniſhment of evil doers.

The figure in the center of the upper cornice is intended to repreſent the monarchical branch of our government.

Monarchy* is characterized by the figure of a young woman of grave countenance, ſeated on a terreſtrial globe, holding four ſcepters, to denote dominion and power. The other hand being uplifted, denotes her authority in giving command. The rays of light ſurrounding her head, denote luſtre, and the reſpect due to her greatneſs. The lion on each ſide ſymbolizes the

* Monarchy, from μονος, *monos*, alone; and αρχη, *arche*, government; is when the ſupreme power is inveſted in one perſon, commonly termed the King.

power which ſhe poſſeſſes and requires of others in order to her ſupport. Painters, however, deſcribe her with trophies of war, and a crowned head chained down as a captive at her feet, which I have here omitted, hoping that conqueſt and war are not the prominent features in our government.

Theſe three figures in their ſituation to each other form a triangle, whoſe baſe is democracy and ariſtocracy, and whoſe ſummit is monarchy; denoting that monarchical power and honour are originally derived from the people, and that without their ſupport, monarchy in its moſt exalted ſtate muſt fall.

The lions which ſupport the bed, with oak foliage and leaves on the bed-frame and round the ſhafts of each pillar, are emblems of the ſtrength and permanent nature of our government. The acorns being the fruit of the oak, denote, that by long progreſſive improvements it is arrived to a good degree of maturity.

The ſerpents in the cornice, which mutually entwine themſelves round Mercury's rod, denote the unity, prudence, and wiſdom, requiſite to monarchs in the exerciſe of their important charge. The trumpets and laurel crown are expreſſive of the fame which the Engliſh ſtate has acquired through the mildneſs of its government. The beads under the cornice de-

note

note its riches. The baſkets of fruit on each capital, and in the quadrantal pannels, ſymbolize the proſperous ſtate of the nation, and the plenty we enjoy. In the arch of each quadrant are marked the degrees, to denote that navigation has contributed greatly to our riches and ſafety. The lyre and trumpets on the pedeſtal above the cap, ſignify the flouriſhing ſtate of the arts; and the ſpreading oak leaves and roſes, are meant to expreſs the deſigner's wiſh and hopes, that the uſeful arts may long continue to grow and ſpread themſelves under the munificence of our government.

The coronets round the dome are thoſe of the immediate ſons and daughters of the king of Great Britain, of which there are thirteen; but the dome being divided into ſixteen compartments, ſtill leaves room for an increaſe of the royal family, to denote that the ſubjects of Great Britain ſhould hope for a long ſucceſſion of a mild and good government. The feſtoons of flowers denote that happineſs and proſperity are wiſhed to ſurround each branch of the royal offspring.

The crown of England is ſupported on the top of the dome by three figures, intended to repreſent Juſtice, Clemency, and Liberty; for notwithſtanding theſe may, in ſome inſtances, be ſullied in our government, yet ſcarcely any nation can boaſt of more than that which we have long enjoyed.

Juſtice, which ought to be the moving principle of civil government, is by painters deſcribed by the figure of a woman dreſſed in white robes; holding in her left hand a ſword, to puniſh criminals; and in her right a pair of ſcales, to give that which is due to every one without partiality; which impartiality is denoted by a bandage over her eyes. In this ſituation the ſword and ſcales may be ſuppoſed to lie on the other ſide of the dome ready for uſe.

Clemency is a neceſſary quality or principle in government, by which thoſe in authority are enabled to take into conſideration, and to effect the relief of the miſeries of the helpleſs and inſolvent. In the exerciſe of this virtue, he who is ready to be cut aſunder by the uplifted hand of juſtice can be ſaved, and the rotting inſolvent priſoner can be abſolved and releaſed. Such actions beget gratitude in the minds of the ſubjects, and are as a pillar to the crown; while cruelty and tyranny have often proved fatal to princes.

Painters deſcribe this virtue by the figure of a woman crowned with olives, as a mark of her peaceful and gentle temper; and dreſſed in a purple robe, which denotes her eminence. She is characteriſed by the mildneſs of her countenance, and ſitting on a lion (which I could not here introduce). She alſo holds a laurel branch of honour and reſpect in her right hand.

She

She is ſaid to have a ſpear by her ſide, ſo that when her mercy is abuſed ſhe may in juſtice revenge it.

The other figure, Liberty, on the other ſide of the dome, is an eſſential principle to good government. It ſuppoſes a diſpoſition in thoſe poſſeſſing ſupreme authority to allow ſubjects to enjoy their natural, moral, and religious rights. In the poſſeſſion of theſe we are delivered from ſlavery; the yoke is broken. Therefore painters repreſent liberty by the figure of a woman, with a broken yoke-ſtick in her left hand, and trampling upon it as a mark of reſentment. She is dreſſed in white robes, to denote the bleſſings which ſhe confers on mankind; and in her right hand ſhe holds a ſceptre as a ſign of independence. She has alſo a cap of liberty on her head, in alluſion to the cuſtom of the Romans, in ſetting their ſlaves free; who alſo ſhaved their heads, and permitted them to be covered in the preſence of thoſe who gave them liberty *.

The figures on the other ſide, and at the end of the bed, may be the ſame, not merely for uniformity's ſake, but to convey the ſentiment expreſſed by the allegory with more weight, as it is well known that repetition is ſome-

* Richardſon's Iconology, from whoſe work I am indebted for ſeveral ideas on this ſubject.

times introduced to give force and energy to a ſubject. However, if any ſhould think it neceſſary to vary the figures on the different ſides, there are plenty of ſubjects ſuitable enough.

Fortitude may be placed on the center of the cornice, oppoſite to monarchy; to denote a quality of mind ſo highly neceſſary in thoſe who rule. The emblem of this quality is a woman reſting on the ſhaft of a column and its baſe, having a brown robe and part of a military dreſs, with a lion on one ſide of her; but ſhe may have one at each ſide, to make the outline more agreeable to the figure of monarchy. Her military dreſs conveys the idea of courage; and reſting on a column, ſteadineſs and firmneſs; and the lion, ſtrength of mind.

On the bed pillar, oppoſite to the figure which repreſents the ariſtocratic branch of our government, ſhould be Counſel, to denote the wiſdom and ability neceſſary in thoſe who make up that branch.

Counſel is repreſented by the figure of a grave old man, having a long beard, dreſſed in long robes of violet colour. His age denotes that experience requires length of time, and that wiſdom is the reſult of experience. His long robes denote his

his high character, and their colour his gravity. He is repreſented ſitting, to ſhew his authority; and with a chain of gold round his neck, to which is ſuſpended a human heart, to denote his integrity. In his right hand is a book, to ſhew he has regard to law, and that from literature he obtains his knowledge. He may, however, in this ſituation be ſtanding, as the bed-pillar will not ſo well admit of a ſitting attitude; and in this attitude he may have a mirror in his left hand, ſurrounded with ſerpents, to denote prudence and ſpeculation, as neceſſary to good counſel.

On the other pillar, oppoſite to the figure which repreſents the democratic branch of our government, there may be the emblem of Law, to denote that the members of parliament, as the repreſentatives of the people, ought to be acquainted with the rights and intereſts of their conſtituents; and alſo, that in their debates on theſe ſubjects, they ought to regard the laws of the conſtitution.

Law is repreſented by the figure of a reſpectable elderly lady, ſitting on a tribunal chair. Her age denotes that law is an ancient ſubject; ſhe is ſeated to denote eminence; and holds a ſceptre in her right hand to denote authority. In her left hand ſhe holds an imperial crown alluſive to the law of nations,

importing

importing that no nation can exiſt without laws. Her head is adorned with diamonds, to ſignify that law is moſt precious, and that its origin was from God.

At the end of the bed, and next to law, Obedience or Subjection may be introduced, to denote the duty and reſpect which the people owe to their repreſentatives whom they have appointed, and particularly to ſignify that ſubjects ought not to rebel againſt government.

Obedience is deſcribed by the figure of a humble woman, in an upright poſition, with her eyes towards heaven, to denote her regard to its commands as the Appointer of government. Her upright poſition not only ſhews her willingneſs to obey, but that government was never appointed to oppreſs or bow down the backs of thoſe who are willing to obey juſt laws. She is dreſſed in white robes, denoting innocence; and acroſs her ſhoulders is a yoke, the emblem of patience and obedience. By her ſide may be repreſented a dog, which is a ſymbol of obedience and faithfulneſs.

On the center of the cornice may be repreſented Authority, to denote that without its influence law is rejected and contemned,—obedience is without foundation, and therefore government could not exiſt.

Authority is repreſented by the figure of a matron, or old lady, to ſhew that the inſtitution of authority which gives effect to laws is ancient as law itſelf. She is ſeated on a regal chair, becauſe princes and magiſtrates generally perform their office ſitting, indicating tranquillity of mind. She holds a ſceptre in her left hand, denoting regal power and authority; and by her ſide are arms, to ſignify her power to puniſh the licentious, and protect the obedient. In her right hand is a book, reſting on her knee, to denote that civil authority is of divine origin*.

On the other pillar may be the repreſentation of Tyranny chained down, with her back bowed, to ſignify that thoſe in authority ought to ſuppreſs rather than cheriſh it; and to ſhew that tyranny ought, in all good governments, to be at the foot of power, to prevent its baneful effects in a ſtate. The emblem of this noxious quality is a pale, proud, and cruel-looking woman, dreſſed in armour, and purple drapery, to denote her readineſs to ſhed blood in the defence of her arbitrary meaſures. In her left hand is a yoke, and in her right an uplifted ſword, to ſhew that ſhe is ready to enſlave mankind, and puniſh them if they will not put on the yoke. She wears an iron crown, to

* See Rom. xiii. 1.—Not indeed for the purpoſe of enſlaving mankind, but to be a terror to evil-doers, and a praiſe of them that do well. Nor is the candid reader of this deſcription to imagine, that the writer has even the moſt diſtant view of maintaining hereditary right of ſucceſſion as ſacred, but only that civil government itſelf, of whatever kind, is of divine origin, and ought therefore to be revered by every wiſe man.

ſhew that the authority which tyrants ſeek is for baſe purpoſes and cruelty.

To make theſe three figures harmonize—Authority, at the top of the cornice, may be repreſented as looking towards Obedience with an eye of approbation; and the book lying on her lap, with the right hand ſhe may hold a dart pointed directly to Tyranny below. And to repreſent Tyranny in the moſt wretched ſtate, her iron crown may appear to tumble off her head, her yoke broken, and her ſword pointed to her own breaſt, to ſhew that in the end tyranny is her own executioner. Thus, I think, the end of the bed will exhibit emblematically the deſign of civil government, which is to protect the innocent and obedient, to ſuppreſs cruelty and oppreſſion, which are the life and ſoul of tyranny. The front ſide ſhews the nature of our government, the dome the principles which ſupport it, and the back ſide the way in which government is managed.

The ornaments on the head-board are emblems of love and continency, expreſſed by the figure of Cupid, Chaſtity, and a trophy below. Cupid is repreſented as drawing his bow to guard Chaſtity from the violent attempts of Impurity, whoſe figure, partly a woman and partly a monkey, is behind the curtain, to denote that ſuch as practiſe it lurk in ſecret.

The emblem of Chaſtity is the figure of a young woman in white robes, to denote purity and innocence. Her head is

crowned with a garland of cinnamon, a pleaſant and coſtly plant, to ſignify that Chaſtity is a virtue both pleaſant and valuable. She is veiled, to expreſs her modeſty; and in her right hand holds a ſceptre, as a ſign of her conqueſt over luſt. In her left ſhe holds a turtle dove, which is an emblem of continence.

With reſpect to the manufacturing part of this bed, it ſhould be obſerved, that the curtains draw up by a pulley at the ſeveral corners, detached from the drapery valence which is fixed to the cornice.

The teſter on which the dome reſts, is made perfectly ſtraight, and forms an even ſurface on both ſides; which, in the inſide, is pannelled out with gilt moulding at each angle.

The quadrantal pannels recede back from the cornice, and are framed into the top of the pillars, which are left ſquare. The ground of theſe pannels being continued the whole length, from pillar to pillar, ſerves as a facia on which to fix the cornice. Then obſerve, that the baſket of fruit and the lyre being in one piece, they are fixed to the pillar, and meet in a miter with the other ſide.

The oak foliage is in one entire piece, and ſcrewed up to the bed-ſides, after the drapery valence is tacked to a rabbet made for that purpoſe.

Every

Every other particular muſt naturally occur to the workman, after what has already been ſaid on the other beds in this work. Upon the whole, though a bed of this kind is not likely to be executed according to this deſign, except under the munificence of a royal order, yet I am not without hopes that uſeful ideas may be gathered from it, and applied to beds of a more general kind.

Of the Dreſſing Commode. Plate XX.

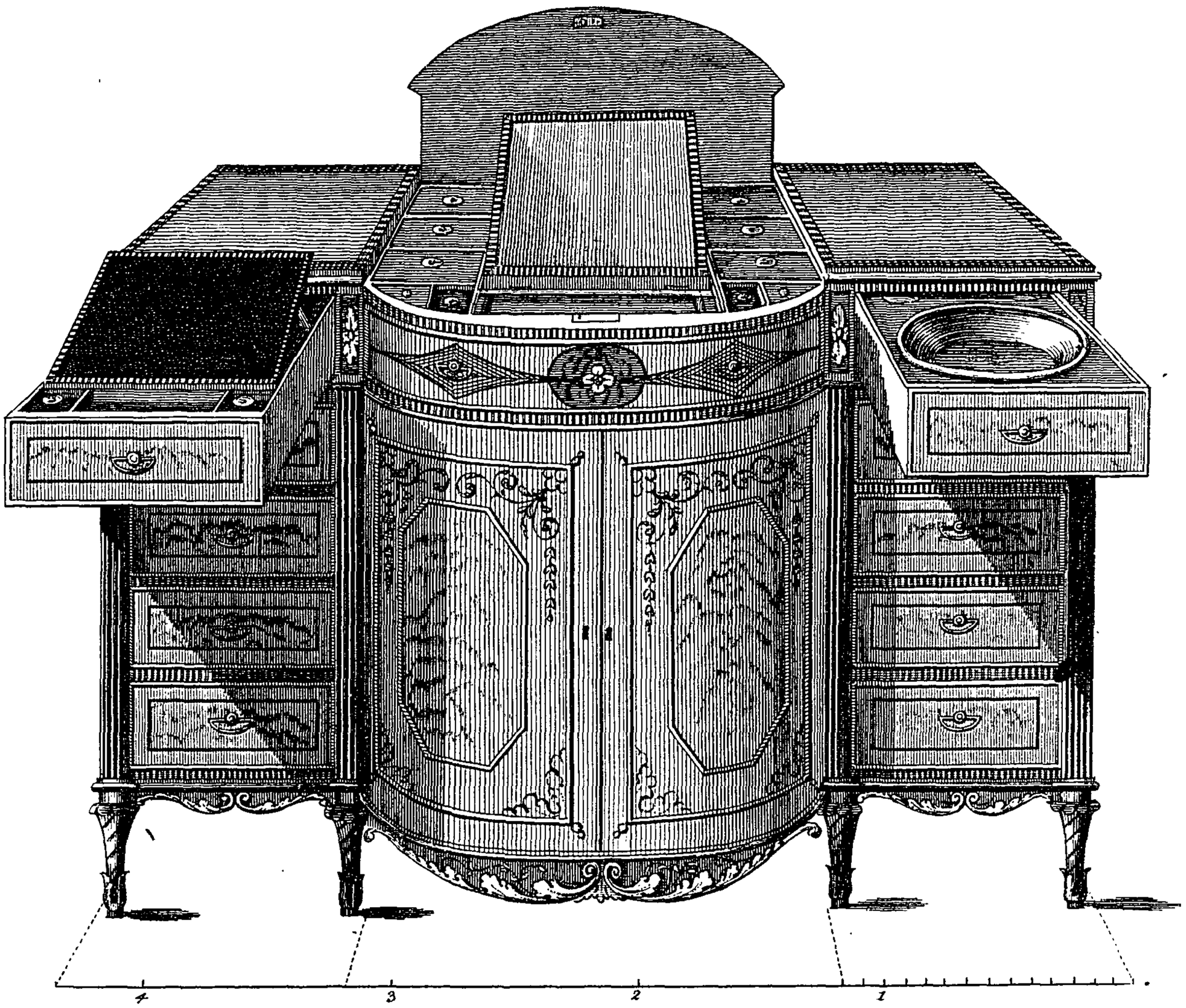
With reſpect to the dreſſing part of this commode, it may be made either fixed faſt, or to be brought forward in the manner of a drawer, with leapers to keep it to its place. If it is made to be fixed faſt, the doors may be opened to form the knee hole.

The top which covers and encloſes the dreſſing part, ſlides down behind, in the manner deſcribed in page 407, to which I refer the reader; only obſerve, that in this top there are miters to fit the ſtraight moulding in front when the top is put down. A bottle of water, and a pot to receive it when dirty, can both be kept in the cupboard part.

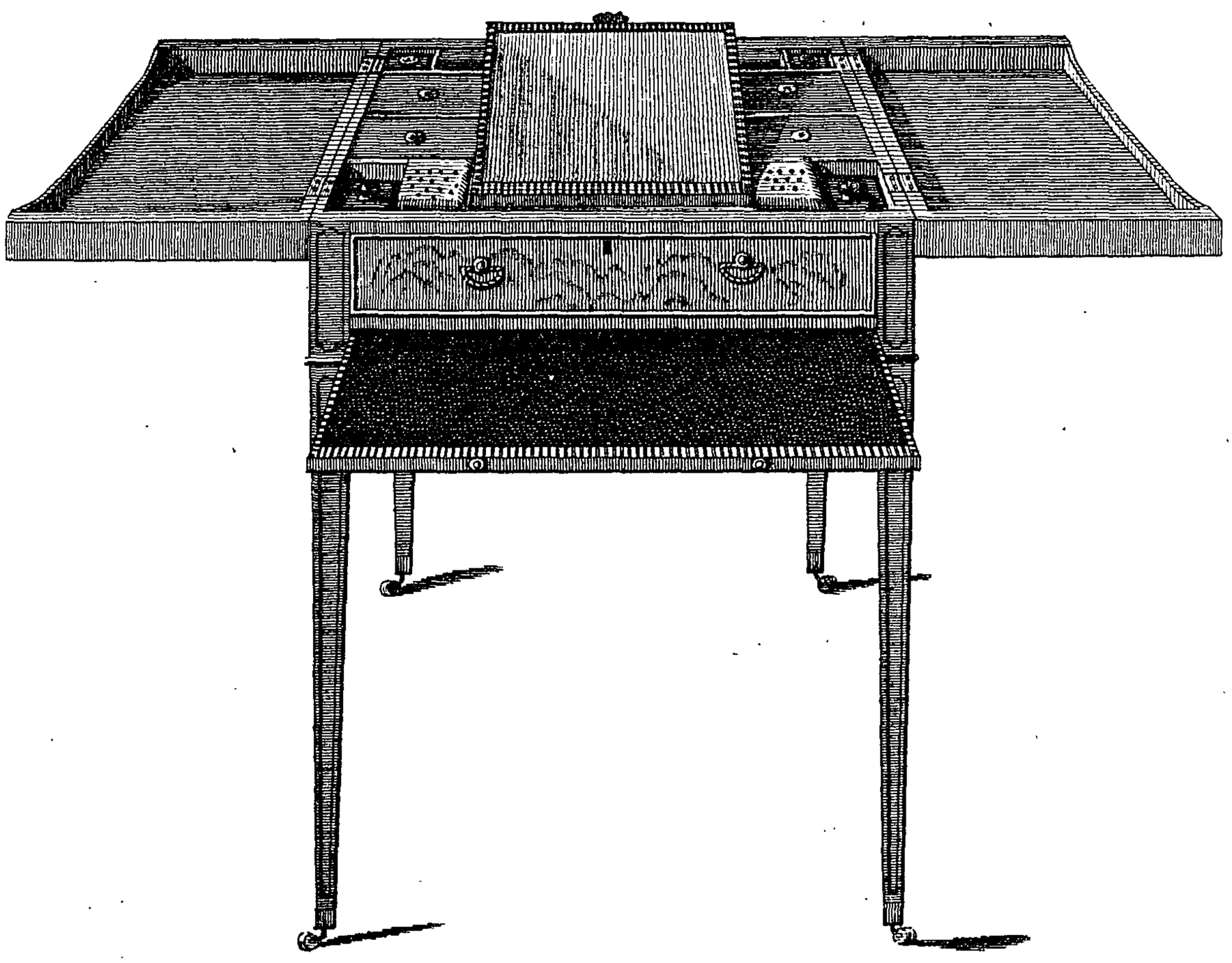
The dreſſing-table below can require no explanation, except what relates to the ſize, which from front to back is eighteen

A Ladys Dressing Commode.

Pl. . .



Dressing Table.

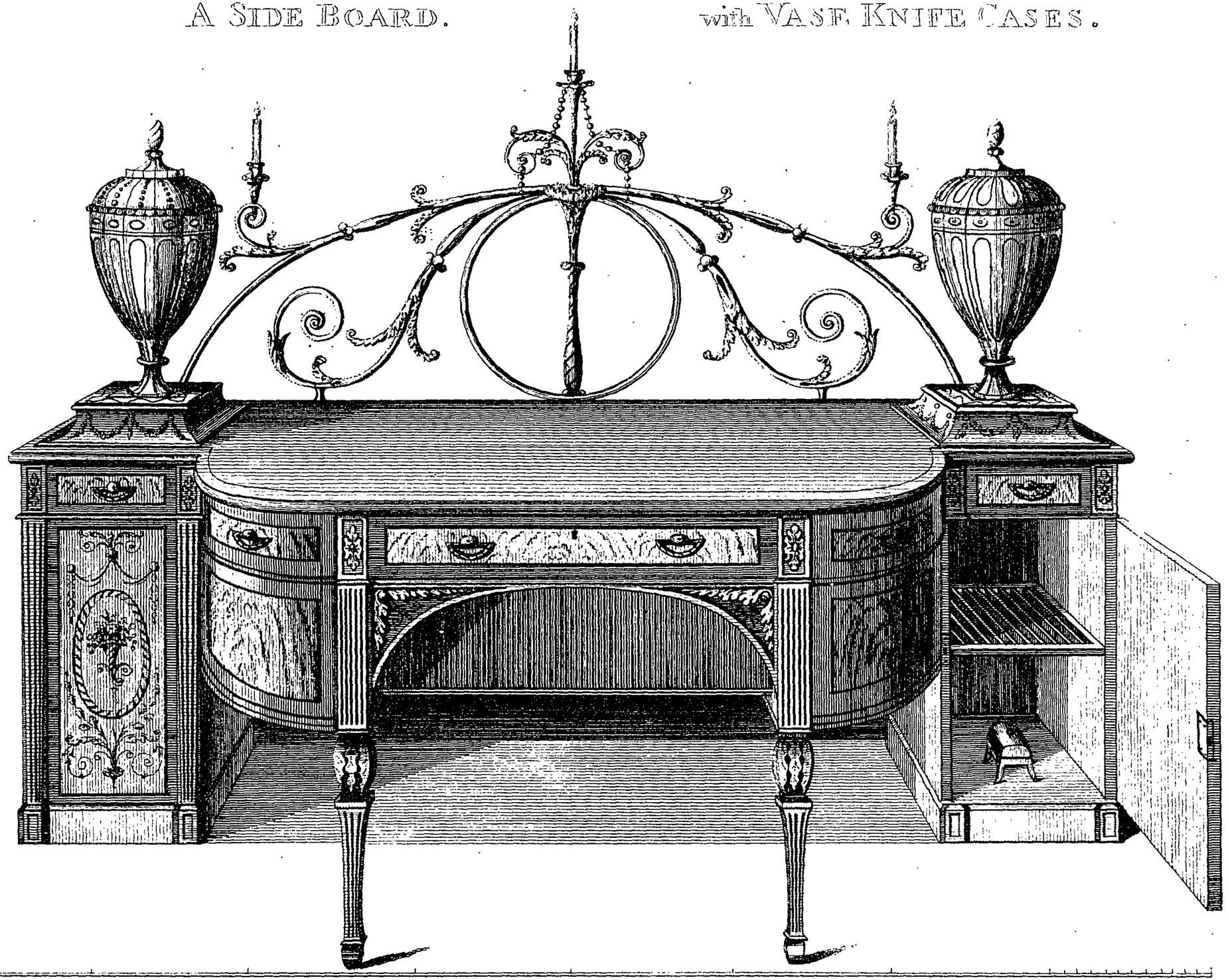


T. Sheraton delin.

J. Barlow sculp.

Published as the Act directs, by T. Sheraton July 24.th 1793.

A SIDE BOARD. with VASE KNIFE CASES.



eighteen inches, thirty-four the whole height, and two feet four the length of the front.

Of the Sideboard, with Vaſe Knife-caſes. Plate XXI.

THE pedeſtal parts of this ſideboard may be made ſeparate, and then ſcrewed to the ſideboard. The top extends the whole length in one entire piece, and is ſcrewed down to the pedeſtals. The hollow plinths of the vaſes are worked in one length, and mitered round. The top of the plinth is then blocked on at the under ſide, and the vaſe part is made to ſcrew into it ſo that the vaſes may occaſionally be taken off. A croſs band is meant to be mitered all round the hollow plinths, coming forward to the edge of the top; ſo that if the top be veneered, it will only require the length between the two plinths. Within the front is a tambour cupboard, which is both uſeful, and has a good effect in its appearance; almoſt any workman will know how to manage this, ſo that I need not explain it. The ornament behind is braſs, intended as a ſtay to ſilver plate, and has branches for three lights. The circle in the center may have a glaſs luſtre hung within it, as an ornament. For any other particular relative to ſideboards in general, ſee page 363, where the common principles of this uſeful piece of furniture are explained.

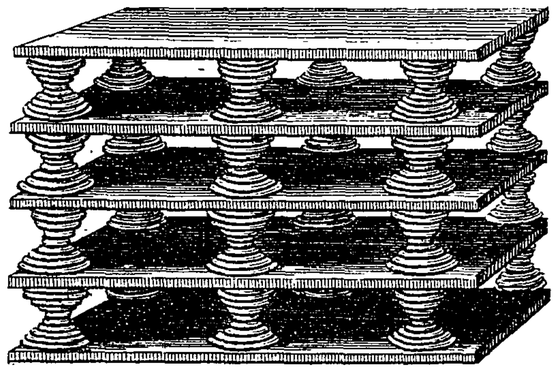
Of the Library Steps. Plate XXII.

THESE ſteps are conſiderably more ſimple than thoſe already deſcribed; and though not ſo generally uſeful, will come vaſtly cheaper. The upper flight of ſteps turn down upon the under ones, both of which riſe up and ſlide in as a drawer; after which a flap, which is ſhewn in the deſign, is turned up, and has the appearance of a drawer front. Obſerve, that the reſting poſt at the top folds down to the ſide of the ſteps by means of an iron joint. The horſe has green cloth under its feet, to prevent its ſcratching the top. The deſign ſhews that the two ſteps are connected together by hinges, ſo made as to clear the edge of the table-top; and alſo, that there is a ſliding board to which the under flight is hinged, which ſliding-board runs in a groove.

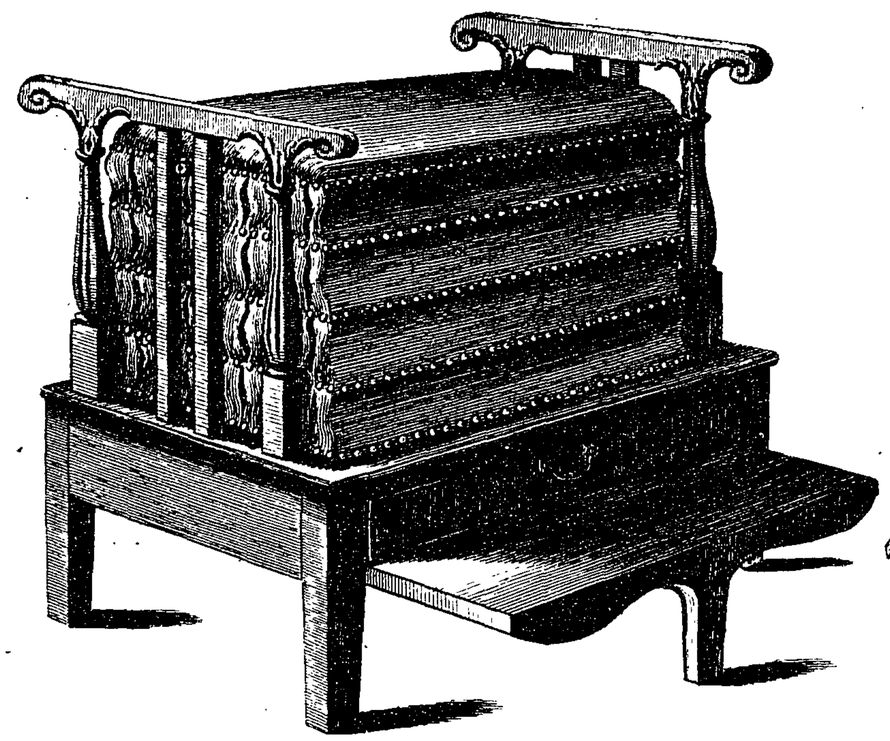
The length of the table is three feet ſix inches, its width twenty-two inches. The table is thirty inches high, the upper flight is thirty perpendicular, and the reſting-poſt thirty-three. This, and the other deſign for library ſteps, have obtained a patent; yet any part being materially altered, will evade the act, though the whole be nearly the ſame. Thoſe maſters, however, who do not think it worth their while to be at the trouble

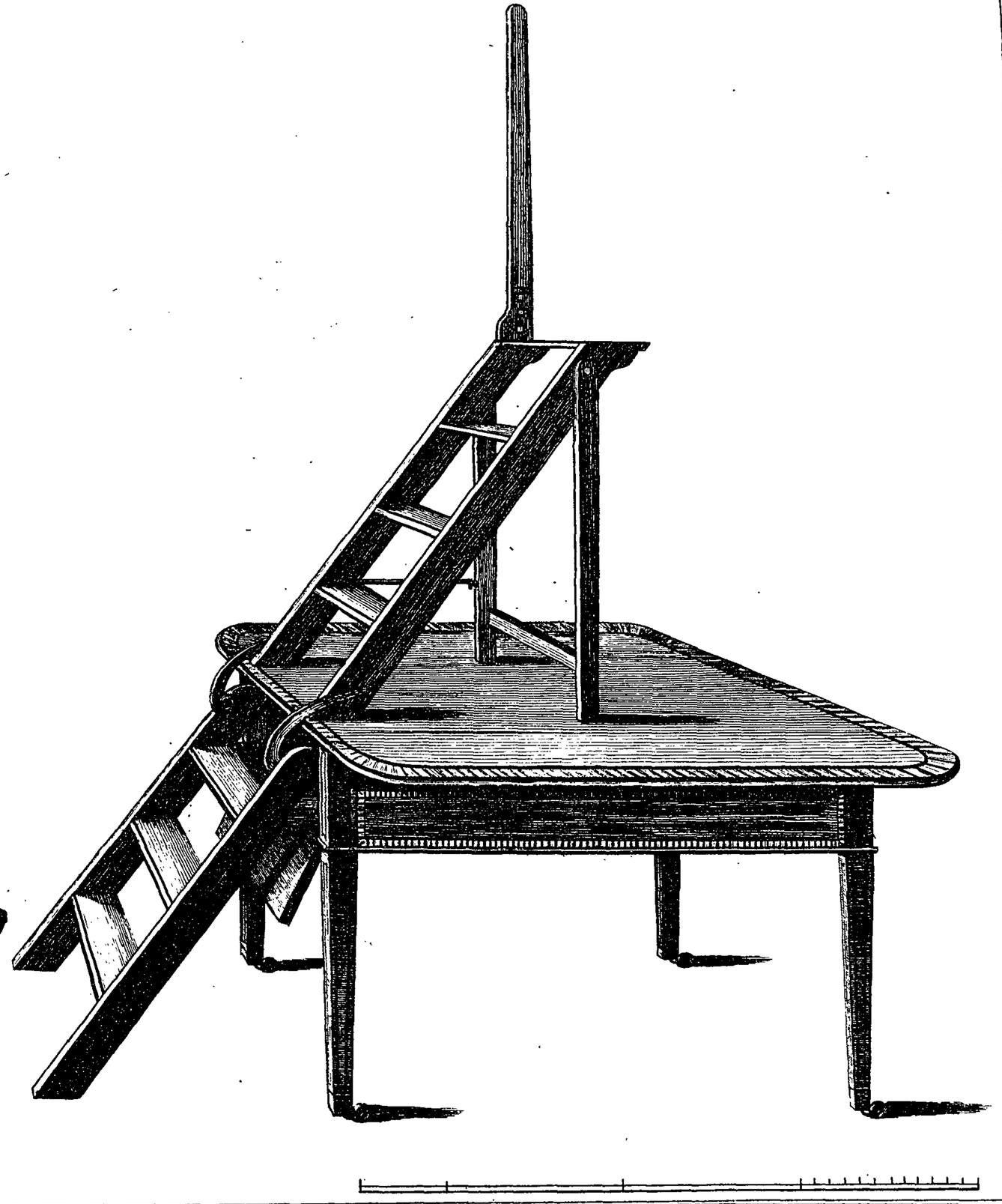
of

Library Steps and Pembroke Table



Chamber Horse





T. Sheraton Del.

J. Caldwall Direxit

Published as the Act Directs by G. Terry — July 2d. 1793.

of introducing any eſſential alteration in them may have theſe ſteps from Mr. Robert Campbell and Son, Mary-le-bone Street, London, with a ſufficient allowance for ſelling them again.

Of the Chamber Horſe.

THE upper figure ſhews the inſide when the leather is off, which conſiſts of five wainſcot inch boards, clamped at the ends; to which are fixed ſtrong wire twiſted round a block in regular gradation, ſo that when the wire is compreſſed by the weight of thoſe who exerciſe, each turn of it may clear itſelf and fall within each other.

The top board is ſtuffed with hair as a chair ſeat, and the leather is fixed to each board with braſs nails, tacked all round. The leather at each end is cut in ſlits to give vent to the air, which would otherwiſe reſiſt the motion downwards.

The workman ſhould alſo obſerve, that a wooden or iron pin is fixed at each end of the middle board, for the purpoſe of guiding the whole ſeat as it plays up and down. This pin runs between the two upright pieces which are framed into the arms at each end, as the deſign ſhews.

The length of the horſe is twenty-nine inches, the width twenty, its height thirty-two. To the top of the foot board is eight inches, and to the board whereon the ſeat is fixed is thirteen.

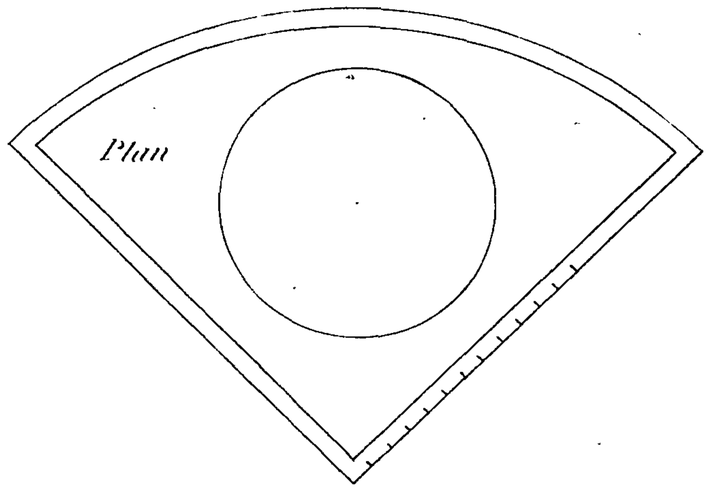
Of the Corner Night Tables. Plate XXIII.

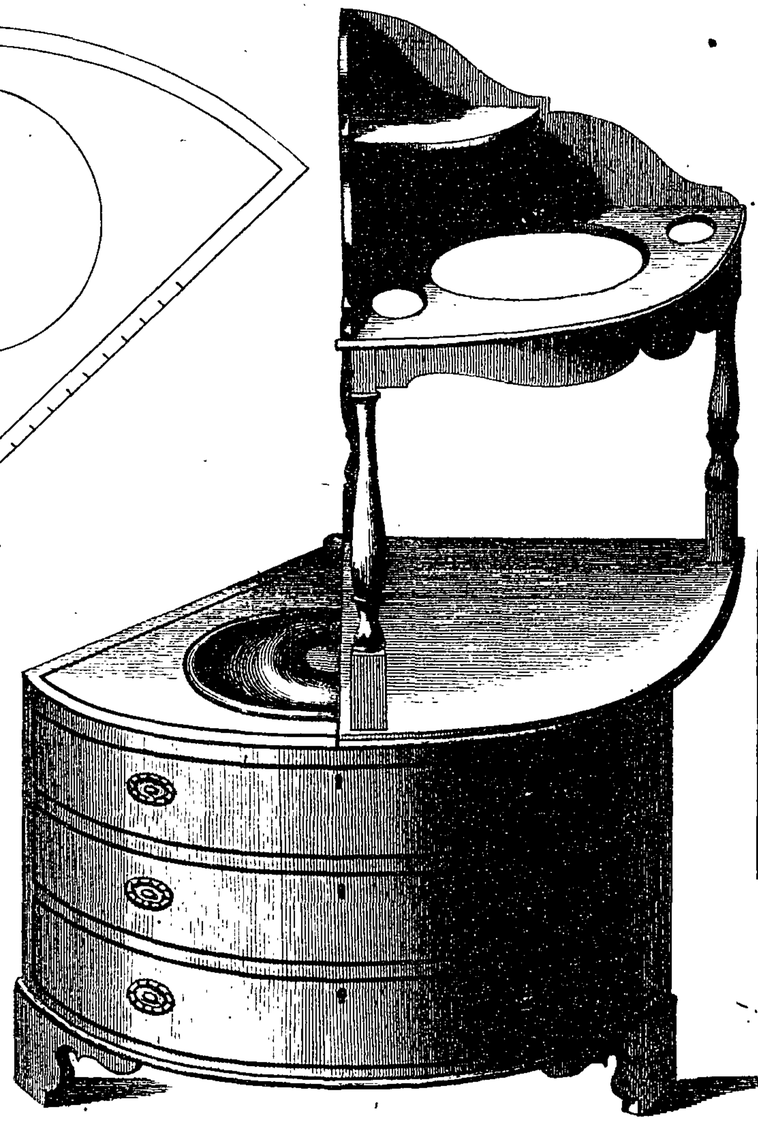
That on the right requires no explanation, except that the doors may be hinged to turn in, if it is thought moſt convenient.

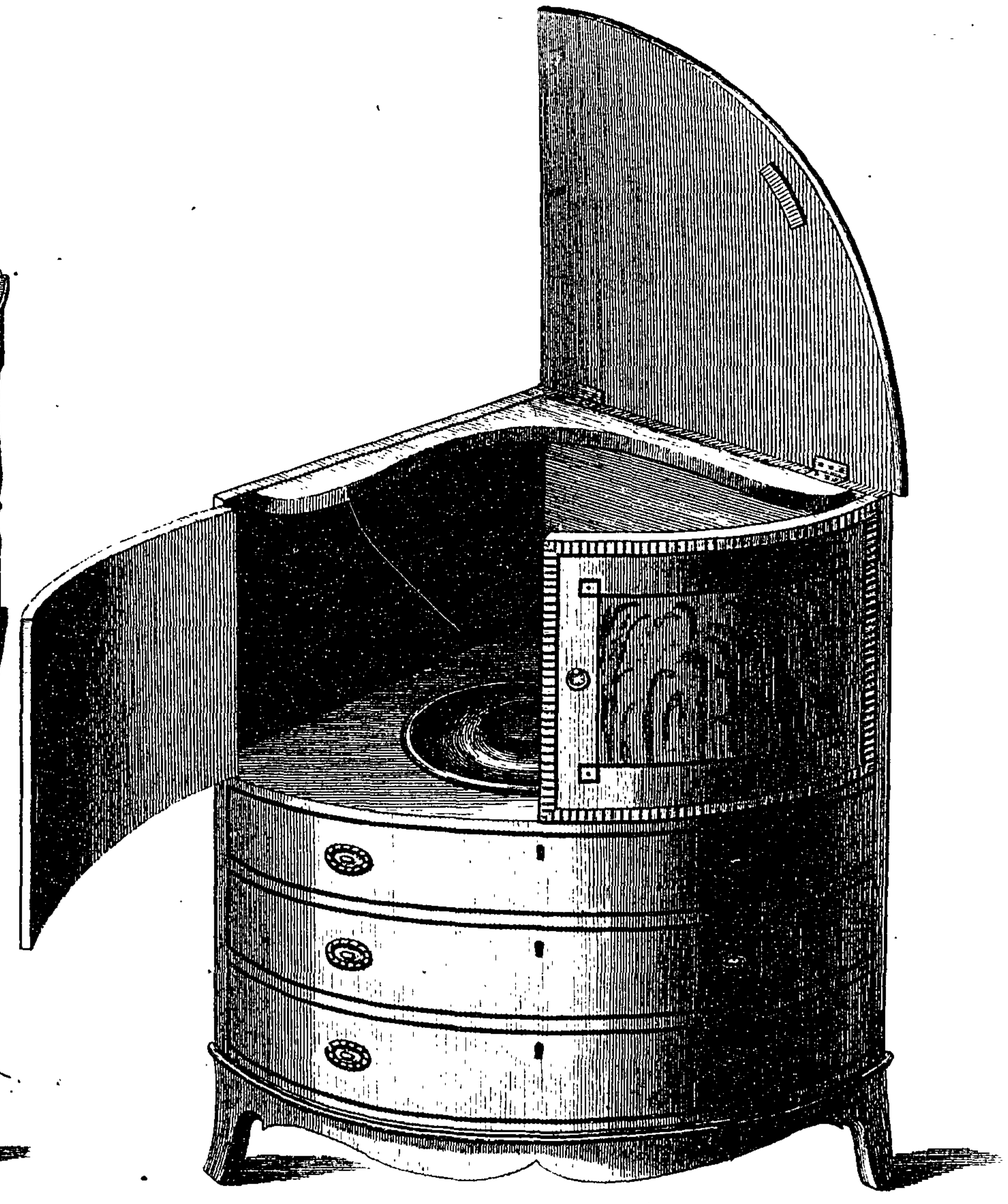
The table on the left is intended to anſwer the purpoſe of a waſh-hand ſtand occaſionally. To anſwer this end the top part is framed together of itſelf, and fixed by an iron or ſtrong wooden pin, into the back corner of the lower part, which contains a ſocket, ſo that the top part can be turned to one ſide, as ſhewn in the deſign, or as much further as is neceſſary to clear the hole.

Obſerve alſo, that on the front is worked a groove, in which a pin paſſes that is fixed to the front of the bottom of the upper part, and prevents the top part from turning quite off from the bottom, which would endanger the pin on which the top part turns; it ſhould have caſtors at the brackets, that when the night

CORNER NIGHT TABLES







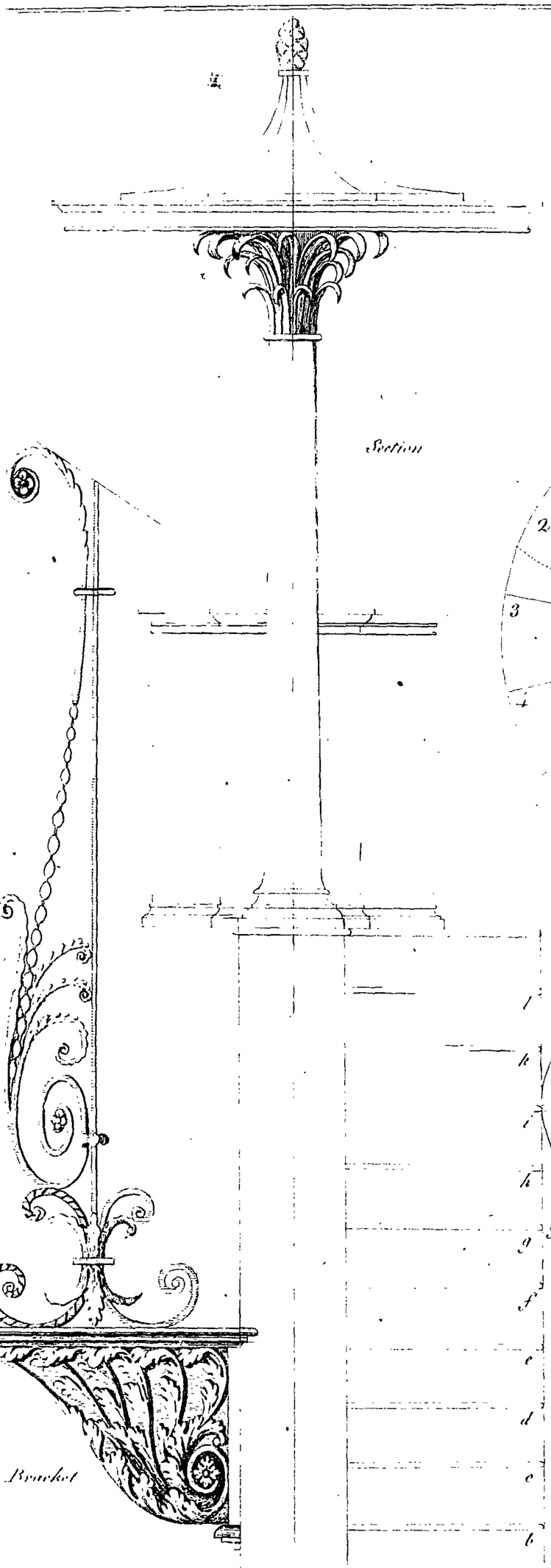
T. Sheraton Del

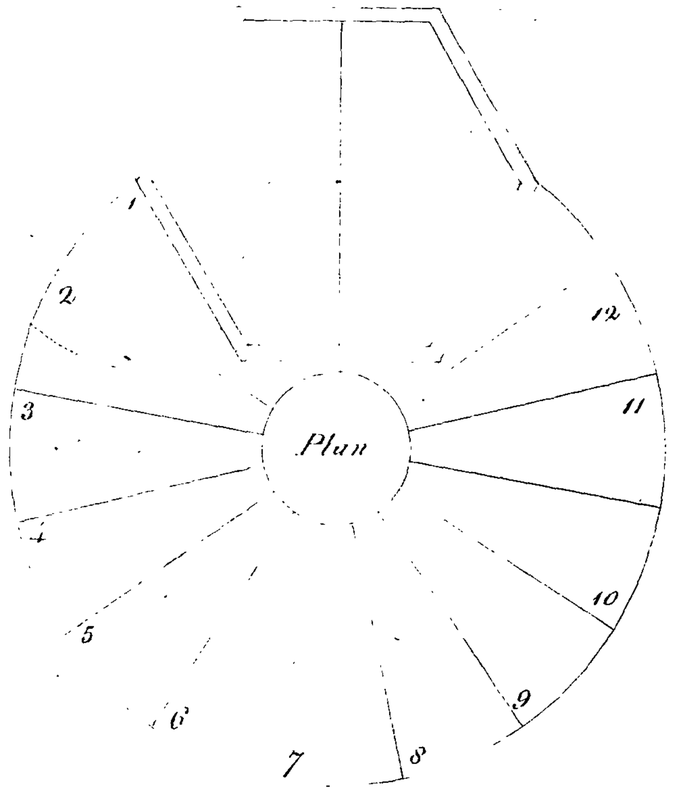
J. Caldwall Direxit

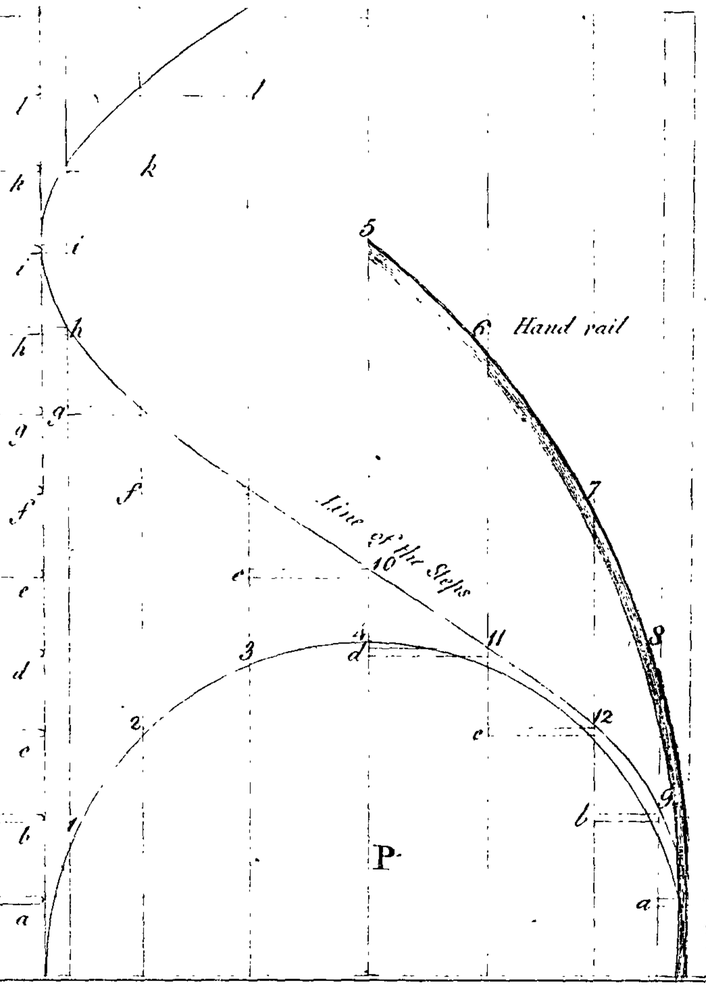
Published as the Act Directs by G. Terry — Augt. 14. 1793.

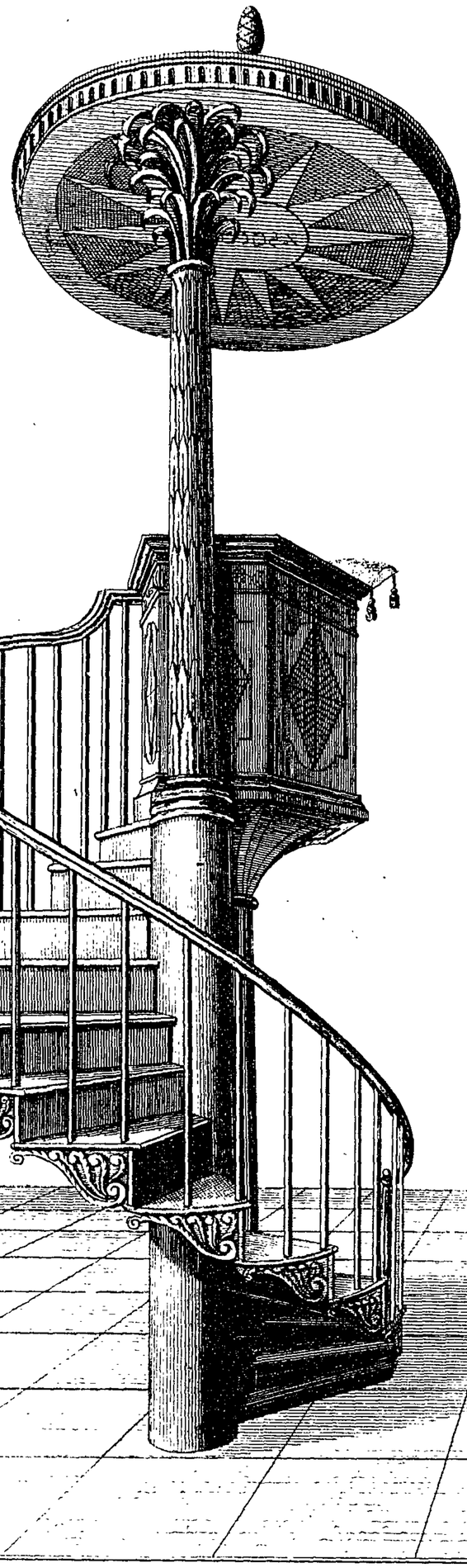
pl 31.

A Pulpit.









T. Sheraton. del.

Published by T. Sheraton. Aug.t 11. 1793.

G. Terry. Sculp.

night table is wanted, it may be drawn a little forward from the corner of the room to give place for turning round the upper part. It ſhould be about thirty-four inches to the top of the baſon ſhelf. The height of the ſeat ſixteen inches and a half, and its other dimenſions are known from the plan. The bottom drawer may be made neat, and drawn out by means of a dovetail groove in the middle of the drawer, and a piece to fit it fixed acroſs the bottom of the carcaſe.

Of the Pulpit. Plate XXIV.

THE deſign of introducing a pulpit into this work was to afford ſome aſſiſtance to the cabinet-maker, who in the country is generally employed on ſuch occaſions. In erecting a pulpit of this kind, three particulars ought principally to be regarded. Firſt, the plan; ſecondly, the manner of conducting the ſteps and hand-rail round the column; and, laſtly, to fix the whole firm, ſo that it may not by ſhaking produce a diſagreeable ſenſation to the preacher.

The plan of this pulpit is a regular hexagon, which to me is the moſt beautiful and compact of any. One of its ſides is occupied by the door, and one for the back of the preacher, another to reſt his arm, and the remaining three for the cuſhion.

The plan of the ſteps is a circle, which is moſt convenient where there is a want of room. The plan ſhould be divided according to the number of ſteps neceſſary for attaining to a proper height, which in this caſe is twelve, as one, two, three, &c. in the plan.

A ſection ſhould then be drawn, and the height of the riſers adjuſted to the number of the ſteps, as in the ſection *a*, *b*, *c*, &c.

Draw the ſemi plan P, and divide the circumference into eight equal parts, as 1, 2, 3, 4, &c. becauſe, that in the plan there are ſo many ſteps contained in its ſemi. Draw from 1, 2, 3, 4, &c. lines perpendicular, and continue them to the uppermoſt ſteps. From *a*, the firſt ſtep, draw a line to *a* on the plan P. Do the ſame from *b* to *b*, *c* to *c*, and ſo of all the others, which will deſcribe the ſteps and riſers as they revolve on a cylinder. The face mould for the hand-rail, when it is cut out of the ſolid, is found as follows. See Plate XXX. Draw a quarter plan as there deſcribed, divide the chord line into any number of equal parts, as 1, 3, 5; from which raiſe perpendiculars to interſect the circumference; draw next the rake or pitch-board of the ſteps at Fig. R. by taking the breadth of the ſtep on the plan, and repeating it 1, 2, 3, 4; then take

the height of four rifers, as from *x* to *y*, and draw the line *y* 4, which line will be the chord for the face mould; therefore take *y* 4, and divide it into fix, as in the plan of the hand-rail. Take the perpendicular heights as 1 2, 3 4, and 5 6, of the plan, and transfer them to the correfpondent perpendiculars on the face mould, which will give points through which the curve is to pafs, to form the face mould, as the figure fhews. Three of thefe lengths will be wanted to complete the hand-rail, including the ramp and knee.

Thefe hand-rails are however fometimes glued up in thin pieces round a cylinder in one entire length, after which a crofs banding is put on the top, and rounded off. In this cafe a cylinder is formed in deal, and the line of the fteps is traced out as defcribed Plate XXIV. which is the guide for the thin mahogany to be bent round. In fixing the fteps, I prefume it will be found the beft method to mortice and dovetail the rifers of each ftep into the pillar: this may be done by making the mortice as much wider than the breadth of the rifer as the dovetail is intended to be in depth, fo that when the rifer is put into the mortice, it may be forced up to its place by a wedge driven in at the under edge of the rifer. By this means it will be impoffible that the fteps fhould work when they are tongued and blocked together. The foffits of the fteps are in the form of an

ogee,

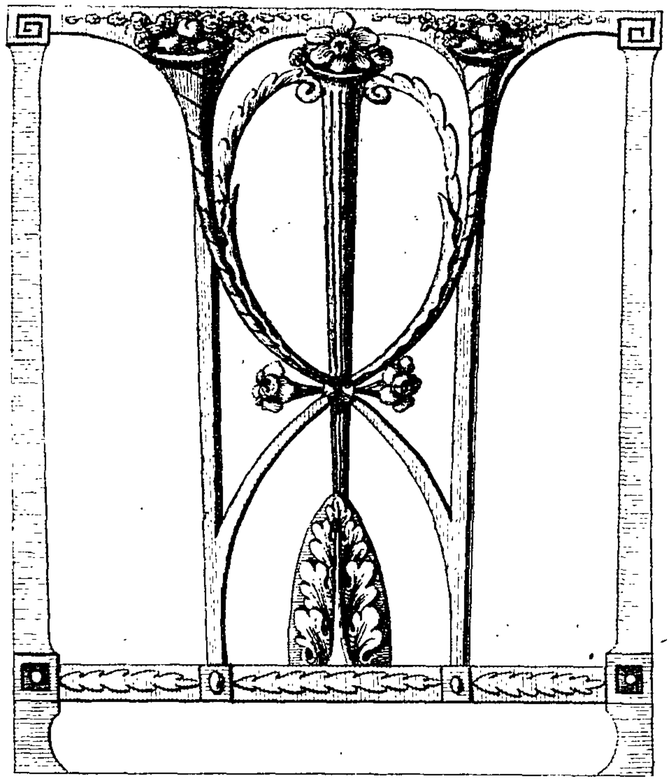
ogee, anſwerable to the brackets, and are fitted up ſeparately afterwards.

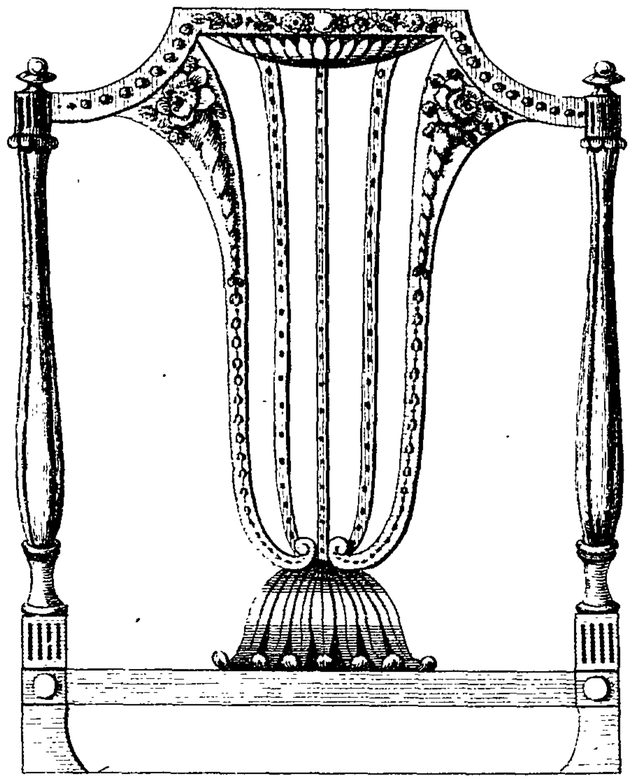
In fixing the pillar it muſt be noticed, that it is firſt tenoned into tranſverſe pieces of oak timber, whieh are ſunk a good depth into the ground, ſo that when the clay is beat in ſolidly about the pillar it cannot work; yet it is eaſy to conceive, that in the pulpit it will be liable to ſpring when the preacher is in it; to prevent which I have introduced a light ſmall column, ſituated in the center of the pulpit, and connected with it by a cove, on which the pulpit reſts. The ſound board is made as light as poſſible, which finiſhes in an octave cove at the top, and is fixed to the pillar by a ſtrong ſcrew and nut, together with a tenon, which is ſunk into the ſound board. The banniſters of the hand-rail may be ſtraight bars of braſs, made very light, dovetailed into the ends of the ſteps, and let into a plate of thin iron at top, which is ſcrewed to the under ſide of the hand-rail.

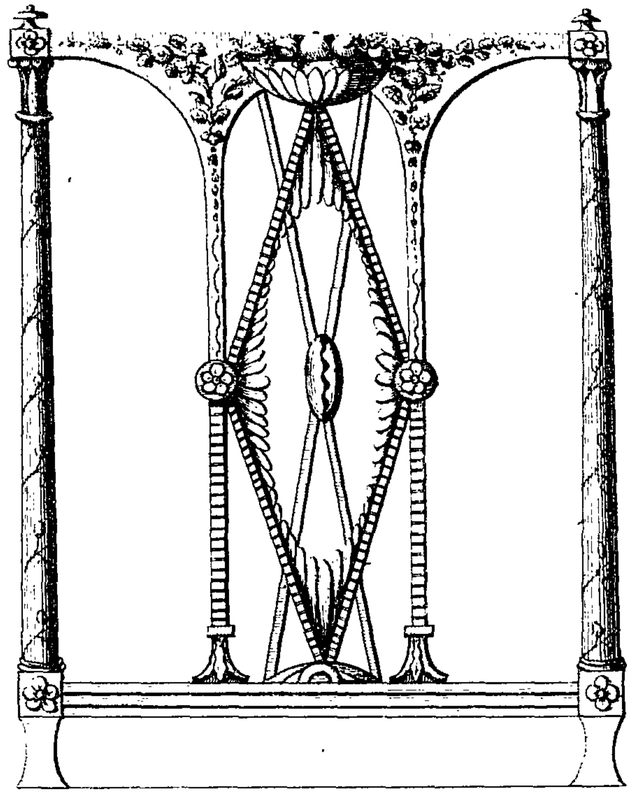
Obſerve, that on the left ſide of the plate is a ſcale of feet and inches, from which the various meaſurements may be taken.

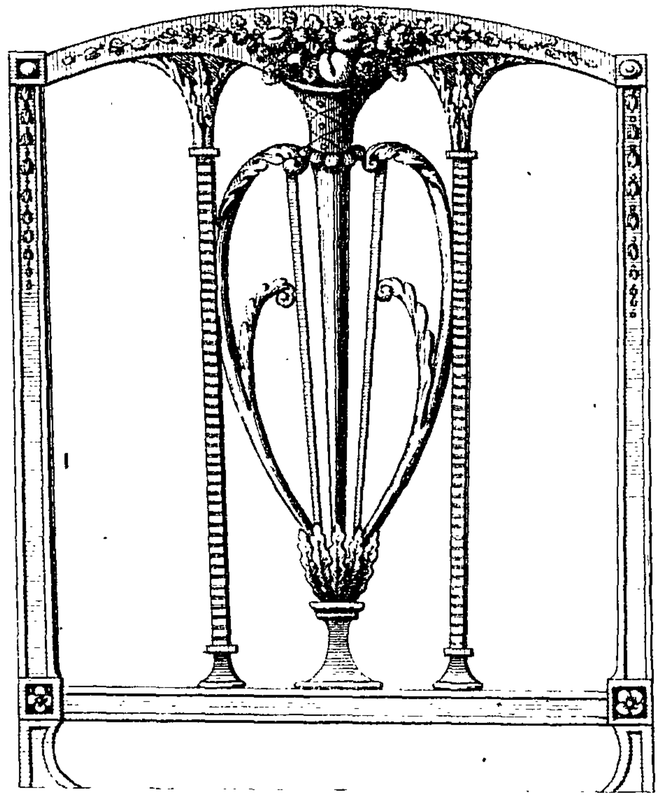
N. B. Plates 25 and 27, 28 and 29, require no explanations; they are therefore omitted.

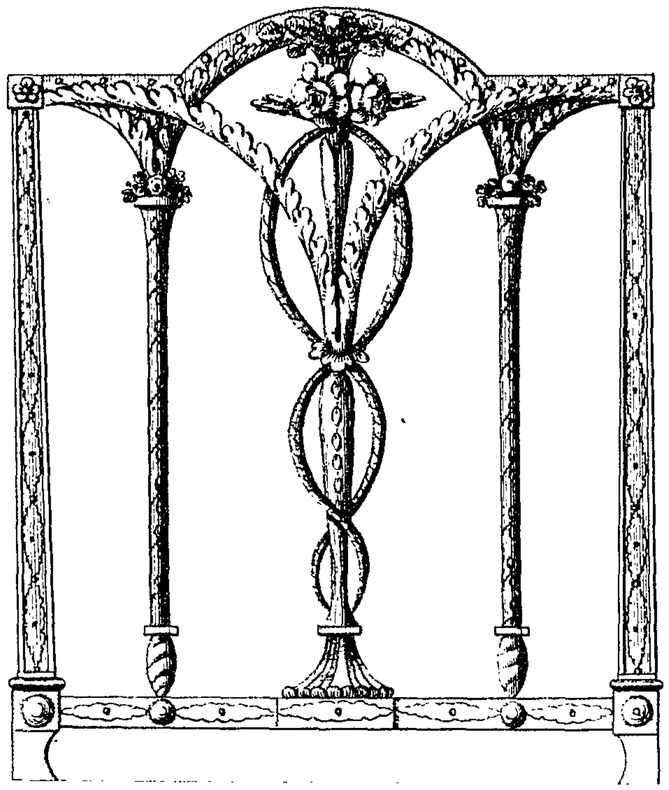
Of

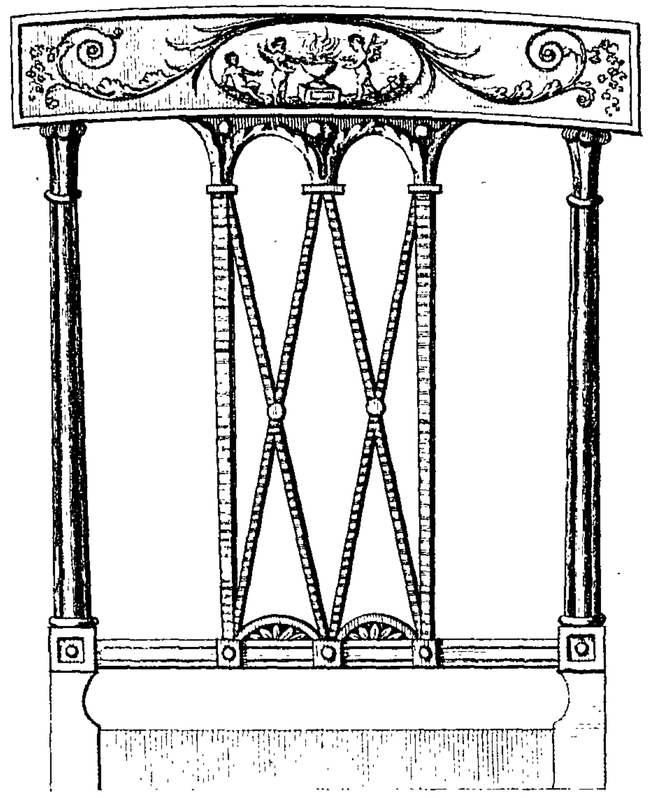












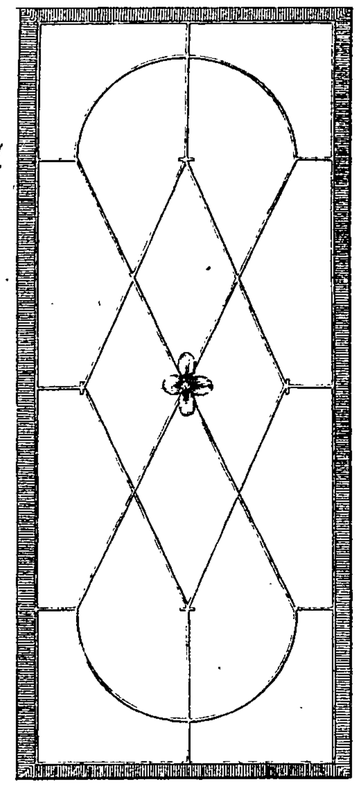
T. Sheraton. del.

G. Terry. Sc.

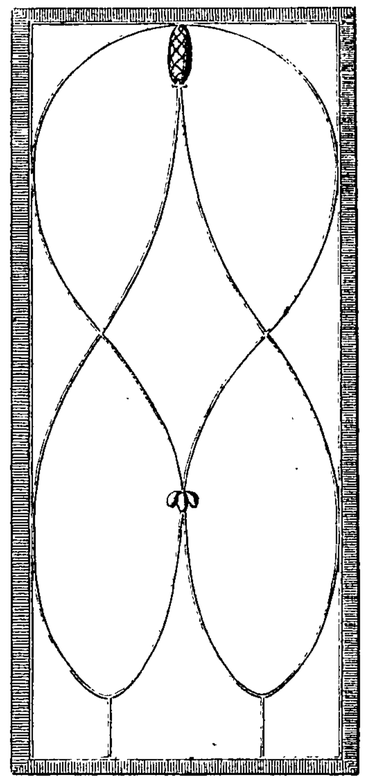
Published by T. Sheraton Sept. 1. 1793.

Doors for Bookcases

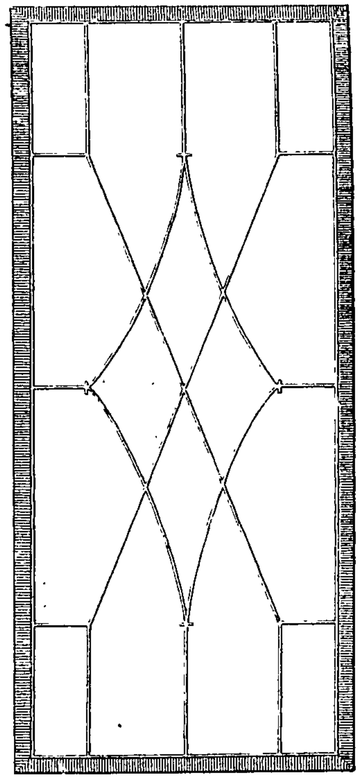
No. 1.



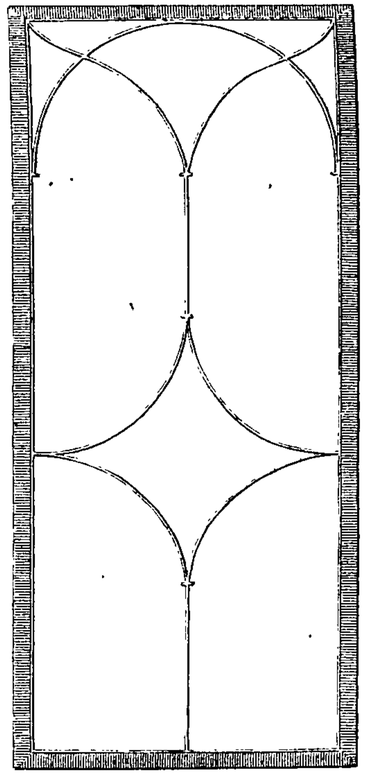
No. 2.



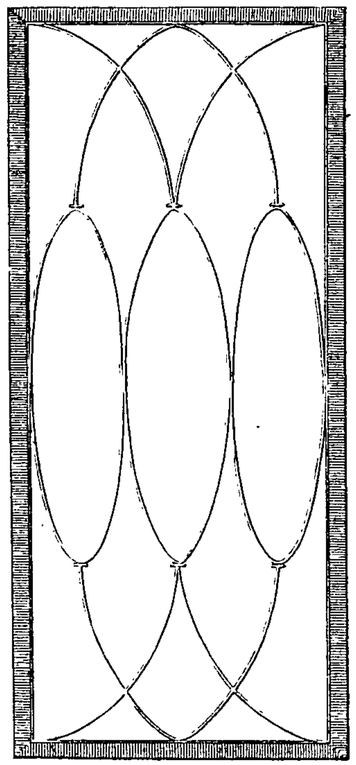
No. 3.



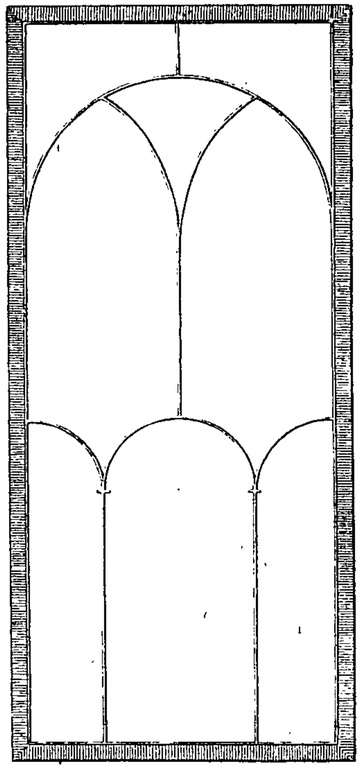
No. 4.



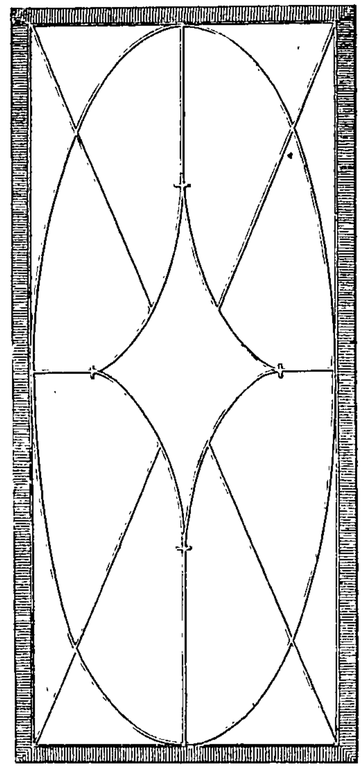
No. 5.



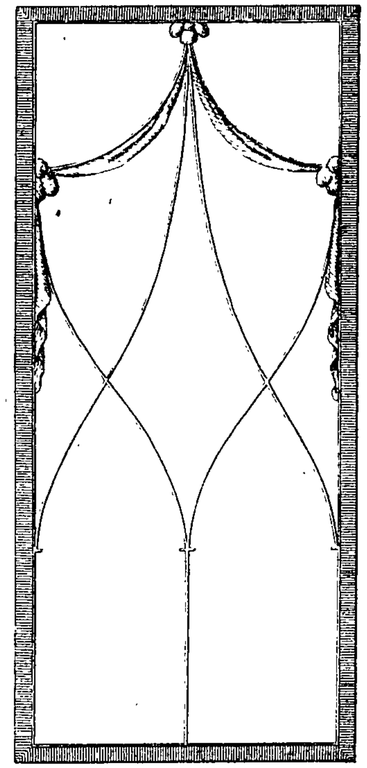
No. 6.



No. 7.



No. 8.



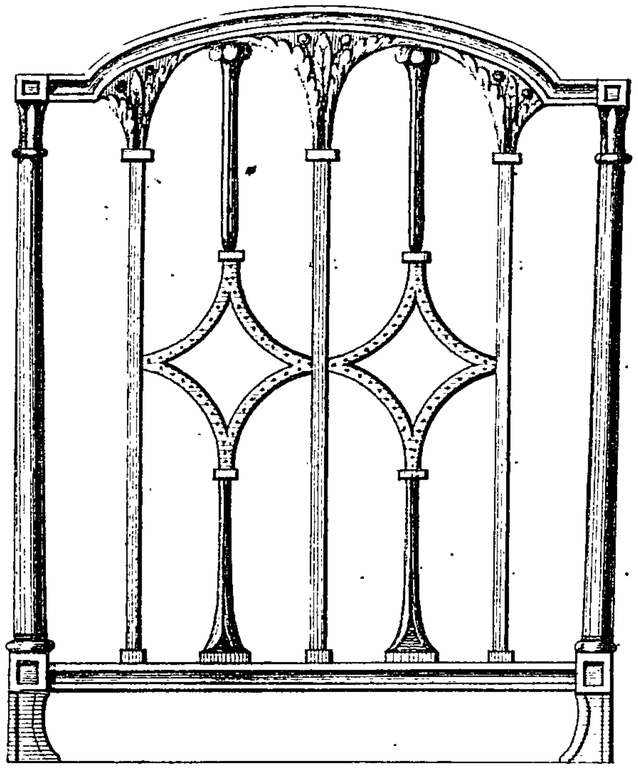
T. Sheraton Del.

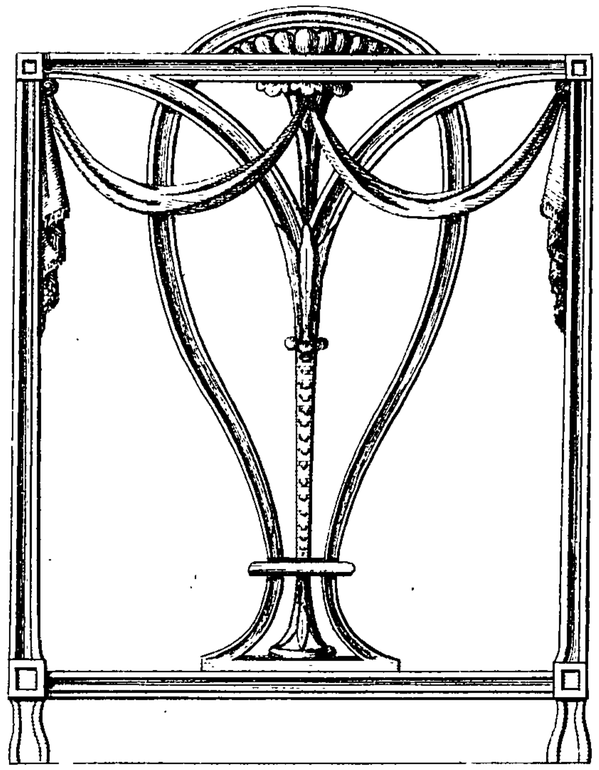
J. Caldwall Direxit

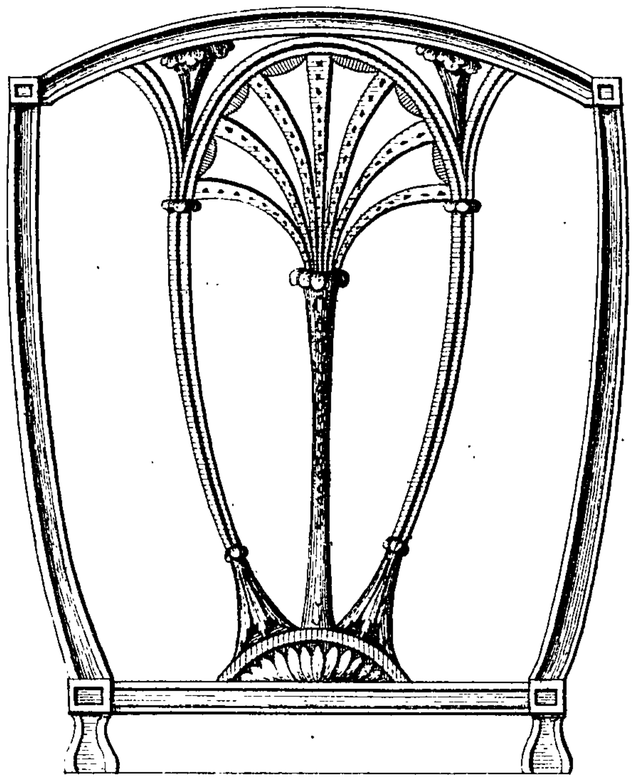
Published as the Act Directs by T. Sheraton. Sept.r 1793.

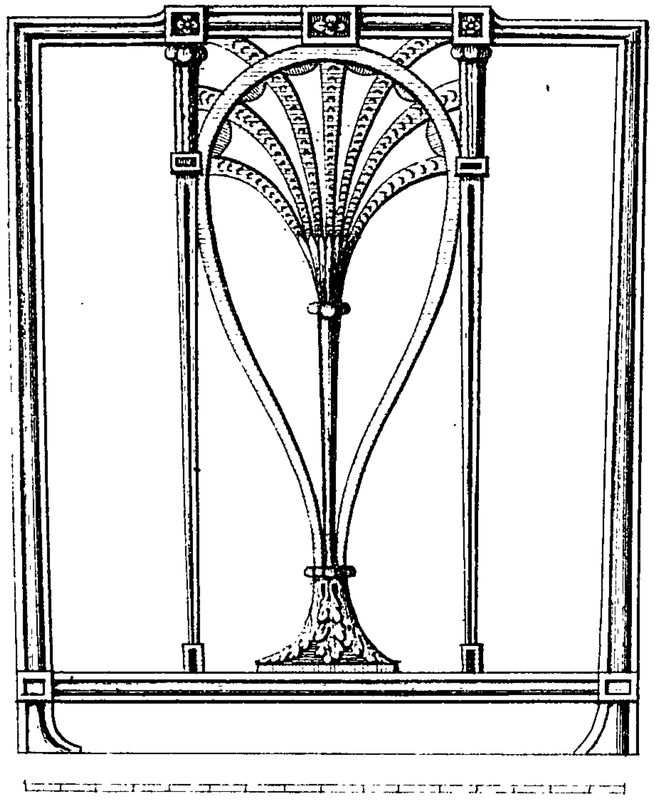
BACKS for PARLOUR CHAIRS

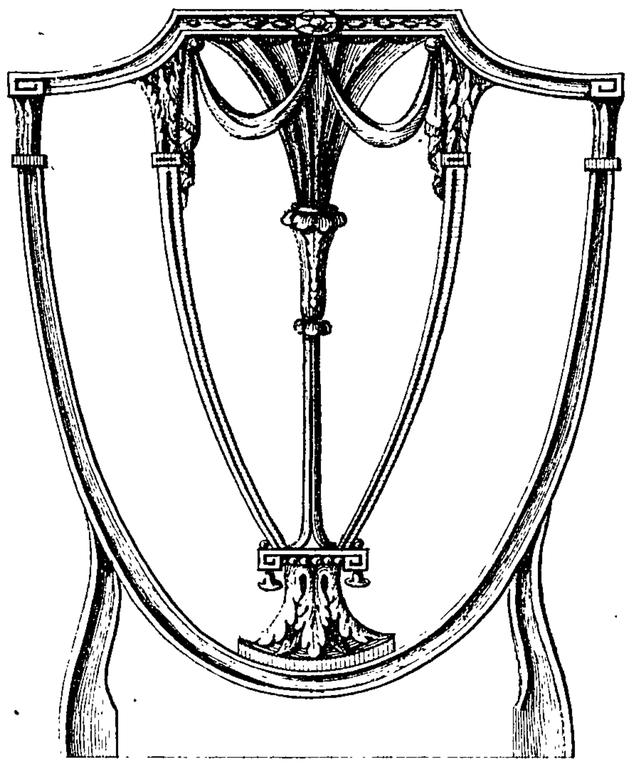
pl. 28.

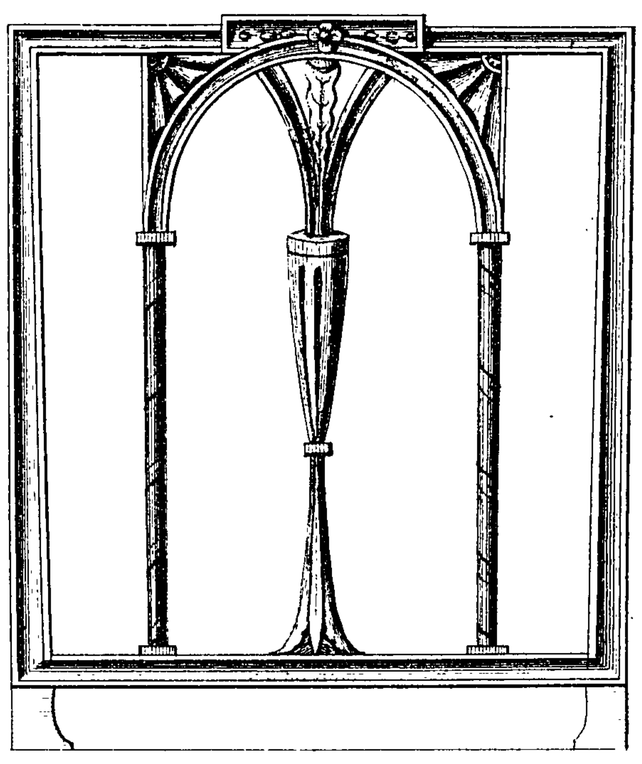












T. Sheraton. del.

Published by T. Sheraton, Oct. 27. 1793.

G Terry. Sculp.

CLOCKCASES



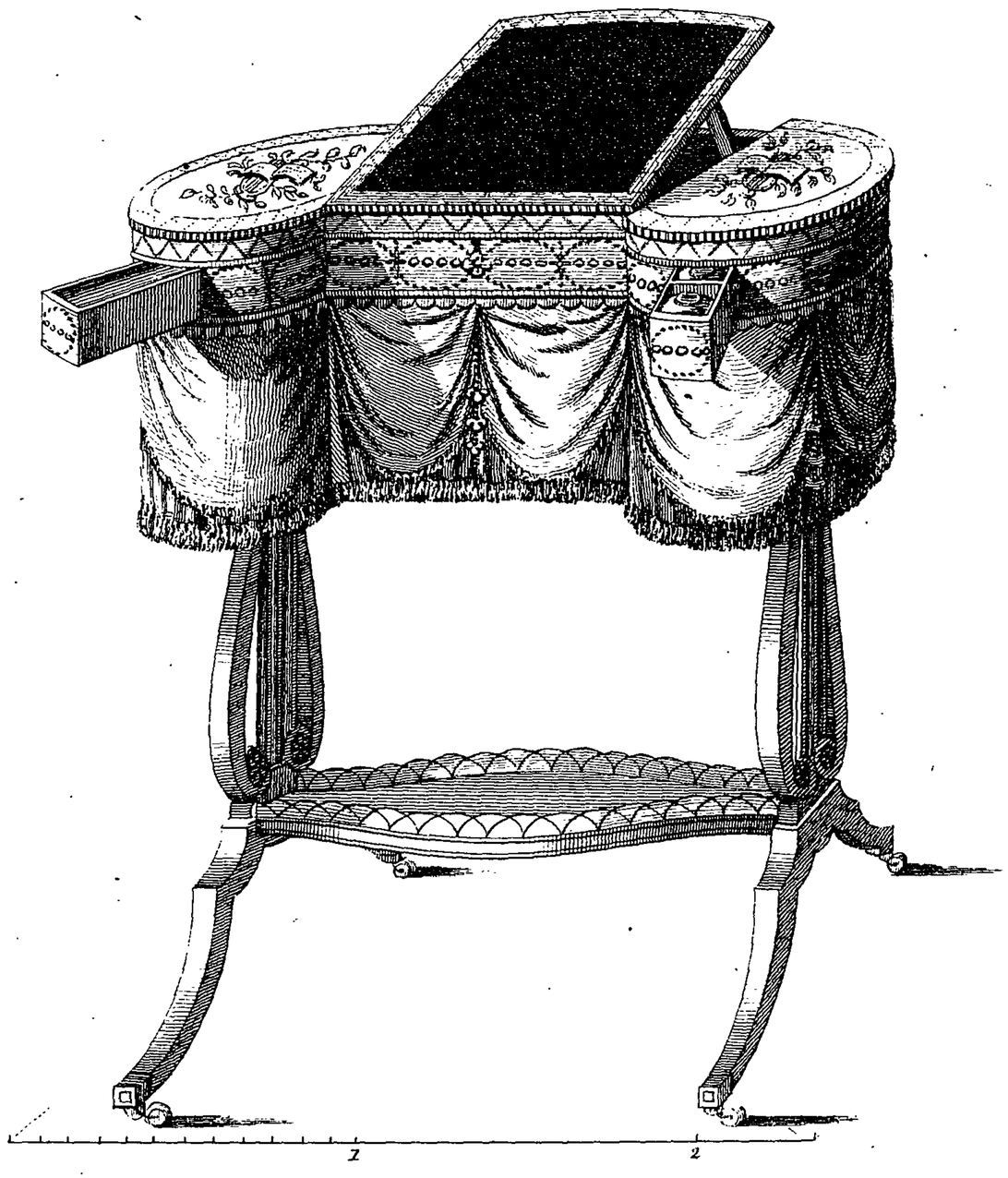


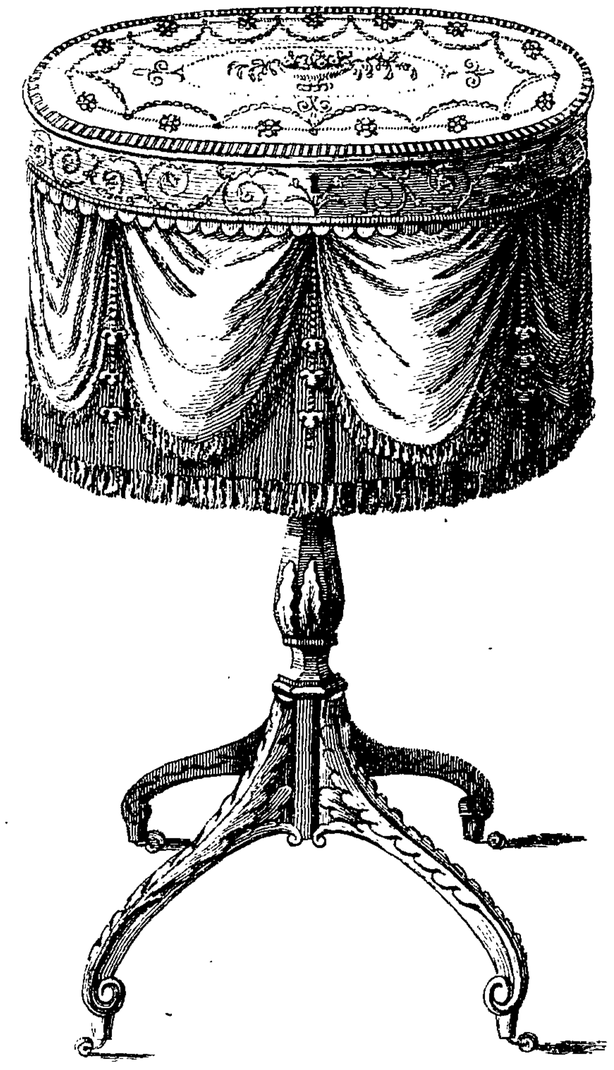
T. Sheraton. Del.

J. Caldwall Direct.

Published as the Act Directs by T. Sheraton. Oct.r 24. 1793.

Ladies Work Tables.



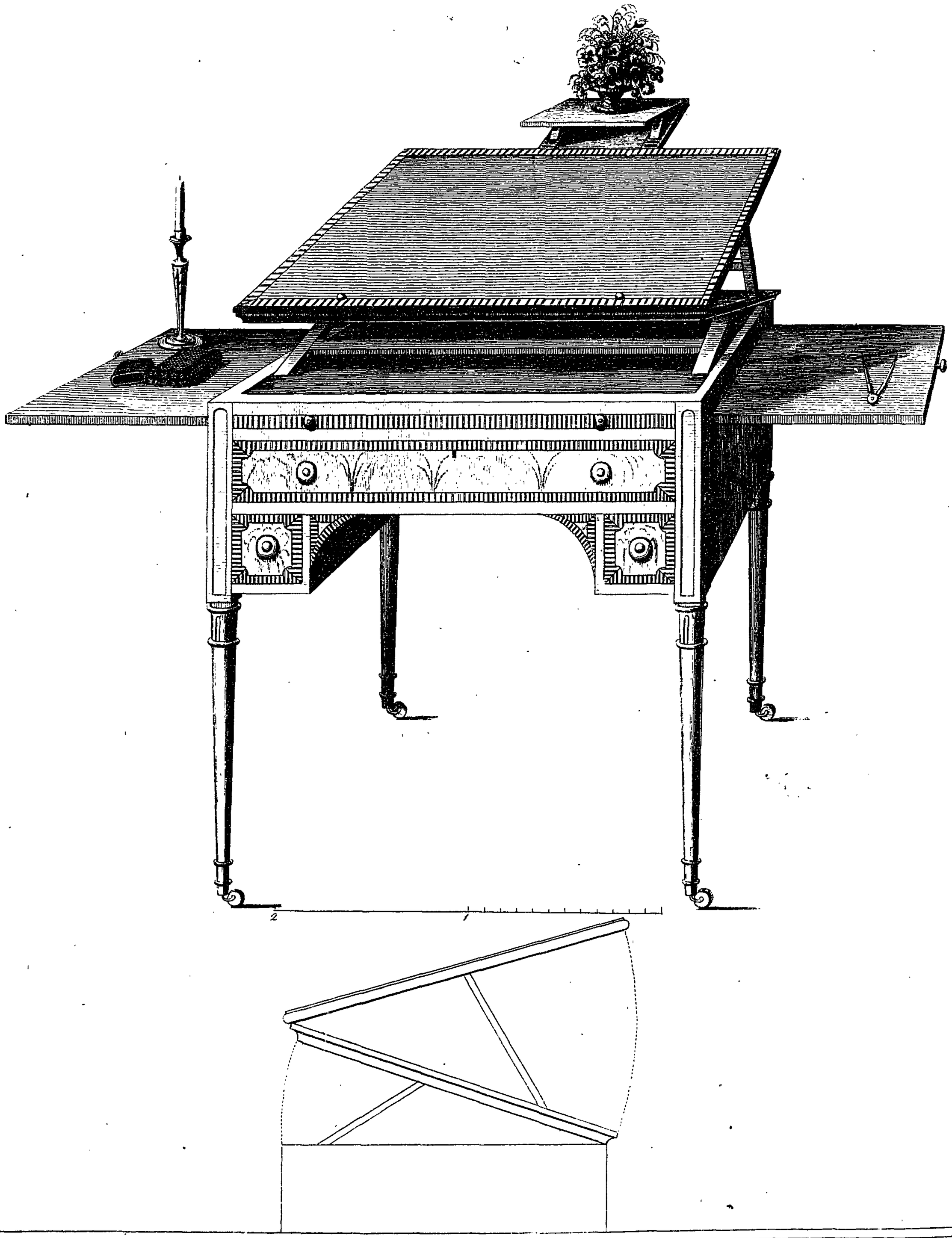


T. Sheraton delin.

Published as the Act directs, by T. Sheraton Sept.r 1. 1793.

I. Hinchliffe Sculp.

A Drawing Table



T. Sheraton Del.

J. Caldwall Direxit

Published as the Act Directs by G. Terry — Oct. 5. 1793.

Of the Ladies' Work Tables. Plate XXVI.

THE table on the left is intended to afford conveniences for writing, by having a part of the top hinged in front to rife up. This rifing top when it is let down locks into the frame, and fecures the bag where the work is. The ftandards on which the table frame refts have tranfverfe pieces tenoned on, which fcrew to the under fide of the frame. The drapery which hides the work-bag is tacked to a rabbet at the under edge of the frame all round.

The defign on the right is fimply a work table; the upper frame, to which the top is hinged, is about two inches broad, made feparate. The pillar is fixed to the bottom of the bag, which is a round frame made of wainfcot, with a ftretcher acrofs each way, for the purpofe of fixing the pillar to it, and to ftrengthen the frame. The upper frame, already mentioned, is connected with the lower one by fmall upright pieces tenoned in, after which the bag is formed of filk, and tacked to each frame, and ornamented on the outfide with drapery.

Of the Drawing Table. Plate XXX.

THIS table will be found highly ufeful to fuch as draw, it being defigned from my own experience of what is neceffary

for thoſe who practiſe this art. The top of this table is made to riſe by a double horſe, that the deſigner may ſtand if he pleaſe, or he may ſit, and have the top raiſed to any direction. As it is ſometimes neceſſary to copy from models or flower-pots, &c. a ſmall flap is made to draw out of the top, which may be raiſed by a little horſe to ſuit any direction that the top may be in, ſo that the model or flower-pot may ſtand level. The ſliders at each end are neceſſary for the inſtruments of drawing, and for a light to ſtand on. The long drawer holds paper, ſquare and board, and thoſe drawers which form the knee hole are fitted up for colours.

Of the Drawing Room. Plate XXXI. and XXXII.

WITH reſpect to the ſection, it is only neceſſary to obſerve, that the pier table under the glaſs is richly ornamented in gold. The top is marble, and alſo the ſhelf at each end; the back of it is compoſed of three pannels of glaſs, the Chineſe figure ſitting on a cuſhion is metal and painted. The candle branches are gilt metal, and the pannels are painted in the ſtyle of the Chineſe; the whole producing a brilliant effect.

The view, Plate XXXII. contains an otomon, or long ſeat, extending the whole width of the room, and returning at each

Fig. A.

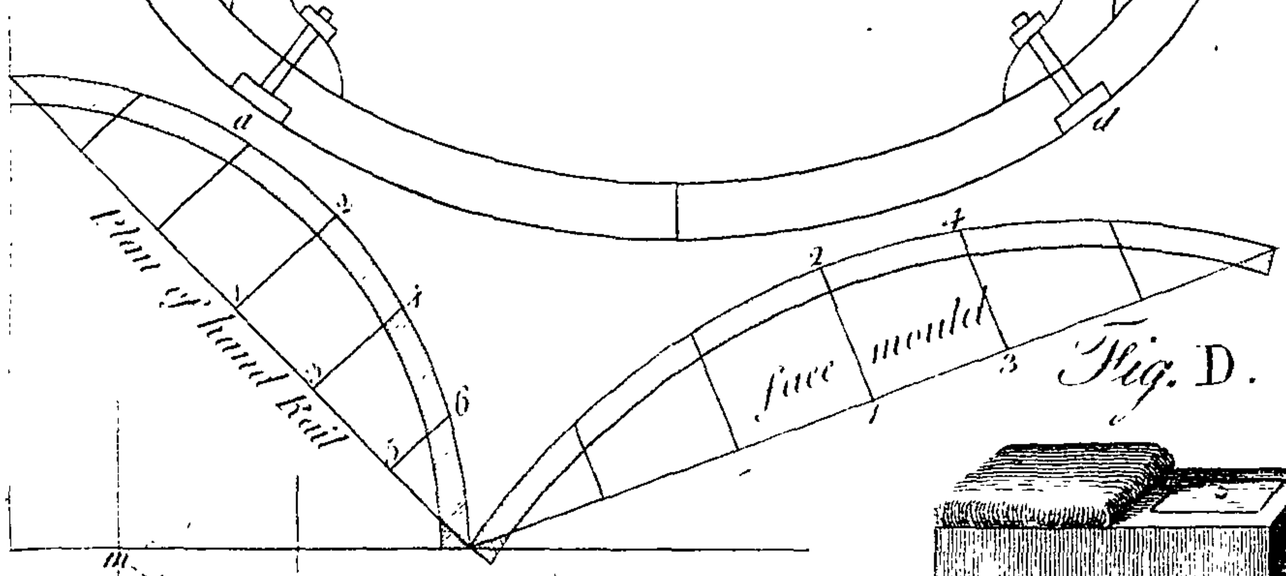


Fig. D.

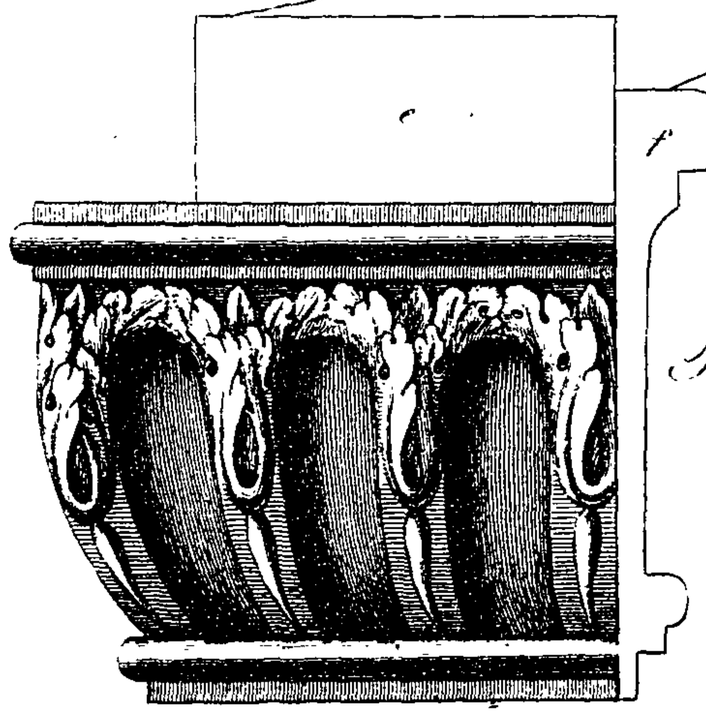
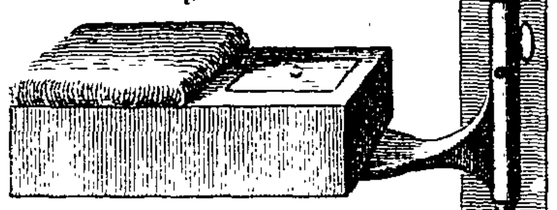


Fig. B.



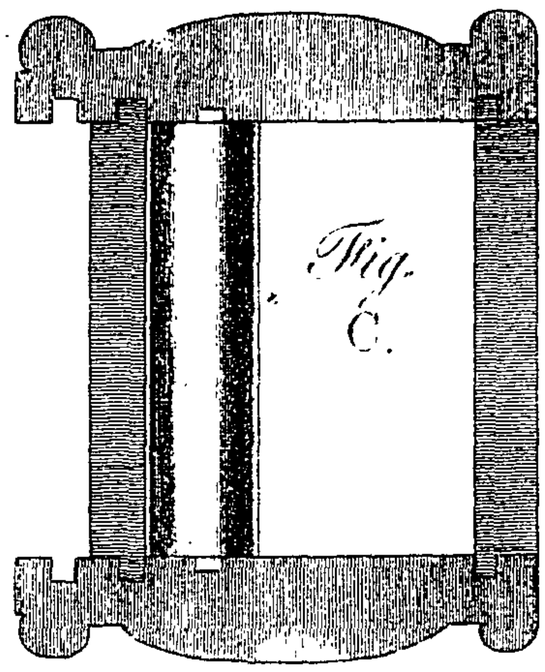
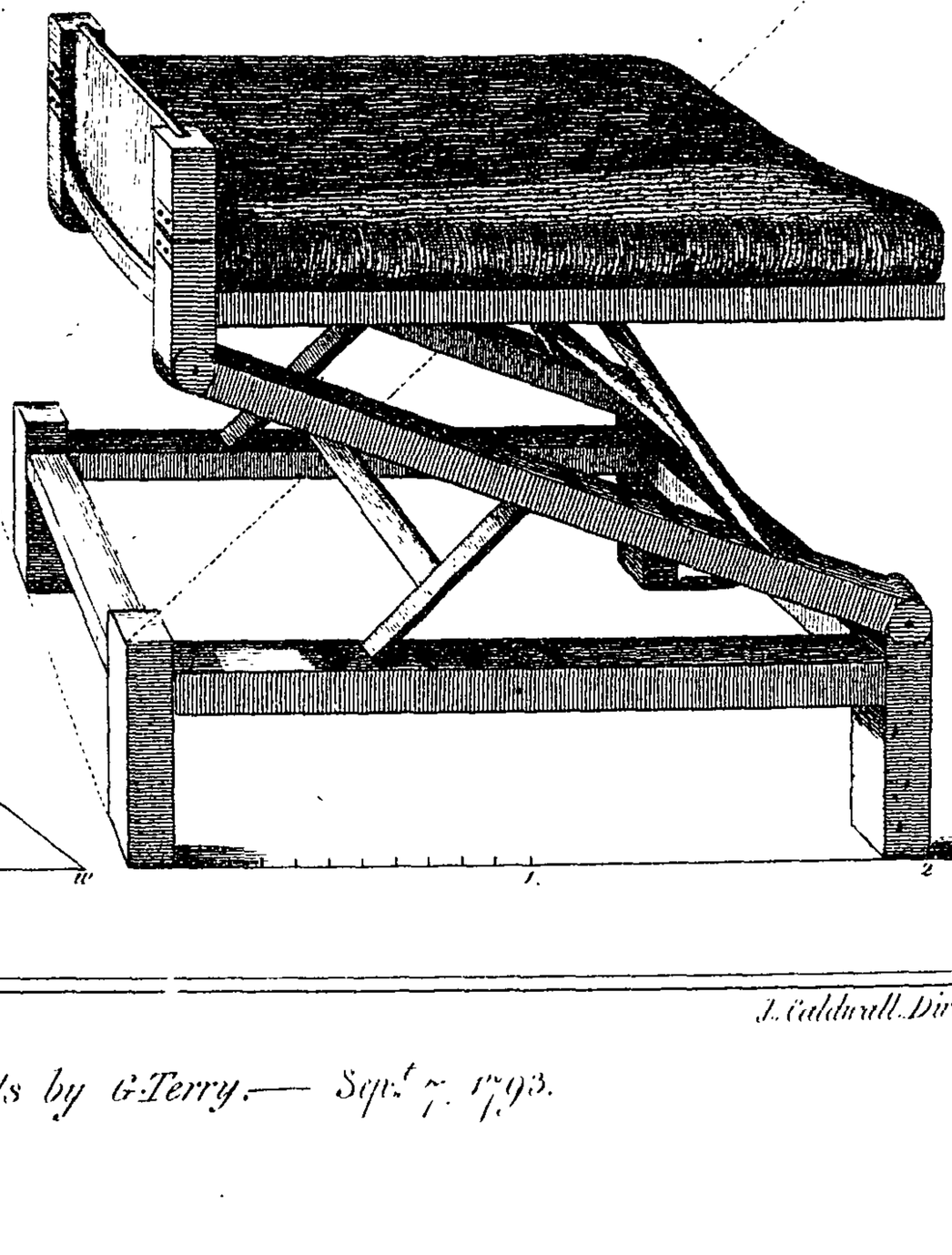


Fig. C.

Fig. K.

A GOUTY STOOL



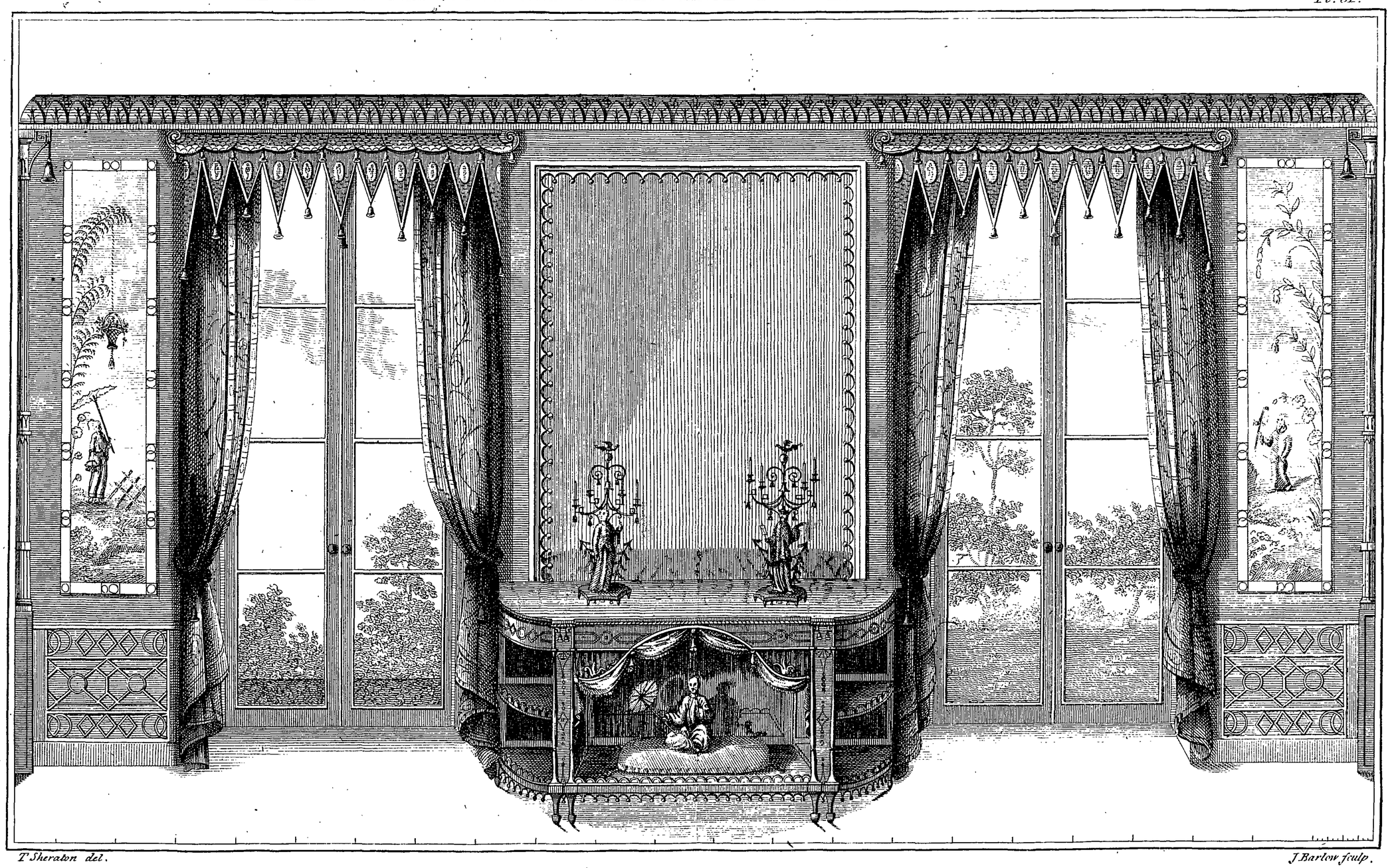
T. Sheraton Del.

J. Caldwall Direxit.

Published as the Act Directs by G. Terry.— Sept.r 7. 1793.

A View of the South End of The Prince of Wales's Chinese Drawing Room.

Pl. 31.

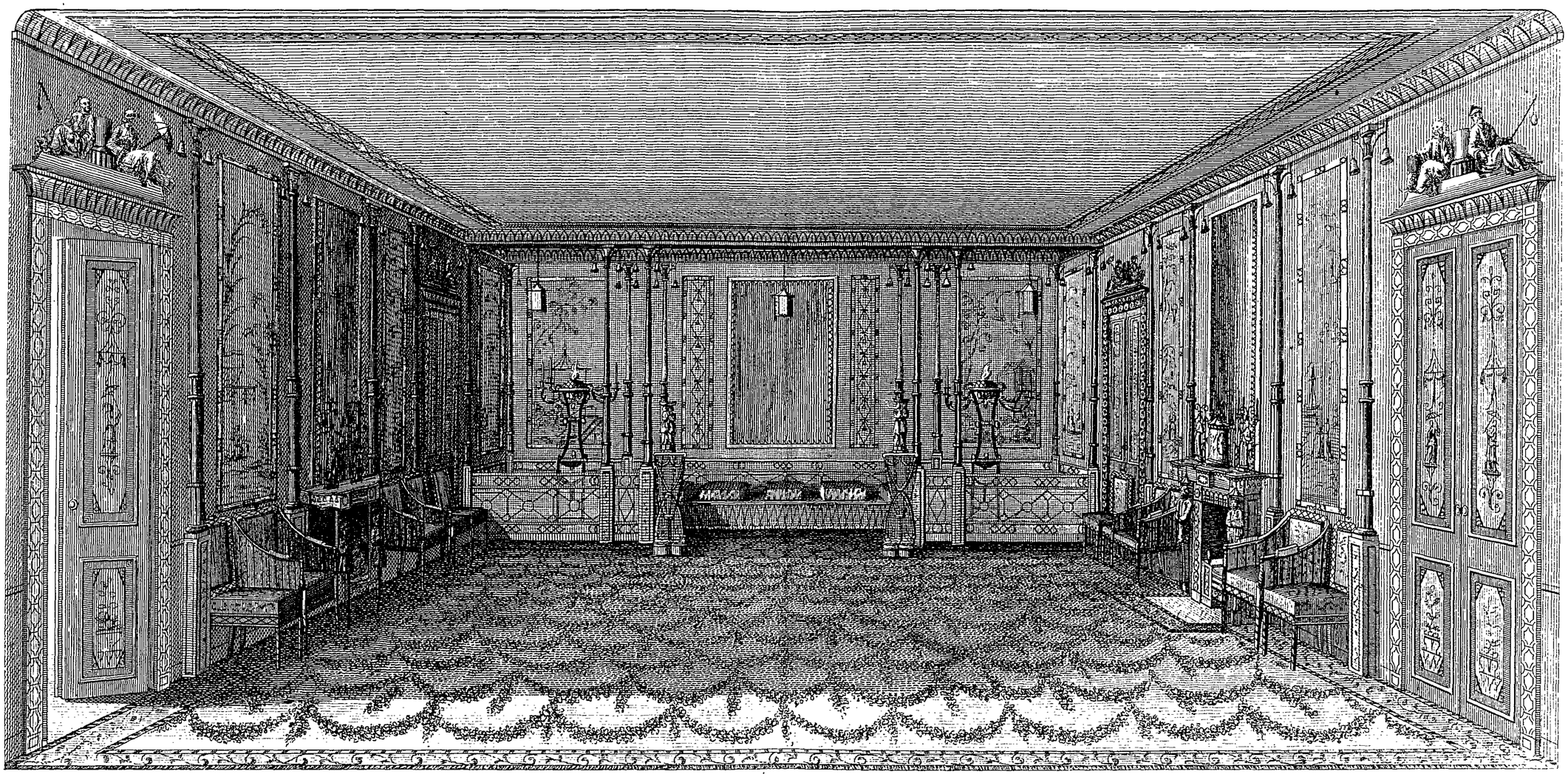


T. Sheraton del.

J. Barlow sculp.

Published as the Act directs, by T. Sheraton Oct.r 6.th 1793.

A View of the Prince of Wales's Chinese Drawing Room.



T. Sheraton delin.

J. Barlow sculp.

Published as the Act directs, by T. Sheraton Nov.r 1.st 1793.

end about five feet. The Chineſe columns are on the front of this ſeat, and mark out its boundaries. The upholſtery work is very richly executed in figured ſatin, with extremely rich borders, all worked to ſuit the ſtyle of the room. Within this otomon are two grand tripod candle-ſtands, with heating urns at the top, that the ſeat may be kept in a proper temperature in cold weather. On the front of the otomon before the columns are two cenſers containing perfumes, by which an agreeable ſmell may be diffuſed to every part of the room, preventing that of a contrary nature, which is the conſequence of lighting a number of candles.

The chimney-piece is rich, adorned with a valuable time-piece, and two lights ſupported by two Chineſe figures; on each ſide of the fire-place is alſo a Chineſe figure, anſwerable to thoſe which ſupport a table on the oppoſite ſide, under which is ſeated a Chineſe figure. Over each table, the fire-place, and in the center of the otomon, is a glaſs, which by their reflections greatly enliven the whole. The ſubjects painted on the pannels of each wall are Chineſe views, and little ſcenes. The carpet is worked in one entire piece with a border round it, and the whole in effect, though it may appear extravagant to a vulgar eye, is but ſuitable to the dignity of the proprietor.

N. B. In

N. B. In addition to what has been ſaid on perſpective in the firſt work, I would here annex a few remarks on taking the geometrical or original meaſurements of a piece of furniture drawn in perſpective, ſuppoſed to be deſtitute of any lines or ſcales.

In Plate XXX. is therefore inſerted a view of a bookcaſe, figure K, which the reader muſt imagine to be without any lines except thoſe which form the outline of the piece. It muſt, however, be premiſed, that a workman be acquainted with the proportion of ſome one or other of its parts, without which nothing can be done or aſcertained. He muſt alſo be acquainted with ſo much of perſpective as to know that a line paſſing through the diagonal of any ſquare, if produced, cuts the horizontal line in the point of diſtance. Theſe being known, proceed firſt to find the horizontal or vaniſhing line by producing *c d*, the top of, and *f r*, the bottom of the under part, till they meet in a point, as at *s*, which will be the point of ſight; through *s* draw a line parallel to the front of the bookcaſe, which will be the horizontal line ſought for. From the point of ſight draw at random lines forward from *p*, and *e*, or any other point that may be neceſſary. Next find out the point of diſtance, without which the depth of the ends cannot be known: in order to this, the workman muſt recollect that the brackets are always

always as long at the ends as on the front, and that therefore they form a ſquare block; wherefore take 4 *f*, and place it from *f* to *g*, and from *g* to *h*, the end bracket will be the diagonal of a ſquare, whoſe ſide is 4 *f*; produce the line *g h*, which will cut the horizon at D; the diſtance, as the line on the leg of the gouty ſtool, paſſes to the diſtance which is out of the plate. Laſtly; from D draw lines forward through *r* and 10, or any other part, till they cut the front line, as at *t w*, by which will be diſcovered the proportion that the ends bear with the front, and how much the lower part projects before the bookcaſe. Now if there be a ſcale of the front already to the deſign, then the whole can be determined; for by taking the compaſſes extended to a foot, and repeating it on the perpendicular line from *a* to *l*, the height of the doors are known, and by the ſame rule the height of the pediment from *l* to *m*. Then if the ſame compaſs be applied from *f* to *w*, the depth of the lower part, it will be found vaſtly out of proportion with the front, which I have done on purpoſe, to ſhew that by a compariſon of this ſort the errors of a deſign in point of perſpective may be diſcovered. If, however, there be no ſcale to the deſign, then it will be neceſſary to aſſign a certain portion for a foot, as near as we can judge, by conſidering the common length of a bracket, from *f* to 4, which in general is about four and a half or four inches, which repeated three times, finds a foot, as in this caſe, and then

it appears that the front is four feet long, and better than four feet high, that the doors are five feet nine high, and ſo of the reſt. But if there be no bracket, any other part may be taken whoſe meaſure is known, as the partition of a drawer, which is generally ſeven eighths thick, the height of a ſlider, about thirty-two inches, or the depth of a ſecretary drawer, about ten inches. The uſefulneſs of this method is not confined to pieces of furniture, but may be applied to any kind of regular perſpective.

A Deſcription of the Additional New Plates in the Second Edition of the Cabinet-Maker and Upholſterer's Drawing Book.

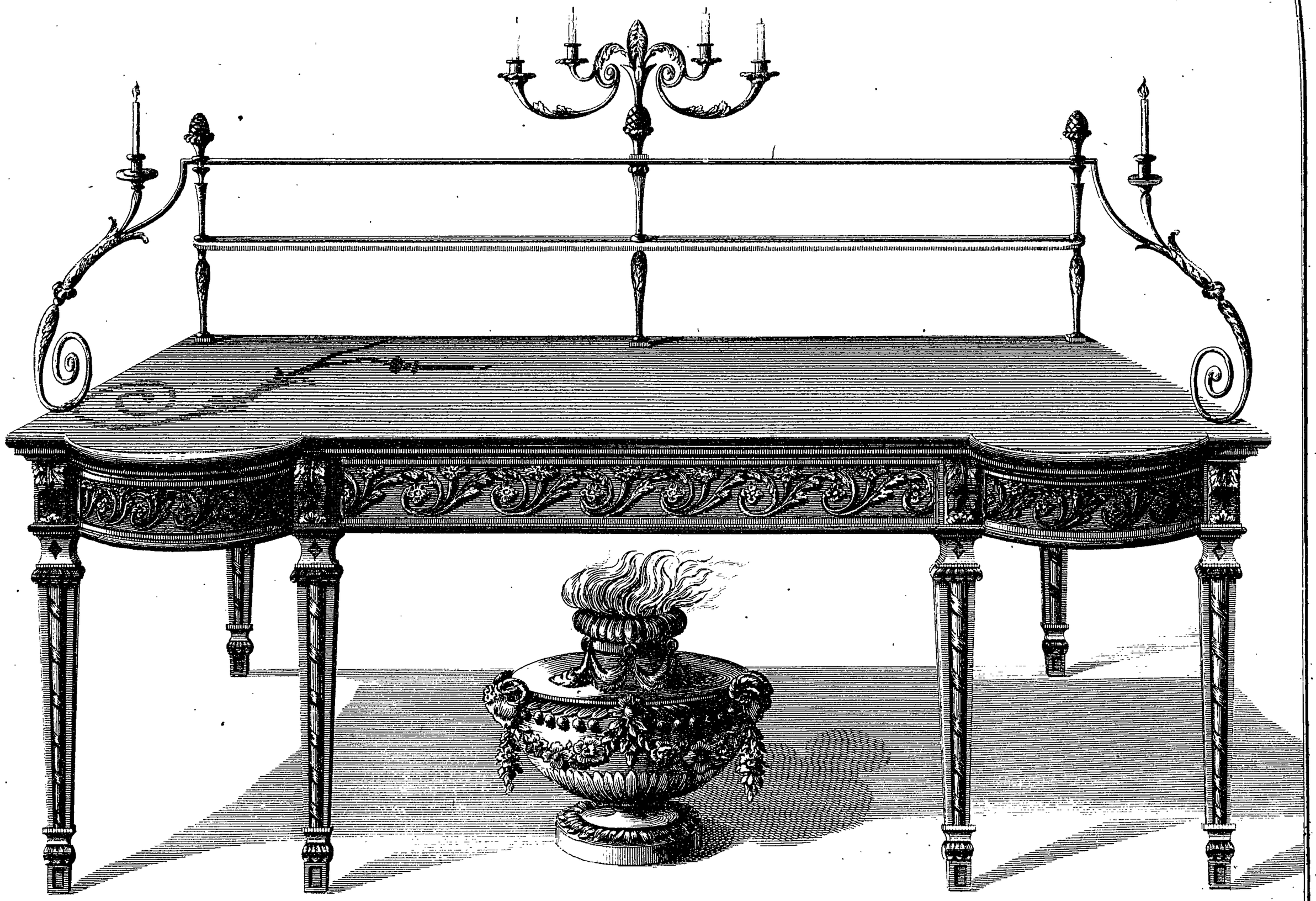
Plate XXXI. *A Sideboard.*

THIS deſign is intended to have a braſs rod behind, containing lights in the center and at each end.

There is alſo a narrow mahogany ſhelf about three inches and an half wide, fixed againſt the middle of the rod at the back; on which ſhelf a channel is worked by a plane, for the purpoſe of keeping up ſmall diſhes placed in the ſpaces between the larger ones which reſt on the ſideboard top.

The frame of this table is richly carved out of the ſolid wood,

A SIDEBOARD.

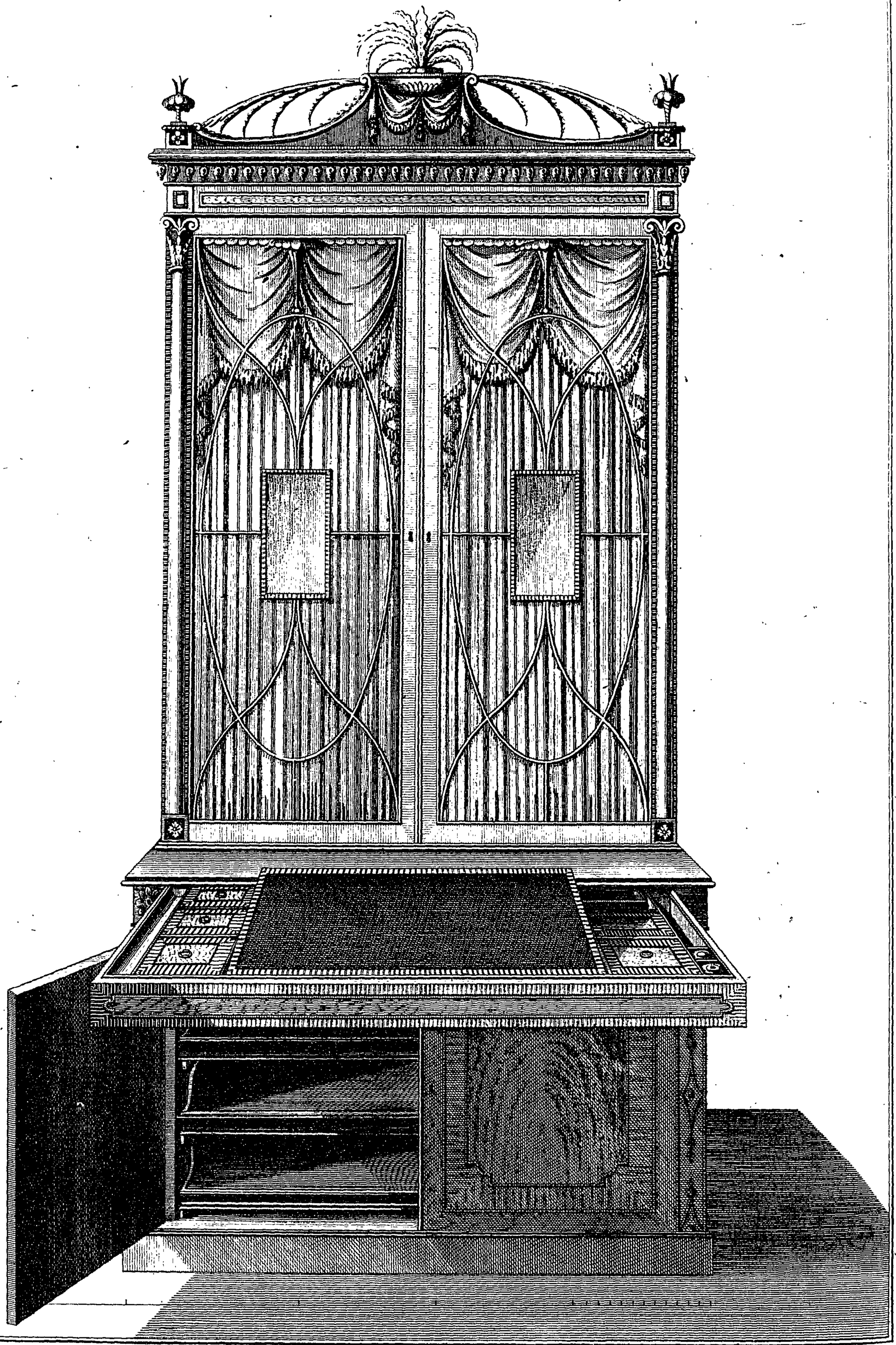


T. Sheraton delin.

Publish'd as the Act directs, by T. Sheraton, May. 29, 1794.

Barlow sculp.

A NEW DESIGN of a BOOKCASE & WRITING DRAWER.



T.Sheraton. del

G.Terry Sculp

Published as the Act directs. by G. Terry. June. 20. 1794.

wood, and the ornament of that part of the legs which croſs the frame, is formed in imitation of a truſs leaf.

The vaſe under the table may be of mahogany, and fitted up in the inſide to hold wine bottles, or it may be conſidered merely as ornamental.

Plate XXXIX. *A Bookcaſe with Writing Drawer.*

THE writing drawer repreſented out, has only the appearance of a frieze when in, it being but one inch and three quarters or two inches deep. This drawer is thrown out by a ſpring fixed on the back framing, and when in, is retained by a ſpring thumb-catch, which ſtrikes into a plate fixed on the ſide of the drawer. The place where the thumb preſſes is the center of the patera at each end of the drawer, as ſhewn in the deſign, which relieves the ſpring behind, and conſequently the drawer comes forward, ſo much as to afford hold for the hands to draw it entirely out.

The drawer is locked by the door lock below, which is ſo contrived as to ſend the bolt upwards into the under edge of it.

In the lower part are clothes-preſs ſhelves, and the glaſs doors above are intended to have looking-glaſs in the center ſquares.

Laſtly, the drapery is of green ſilk, fixed firſt to the curtain, and then both are pinned on to the inſide of the door-framing together.

Plate XLIX. *New Deſigns of Chair-backs.*

LITTE needs to be obſerved reſpecting theſe, as the plate of itſelf ſufficiently expreſſes what they are; if, however, any of theſe be thought too crowded with work, they may be reduced to a ſtate ſufficiently plain without doing the leaſt injury to the outline of the whole, as in the following manner:

No. 1 is intended for painting, but may have the drapery left out under the top rail, by means of ſubſtituting a plain upright bar in the middle.

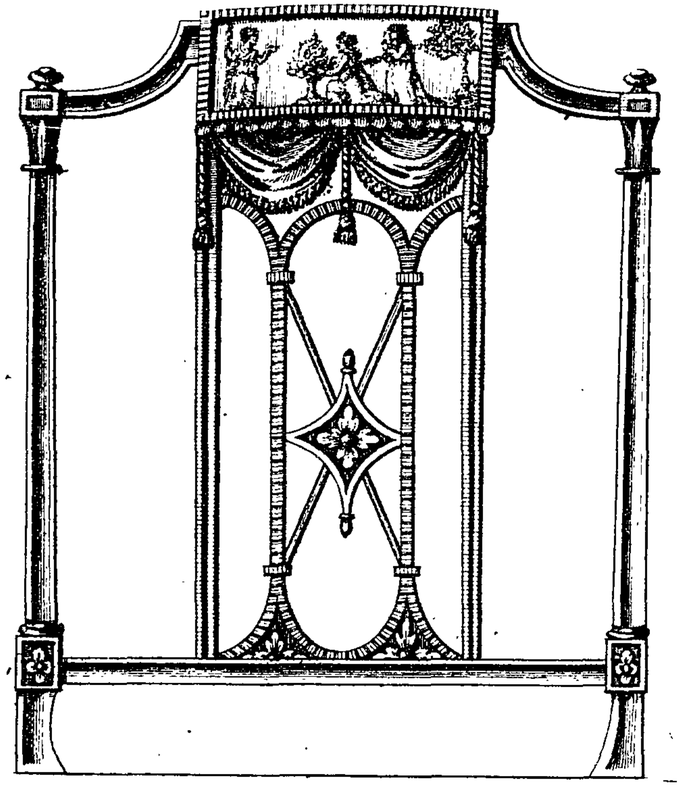
No. 2 may be reduced by taking away the ſide foliage, and making the bottom of the baniſter plain.

No. 3 may be either a drawing-room chair painted, or it may be made a handſome parlour chair, by taking out the top drapery and making the bottom of the baniſter plain; if for a parlour chair, the top rail is intended to be ſtuffed and covered with red or green leather, or it may be entirely of mahogany pannelled out of the ſolid; but if a drawing-room chair, it muſt be ſtuffed and covered to ſuit the ſeat.

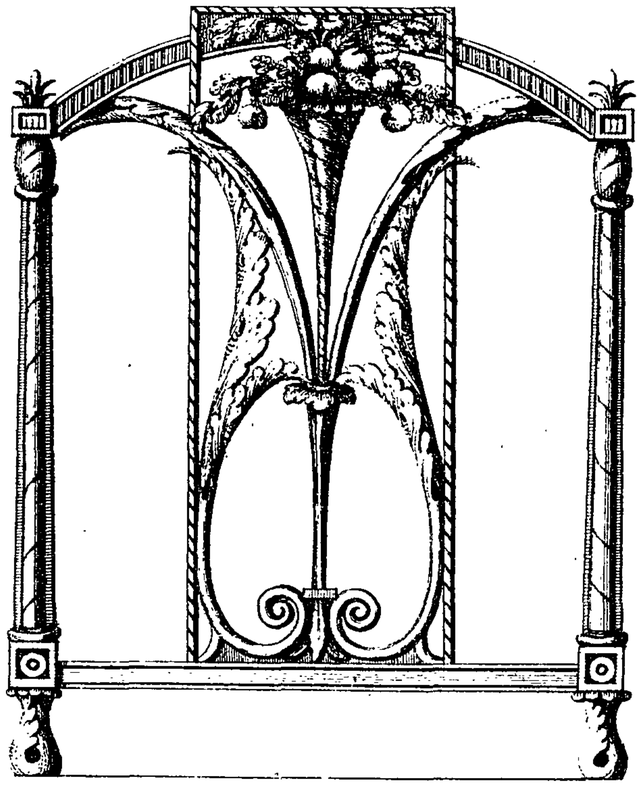
No.

CHAIR BACKS.

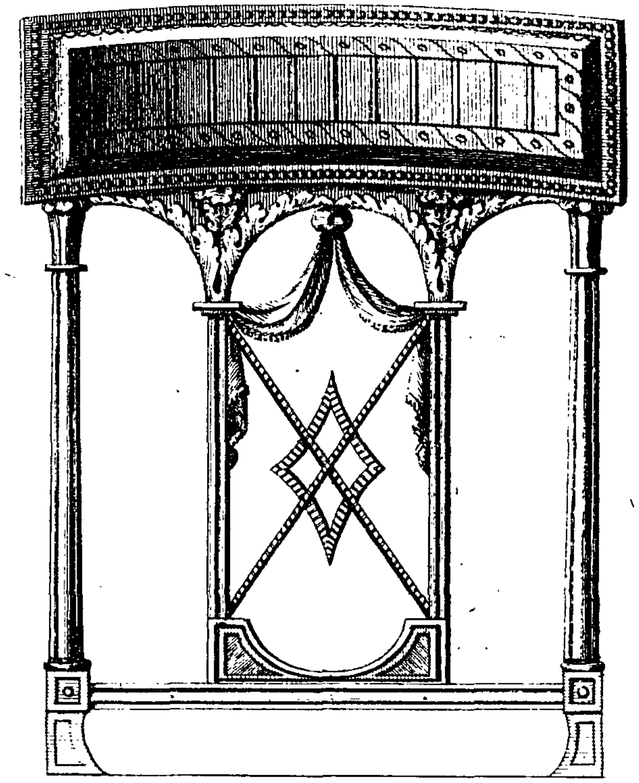
1



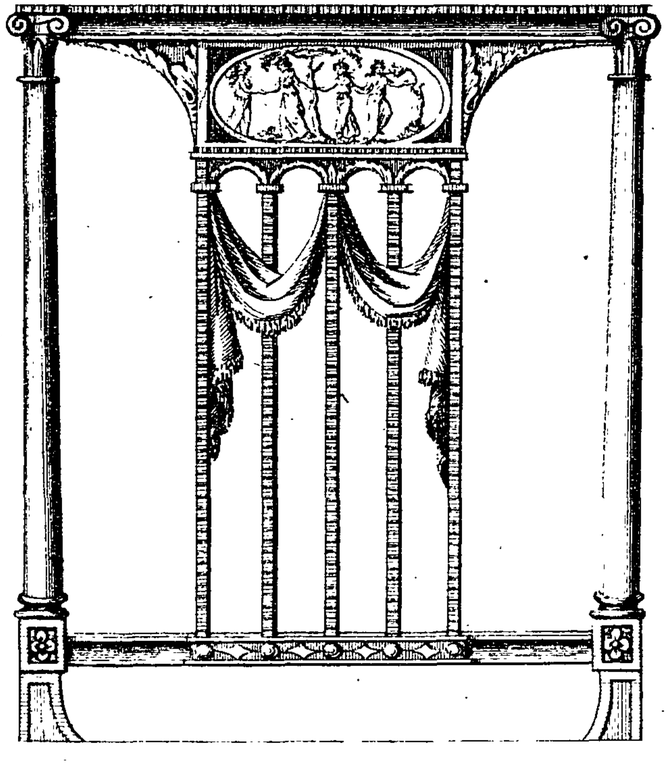
2



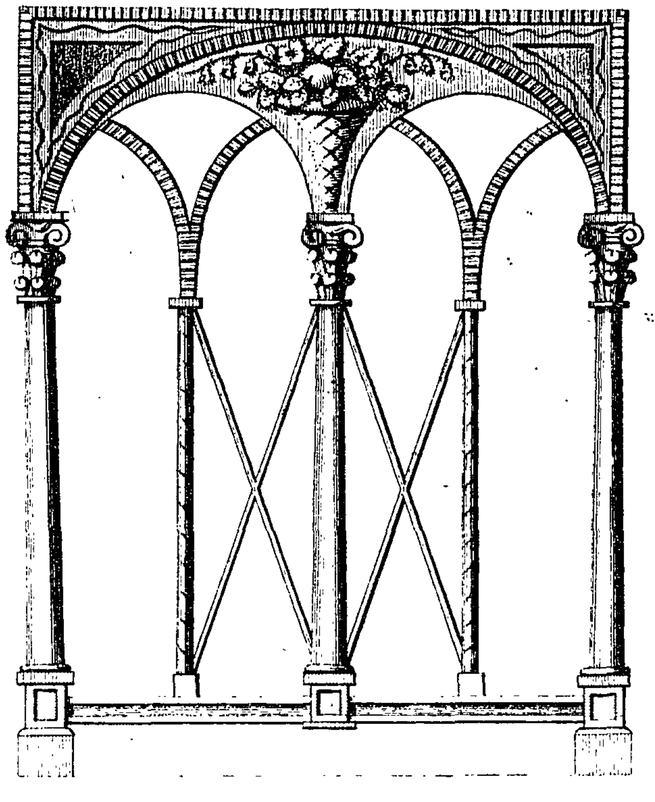
3



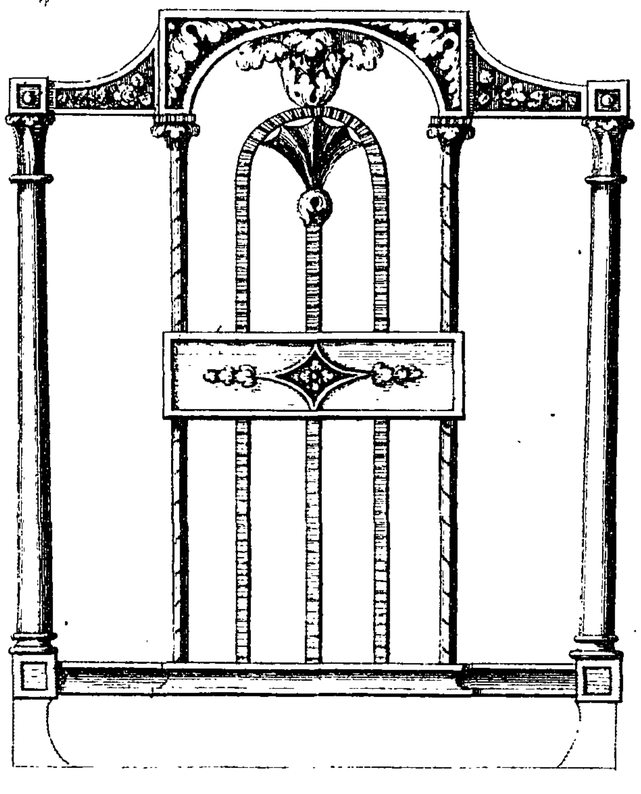
4



5



6

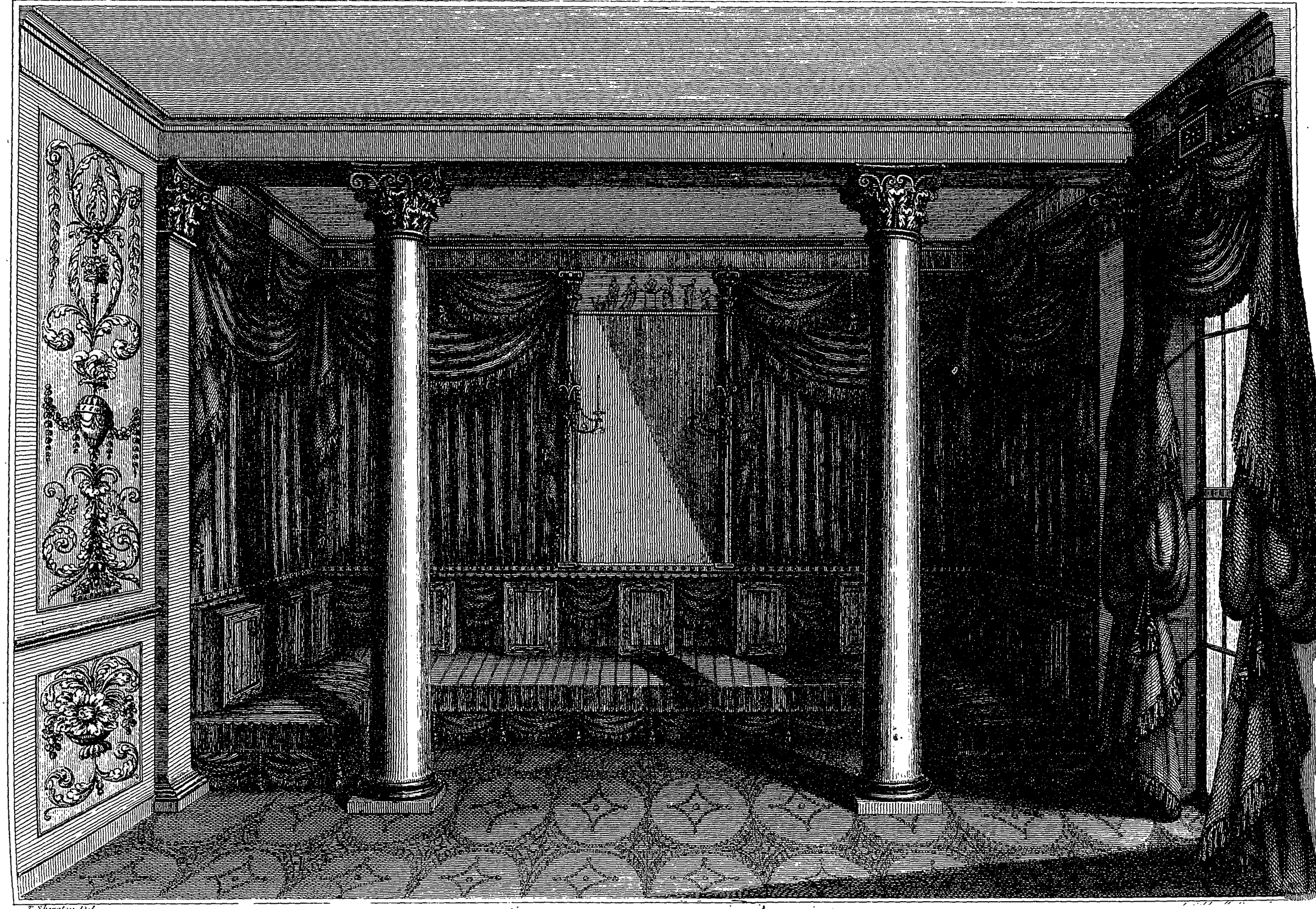


T. Sheraton. del.

G. Terry. Sc.

Published as the Act directs by G. Terry. July 26. 1791.

A TURKEY SOFA



T. Shraton Del.

Published as the Act Directs by G. Terry, ... Aug.t 11. 1794.

No. 4 is a painted chair, with the back feet at top, formed in imitation of the Ionic capital.

The drapery in this alſo may be taken away without hurt done to the general outline.

No. 5 is a painted chair, and may be ſubject to a variety of alterations; it may be executed with good effect without any thing, except the three compoſite columns, and two arches in the top rail. The remaining part of the rail on each ſide of the baſket of flowers may be neatly pannelled in the painting; or the diamond part may be retrenched, and the two ſmaller pillars with their arches retained.

No. 6 cannot well be ſubject to any alteration, excepting that the ornament in the arch may be turned into a ſtraight bar.

No. LII. *A Turkey Sofa.*

THESE are genteel ſeats introduced in the moſt faſhionable houſes, and are an imitation of the Turkiſh mode of ſitting. They are therefore made very low, ſcarcely exceeding a foot to the upper ſide of the cuſhion.

The frame may be made of beech, and muſt be webbed and ſtrained with canvas to ſupport the cuſhions.

The back cuſhions in this deſign have ſpaces between them, with drapery inſerted, but they are generally made to fill cloſe up without leaving any intervals. In rooms where there are no columns nor architrave ſuitable for ſuch a ſeat, theſe may eaſily be put up in a temporary way, ſo that, if requiſite, they may be taken down without any injury to the room. The back of the ſofa, by which I mean the whole height of the wall, from ſurbaſe to cornice, muſt have a deal frame fixed to it, againſt which the canvas, drapery at the top, and the fluting, muſt be tacked.

Plate LXVI. *A Commode.*

THE top of this commode is intended to be white ſtatuary marble. The ornaments are painted on ſatin wood, or other ground; at each end is formed a niche in which may be placed antique figures. The legs of the commode ſtand clear. The doors at each end are made to ſtand about three inches clear of the feet, ſo that the door will open ſquare out. The internal part is merely plain ſhelves, as theſe pieces are never intended for uſe but for ornament.

Plate LXXV. *Bed Steps.*

THE deſign on the right contains a bidet behind, which runs in as a drawer. For the purpoſe of raiſing the bidet

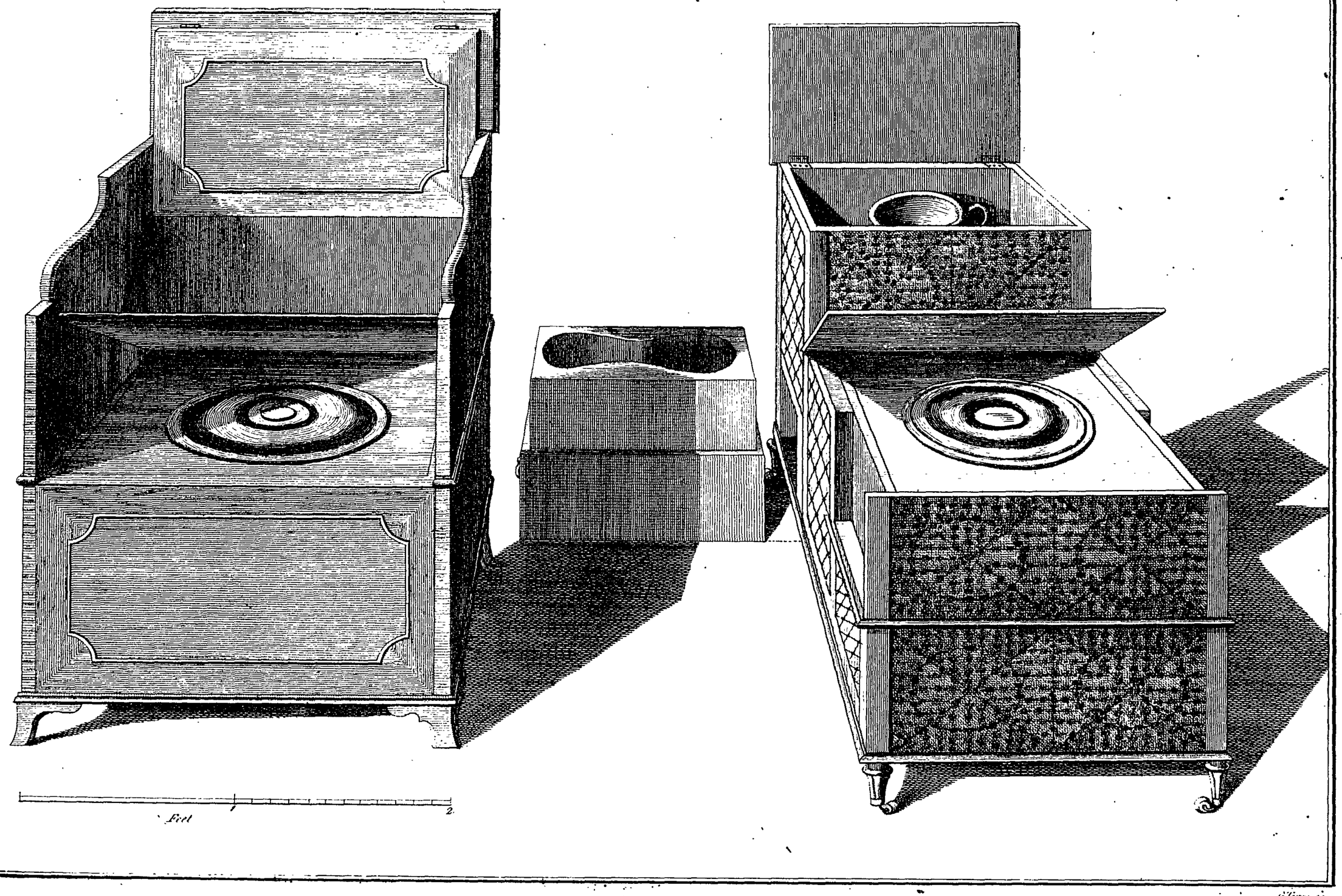
A COMMODE



T. Sheraton. del.

G. Terry, Sculp.

Published as the Act directs by G. Terry. May. 25. 1794.



Feet 1 2

E. Sharpton. del. Published by G. Terry. July. 27. 1804. G. Terry. sc.

drawer to a proper height, the caſe is made double, one fitting within the other, as ſhewn in the plate: for provided the outer caſe is made nine inches deep, the inner one, being at leaſt eight, would, when raiſed up, make it eighteen inches high, which is ſufficient.

The inner caſe is kept up by a couple of wooden ſprings, one at each end, which are ſo made and fixed to the inſide of the outer-caſe, that the thumb may relieve them ſo that the bidet will ſettle down even with the edge of the caſe. The ſecond ſtep, which forms the night-table part draws out, and the ſtep which covers it riſes up and falls againſt the upper ſtep, which forms a pot cupboard. The ſteps and riſers are uſually covered with carpet, and the ſides caned.

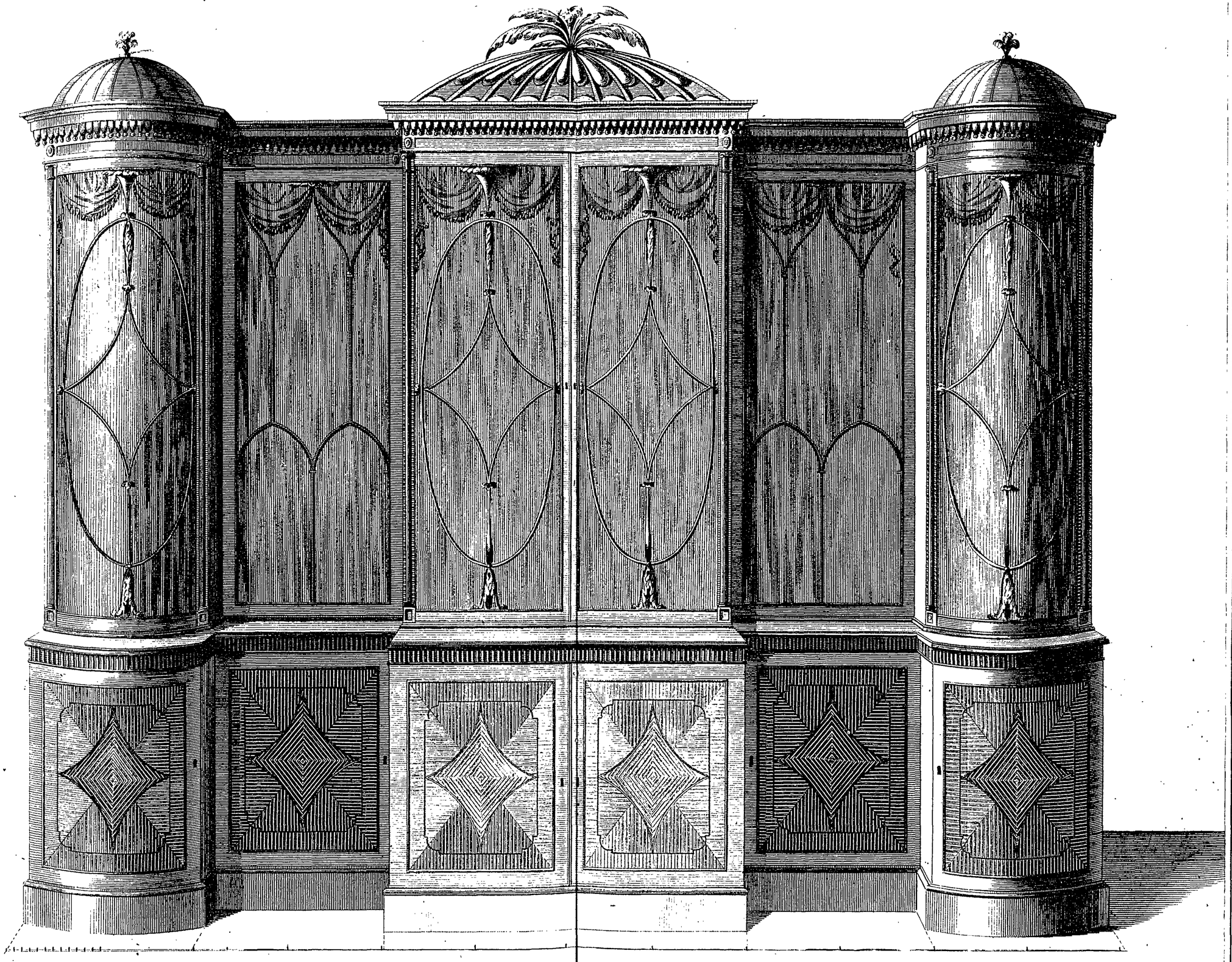
The deſign on the left, when the top is down, forms only two ſteps. The front of the upper ſtep is hinged to the top, and the top to the back; and to keep it in its place when down, the workman will obſerve, that a groove is cut in the ends, not in a ſtraight direction, but near the bottom; the groove is perpendicular to the ſeat; a pin is then fixed to the under ſide of the front at each end, which works in the aforeſaid grooves, and the perpendicular part of the groove, which is obvious in the deſign, aſſiſts in throwing the front upright when it is down upon the ſeat.

Plate

Plate . *A Library Bookcaſe.*

THE middle lower part of this bookcaſe may have wardrobe ſhelves, the reſt is furniſhed with plain ſliding ſhelves for books only. The circular wings of the upper part may be glazed, or finiſhed without glaſs, by a green ſilk curtain only, with its drapery at the top. The diamond part is intended to have looking-glaſs inſerted, which has a pretty effect. The pannels of the lower doors do not come fluſh with their framing by a ſtrong eighth of an inch, which both looks better, and is more calculated to hide the defects, if the pannel ſhould ſhrink. The workman muſt obſerve, that the plinth, ſurbaſe, and cornice frames, are made and finiſhed entirely ſeparate from the carcaſes, and are ſcrewed to them to keep the whole together.

A LIBRARY BOOKCASE.



T. Sheraton delin.

J. Barlow sculp.

Publish'd as the Act directs, by Gar. Terry, September 24th 1794.

A

DESCRIPTIVE INDEX

TO

THE SEVERAL PIECES OF CABINET FURNITURE

CONTAINED IN THE WORK;

INCLUDING

THE NEW AND ORIGINAL DESIGNS,

ADDED IN THE SECOND EDITION,

ALPHABETICALLY ARRANGED.

BEDS.

PLATES.

XXXI. A SOFA ditto, with dome top and French drapery; on the ſide of which is a view of its perſpective lines - - *to face page* 380

XL. Alcove ditto, repreſented on aſcending ſteps, covered with carpet and drapery round the arch of the alcove - - - 382

XLI. A Summer ditto, made in two ſeparate parts, with a dome to each part, an ornamental arch at the foot, and both connected by one head; intended for a gentlemen and lady to ſleep apart in ſultry, hot weather - 384

XLV. A French State ditto, with dome top, ornamented, and with double head, exhibiting the perſpective lines according to its oblique ſituation - 386

I. *Appendix* —Elliptic Bed, dome top, with drapery, ornamented cornice, medallion-valence, and couch ends - - - - 6

III. A Ducheſs ditto, in three parts, ſtraight cornice, cove top to take off, and drapery covering - - - - - - 6

IX. A common ditto, with drapery valence, and cove top, ornamented - 16

XIX. Engliſh State ditto, with dome top, and crown ſupported by Juſtice, Clemency, and Mercy; the cornice, pillars, &c. adorned with various ſymbolical figures, expreſſive of the different branches of the Britiſh government - - - - - - - - 40

BOOKCASES AND DOORS.

XXVII. Six various Patterns of ditto - - - - - 370

PLATES.		
XXIX.	Six ditto ditto - - - - - *to face page*	370
XXVII.	*Appendix.*—Eight ditto ditto - - - - -	50
XXVIII.	Bookcaſe, with ſecretary drawer, glaſs doors, pediment top, and clothes-preſs ſhelves in lower part - - - - -	370
XLVII.	Ditto, with cylinder deſk, ſlider fixed to cylinder, plain, ſquare-figured door, with green ſilk curtain, and drapery at top - - -	
LVII.	Pediments for ditto, ornamented and plain - - -	432
XXXIX.	*In additional new plates.*—Ditto, with writing drawer, clothes-preſs ſhelves, and ornamented pediment, figured door, and green ſilk curtains, with drapery - - - - - - -	55
III.	Library ditto, with circular and ſtraight wings, glaſs doors, with curious figure; the circular-winged doors not glazed, but finiſhed in fluted ſilk, with drapery at top; the lower middle part contains four clothes-preſs ſhelves - - - - - - -	8
	Library ditto, with circular wings, dome top on each, and ornamented pediment, glaſs doors, with green curtains, and drapery at top	
XLII.	Baſon Stands, to ſtand in a corner; one with a ciſtern, and another with tops to fold over - - - - - -	394

CHAIRS.

XXXII.	Chairs for drawing room, ſtuffed back and ſeats, finiſhed in white and gold - - - - - - -	388
XXXIII.	Ditto for parlour, finiſhed in mahogany - - - -	ib.
XXXIV.	Ditto for drawing and parlour - - - - -	ib.
XXXVI.	Ditto, ſix new Patterns for Backs; ſome for japanning, and ditto for mahogany	ib.
VI.	*Appendix.*—Ditto for drawing rooms, finiſhed; one for japanning, the other for white and gold - - - - - -	12
X.	Ditto, Converſation, made with ſtuffed toprails, to reſt the arm upon; the ſeats made narrow in front, but longer than in common from back to front - - - - - - -	16
XXV.	Ditto, ſix new Patterns of Backs for painting - - -	48
XXVIII.	Ditto, ſix new ditto ditto - - - -	50
XLIX.	*In the additional deſigns of the ſecond edition.*—Ditto, ſix new ditto ditto.—*See their deſcription at the end of the appendix* - -	56
XVIII.	*Appendix.*—Chaiſe Longs, or Long Chairs, ſtuffed and covered in the manner of ſofas - - - - - -	26

CABINETS.

XLVIII.	Cabinet, with the perſpective lines. The upper middle part for books, and the wings for medals, rings, &c. and other ſmall curious matters; the lower part is divided into drawers and ſmall cupboards -	406
XLIX	Ditto, with dreſſing table. Lower part contains convenience for a lady	

DESCRIPTIVE INDEX.

PLATES.

to waſh and dreſs at; the upper part a ſwing glaſs in center, and each wing is comparted for trinkets, &c. - - *to face page* 406

L. Ditto, with convenience for writing, for holding books in top part, and a private cupboard at each end, with dome tops - - 408

XIV. Ditto, with branch lights, and convenience for writing in the top part; together with ſmall drawers, and private places - - 22

XVI. Ditto, with a ſelf-balancing front, and convenience at each end for tea equipage - - - - - - 23

COMMODES.

XX. Ditto, for dreſſing; containing neceſſary apparatus for waſhing, with a glaſs in the center, various boxes for powder, &c. and a convenience for writing a note - - - - - 40

LXVI. Ditto, for an ornament to ſtand under a pier glaſs; has a figure at each in a niche, and a white ſtatuary marble top - - - 58

LIX. Cornices at large, in various profiles; together with ſurbaſe mouldings, and the method of enlarging and contracting them pointed out - 43

XXIX. *Appendix.* —Clockcaſes, to be executed in ſatin wood if the ornaments are introduced on the doors; if not, they may be executed in mahogany, with good effect - - - - - - 50

LXI. Drawing Room, plan and ſection of, complete; and a view of every neceſſary article of furniture in their proper ſituation - - 445

XXXII. *Appendix.* —Ditto, the Prince of Wales's, with Chineſe furniture, in a ſection, and perſpective view - - - - 52

LX. Dining Parlour, with proper furniture to do, exhibited in a perſpective view 440

SECRETARIES.

XXVIII. Ditto and Bookcaſe, with clothes-preſs ſhelves, figured doors, and pediment top - - - - - - 396

XLIII. Ditto, a Lady's, with book-ſhelves at top, ſupported with braſs pillars; has a cupboard at bottom for hats - - - ib

LII. Ditto, a Gentleman's, with ſelf-balancing front, and two wings for books, with glaſs figured door, and ornamented top - - - 410

XXXIX. *In additional new plates.*—Ditto, a ſmall one for a Lady, with falling front, and writing drawer - - - - - 55

SIDEBOARDS.

XXVI. Ditto, with celleret drawer for wine, a plain drawer, and pot cupboard at the other end; ſtraight front, and faſh-plain ends - - 366

XXIX. Ditto, with celleret drawers, hollow front, and round ends: one end opens with

PLATES.

with marble ſhelves, for ſmall ſilver ware; and the other encloſed, for a pot cupboard - - - - - *to face page* 370

XXI. *Appendix.*—Ditto, with vaſe, knife-caſes, and pedeſtals at each end, with ornamental braſs rod and lights; a celleret drawer, and plain ditto; and a pat cupboard in center, hid by a reeded front, forming a receſs to the arch under the front arch - - - - - - 42

XXXI *In additional new plates.*—Ditto, with carved front rail, and truſs ornaments on the legs, and an ornamental vaſe celleret placed under the ſideboard 54

SCREENS.

XXXVIII. Ditto, tripods, for japanning - - - - - 390

XIII. *Appendix.*—A Tripod one, and Horſe ditto. The tripod one, for white and gold, turns on a ſwivel, ſo that both ſides of the mount are finiſhed alike; ditto, the horſe balance is of mahogany, with its uprights fluted or reeded - - - - - - - 20

STANDS OF VARIOUS KINDS.

XLII. Stands with corner waſh-hand ones in three different patterns; one ditto with water ciſtern and lock, incloſed with reeds, and a cupboard below to throw off the dirty water; one ditto plain and common; one ditto with folding tops when up to prevent the wall from water ſplaſhes - 394

XLIII. Ditto, made ſquare, with ciſtern at top, plain drawer for towel, and cupboard below for foul water - - - - - 396

LIII. Ditto, cylinder waſh-hand, with water ciſtern at top, and glaſs in center, leaden pipe to convey off the foul water into a drawer behind for that purpoſe; the bottom part contains alſo a bidet and two plain drawers - 412

LV. Ditto, tripods for candles, in white or all gold, with figures ſupporting the lights - - - - - - - 416

SOFAS.

XXXV. Sofa with three looſe cuſhions at the back, and ornamented top-rail for japanning - - - - - - 388

X. *Appendix.*—Sofa, the back in three compartments covered with ſilk, and white and gold frames - - - - - 16

LII. *Additional new Plates.*—Sofa in the manner of the Turks, with glaſs in center, looſe cuſhions all round, and the ſeat made low - - - 57

STEPS.

XII. *Appendix.*—Steps for large library, with folding hand-rail, and a noting deſk at top, the whole folded and incloſed in a Library table. - - 20

XXII. Ditto,

PLATES.

XXII. Ditto, for ſmaller library, incloſed in a Pembroke table - *to face page* 44
LXXV. *In additional deſigns.*—Ditto, one with night-table only, the other with night-table, a bidet, and put up board - - 58

TABLES OF VARIOUS KINDS.

XXV. Table univerſal, to anſwer the purpoſe of a dining and breakfaſt table, with a drawer divided into boxes, for tea, ſugar, &c. When uſed for breakfaſt table, its flaps ſlide under the bed - - - - 362
XXX. Ditto, for Library, with four niches or knee holes, four cupboards and four drawers, two of which with riſing reading deſks - - - 376
XXXVII. Ditto, for a lady to write at, with ſcreen to riſe up by weights behind to ſave the face, and ſpring writing boxes, after the French - - - 390
XLIII. Ditto, on a ſimpler and more eaſy plan, with ſcreen behind ſupported by ſprings - - - - - - - - 396
XLIV. Ditto, one to read, and the other to write at - - -
XLVI. Ditto, for a lady to dreſs at, with a glaſs in the centre, and one on each ſide, as reflecters, framed ſo as to move to any poſition; under the dreſſing part is a knee hole forming a cupboard, and at each end a dreſſing drawer to hold caps - - - 398
LIV Ditto, for a lady to work at, has a rim round the top, with one ſide of it hinged, ſo as to turn down to a horizontal poſition - - - 414
Ditto, for breakfaſt, containing a bidet and two glaſſes, ſupported by pillar with four claws - - - - - ib.
LVI. Ditto, a Harlequin Pembroke one, with a neſt of drawers to riſe out of the top, with a falling flap to write on - - - - 430
LVIII. Ditto, of the ſhape of a kidney, for writing and reading, by a riſing deſk which ſlides forward; at each end are a number of ſmall drawers - 432
LX. Ditto, to draw and write at, has a riſing flap, lined with leather, a neſt of drawers in the upper part, letter box and cupboards, the top edged about with a braſs rim, the lower part conſiſting of plain drawers - - - 440
V. *Appendix*—Table for piers, or to ſtand under a glaſs, finiſhed in white and gold - - - - - - - - - - 8
VII. Ditto, for dreſſing, with glaſs to riſe behind, convenience for waſhing, and a bidet - - - - - - - - 12
Ibid. Ditto, to uſe in the night, connected with a baſon or waſh-hand ſtand, and pat cupboard, with reeded door - - - - - - ib.
XI. Ditto, for cards; one faſh plain corners, the other with column corners and round front - - - - - - - - 20
XII. Ditto for Library, of an elliptic ſhape; contains a ſecretary drawer to write at in a ſitting poſture, and a riſing deſk in the top, to uſe in a ſtanding poſition; the back part is fitted up for books, and each end has four or five heights of plain drawers. - - - - ib.
XX. Ditto, a plain one for dreſſing, with glaſs in the centre, and a writing ſlider at the end - - - - - - ib.
XXIII. Ditto, for night uſes, to ſtand in a corner; one connected with a baſon-

ſtand,

PLATES.

ſtand, turning round on a pin, by which the night-table part is totally hid, the other with lifting top, &c. - - *to face page* 46

XXVI. Ditto, for a lady to work at; one with a drawer to write a note on ſupported with two lyre ſtands; the other with a pillar on four claws, and only a work bag - - - - 50

XXX. Ditto for drawing, with a double riſing top, capable of being elevated to any height, has a ſlider at each end to lay drawing implements on, and one under the top, on which to place a model, &c. to copy from - ib.

WARDROBES.

VIII. Wardrobe with two wings, containing arms to hang clothes on, the upper part has clothes-preſs ſhelves, and the lower plain drawers - - - 14

XXX. Gouty Stool, made with a double horſe to raiſe the leg to any height - 50

XXXIX. Knife Caſes, ornamented with pilaſters, and pillars in front; one with ogee and hollow front, the other with two hollows, and a round in centre. - - - - - - - - 392

LI. Window-curtains and drapery in the French taſte, exhibited with glaſs and pier table, ſhewing the effect of the internal front of a ſmall drawing room - - - - - - - 406

LVI. Ornament for a tablet, conſiſting of parſley foliage, ſpringing from the tail of a griffin. - - - - - 43

A

DESCRIPTIVE INDEX

TO

THE ACCOMPANIMENT

TO THE

CABINET-MAKER AND UPHOLSTERER's DRAWING-BOOK,

CONSISTING OF VARIOUS ORNAMENTS.

PLATES.

I. SPECIMENS of various foliage, for the exercise of learners, including the thorn, parsley, oak, and rose leaves, together with others of fancy - - - - - - *to face page* 9

II. Chair legs, near the full size, richly ornamented for white and gold, but may be reduced to a plainness suitable to mahogany chairs - - 20

III. Borders for pier tables, which may be executed in japanning, or inlaying - - - - - - ib.

IV. Two patterns for girandole lights supported by figures, richly ornamented; a truss cornice and frieze for a pilaster, and a specimen of a richly ornamented painted pannel, consisting of a temple set on fire by Cupids, whose intentions are defeated by the interposition of certain genii, who pour down water to quench the flames - - - - ib.

V. Ornament for a tablet, and two specimens of new fancy cornices, with handsome friezes; the tablet is a boy supporting a basket full of rich flowers and fruits - - - - 21

VI. New and elegant bed-pillars, two of which for state beds, to be executed in white and gold; one for mahogany carved, and two for japanning - 22

VII. Centres for pier or Pembroke tables, either for japanning or inlaying; in the centre of the Pembroke tables, the genius of poetry, painting, and music, are assembled - - - - ib.

VIII. Six various patterns for splad-back chairs; four may be executed in mahogany, and the remaining two for japanning - - - - ib.

DESCRIPTIVE INDEX.

PLATES.

IX. Six various patterns for table-legs: two for rich pier tables in white and gold, two for plainer tables, and two for card tables - - *to face page* 22

X. Six different patterns for ſtumps and elbows of drawing-room chairs, ſhewing part of the rail and ſeat, and in two the intire leg; alſo five various ſpecimens of chair ſplads for painting - - - - 23

XI. Ornament for tablet, exhibiting Diana and Endymion, in a faint moonlight piece, ornamented with foliage; alſo ſix various ſpecimens of leaves for carving - - - - - - - - 24

XII. Four various patterns for window cornices; one for a grand ſaloon room, to be executed in white and gold; the others for japanning - - - 25

XIII. Three various ſpecimens of pilaſters, for commodes or cabinets, which may be executed in inlaying, gilt on glaſs, or japanned - - - 26

XIV. Three patterns of chair legs near the full ſize, to be executed in white and gold - - - - - - - - - - - 27

AN

ACCOMPANIMENT

TO THE

CABINET-MAKER AND UPHOLSTERER'S

DRAWING-BOOK.

CONTAINING

A VARIETY OF ORNAMENTS USEFUL FOR LEARNERS TO COPY FROM, BUT PARTICULARLY ADAPTED TO THE CABINET AND CHAIR BRANCHES:

EXHIBITING

ORIGINAL AND NEW DESIGNS

OF

CHAIR LEGS, BED PILLARS, WINDOW CORNICES, CHAIR SPLADS, AND OTHER ORNAMENTS, CALCULATED TO ASSIST IN THE DECORATIONS OF THE ABOVE BRANCHES; TOGETHER WITH INSTRUCTIONS IN LETTER-PRESS.

By THOMAS SHERATON,
CABINET-MAKER.

LONDON:
PRINTED BY T. BENSLEY, FOR THE AUTHOR,
N° 106, WARDOUR-STREET, SOHO.

Of whom may be had, ſeparate, in Forty-two Numbers, price 2*l.* 3*s.* 6*d.* The CABINET-MAKER and UPHOLSTERER'S DRAWING-BOOK, containing a great Variety of New Deſigns in Houſehold Furniture.

AN ACCOMPANIMENT, &c.

Inſtructions for Drawing Ornaments.

As a proficiency in the art of drawing ornaments depends chiefly on the habit of copying and the natural turn of genius in this way, a few hints only are neceſſary for the aſſiſtance of the learner.

Some inſtructions, however, are certainly neceſſary, as appears from the frequent applications that are made to maſters for their information. And though no written inſtructions can fully ſupply all that may be derived from a maſter*, yet ſuch directions may be given, in letter-preſs, as greatly to facilitate the attainment of this uſeful branch of drawing without a maſter's help.

The principal art of every branch of drawing is included in the diſpoſition of a few ſimple lines of but two different ſpecies,

* One very material advantage derived from a maſter is, that the pupil ſees how he practiſes, by which he may acquire his manner and ſtyle.

the right line and the curve. Of theſe two are compoſed all that infinite variety of ſhapes that we are able to ſee and conceive.

I will, therefore, propoſe to the learner, firſt to begin with drawing, by the hand, right lines a tolerable length parallel to each other in all directions; firſt, inclined to the right, as approaching neareſt to the art of writing; ſecondly, perpendicular; thirdly, inclined to the left; and laſtly, horizontal and at right angles with thoſe perpendiculars, and paſſing through their center. A proficiency in this is certainly the firſt ſtep in drawing, and is not ſo eaſily attained as may be imagined.

Secondly, let the learner then proceed to draw by the hand a circle, as large as poſſibly he can without moving the wriſt. And it will be proper for the learner to obſerve, that in being able to draw a circle by the hand and eye he thereby draws curve lines in all poſſible poſitions, as perpendicular, inclined to the right and left, and horizontal. In addition to this practice it will be neceſſary to draw one circle concentric with another; that is, as when two or more circles of different diameters are drawn from one center. This becomes uſeful when any thing is to be deſcribed in the ſhape of volutes, as the running foliage frequently introduced in friezes and pilaſters. What has here been ſaid of the circle will alſo apply to the practice of drawing an

ellipſis by hand. An ellipſis may be conſidered as a curve conſiſting of a number of ſegments of circles compound, whoſe radii differ in length. Of this kind of curve are many of the turns in ornament, and therefore the practice of drawing them will be found worthy the attention of the learner. To practiſe as has been deſcribed I conſider as indiſpenſably requiſite to a ready and perfect attainment in the art of drawing ornaments; and ought particularly to be recommended to youth, as a help to their writing any kind of hand, or drawing the Roman letters.

The learner who is advanced in years will not, perhaps, ſubmit to this kind of teaching: but if he cannot already draw right lines, of ſome length, parallel in all poſitions, and a circle tolerably near by the eye, he ought not to be above learning it, becauſe the time that is ſpent in this, will be deducted in future by a more ſpeedy progreſs in the art of drawing ornaments. And however this may be thought of by ſome as a thing of no merit, yet we will venture to affirm, that the hand of a real maſter may be certainly diſtinguiſhed by the manner of drawing theſe.

Of Copying Ornaments. Plate I.

SUPPOSE C to be the example to copy from. Take a black-lead pencil, and draw at B the principal curve-line at the bottom very faint*. Then proceed to form a rude ſketch of the out-line, obſerving carefully each projecting part of C, that a ſufficient breadth or ſpace may be taken within the out-line, in which may be formed all the diſtinct parts of B, without reducing their proportion.

Upon this proceſs correctneſs and diſpatch very much depend. Therefore, if upon the firſt attempt of this there ſhould appear any defect, it will be beſt to take out the lines with the India rubber, and make them perfect.

A carver or ſculptor proceeds upon this principle until merely the maſſive parts are made out; and it is well known that thoſe of the greateſt ſkill in theſe profeſſions are always employed in this part of carving and ſculpture.

After having done this, proceed to give the diſtinct forms of each leaf and roſe in faint touches, that if there ſhould be any cauſe for alteration it may be more eaſily effected. The

* To handle a pencil is, in many caſes of drawing, different from the manner of holding a pen. In handling a pen, the ends of the fourth and fifth fingers reſt on the paper; but in managing a pencil, the hand is turned over more to the right, and reſts on the knuckles of the little finger.

T. Sheraton delin.

Published as the Act directs, by T. Sheraton July 4. 1793.

J. Barlow sculp.

learner ſhould, in doing this, carefully obſerve and touch the fibres of each leaf, and give the proper lead to each ſtem, ſo that they do not cut each other.

Laſtly, take a view of the whole, and conſider in what point the light is to ſtrike on the ornament; and on that edge of the leaves and roſes oppoſite to it, retouch and ſtrengthen the outline in ſuch a way as to give relief and effect to the whole, even upon ſuppoſition that the drawing is to remain a mere outline.

Of Shading Ornaments.

If the ornament is to be ſhaded with Indian ink, mix ſome of it thin and clear, and take a crow-quill pen, or fine camel-hair pencil, and touch the outlines very faintly, ſo as ſcarcely to be ſeen on the light edges of the ornament; becauſe in nature there is, in reality, no outline on the light ſides of objects, eſpecially if the ſun is ſuppoſed to ſhine on them. After this, touch the ſtronger parts of each ſtem and fibre, that they may not be loſt when the pencil marks are expunged.

Having cleaned your drawing, take a large camel-hair pencil, and dip it till it flow freely with Indian ink very thin and clear. And obſerve, that if the ink do not work with freedom on a piece of waſte paper, which ſhould be kept for the purpoſe

poſe of trying the pencils, the bruſh in this ſtate ought not to be applied, but ſhould again be well worked in the thin Indian ink, ſo that it work eaſy, without leaving white ſpots on the paper. In this ſtate apply the pencil to the ornament, and give a general tint to thoſe parts ſuppoſed to be all in ſhadow; at the ſame time a partial tint may be given to the objects partly in the light. This firſt courſe of ſhadowing is the great baſis of all real effect; for if the maſſes of light and ſhadow are not properly parted, but confounded, the drawing will look heavy, intelligible, and boyiſh.

When the drawing is properly dry, the laſt tints are to be given with great delicacy and care, leſt the whole be over done, and, as it were, tormented with harſh dabs. The intention of this laſt tint is only to give reflected lights to thoſe parts which lie in the maſs of ſhadow, and ſharpneſs to the partial ſhadows directly oppoſed to the light.

It is natural for the learner, in giving the laſt tint, to think of thickening his ink; but this muſt be avoided, as dangerous to the effect of ornament; for if the ink at firſt uſed be again repeated on the former tint, it will give ſufficient colour, except the openings of the fibres, which may be touched with ſtronger ink.

Effect to ornament may alſo be given by a pen, in imitation of etching; which, if well executed, is more pleaſing in ornament than Indian ink.

Italian chalk is ſometimes uſed along with a black-lead pencil, which may be done with extremely good effect.

The learner, being furniſhed with theſe inſtructions, may proceed in the ſame way with the reſt of the ſpecimens in foliage, the principal variety of which is here exhibited.

K, is the thiſtle leaf, ſharply pointed and irregular.

G, is the Roman-leaf, round and maſſy.

F, the parſley leaf, light and rather ſharp pointed.

E, the roſe leaf, formed into groups.

D, The oak-leaf, broad and maſſy, ſcolloped on the edge, with ſmall partings.

A, Is a fancy leaf, rather ſharp, with large partings.

C, roſes and leaves alternately.

With

With theſe ſpecimens the learner ought to be well acquainted, before he proceed to draw running ornaments, that he may give ſufficient variety in each turn.

The regular leaves, in Plate XI, ſhould alſo be copied, as they are much in uſe in carving and japanning.

Next proceed with the borders in Plate III, which are intended for japanning or inlaying; and ſo on with any other of the Plates, as Plate V. VII. and IV. as they may appear moſt ſuitable to his abilities in drawing; obſerving in all caſes to make a very light pencil-ſketch of the whole deſign, before any thing is attempted to be finiſhed.

Of Qualifications neceſſary for Compoſition.

To qualify the learner for compoſition, he ought, in ſome meaſure, to be acquainted with the proportions of human figures, eſpecially thoſe taken from the antiques. My very limited plan in publiſhing theſe ornaments affords me no opportunity of doing any thing in this way by example. I will, however, give a few hints reſpecting their proportions, for the aſſiſtance of thoſe who have no opportunity of conſulting the beſt maſters.

The

The proportion of the male figure, according to Mr. Brifbane's Anatomy, from Albinus, will be near enough, as follows: If the perpendicular height of the intended figure be divided into ten equal parts, and one of thefe parts into four, the proportions will run thus with refpect to length: the head, from the crown to the chin, one tenth and one fourth; the neck rather more than one third of the head; from the fummit of the fhoulders to the bottom of the belly, three tenths; from the bottom of the belly to the center of the knee-joints, two tenths and one half; and the fame from the center of the knee-joints to the bottom of the feet. Obferve, the height of the hips are fix tenths and one third from the ground, and the length of the arm four tenths and rather more than one half.

In thickneſs as follows.—Over the fhoulders, two tenths and one fourth; over the hips, one tenth and rather more than three fourths; over the thick part of the thigh, one tenth; the fmall part, near two thirds. Thefe principal parts being attended to, the reft will follow of courfe, by practifing a little upon the different parts of the body from examples. When the proportion of any male figure is to be proved, take the thickneſs of the thigh as one tenth of its height, and by remembering the above proportions any figure may be examined. By thefe proportions I have examined a figure engraved from the famous Raphael, an Italian painter, and found them to agree

 exactly.

exactly. In reſpect to the female figure there is ſome difference in the proportions; the whole is more ſlender and elegant; the ſhoulders are not ſo broad; the trunk or body is ſhorter; the hips broader, and in proportion higher from the ground; and the muſcular parts are not ſo ſtrong and prominent. As female figures are frequently interſperſed in the compoſing of ornaments, it is proper to obſerve, that much depends on the management of the drapery with which they are clothed. It ought to hang with freedom and eaſe, and in ſome parts to lie cloſe, ſo as to diſcover ſome of the principal ſhapes. To effect this, it is beſt, firſt, to draw the figure by the pencil as if entirely deſtitute of drapery, and afterwards to lay the drapery gently over with Indian ink, or colour, as may be required; ſo that the lines which marked out the parts of the body, now covered, may be expunged. This method gives true effect to the drapery, by enabling us to determine where there ought to be ſtrong, where ſlight, and where no folds at all. On the prominent parts of the body there are no folds in the drapery; but after having juſt paſſed over theſe, the folds commence in tender marks, and increaſe into ſtrong folds where the drapery is detached from the body.

In examining Cipriani's figures, I find, that if the aſſigned height of the female figure be divided into ten equal parts, from the ground to the waiſt, where the drapery is ſometimes tied round,

round, is ſeven tenths; from the waiſt to the top of the ſhoulders, one tenth and an half; the neck a quarter, the head one tenth and a quarter, and over the ſhoulders rather more than two tenths.

As boys or cupids are frequently introduced in ornaments, it is proper that the learner ſhould take notice of their proportions and general appearance, as different from thoſe already deſcribed. Cipriani's boys are of the following proportions:— If the aſſigned height be, as before, divided into ten equal parts, the head will be full two tenths in height; the neck very ſhort; from the top of the ſhoulders to the bottom of the belly, four tenths; from the bottom of the belly to the knee-joint, full two tenths; and from the knee to the ground, bare two tenths; the arms, when hanging perpendicular, come not quite to the middle of the thigh; the breadth of the ſhoulders not quite three tenths; and, laſtly, the thick part of the thigh, one tenth and an half, which will of courſe give the proportion of the leg. The learner ſhould obſerve the general caſt of theſe figures; the head is large and round; the neck ſcarcely diſtinguiſhable between the head and ſhoulders; no joints appearing in the arms or legs ſcarcely; the ankle covered with fleſh, and the whole leg thick and maſſy.

But, beſide the human figures, there are others of an imaginary

ginary kind employed by the antiques in their decorations. Theſe are ſtill, and ever will be retained in ornaments leſs or more. The moſt taſty of theſe were ſelected by Raphael, and painted by his pupils on the walls and ceilings of the Vatican Library at Rome, and which are handed down to us, by the Italians, in maſterly engravings; which, in the courſe of this work, I have conſulted, and from which I have extracted ſome of my ideas, as well as from ſome French works.

In the Vatican are figures whoſe upper part is female, and the lower of foliage entwiſting round. Other female figures have their lower part of a fiſh, and ſome of a greyhound. Others ſhew only a human head, with foliage ſpringing from it in different forms, anſwering for wings, and for a covering of the lower parts. In it, we ſee ſometimes a dolphin fiſh with an ornamented tail; a lion's head and an eagle's leg and talons brought into a ſmooth outline by the help of foliage: at other times a tiger's head and paw formed in the ſame manner. Some, again, are partly a horſe with wings and two fore legs, and partly the tail of a fiſh; all which are now a nameleſs generation, but once the offspring, I preſume, of the ancient metamorphoſes, either what they termed real or apparent.

Beſides theſe, are to be ſeen, in the above work, the ſphinx, a figure of much fame amongſt the ancients, whoſe upper part

is

is a woman's head and breaſts, and the wings of a bird; the lower part the body of a dog, and the claws of a lion. This monſter is ſaid to be the production of two deities, and ſent as a ſcourge to the Thebans. Its buſineſs, on a mountain at Thebes, was to propoſe dark queſtions to paſſengers, and if not anſwered to devour them. It is ſaid that the Egyptians uſed the ſphinx as a ſymbol of religion, on account of the myſteries which it was capable of interpreting. The Romans therefore placed it on the porches of their temples.

The centaur, partly a man, and partly a horſe, uſed as one of the ſigns of the zodiac, in which the man part is repreſented ſhooting with a bow.

This being is alſo ſaid to be the offspring of a deity in conjunction with a cloud. They inhabited Theſſaly; and, engaging in hoſtilities with the bow, were vanquiſhed by Theſeus. As they ſeem to have been a rebellious race, they may be introduced into ſuch ſubjects as are intended to ſhew the odium of ſuch conduct.

The griffon is another fabulous being, exiſting only in the vain imaginations of the ancient heathen poets, as do the two former. They repreſent it partly an eagle, and partly a lion; that is, the lower part of it. They ſuppoſe it to watch over

golden

golden mines and hid treaſures. It was conſecrated to the ſun, whoſe chariot was drawn by a number of them. And theſe, if you pleaſe, may be introduced into ſubjects intended to repreſent covetouſneſs; or they may be placed over cabinets where treaſure is kept.

It will be proper that the learner ſhould ſtudy to compoſe theſe, if he intends being a proficient in ornaments. In ſhort, to be fully qualified for ornamental decorations, is to be acquainted with every branch of drawing.

And, further, to compoſe to much purpoſe, it requires to have a general inſight into works of this nature, and particularly to ſee the painted walls in noblemen's houſes, in many of which the art is exhibited to its utmoſt perfection; and in none more ſo than in the printed and painted ſilks executed of late by Mr. Eckhardt, at his manufactury at Chelſea, adapted for the purpoſe of ornamenting pannels, and the walls of the moſt elegant and noble houſes.

Of Compoſition.

AFTER the ideas of the pupil are extenſively furniſhed in the manner now deſcribed, it will be proper to begin with ſome ſmall ground to compoſe on, ſuch as the frieze of a cornice; and

and to conſider its ſituation with the eye, whether it be intended to be much above it, ſo that the parts of the ornaments may ſuit the ſuppoſed diſtance of the eye from it. It is of no effect to put a number of ſmall ornaments in, to be viewed at a great diſtance. In this caſe the parts ſhould be ſimple, entire, and rather maſſy, to produce a proper effect. If the frieze be near the eye, it may then be divided into ſmaller parts; but to crowd it in any caſe ought ſtudiouſly to be avoided. And obſerve, the tablets of friezes ought to be diverſe to the other ornaments in it.

I would then recommend to compoſe on the ground-work of a pilaſter not very broad; for it is to be obſerved, that the difficulty increaſes in proportion to the width, more than in the height of a ground-work. The ornaments in a pilaſter or pannel is conſidered as growing upwards, and therefore it ought to take its riſe from ſomething principal at the baſe, and grow rather lighter towards the top, as in every inſtance is ſhewn in nature. But this does not confine the compoſer to ſuppoſe that every thing is to be faſtened or tied to each other as in ſtrict nature, for this would ſometimes be the ſource of heavineſs in ornaments; nor do I ſee it practiſed in the Vatican, or by any of the beſt artiſts in this way. But certain it is, that the beſt compoſitions are thoſe which keep the parts moſt connected in one entire piece. The more we attain to this, whilſt we avoid a

heavy repetition of the ſame parts, the nearer do we arrive at perfection in this art.

The ornaments of a pilaſter ought to fill regularly on each ſide, and not to leave much naked ground. And eſpecially we ought to obſerve, not to have the ground alternately crowded and naked. If we begin in an open ſtyle, leaving much naked ground, this ſhould be continued uniformly all the way up, and, if any thing, only to grow more open at the ſummit. The laws of harmony in every art, where time, motion, and ſpace are obſerved, require this.

If the ſurface to be ornamented be horizontal, and is liable to be viewed alike in all points, as in a ceiling, the ſubject ſhould be regular, and formed into pannels and groups, ſurrounded with foliage of the ſame kind and form on all ſides. Nature exemplifies a regularity in moſt flowers, and in other things that grow horizontal.

Laſtly, to compoſe ornaments for a large upright pannel, as in rooms, is by far the moſt difficult taſk in this art. Here it is required that the artiſt collect and arrange all his ideas; and thoſe ſcattered fragments which exiſt in his mind through long and repeated obſervation on the works of the beſt maſters, muſt now be collected to form an entire whole, by a general concourſe

or aſſemblage of every branch of drawing. In this large field, architecture, perſpective, figures, landſcape, foliage, and fruit, may vie with each other, and ſhew the maſter's ſkill.

Attempts of this nature may be made by the learner, and with ſucceſs, though he fall vaſtly ſhort of a perfect diſplay of all theſe different branches of drawing; for it is to be obſerved, that the rule for judging in works of this nature is not to look for eminence in each and every diſtinct branch, but to diſcern fine taſte and juſtneſs of compoſition in the whole.

In compoſitions of this nature ſomething ſpreading and maſſy ought to be at the bottom of the pannel, except the ornament be only intended to occupy the center, in which caſe the principal part of the ornament ſhould be in the middle; but where the entire pannel is to be filled up, we ſhould begin as above, that there may be an opportunity of giving breadth to the foliage, for the purpoſe of filling up the ground regularly from one beginning only, for two deſigns muſt not be entwined with each other in the manner of cyphers. This deſtroys the beauty of ſimplicity, which conſiſts in fewneſs of parts, and entireneſs of forms, without which all is a jumble.

This obſervation will teach us to avoid that kind of croſſing and cutting each other, ſomething like the rigging of a ſhip,

which may be obſerved in ſome ornaments, even of French production as well as Engliſh. A practice this, which always denotes bad compoſition, and a barrenneſs of thought. It is done with a deſign to enrich, but it only turns out to be a filling up to the prejudice of the whole. The learner muſt therefore ſtudy to enrich by a variety of thought ſpringing from ſomething, yet without interfering with each other.

He ſhould alſo be careful in avoiding the appearance of ſtraight lines continued from bottom to top, which is formal and bad. Some continuance of a right line is beautiful; but it ought quickly to be broken in theſe compoſitions, whether perpendicular or horizontal.

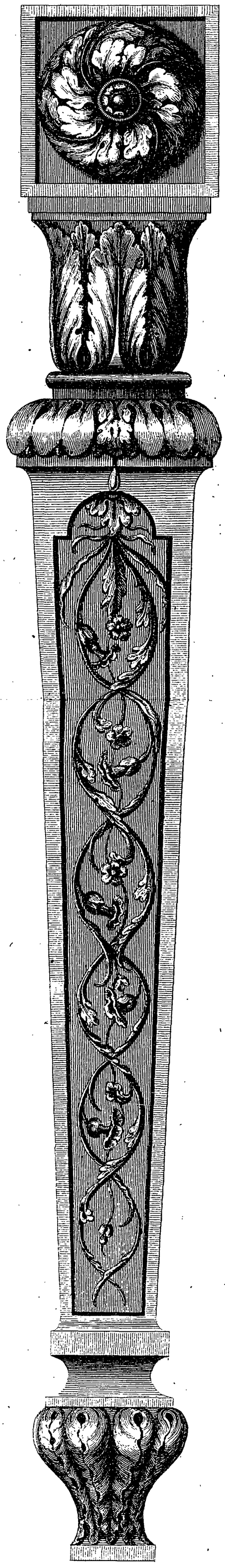
Obſerve breadth in the parts, ſhun niggling and meanneſs, and ſtick at nothing that will have a comely and pleaſant appearance.

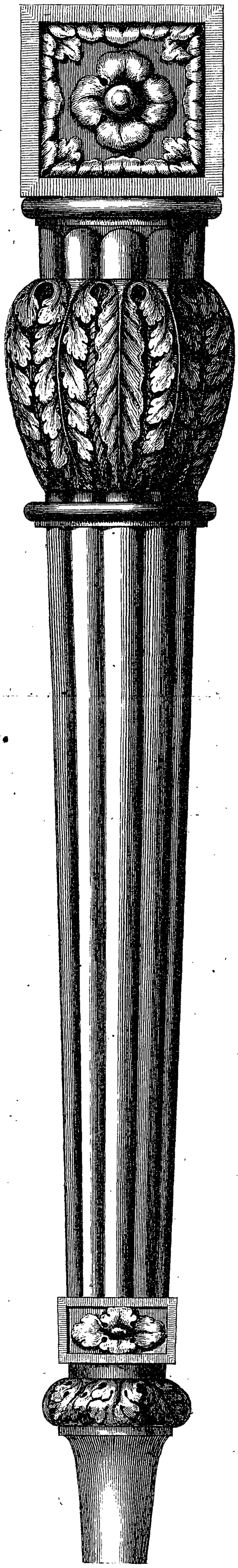
An Explanation of the Plates.

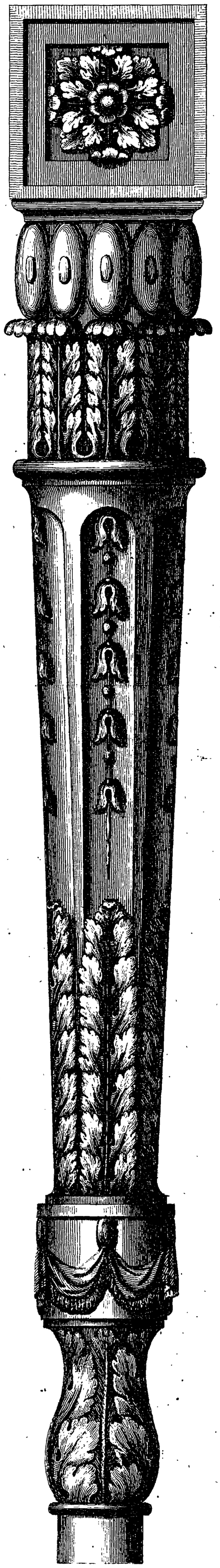
PLATE II. are chair legs. That on the left is intended for japanning, and is formed ſquare. The other two on the right are turned, carved, and gilt.

Obſerve,

CHAIR LEGS







T. Sheraton Del.

Publish'd as the Act Directs by T. Sheraton, Aug.t 20, 1793.

S. Caldwall Direx.t

BORDERS FOR PIER TABLES

T. Sheraton Del.

J. Caldwall Direct

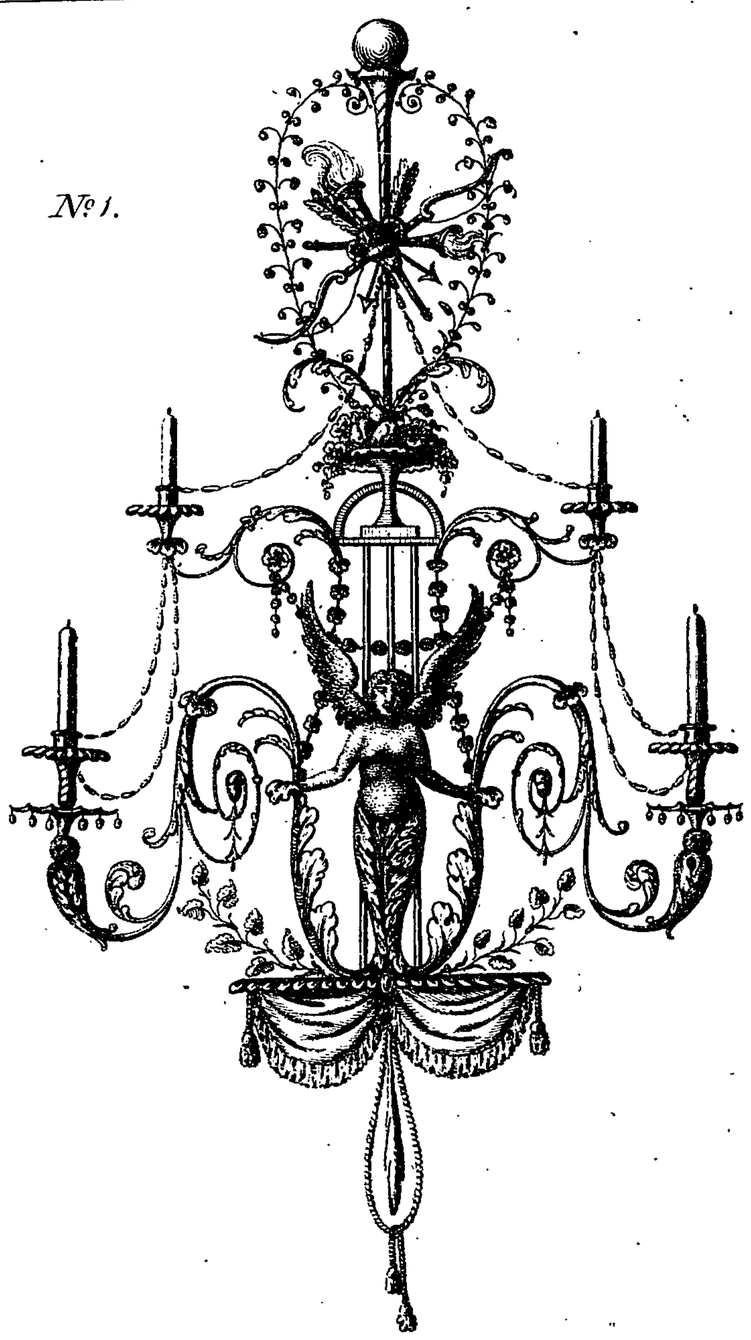
Published as the Act Directs by T. Sheraton Nov.r 5 1793.

GIRANDOLES

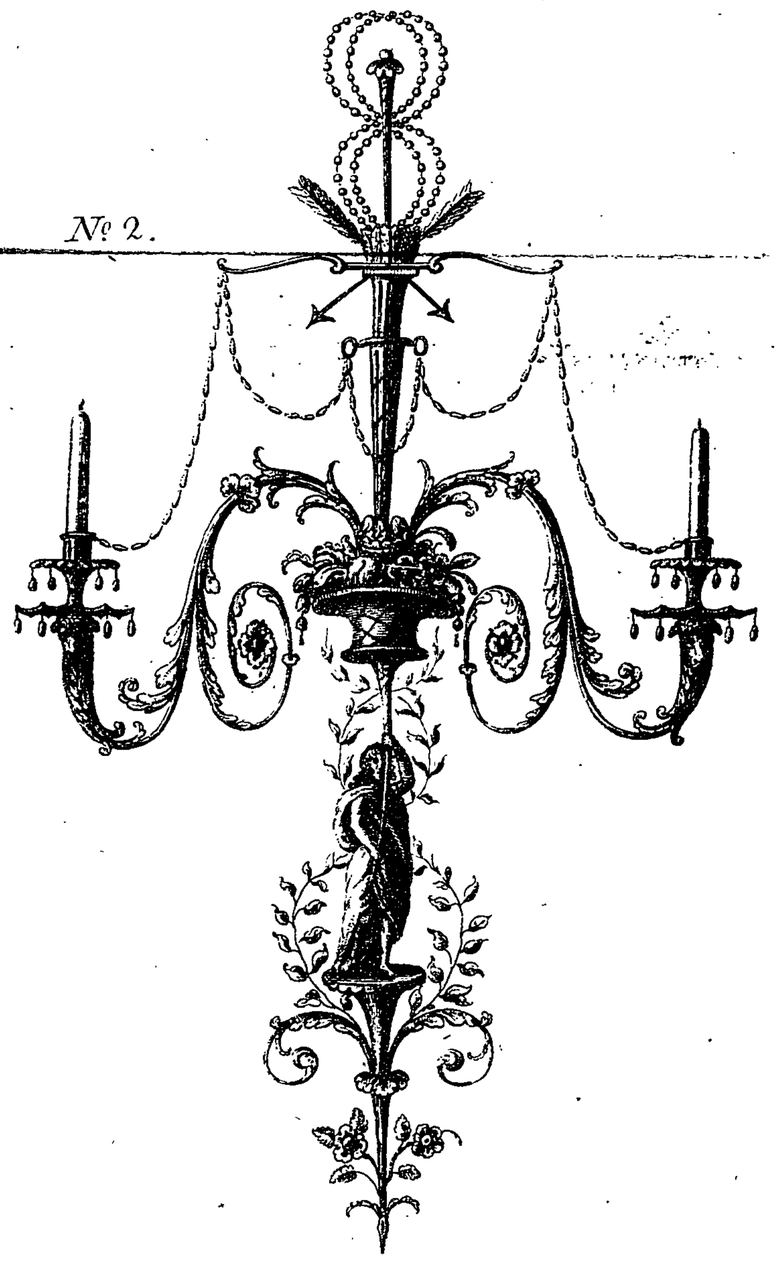
ORNAMENT *for a* PAINTED PANEL

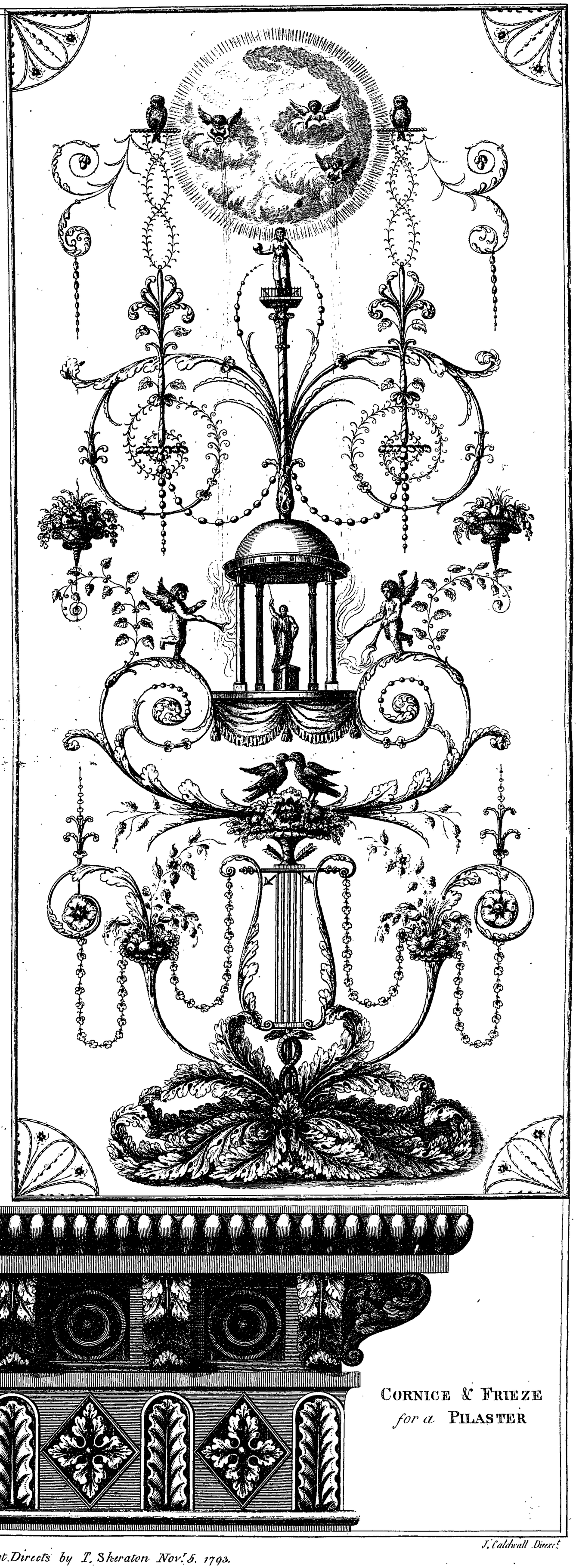
Pl. 4.

No 1.



No 2.





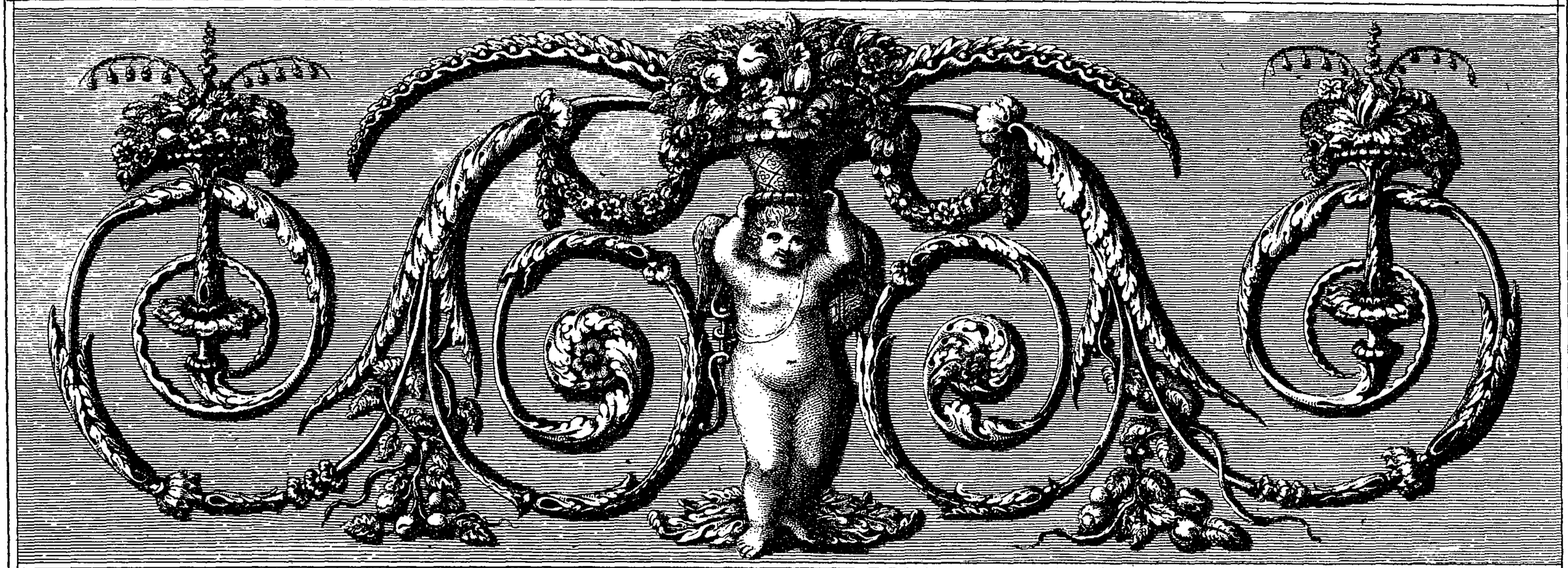
CORNICE & FRIEZE
for a PILASTER

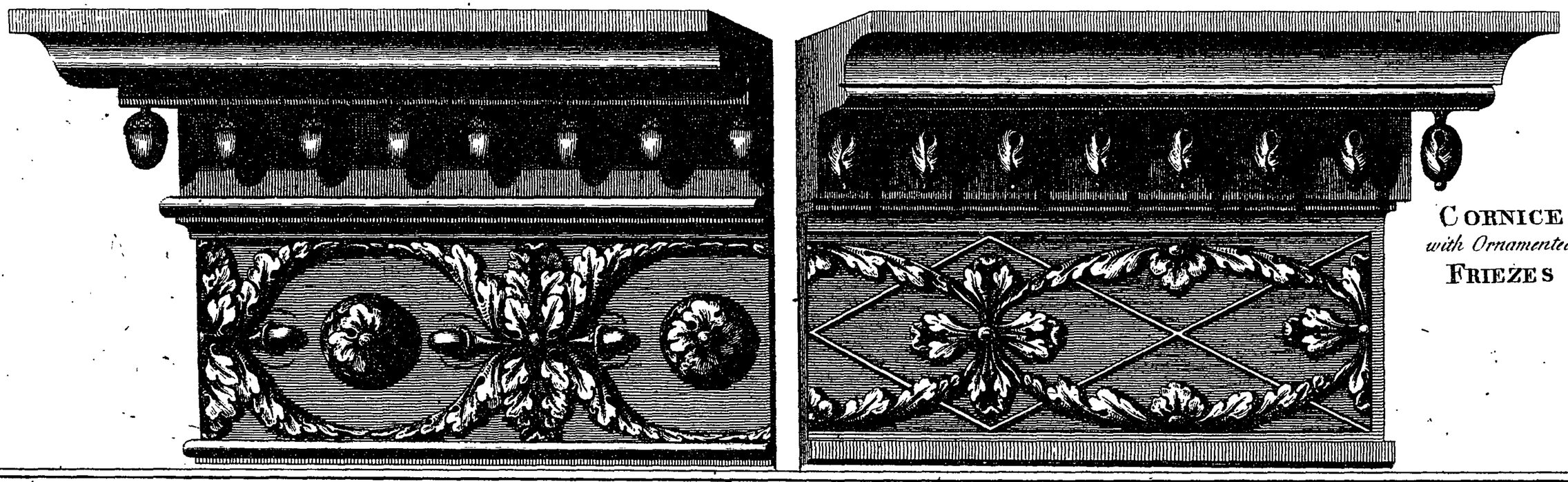
T. Sheraton Del.

J. Caldwall Direct.

Published as the Act Directs by T. Sheraton Nov.r 5. 1793.

ORNAMENT *for the* TABLET *of a* PIER TABLE





CORNICES
with Ornamented
FRIEZES

T. Sheraton Del.

I. Caldwall Direxit

Published as the Act Directs by T. Sheraton. Nov.r 23. 1793.

Obſerve, the plinth of the center foot is left ſquare, and pannelled out.

If the leg on the right be thought to have too much work, the huſks in the flutes and the drapery on the plinth may be omitted.

Plate III. Borders for japanning or inlaying.

Plate IV. Ornament for a pannel. The whole ſprings from a ſpreading leaf at the bottom, from which a ſerpent attempts to come at the doves on the fruit. In the center is a temple not dedicated to the intereſts of the cupids, for which reaſon they are burning it with their torches. The figure on the top of the column, in reſentment, means to pelt them with ſtones; and the geniuſes above are pouring down water to quench the flames. The owls are emblematic of the night, at which ſeaſon theſe miſchiefs are generally carried on. The other deſigns in this plate require no remark.

Plate V. Ornament for a tablet, intended for painting on a grey or blue ground, as beſt calculated to throw forward the figure and fruit.

In the cornices, the acorns in one, and huſk in the other, are

are turned with a pin; by which they are fixed into the large projecting ſquare.

I would adviſe to work the upper part of the cornice ſeparate, by which means the acorns will be more eaſily fixed. The frieze may be carved, painted, or inlaid.

Plate VI. Deſigns for Bed-pillars.

No. 1 and 2 are to be painted; No. 3 carved in mahogany; and No. 4 and 5 are intended for rich ſtate-beds, carved in white and gold. The ſcale of feet and inches at the bottom will give the heights, and other proportions.

The pateras which cover the ſcrew heads are on looſe pannels let into the pillars, and which ſettle down into a groove at the bottom, by which means they are kept in their place, and eaſily taken out.

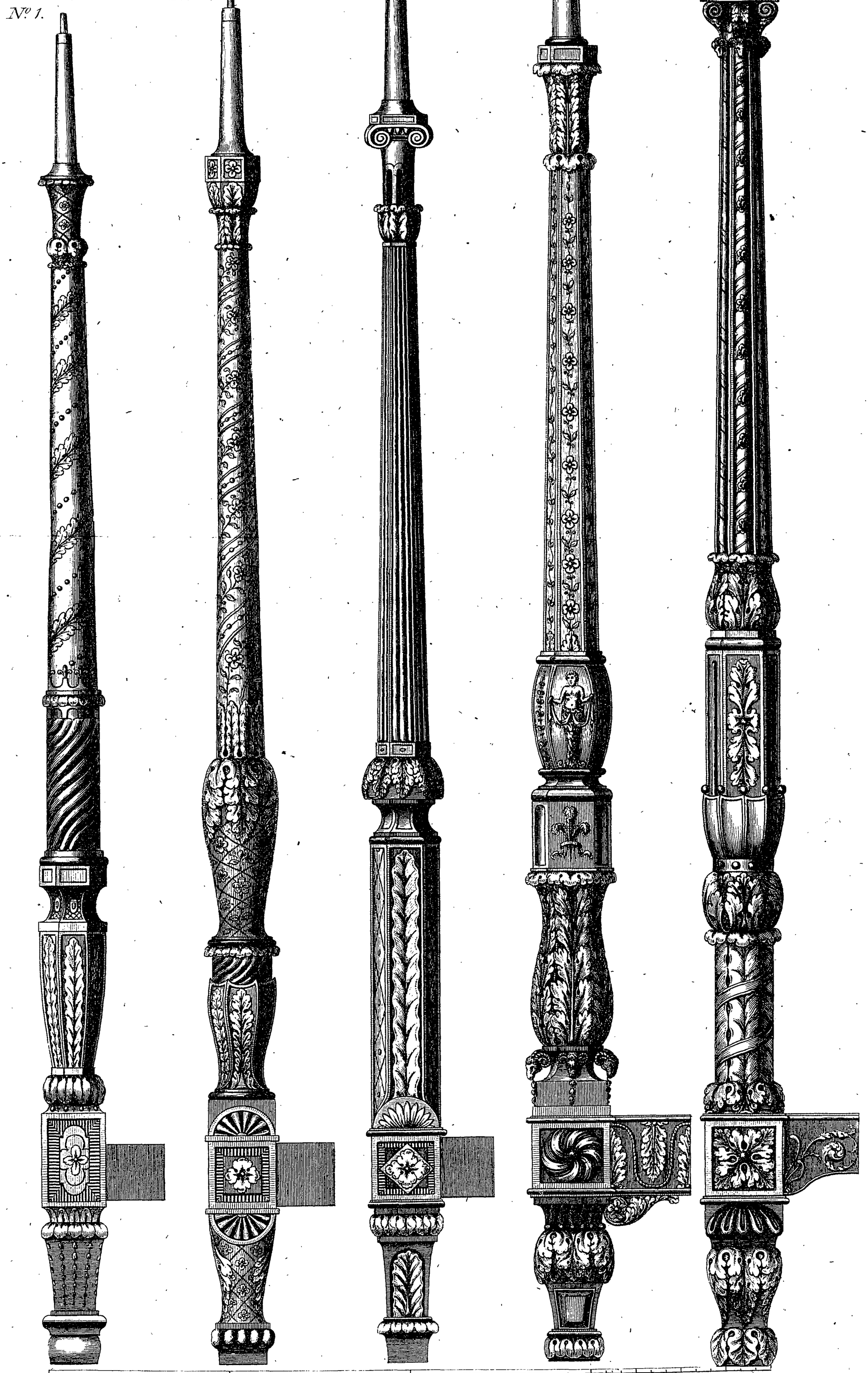
Plate VII. Ornaments for the center of a pembroke and pier table needs no explanation.

Plate VIII. Of chair ſplads.

No. 1, 2, 3, and 6, are intended for parlour chairs, carved in mahogany.

BED PILLARS

Pl. 6.

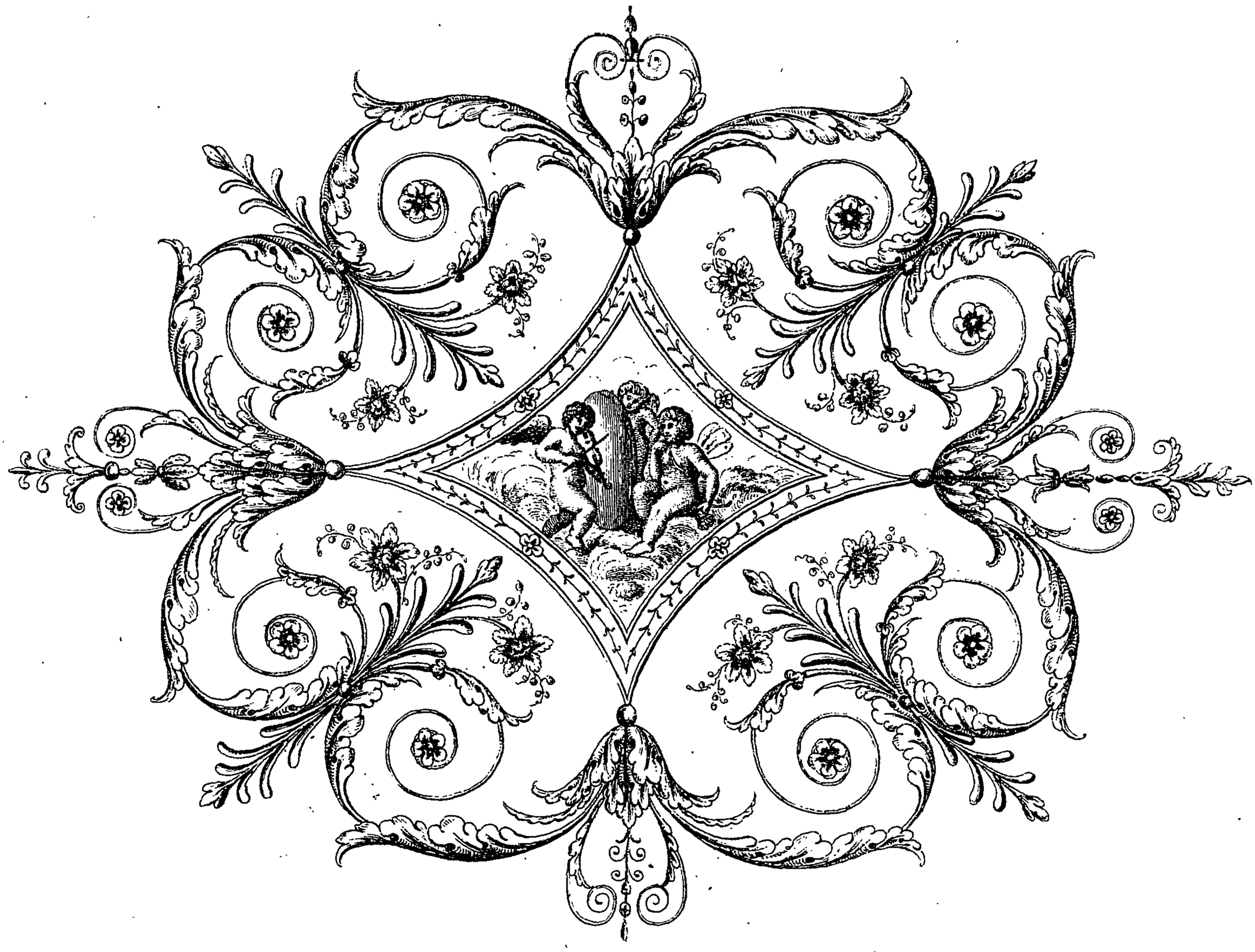


T. Sheraton Del.

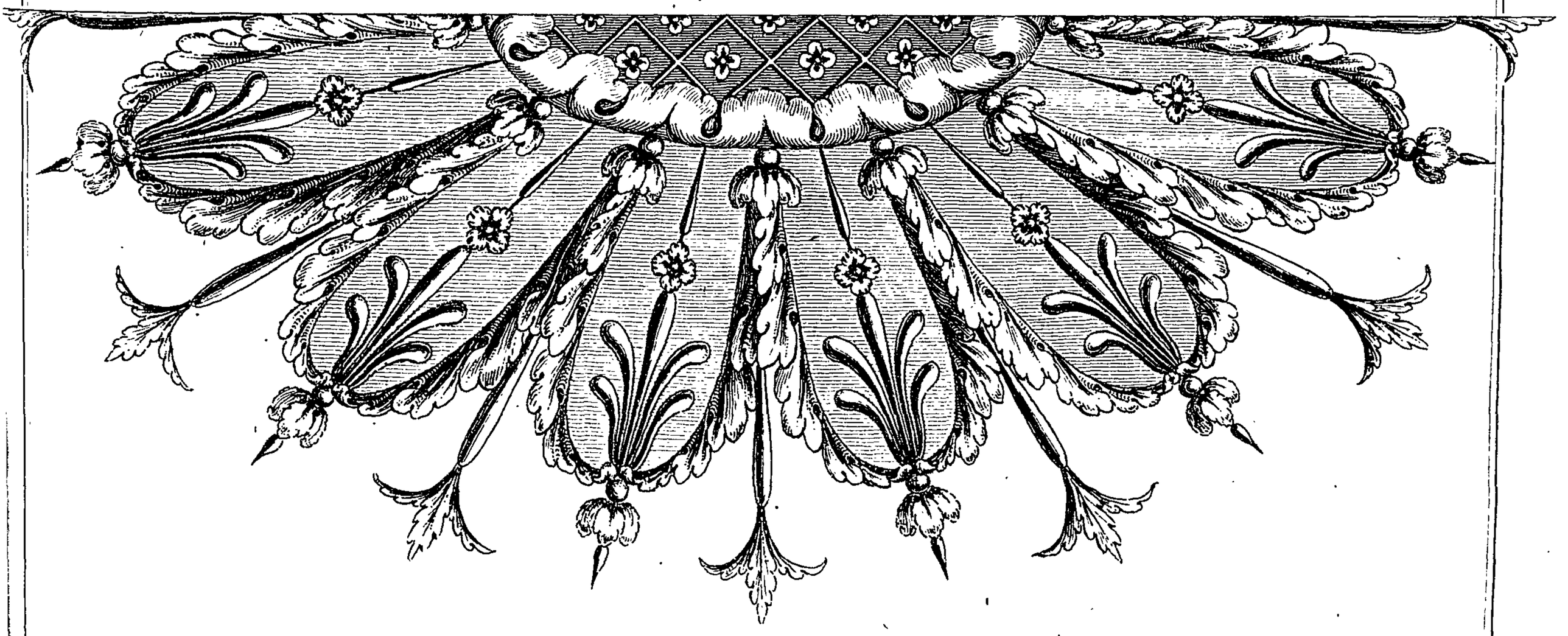
Published as the Act Directs by T. Sheraton Nov.r 23. 1793.

J. Caldwall Direct

CENTER *for a* PEMBROKE TABLE



CENTER *for a* PIER TABLE



T. Sheraton Del.

J. Caldwall Direxit

Published as the Act Directs by T. Sheraton Dec.r 23 1793.

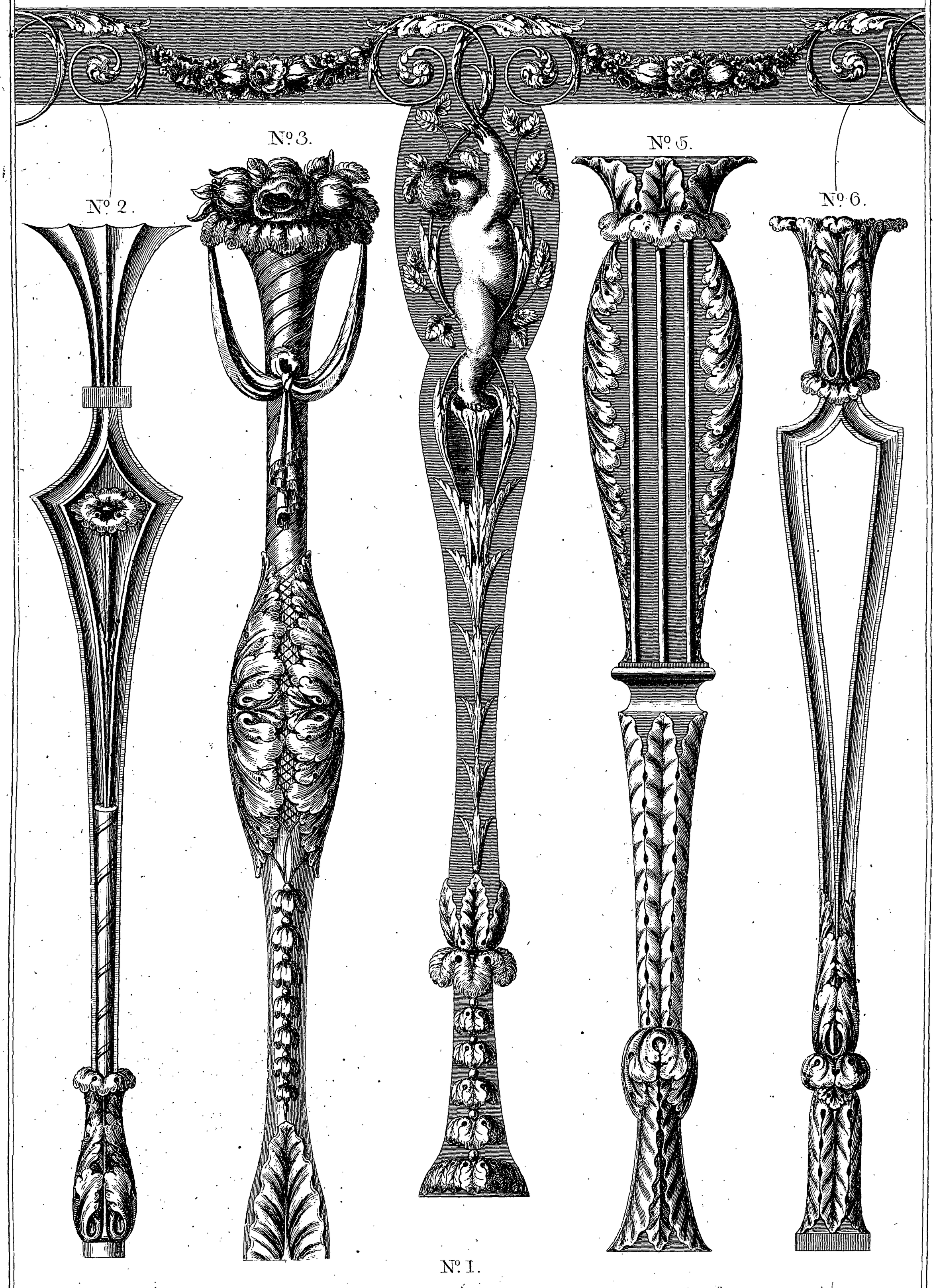
Nº 4.

Nº 3.

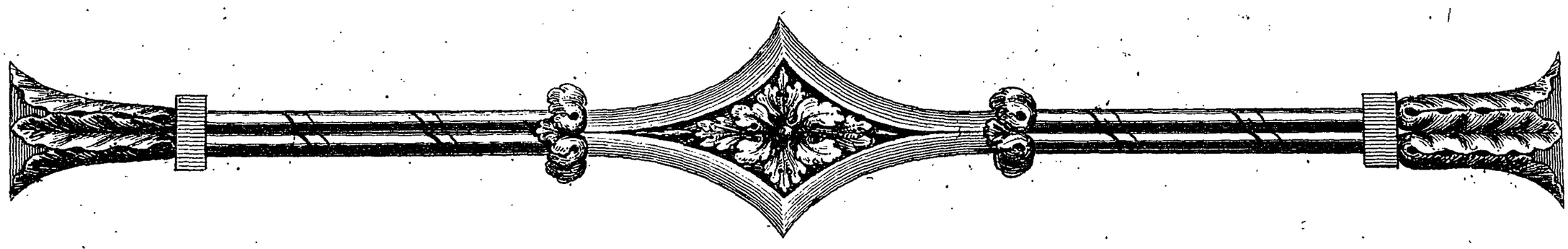
Nº 5.

Nº 2.

Nº 6.



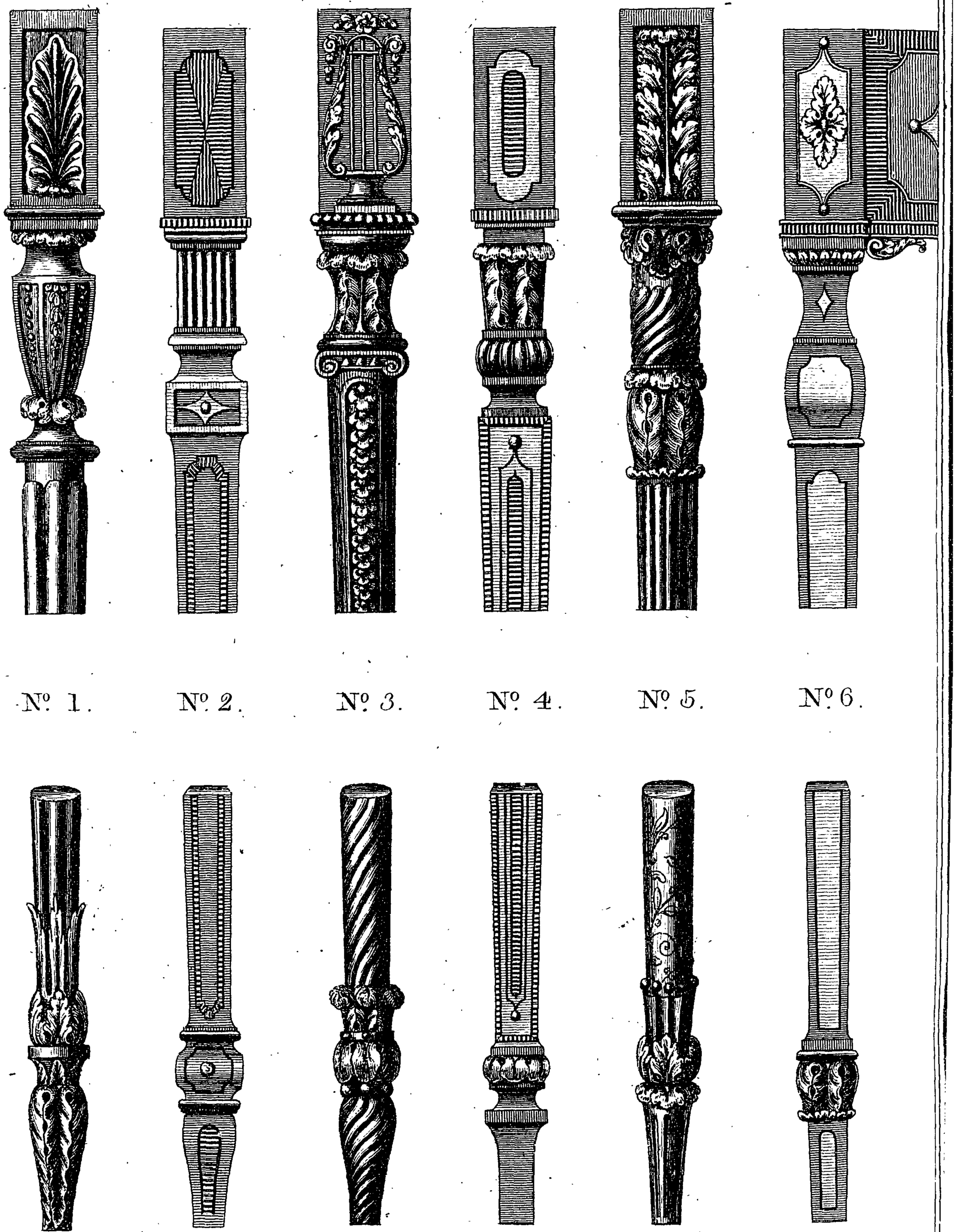
Nº 1.



T. Sheraton Del.

Published as the Act Directs by T. Sheraton Dec.r 23 1793.

J. Caldwall Direx.t



№ 1. № 2. № 3. № 4. № 5. № 6.

Inches

T. Sheraton Del. *J. Caldwall Direx.*

Published as the Act Directs by T. Sheraton Jan.y 14. 1794.

1

2

3

4

5

6

Splads for Painted Chairs

1

2

3

4

5

Inches

T. Sheraton Del.

Published as the Act Directs by T. Sheraton Jan.y 14. 1794.

T. Caldwall Direxit

No. 3 and 4 are for painted chairs. Obſerve, the curve lines which come from the top rail at No. 2 and 6 are intended to ſhew where the outſide ſplads in a complete back will come in, anſwerable to No. 4.

Plate IX. Of toes and knees for pier and card tables.

No. 1, 3, 5, are meant for pier tables, the ornaments of which are intended to be carved and gilt.

No. 2, 4, 6, are for card tables, with ſtringing and pannels let in.

Plate X. Of chair elbows, with part of the ſeat, together with ſplads for chair backs.

The ſplads are all intended for japanning, except No. 4, which may be worked in mahogany.

The elbows are meant chiefly to be carved and gilt; but the mere outlines of any of them will ſerve as patterns either for painted or mahogany chairs, by leaving out the ornaments for the mahogany, and retaining ſome of them, or even all of them may be adapted for painting.

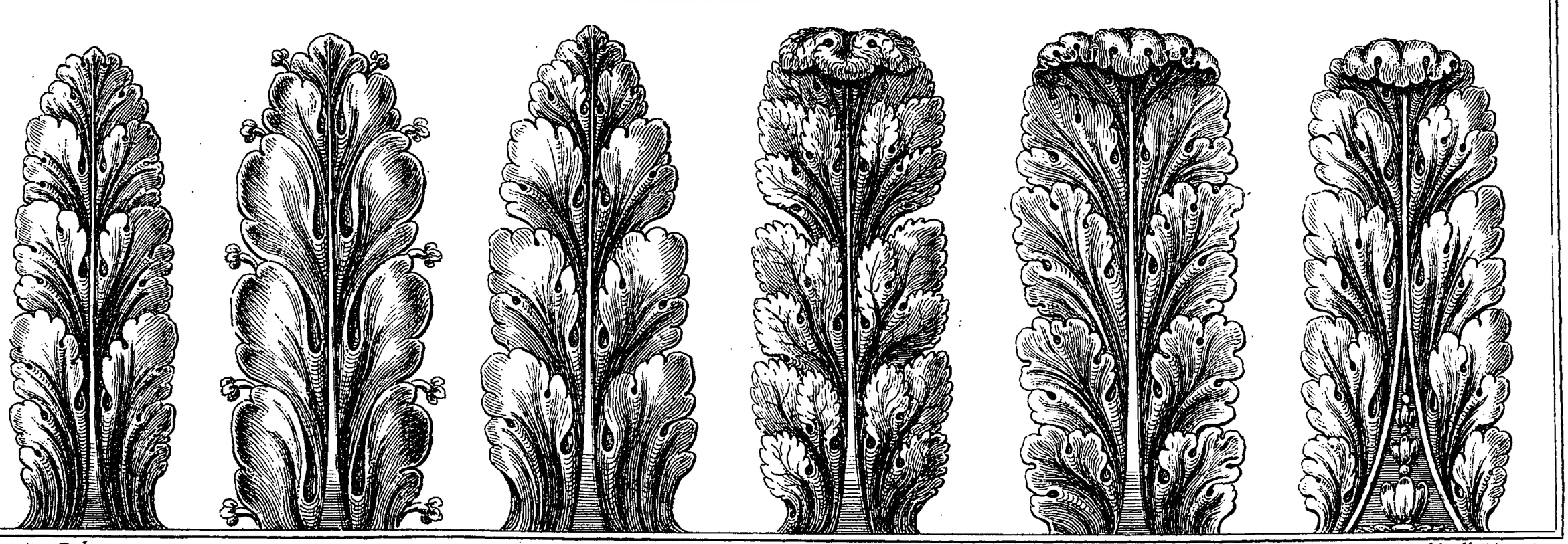
It may be proper to obſerve, that as high as the ſtuffing of the ſeat a rabbet ſhould be left on the ſtump to ſtuff againſt; which is eaſily done, as the ſtump is made ſmaller above the rail. The cuſhions on the arms are formed by cutting a rabbet in the arm, or leaving the wood a little above the ſurface. Some, however, bring the rabbet ſquare down at each end, covering the wood entirely, except a fillet, which is left at the bottom and continues round the cuſhion.

Plate XI. Ornament for a tablet intended for a painting, but which might be enlarged very well.

The ſubject is a faint moonlight ſcene, repreſenting Diana in a viſit to Endymion; who, as the ſtory goes, having offended Juno, was condemned by Jupiter to a thirty years ſleep. It may not be improper to advertiſe ſome, that theſe, with a thouſand other of the ſame kind of ſtories, are merely the fabrications of ancient poets and idolaters, forming to themſelves innumerable gods, according to their vain imaginations, and which now, only ſerve to try the painter's ſkill in decorating our walls. And in oppoſition to theſe vanities, I cannot well omit whiſpering into the ear of the reader, that " To us there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things." 1 Cor. viii. 6.

Plate

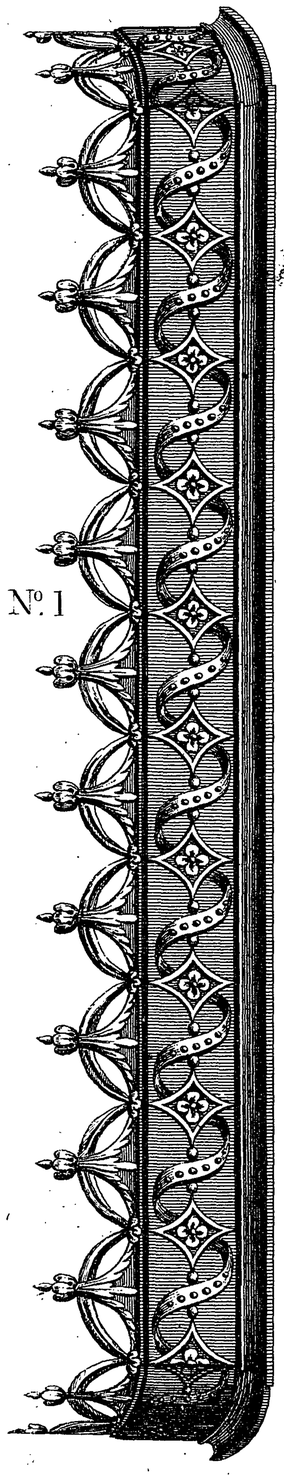




T. Sheraton Del.

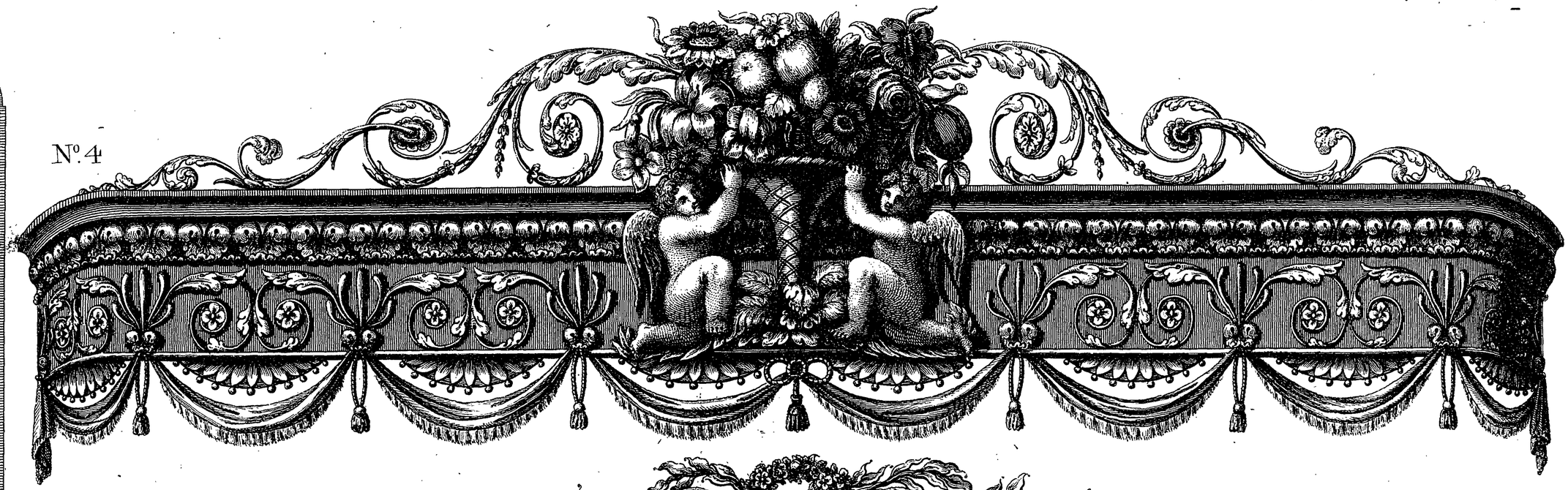
J. Caldwall Direxit

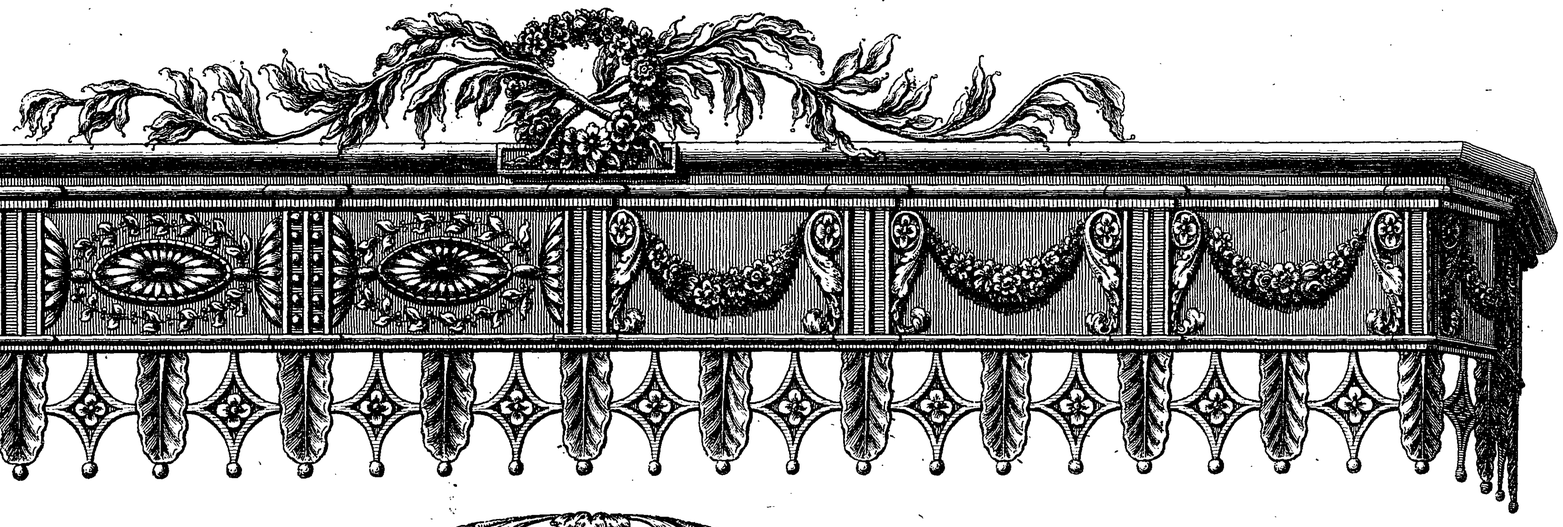
Published as the Act Directs by T. Sheraton. Feb.y 7. 1794.



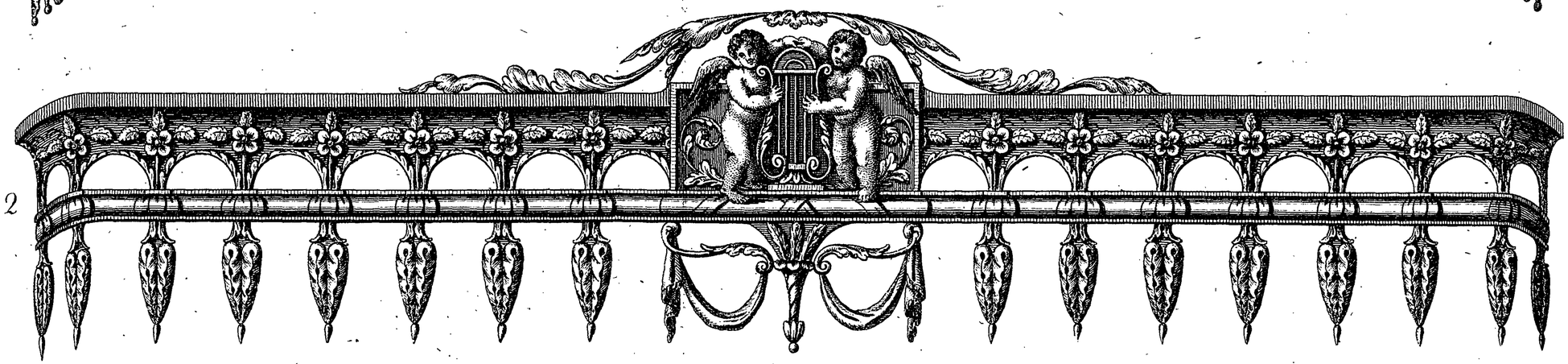
Nº 1

Nº 4





Nº 3



Nº 2

T. Sheraton Del. Published as the Act Directs by T. Sheraton Feby 10 1794 J. Caldwall Direxit

Plate XII. Cornices for Windows.

The one acrofs the plate is intended for japanning, the upper one for carving and gilding, and the two under ones may be either carved or japanned.

The circular ends of this cornice are fometimes formed of a faintifh curve, and fometimes of a quick one. When they are of a faint fweep, they ought to be made fomewhat longer at each end than the outfide of the architraves, to give place to the curtain rods, fo that they may be brought fufficiently forward on the lath, and not leave too great a vacancy between the rod and cornice leaves, otherwife the lath will be feen when there is no drapery. In making thefe cornices, it is beft to plough and tongue in the leaves to the under fide of the facia of the cornice. The ends may be formed by gluing blocks of deal one on another till they come nearly to the fweep; and after having formed the outfide curve, I would then advife to gage on for the plough-groove for the leaves, before the wood in the infide is brought to its form, that the pieces for the leaves may be put in without fplitting off the groove. After thefe are well dried, then the fuperfluous wood on the infide can be taken away.

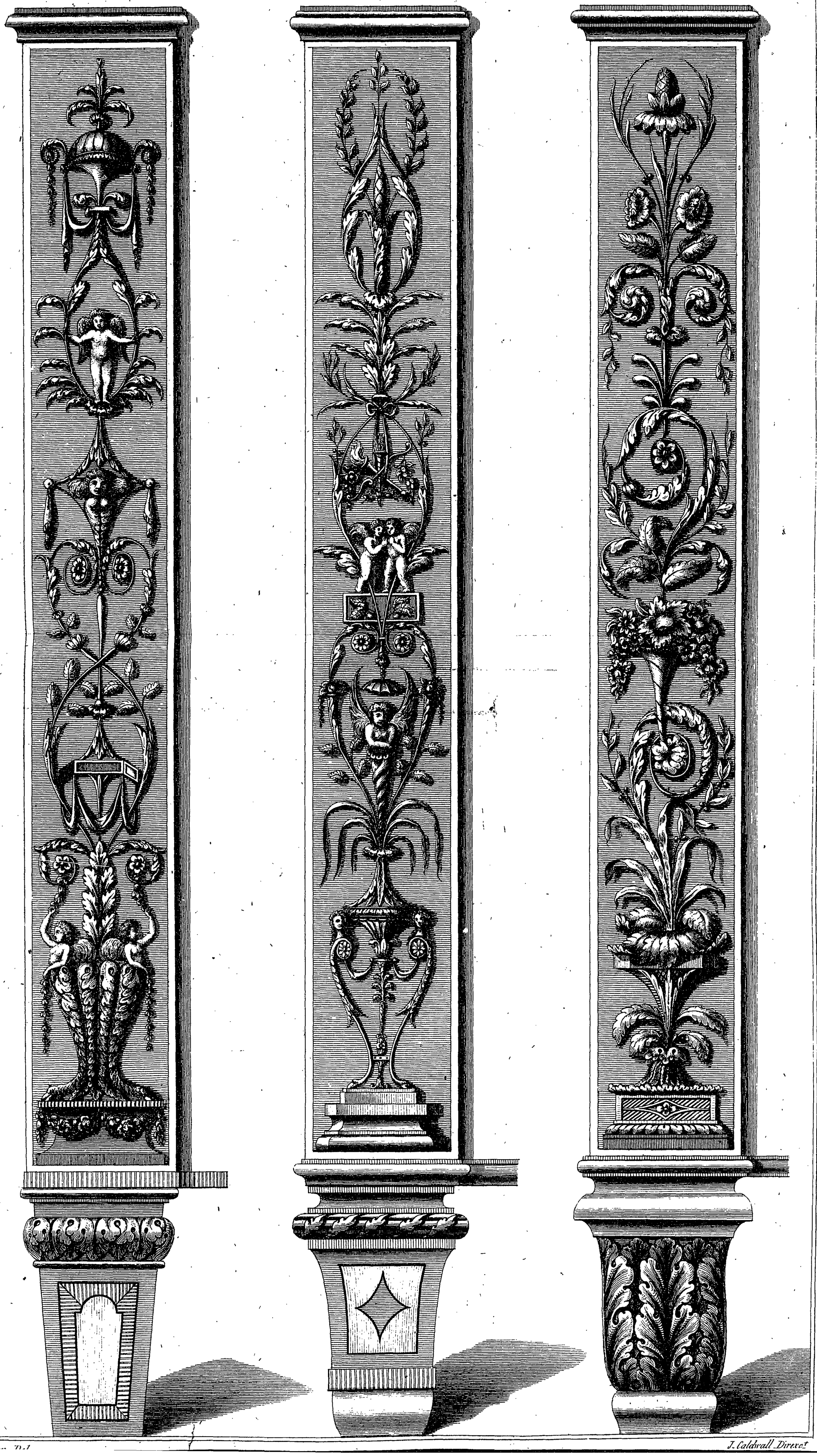
When the cornices are made at each end with a quick curve, the whole is firſt worked in ſtraight mouldings, and mitered together at each end, the ſame as if intended to be ſquare, according to the old faſhion. When they are glued in the miters, get out blocks of deal, about two inches and an half ſquare, and cut them down anglewiſe, and let their length be equal to the width of the cornice and length of the leaves.

After theſe blockings are dry, cut off as much of the old miter as is ſufficient to form the curve, and work the mouldings again by hand; and obſerve, that as the block was left long enough, the curved leaf is intended to reſt againſt it, by which it will be much ſtrengthened.

The cornices made thus, with a quick curve, needs not be made longer than uſual, becauſe the quick curve admits the rod to come forward more eaſily than the other.

Plate XIII. Pilaſters for Commodes.

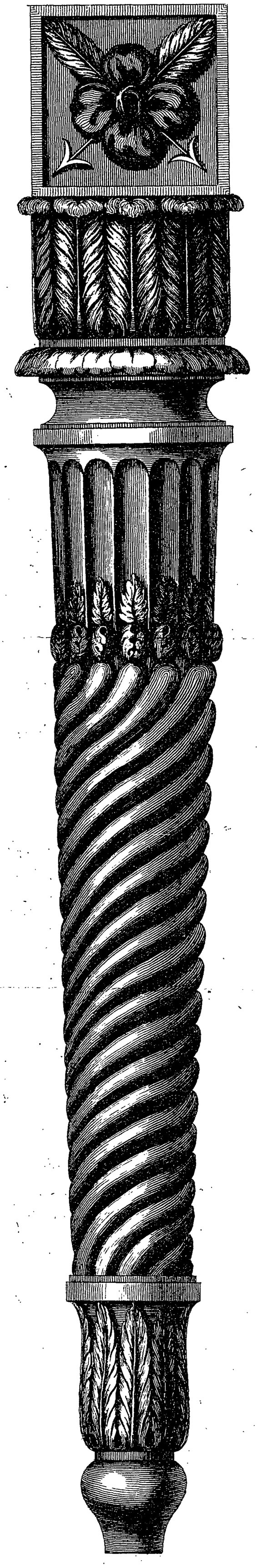
Theſe may be painted, inlaid, or gilt in gold behind glaſs, and the glaſs being then beded in the pilaſter, it is ſecure, and has a good effect.

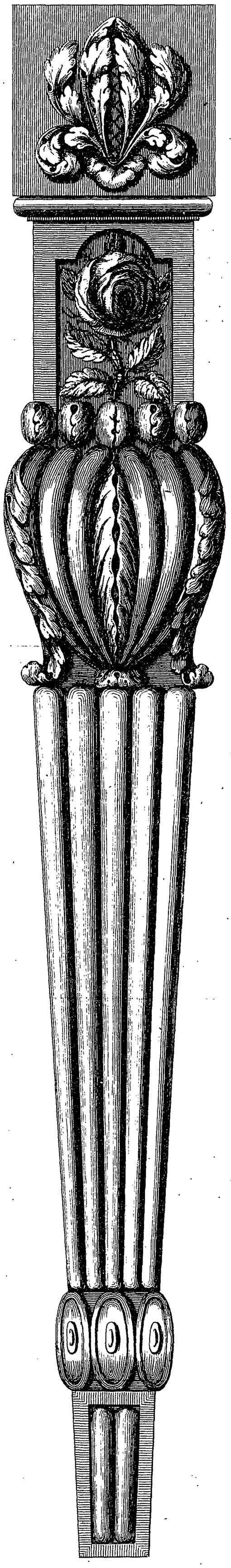


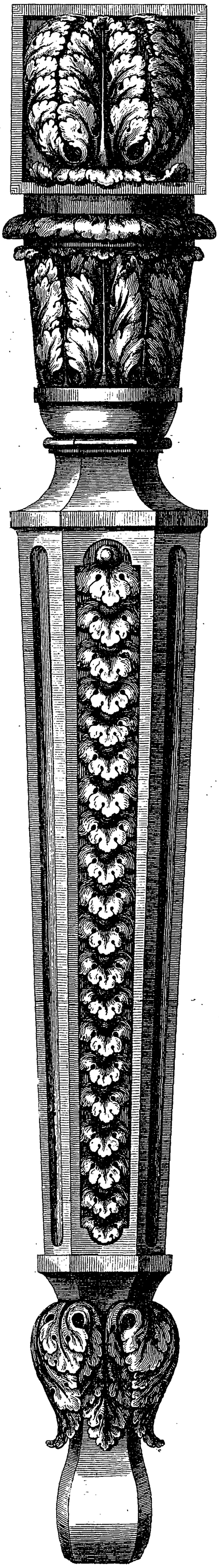
T. Sheraton Del.

J. Caldwall Direxit

Chair Legs







T. Sheraton Del.

T. Caldwall Direx.

Published as the Act Directs by G. Terry.— Aug.t 1793.

Plate XIV. Chair Legs.

The center leg is worked ſquare; that on the right is octagon, except the vaſe at the knee; and that on the left, round. Theſe may, in the view of ſome, be thought too full of work; but the ſkilful workman will eaſily ſee how to reduce their richneſs, and accommodate them to his purpoſe.

FINIS.